This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
LIBRARIES
THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
ARTES SCIENTIA VERITAS
1817

Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

MODERN DENTAL MATERIA MEDICA, PHARMACOLOGY AND THERAPEUTICS

BUCKLEY

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Modern Dental Materia Medica, Pharmacology and Therapeutics

INCLUDING THE PRACTICAL APPLICATION OF DRUGS AND REMEDIES IN THE TREATMENT OF DISEASE

BY

J. P. BUCKLEY, Ph. G., D. D. S.

PROFESSOR AND HEAD OF THE DEPARTMENT OF MATERIA MEDICA, PHARMACOLOGY AND THERAPEUTICS, AND FORMERLY DIRECTOR OF THE CHEMICAL LABORATORIES, CHICAGO COLLEGE OF DENTAL SURGERY

FOURTH EDITION, REVISED

ONE HUNDRED FORTY-SIX ILLUSTRATIONS

PHILADELPHIA

P. BLAKISTON'S SON & CO.

1012 WALNUT STREET

Digitized by Google

Dent
RM
122
.B5
1917

COPYRIGHT, 1909, BY P. BLAKISTON'S SON & CO.
COPYRIGHT, 1910, BY P. BLAKISTON'S SON & CO.
COPYRIGHT, 1911, BY P. BLAKISTON'S SON & CO.

Reprinted, October, 1911; June, 1912; April, 1913; October, 1913; November, 1914 June, 1915; November, 1915; January, September and October, 1916.

COPYRIGHT, 1917, BY P. BLAKISTON'S SON & CO.

Printed, April, 1917.

"The use in this volume of certain portions of the text of the United States Pharmacopœia is by virtue of permission received from the Board of Trustees of the United States Pharmacopœial Convention. The said Board of Trustees is not responsible for any inaccuracy nor for any errors in the statement of quantities or percentage strengths."

"Permission to use for comment parts of the text of the National Formulary, Fourth Edition, in this volume, has been granted by the Committee on Publication by authority of the Council of the American Pharmaceutical Association."

THE MAPLE PRESS YORK PA.

Digitized by Google

1793 c
add

TO
THE MEMORY OF
MY MOTHER,
WHOSE ENCOURAGEMENT IN MY BOYHOOD DAYS
SERVED ME SO WELL,
AND TO
MY WIFE,
FOR MANY WILLING SACRIFICES DURING THE
PAST EIGHTEEN YEARS,
THIS VOLUME IS FONDLY
DEDICATED.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

PREFACE TO THE FOURTH EDITION

This book has been rewritten and thoroughly revised; Part I in accordance with the United States Pharmacopeia IX, which became official on September 1, 1916; and Part II in accordance with the knowledge of to-day relating to the treatment of diseases of the teeth and associated structures.

The U.S.P. IX has discarded the term cubic centimeter (abbrev. c.c.) on the ground that the United States Bureau of Standards declared the term a misnomer, there being a slight difference between the thousandth part of a liter and a cubic centimeter. The word mil, the first three letters of the whole word milliliter, has been adopted; therefore, in this work the word mil is used instead of c.c.

The National Formulary is referred to in this edition more than was done heretofore, for the reason that many valuable pharmaceutical preparations have been omitted from the U.S.P. IX, and are found in the N.F. The laws passed by various States of the Union, in conformity with the National Food and Drugs Act which was passed by Congress on June 30, 1906, make both the United States Pharmacopeia and the National Formulary the standards for drugs.

An effort is being made in the profession of dentistry to-day to treat teeth under as nearly aseptic conditions as possible. With this end in view an article on Dental Sterilization has been written; as has also an article on Biologic Products. The advanced therapy of many infectious diseases includes the intelligent use of products from the Biologic Laboratories. Many of the systemic diseases of this character are now known to have a direct relation to diseased mouth and throat conditions; therefore, it is important that the student and the practitioner of dentistry understand the principles upon which this therapy is based.

It will be found that Part II, which deals with Dental Therapeutics, is more profusely illustrated than in former editions. There is no problem in dentistry at the present time of greater importance than the treatment of pulpless teeth and their sequelæ. On this particular subject many illustrations have been added which show results of the treatment after the methods described in the text.

The colored illustrations, especially those relating to the diseases of the soft tissues of the mouth, will aid greatly in the recognition of these diseases as they present in practice.

Digitized by Google

The author is indebted to Prof. John F. Biddle, of the Dental Department of the University of Pittsburg, for illustrated cases in his practice; and also desires again to record his appreciation of the cordial reception which this book has received from dental teachers of the subject, and from the profession at large.

CHICAGO. J. P. BUCKLEY.

Digitized by Google

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

The printing of the third edition in twenty months after the first appearance of this book has enabled the author to again make such alterations and corrections as would enhance the value of the work. The text has been changed slightly throughout and several new and original illustrations have been added. The greatest change has been made in the treatment of chronic alveolar abscess. Dentists in the past have placed too much dependence in drugs as the means of correcting root and bone complications; and, as a result, many teeth, thus diseased, have been needlessly extracted. Therefore the surgical treatment of these complicated conditions has been considered more fully and new illustrations added to aid in both the diagnosis and treatment. It has been my desire to improve the book without enlarging it, and to make the text still more clear, direct and practical.

CHICAGO. J. P. BUCKLEY.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

The general plan of this book is the outgrowth of many years of experience as a dental practitioner and teacher of Materia Medica, Pharmacology and Therapeutics in dental colleges. During these years, the author has realized the need of a text-book which would meet the wants of teacher, student and practitioner.

The book is intended to include all that a dentist should know about drugs and remedies and their practical application in the treatment of disease.

The work is divided into two parts. The first is devoted to Materia Medica and Pharmacology, with enough Therapeutics to indicate clearly the uses of the various drugs and remedies; and an effort has been made to include herein every drug or remedy which is employed in Dental Therapeutics, except those which are obsolete, untried or savor of the "secret formula" variety. To accomplish this end, it was, of course, necessary to consult freely the United States Pharmacopeia, and other standard works on these subjects.

Drugs marked with an asterisk (*) mean that the drug is a member of the group under consideration, but because of other properties which the agent possesses, it has been elsewhere considered. In most instances, the drug is discussed under the group in which it is first mentioned, and if it is referred to subsequently in another group, it is there marked with an asterisk. For example, phenol is mentioned first as a disinfectant under which group of drugs it is discussed. Later it is mentioned in the group of escharotics, and is there marked with an asterisk.

In this part of the book, also, is included Prescription Writing and its associated subjects—Metrology, Medical Latin and Incompatibility, all of which have been given the dignity and importance they deserve in a dental course. It will be observed that no prescriptions have been written until after Prescription Writing has been discussed; after which, however, no formula has been mentioned without a correctly written prescription for the same. This plan was followed for the benefit of teachers and students in dental colleges. Prescriptions, as a rule, are confusing, though enticing to beginners, and questions naturally suggest themselves in regard to the various signs and terms used. For the teacher to attempt to explain these before the subject proper had been studied would be a loss of time, as no one can write a prescription intelligently without first being

Digitized by Google

familiar with drugs. Therefore, it is better, in the author's opinion, to avoid even the suggestion of questions pertaining to prescriptions at this time. By thus deferring the study of Prescription Writing to about the close of the Junior year, an excellent opportunity is afforded for practice work throughout the entire Senior year when Practical Therapeutics is taught. By this means only can students become good prescription writers—a faculty not developed by the average dentist.

The second part of the book is devoted to Practical Dental Therapeutics. In writing it the author was actuated by the belief that Dental Therapeutics is of sufficient importance to occupy a place in dentistry by itself. It is to be hoped that this subject may ultimately be divorced from Operative Dentistry, to which it has long been subordinated.

No attempt has been made to describe all of the many methods of treatment, nor to give the endless formulas suggested in the various text-books and journals, for the pathologic conditions mentioned herein. To do so would lead to confusion, as well as make the book unnecessarily voluminous, in which case the word "practical" in connection with "therapeutics," as used here, would be a misnomer. Therefore, in most instances, only the methods by which the conditions are treated in the author's own practice are detailed. These methods, of course, are not wholly original. They have been gleaned from clinical experience, from extensive reading, and from observation and association with other practitioners; and in both private and infirmary practice they have given good results.

The prescriptions for remedies, for the most part, are original with the author, and have been worked out along the lines of practical pharmacy and therapeutics. Where the formulas are not original, due credit, so far as is known, has been given.

It is unnecessary to profusely illustrate a book of this kind. Only such illustrations as will tend to better explain the subject matter of the text are given. These, with few exceptions, were taken from actual cases in the author's practice, or from private patients referred to him for treatment.

The author desires to express his grateful appreciation to Dr. E. W. Elliot for valuable suggestions, to Dr. Lee K. Stewart for furnishing models to illustrate a practical retaining appliance, and to other professional friends for the encouragement given in undertaking the work. He further records his appreciation of the publisher's unfailing courtesy.

J. P. BUCKLEY.

CHICAGO.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS

PART I

DENTAL MATERIA MEDICA AND PHARMACOLOGY

Modern Dental Materia Medica, Pharmacology and Therapeutics, 1
General Considerations, 1
Sources of Drugs and Constituents of Those of Vegetable Origin, 4
Parts of Plants Used for Drugs, 7
Pharmaceutic Preparations, 8
The Solutions, 8
The Mixtures, 11
Products by Extraction, 12
Mixtures of Solids, 16
Preparations for External Use, 18
Miscellaneous List of Nonofficial Bandages, Splints, Medicated and Antiseptic Dressings, and Medicated Gauzes, 20
Methods of Administering or Applying Drugs, 21
By the Mouth, 21
Hypodermic, 22
Epidermic or Inunction, 25
Intravenous, 26
Cataphoresis, 26
By the Rectum, 26
Inhalation, 26
Conditions Modifying the Action and Effect of Drugs, 27
Habit, 27
Idiosyncrasy, 27
Tolerance, 27
Cumulative Effect, 28
Dosage or Posology, 28
Age and Sex, 28
Pathologic Conditions, 29
Method and Time of Administration, 29
Classification of Medicines, 29
Definitions of Remedies, 30
Foods, Hematics, and Tonics, 34
Drugs, 36
Local Remedies, 36
Antacids, 36
Antiseptics, Disinfectants, and Deodorants, 41
Astringents, Styptics, and Hemostatics, 72
Other Silver Salts and Soluble Compounds, 87
Bleachers, 88
Oxidizing Agents, 88

Digitized by Google

Escharotics or Caustics, 93
Irritants and Counterirritants, 106
Emollients, Demulcents, and Protectives, 115
Local Anesthetics, 126
Refrigerant and Paralyzant, 126
General Anesthetics, 140
Antipyretics, 145
Hypnotics, 150
Narcotics, 156
Stimulants, 163
Cardiac, 163
Respiratory, 175
Gastric, 177
Miscellaneous Group, 179
Alteratives and Restoratives, 181
Digestants, 205
Cathartics, 208
Diuretics, 222
Diaphoretics, 228
Emetics, 230
Expectorants, 234
Sialogogues, 236
Carminatives, 237
Flavoring Agents, 240
Biologic Products, 245
Antitoxins, 246
Serums, 247
Vaccines, 248
Remedies Other Than Drugs, 249
Heat, 249
Cold, 250
Compressed Air, 251
Light, 251
Röntgen or X-ray, 252
Radium, 253
Electricity, 253
Massage, 254
Suction, 254
Suggestion, 255
Metrology, 257
The Metric System, 259
Equivalents to the English Weights and Measures, 261
Percentage in Solutions, 263
Prescription-writing, 264
Medical Latin, 268
Examples of Practical Prescriptions, 270
Incompatibility in Prescriptions, 274
Antagonism of Drugs, 276
Dental Sterilization, 277
General Considerations, 277
Methods of Dental Sterilization, 277
Direct Flame, 277
Moist and Dry Heat, 278
Chemic Agents, 278

Digitized by Google

PART II

PRACTICAL DENTAL THERAPEUTICS

General Considerations, 281
Diseases of the Hard Tissues of the Mouth and Associated Structures, 283
Hypersensitive Dentin, 283
General Considerations, 283
Previous Attempts at Controlling Pain, 284
Therapeutics, 285
I. Physical Agents, 285
Heat, 285
Cold, 286
Light; Electricity, 287
II. Escharotics or Caustics, 287
Phenol and Zinc Chlorid, 287
Trichloracetic Acid, Silver Nitrate, and Trioxymethylen, 288
III. Local Anodynes or Local Anesthetics, 289
Cocain, 289
Novocain, 290
Neothesin, Menthol, Oil of Cloves, Eugenol, Phenol, Ethyl Chlorid, Ether, and Chloroform, 291
IV. General Anodynes or Analgesics, 291
Opium, the Bromids, Nitrous Oxid, and Chloroform, 292
Desensitizing Paste, 293
Physiologic Action, 293
Indications, 294
Making the Application, 294
Precautions, 295
Caution in Relation to Diseased Pulps, 296
Diagnosis and Treatment of Diseases of the Dental Pulp; including the Destruction and Removal of the Organ, 298
General Considerations, 298
The Normal Dental Pulp, 298
Character of Blood-vessels, 299
Common Sources of Irritation, 299
Constructive Diseases, 302
Secondary Dentin, 302
Pulp Nodules, 303
Destructive Diseases, 306
Diagnosis of Active and Passive Hyperemia and True Pulpitis, 307
Differential Diagnosis, 308
Treatment of Active Hyperemia, 308
Factors to be Considered in Pulp Capping, 308
Exceptional Cases of Exposure, 309
Therapeutics of Pulp Capping, 310
Precautions, 310
Technic, 311
Treatment of Passive Hyperemia and True Inflammation, 313
The Removal of Vital Pulps and Subsequent Treatment, 314
General Considerations, 314
General Factors to be Observed in Removal of Pulp, 315
I. Anesthetization, 315
1. Pressure Anesthesia, 315
Sterilization, 315

Digitized by Google

The Solution, 317
Pressure, 318
Confining the Solution under Pressure, 319
Opening the Pulp Chamber to Expose Canals, 319
Selecting and Testing Broaches, 320
Control of Ordinary Hemorrhage and Removal of Blood, 320
Small Canals, 321
After-treatment, 322
When to Fill Canals, 322
Excessive Hemorrhage, 323
Objections to the Use of Adrenalin Chlorid, 323
2. Cataphoresis, 324
II. Devitalization, 325
The Preparation, 326
Technic of Application, 327
Length of Time Application Should Remain, 328
Opening Pulp Chamber and Exposing Canals, 328
Objections to the Use of Dialysed Iron and Tannic Acid, 329
Complications, 330
Hypertrophied Gum Tissue, 330
Diagnosis as to the Kind of Tissue in Cavity, 331
Hypertrophied Pulp Tissue, 332
Secondary Dentin, Pulp Nodules, and Pulp Calcification, 332
Removal of Pulps from Deciduous Teeth, 333
Arsenical Poisoning, 334
Diagnosis and Treatment of Pulpless Teeth and their Sequelæ; including the Preparation of the Canals for Filling, 336
General Considerations, 336
Coagulating Drugs, 336
Important Products of Pulp Decomposition, 337
Drugs Indicated, 337
Factors to be Considered, 338
Diagnosis of Dead Pulps, 338
Treatment of Pulpless Teeth, 339
Potassium and Sodium, 340
Technic of Using Schreier's Alloy, 341
Rationale of Rhein's Method, 341
Advantages of Phenolsulphonic Acid, 343
Caution in Using Callahan's Method, 344
Technic of Using Acid Method, 344
Nonpurulent Variety, 345
Removing old Root Filling, 346
Removing Blockade in Canal, 347
Purulent Variety, 347
Ionization, 347
Ionic Theory, 348
Complications, 349
Badly Decayed Root, 349
Pulp Partially Alive, Pulpal Abscess, Dry Gangrene, 350
History and Treatment of Practical Cases, 351
Diagnosis and Treatment of Nonseptic Pericementitis, 358
General Considerations, 358
Drug Irritants, 358
Mechanical Irritants, 360
Treatment of Nonseptic Pericementitis, 361

Digitized by Google

Diagnosis and Treatment of Septic Pericementitis and Acute Alveolar Abscess, 364
General Considerations, 364
Local Treatment, 364
General Treatment, 365
The Question of Extraction, 368
Chronic Alveolar Abscess, 370
General Considerations, 270
1. Abscess without Sinus, 370
Disposing of the Pus, 370
Therapeutics, 370
Weeping of Serum, 371
Complications, 372
2. Abscess with Sinus, 373
Therapeutics, 373
Establishing Sinus and Disposing of Pus, 374
Cauterizing Sinus, 374
Complications, 376
1. Denuded End of Root, 377
2. Resorbed or Roughened End of Root, 378
3. Encystment of Root, 378
4. Involving Bone, 378
5. Extensive Caries or Necrosis, 379
6. Involving Vault, 380
7. Secondary Abscess Pocket, 381
8. Involving Two or More Teeth, 381
9. Involving Antrum, 382
Periapical Cysts, 382
Surgical Treatment of Chronic Alveolar Abscesses and Their Sequelæ, 382
Indications for Surgery, 382
The Anesthetic; Incision and Control of Hemorrhage, 383
Exposing the Area Involved, 385
Curetting the Area, 386
Filling End of Root, 386
Washing and Packing the Wound, 386
Subsequent Treatment, 387
Treatment of Gangrenous Pulps and Abscesses in Deciduous Teeth, 390
Pericemental Abscess, 391
Therapeutics, 391
Filling Root-canals, 394
Precautions, 396
Callahan's Rosin Solution, 400
Technic, 400
Discolored Teeth, 402
Principle of Bleaching, 403
Methods of Bleaching, 404
Oxidation, 404
Reduction, 405
Using Sodium Dioxid, 405
Preparation of the Tooth, 406
Ethereal Solution of Hydrogen Dioxid, 407
Antrum of Highmore, 410
Causes of Diseases of the Antrum, 410
Diagnosis, 412

Digitized by Google

Therapeutics, 413
Surgical Treatment, 413
Medicinal Treatment, 414
Pyorrhea Alveolaris, 416
Probable Causes, 416
Systemic Effects, 417
Description of Classes, 419
Therapeutics, 422
Surgical Treatment, 423
Medicinal Treatment, 428
Astringent Mouth-washes Contraindicated, 429
Mechanical Treatment, 440
Neuralgia, 444
Facial Neuralgia, 445
Therapeutics, 445
Medicinal Treatment, 447
Local, 447
General, 448
Surgical Treatment, 451
Tic Douloureux, 451
Diagnosis and Treatment of Diseases of the Soft Tissues of the Mouth not Directly Associated with the Teeth, 453
General Considerations, 453
Canker Sores, 454
Herpes Labialis, 455
Syphilis, 455
Primary, 456
Secondary, 458
Tertiary, 460
Mercurial Stomatitis, 461
Tuberculosis, 462
Leucoplakia Buccalis, 463
Actinomycosis, 464
Acute Ulcerous Gingivitis, 464
Ludwig's Angina, 466
Gonorrhea, 466
Examination of Urine, 468
Total Solids in Normal Urine, 469
Urine Analysis, 471
Fehling's Solution, 471
General Index, 473

Digitized by Google

PART I

MODERN DENTAL MATERIA MEDICA, PHARMACOLOGY AND THERAPEUTICS

Materia medica is the science that treats of drugs, the study of which includes the source, constituents, physical and chemic properties of the inorganic and organic materials used for drugs.

Pharmacology is the science that treats of the *action* of drugs upon the tissues, organs and functions of the body. It is, therefore, the study of the changes induced in living organisms by the administration of such substances as do not act as foods. Formerly this science was called *Pharmacodynamics*. That part of Pharmacology devoted to the study of Poisons is called *Toxicology*.

Therapeutics is the science that deals with the *application* of drugs or remedies to the treatment of disease.

The treatment of disease based solely on clinical experience, whereby remedies are administered or applied without reference to their physiologic action, is known as *empirical therapeutics*. The application of the essential oils to the canals of teeth containing gangrenous (putrescent) pulps, or the giving of salicylic acid, sodium salicylate or the lithium salts in cases of pyorrhea alveolaris, supposed to be associated with rheumatism or gout, are examples of empirical therapeutics.

The treatment of disease by the employment of drugs which, from a knowledge of their physiologic actions, are expected to counteract certain known pathologic conditions, is recognized as *rational therapeutics*. The application of remedies containing formaldehyd to a gangrenous root-canal, wherein it is expected that the formaldehyd gas will neutralize the gaseous end-products of pulp decomposition, may be given as an illustration of rational therapeutics.

While it is essential that the student should understand at the very outset the definition of the terms *materia medica*, *pharmacology* and *therapeutics*, it is also essential that other general terms used throughout the text should be thoroughly mastered at this time.

A medicine is any substance used in the treatment of disease.

A drug is any substance which may be used as a medicine, or

Digitized by Google

it may be used purely in chemic processes and not directly in the treatment of disease.

A remedy is a broader term and includes, besides material substances, such agents or means employed in therapeutics as heat, cold, light, electricity, massage and suggestion. Remedies, therefore, may be divided as follows:

Prophylactic Remedies.—Those used to prevent disease, as polishing tooth-surfaces to prevent caries, or vaccination to prevent smallpox.

Hygienic Remedies.—Those that assist in the maintenance of health, such as pure air, water, food and bathing.

Imponderable Remedies.—These include heat, cold, light, electricity, massage and suggestion.

Mechanical Remedies.—These involve the use of bandages, splints, instruments, etc.

Pharmacologic Remedies.—These are called also *medicinal remedies* and are the material substances or medicines used in the treatment of disease.

Biologic Remedies.—These are bacteriologic and chemic products obtained from the biologic laboratories, and are known as serums, vaccines and antitoxins.

There are several closely related terms employed in the study of the practical uses of remedies, which often lead to confusion. It is well that the student understand these terms at the very outset. The term **specific** has a double meaning. When used in connection with a remedy it means that the remedy, if used in the proper manner, can generally be depended upon to produce definite results in certain diseases. For example, formocresol is a specific for gangrenous pulp conditions; antitoxin is a specific for diphtheria. There are but few specific remedies. Applied to a disease, the term specific means syphilis, and it is so used by physicians and dentists to indicate that disease which has associated with it the stigma of vice. Therefore, syphilis is generally spoken of as a **specific disease.**

The terms **physiologic action, physiologic effect** and **therapeutic effect** are too frequently used interchangeably, without reference to their true meaning. There is a distinction between the action and the effect of a drug. Many times the action of a drug is obscure, but the effect, if produced, must necessarily be apparent. This is nicely illustrated by the inhalation of ammonia in cases of syncope (fainting). The *action* of the ammonia gas is that of an irritant on

Digitized by Google

the respiratory mucous membrane, while the *physiologic effect* desired in this instance is cardiac and respiratory stimulation. This is brought about reflexly by the local irritation; for ammonia, thus administered, produces a marked increase in both the strength and rapidity of the pulse and the depth and rapidity of the respirations. In the case mentioned above, the *therapeutic effect* would be the return of consciousness, which might not follow without further treatment. It is, therefore, possible to have the physiologic action and effect of a drug without the therapeutic effect.

Resolution is a term which indicates the return of an abnormal to a normal condition, and means structural recovery. **Dissolution** is a term which means death.

The author desires here to emphasize the importance of learning the distinction between these several terms, for they are too often used synonymously, without reference to their true meaning.

A poison is any substance which, when administered or applied, by its inherent physical or chemic properties causes disease or death. That branch of medical science which treats of the action and effects of poisons, their detection, and the treatment of the conditions resulting therefrom, is called *Toxicology*.

Pharmacy is the art of preparing, compounding and dispensing medicines.

The Pharmacopeia is an authoritative work which: (1) Establishes *standards* and *tests* for the identification, quality, purity and strength, and (2) gives *directions* for the preparation, purification and preservation of drugs and medicines. How to prepare, purify and preserve medicines is the work of the pharmacist, but every practicing dentist should be familiar with certain standards and tests for the identity, quality, purity and strength of the medicines employed in daily practice.

The pharmacopeias may be considered the medico-legal authorities for drugs and medicines in their respective countries.

The United States Pharmacopeia (abbreviation, U.S.P.) is prepared by a committee consisting of delegates appointed by authority from regularly incorporated medical and pharmaceutic societies and colleges. This pharmacopeial committee meets at the beginning of each decade, and the code of remedial agents thus established is intended to serve as a standard until superseded by a new revision. The last (ninth, ix) edition of the U.S.P. became the official standard September 1, 1916. This book has been thoroughly revised in accordance therewith. By admitting certain articles to the pages of the U.S.P., it declares them to be of suffi-

Digitized by Google

cient importance as to merit confidence in their use in the practice of medicine. Articles thus recognized are known as "official," which is synonymous with "pharmacopeial." This should not be taken to mean that articles not admitted are valueless, for there are many formulas in common use to-day which are exceedingly valuable, though not official.

National Formulary (abbreviation, N.F.) is a collection of formulas issued by the American Pharmaceutical Association as a supplement to the United States Pharmacopeia.

Food and Drugs Act is a National law, which was passed by Congress on June 30, 1906. This was soon followed by similar legislation in the various States of the Union. These laws make the United States Pharmacopeia and the National Formulary the standards for drugs. The National Act states:

"The term 'drug,' as used in this Act, shall include all medicines and preparations recognized in the United States Pharmacopeia or National Formulary for internal or external use, and any substance or mixture of substances intended to be used for the cure, mitigation, or prevention of disease of either man or other animals." This legislation has been the means from which a great improvement in the quality of medicines has resulted.

On account of the recognition given the National Formulary by the Food and Drugs Act, many formulas heretofore included in the previous Pharmacopeias have been omitted in the ninth edition. These formulas are now found in the National Formulary; and whenever occasion requires, throughout this work, reference will be made to this standard authority, though the official preparations, or a combination of two or more, will largely furnish the basis for the formulas given by the author in that part of the book devoted to practical therapeutics.

A dispensatory is a commentary on the pharmacopeia, including, as do the American Dispensatories, all information pertaining to the pharmacy as well as the action and uses of medicines. Dispensatories are private publications, and should be used only as references, for they are not intended to take the place of the standard and legal authorities—the Pharmacopeia and National Formulary.

SOURCES OF DRUGS AND CONSTITUENTS OF THOSE OF VEGETABLE ORIGIN

Drugs are derived from the three kingdoms of nature—*mineral*, *animal* and *vegetable*. Those which belong to the mineral kingdom

Digitized by Google

are called *inorganic drugs*, and are obtained by chemic processes directly from nature. Many valuable drugs are made by *synthesis*—the artificial formation of the product by chemically combining its constituents. Those so made are known as *synthetic drugs*. *Organic drugs* are those which are taken from the animal and vegetable kingdoms. The element, *carbon*, plays the leading rôle in all organic drugs, and is combined in the compounds of carbon with such elements as *hydrogen*, *oxygen*, *nitrogen*, and others. A great many medicinal products are being produced by biologic processes. They include the various *serums*, *vaccines* and *antitoxins*. A *serum* for therapeutic use is a product obtained from the blood of an immunized animal. A *vaccine* is any substance used for preventive inoculation, and is obtained in various ways—as lymph from a cowpox vesicle; from the patient himself. A vaccine made from a bacterial culture obtained from the patient is known as an *autogenous vaccine*. An *antitoxin* is a counterpoison or antidote elaborated by the body to counteract the toxins of bacteria. Antitoxins are frequently used in the treatment of certain infectious diseases, and also to confer immunity against these diseases.

The constituents of vegetable drugs of value in medicine and dentistry are called *the active principles*, and they include carbohydrates, alkaloids, glucosids, neutral principles, organic acids, volatile oils, resins, gums, fixed oils and fats, camphors and other miscellaneous compounds.

Carbohydrates are largely used as foods, yet many of them, owing to their bland and soothing action, are employed as medicines. These include *starch* and the *sugars*.

Alkaloids are nitrogenous compounds, having the reaction and basic properties of alkalies. They are odorless, have a bitter taste, and generally possess powerful physiologic actions. Alkaloids are almost insoluble in water, but they readily combine with acids to form crystallizable salts which are freely soluble. For example, *cocain* is an alkaloid, and, as such, is not largely used in dental practice; but, when acted upon by hydrochloric acid, cocain hydrochlorid is formed, and this alkaloidal salt is one of our most useful drugs.

Other examples of alkaloids are, *strychnin*, *morphin*, *atropin*, etc. The term *artificial alkaloid* is used to designate secondary alkaloids derived from natural ones, as *apomorphin*, which is obtained by abstracting from morphin a molecule of water.

Glucosids comprise those vegetable principles which may be resolved by boiling with dilute acid or alkalies, or by the action of ferments, into glucose and one or more other products peculiar to the

Digitized by Google

substance tested. *Glycyrrhizin*, obtained from liquorice-root, and *salicin*, from willow-bark, are examples.

Neutral principles are neutral constituents, differing from alkaloids in not being basic in character and from glucosids in not being resolvable into glucose. *Aloin*, from aloes, and *piperin*, from black pepper, are examples.

Organic acids are found in many plants, either free or combined with alkaloids or inorganic bases. Those of most value in dentistry are *acetic*, *benzoic*, *lactic*, *salicylic*, *oxalic*, and *tannic* acids.

Volatile oils, also called *essential oils*, form a large group of organic bodies, from which they are chiefly obtained by distillation. They are highly odorous, oily, sparingly soluble in water, more or less soluble in alcohol and ether, and prone to become resinous on exposure to air. In the past the volatile oils have occupied a prominent place in dental practice. Those to be remembered are the oils of *cassia* (*cinnamon*), *cloves*, *peppermint*, *wintergreen*, *turpentine*, *eucalyptus*, and *cajuput*.

Resins are exudations associated with, and probably derived from, volatile oils. They are insoluble in water, but freely soluble in alcohol. Examples of resins are those of *jalap*, *podophyllum* and *common rosin*. When a resin and volatile oil are both constituents of the same drug, the former is held in solution by the latter, making a *natural oleoresin*.

Gums are dried exudations obtained by incising the limbs and branches of certain plants. Gums, contrary to resins, are insoluble in alcohol, but freely soluble in water. The most important gums are those of *acacia* and *tragacanth*. Ordinary mucilage is a solution of certain gums in water.

Fixed oils and fats are obtained by simple pressure, and are not readily volatilized. Those used chiefly in dentistry are *lard*, *lard oil*, *olive oil*, *castor oil*, and *oil of theobroma* (*cacao butter*).

Camphors are solid and crystallizable bodies, closely associated in plants with *terpenes*, *i.e.*, compounds of carbon and hydrogen in the proportion $C_{10}H_{16}$, and probably derived from them by oxidation. The principal member of the group is official camphor, $C_{10}H_{16}O$. *Stearoptenes*, obtained from various essential oils, as *menthol* and *eucalyptol*, are sometimes called camphors, but should not be so considered.

Miscellaneous compounds are such proximate principles as are not referable to the groups mentioned. They include several compounds of value to dentistry, as *eucalyptol*, *eugenol*, *thymol* and *guaiacol*.

Digitized by Google

PARTS OF PLANTS USED FOR DRUGS

The crude organic drugs which form a large part of the materia medica are chiefly derived from the vegetable kingdom. All the different parts of plants are used. The active principle is often distributed throughout the entire plant, but is generally found more abundantly in one particular part, which is then used. For convenience in study, the *parts of plants used for drugs* can be divided into portions which grow *under* and *above* the ground.

Portions Under Ground.—The *root* (*radix*) proper is that part of the plant-axis which does not bear leaves. Roots are ordinarily subterranean (grow underground) in their habits, and serve the double use of attaching the plant securely to the soil and of enabling it to absorb from the latter the necessary food. The roots of some plants not only perform these functions, but become greatly thickened and serve also for the accumulation of reserve food material and are then called *tubers* (potato, beet and turnip). Roots possess a bark which is sometimes used separately (sassafras). If the underground portion of a root does bear leaves, it is termed *rhizome* (*rhizoma*). This is sometimes called a subterranean stem. When the root-leaves become enlarged and serve as storehouses for food, a *bulb* (*bulbus*) is formed. The onion is an example. The lowest part of the stem of a plant is often thickened, and is then called *corm* (*cormus*).

Portions Above Ground.—When the entire plant, except the root, is employed, it is called *herb* (*herba*). This consists of stems, leaves, and often flowers or fruit.

The *stem* proper is that part of the plant-axis which bears leaves or some modification of them. Its functions are, to form such a support for the leaves as will duly expose them to the influence of light and air, to bear the floral organs and convey to them the necessary nutriment, and to form a means of communication and interchange between the roots, or organs which absorb the crude nutritive material from the soil, and the leaves, or organs which assimilate this food. With small, herby plants the stem is called *stipes;* with larger plants it is transformed into *wood* (*lignum*) and is covered with *bark* (*cortex*). The outer layers of the older bark are always corky, and a secondary bark develops inside of this which is called *liber*.

The *leaves* (*folia*) are stem-appendages, regularly arranged upon the stem, and consist of expansions of its tissues. *Buds* may be considered as rudimentary stems. with rudimentary leaves compactly arranged upon them.

Digitized by Google

The *flower* (*flos*) is a special modification of the leaves. It consists of the *calyx* (usually green parts called *sepals*) and a *corolla*. The latter is made up of showy leaflets (petals) and the inconspicuous, but important, male and female elements called *stamens* and *pistil*, respectively. The stamens bear the fertilizing element in the form of granules, termed *pollen*. The pistil consists of the *ovary*, which develops the *seed* (*semen*), and the *style* and *stigma*, which serve to receive the pollen. After fertilization takes place, the ovary develops into the *fruit* (*fructus*); this may also involve neighboring parts, especially the top of the stem, as in the apple and strawberry. The fruit consists of the outer portion, *pericarp*, and the seeds. The latter contain the embryo and nutriment material, and are protected by a more or less hard shell. Certain organic drugs consist of the coagulated *juices* of the plants and show no structure (opium, etc.).

PHARMACEUTIC PREPARATIONS

Pharmaceutic preparations are those preparations made by pharmacists, the formula and directions being given for their preparation in the United States Pharmacopeia and National Formulary; and nearly one-half of the articles of the U.S.P. and all in the N.F. are *pharmaceutic*.

The pharmaceutic preparations of the U.S.P. may be classified as follows:

I. The solutions.
II. The mixtures.
III. Products by extraction.
IV. Mixtures of solids.
V. Preparations for external use.

These groups are subdivided into a number of classes, each class having a distinct Latin title which officially designates its members, or individual preparations, and by which they are alphabetically arranged in the U.S.P. Besides the Latin and English titles, each class is also known by an English name and various synonyms. In the U.S.P. IX the synonyms and official abbreviations are given. The student will gradually become acquainted with the various classes and names of each by carefully studying the following classification:

I. THE SOLUTIONS

The general class of pharmaceutic preparations called "The Solutions" includes nine subclasses, each classified according to the solvent used:

Digitized by Google

1. Aromatic Waters.—Aquæ Aromaticæ.—Aromatic waters are solutions of *volatile* substances in water. They embrace the popular aqueous solutions of the volatile oils, and in these cases are made by first triturating the oil with some insoluble substance, as talc, precipitated calcium phosphate, or magnesium carbonate, thus dividing the globules of the oil and distributing it over much surface, after which distilled water, recently boiled, is added, when, by filtering, the water abstracts from the mixture all of the oil that it is capable of holding in solution. These aromatic waters were formerly known as "medicated waters" and are popular in dental practice. Unless otherwise directed, they should be made by the following general process:

GENERAL PROCESS, U.S.P. IX

Volatile Oil, *two milliliters*.....(2 mils—30 m.).
Purified Talc, *fifteen grammes*.....(15.0 Gm.—3.9 dr.).
Distilled Water, recently boiled, *one thousand milliliters* (1,000 mils–1 qt.).

Triturate the volatile oil with the purified talc, add the recently boiled distilled water gradually with continued trituration, filter, and pass the filtrate through the filter repeatedly until the Aromatic Water is perfectly clear.

The waters most commonly used are:

Ammonia Water (Aqua Ammoniæ).
Camphor Water (Aqua Comphoræ).
Cinnamon Water (Aqua Cinnamomi).
Distilled Water (Aqua Destillata).
Distilled Water Sterilized (Aqua Destillata Sterilisata).
Hamamelis (witch-hazel) Water (Aqua Hamamelidis).
Peppermint Water (Aqua Menthæ Piperitæ).
Rose Water (Aqua Rosæ).

2. Solutions.—Liquores.—These preparations are solutions of *non-volatile* substances in water. The official solutions contain only inorganic salts.

The most important solutions are:

Antiseptic Solution, Mouth-wash (Liquor Antiseptici, N.F.).
Alkaline Antiseptic Solution, Mouth-wash (Liquor Antiseptici Alkalini, N.F.).
Solution of Calcium Hydroxid, Lime-water (Liquor Calcis).
Compound Solution of Cresol (Liquor Cresolis Compositus).
Compound Solution of Chlorin (Liquor Chlori Compositus).
Solution of Ferric Subsulphate, Monsel's Solution (Liquor Ferri Subsulphatis).
Solution of Formaldehyd, Formalin (Liquor Formaldehydi).
Solution of Hydrogen Dioxid (Liquor Hydrogenii Dioxidi).

Digitized by Google

Solution of Hypophysis, Solution of the Pituitary Body (Liquor Hypophysis).
Compound Solution of Iodin, Lugol's Solution (Liquor Iodi Compositus).
Solution of Magnesium Citrate (Liquor Magnesii Citratis).
Solution of Potassium Hydroxid (Liquor Potassii Hydroxidi).
Solution of Chlorinated Soda, Labarraque's Solution (Liquor Sodæ Chlorinatæ).
Physiologic Solution of Sodium Chlorid, Physiologic Salt Solution (Liquor Sodii Chloridi Physiologicus).
Solution of Sodium Hydroxid (Liquor Sodii Hydroxidi).
Solution of Zinc Chlorid (Liquor Zinci Chloridi).

3. Spirits.—Spiritus.—The spirits are solutions of *volatile* substances in Alcohol. Several of the official spirits are solutions of essential oils, and are frequently called "Aromatic Spirits" or "Essences."

The most important spirits are:

Spirit of Ammonia (Spiritus Ammoniæ) (Nonofficial).
Aromatic Spirit of Ammonia (Spiritus Ammoniæ Aromaticus).
Brandy (Spiritus Vini Gallici) (Nonofficial).
Spirit of Camphor (Spiritus Camphoræ).
Spirit of Cinnamon (Spiritus Cinnamomi).
Compound Spirits of Ether, Hoffmann's Anodyne (Spiritus Ætheris Compositus).
Compound Spirit of Juniper (Spiritus Juniperi Compositus).
Spirit of Myrcia, Bay-rum (Spiritus Myrciæ) (Nonofficial).
Spirit of Nitroglycerin, Spirit of Glonoin (Spiritus Glycerylis Nitratis).
Spirit of Peppermint (Spiritus Menthæ Piperitæ).
Whisky (Spiritus Frumenti) (Nonofficial).

4. Syrups.—Syrupi.—Syrups are nearly *saturated* solutions of *sugar* in *water*, in which medicinal or flavoring agents are dissolved. The most important syrups are:

Simple Syrup (Syrupus) (85 per cent. Sugar).
Syrup of Acacia (Syrupus Acaciæ).
Syrup of Calcium Lactophosphate (Syrupus Calcii Lactophosphatis).
Syrup of Wild Cherry (Syrupus Pruni Virginianæ).
Syrup of Ginger (Syrupus Zingiberis).
Syrup of Hypophosphites (Syrupus Hypophosphitum).
Syrup of Ipecac (Syrupus Ipecacuanhæ).
Syrup of Iron, Quinin and Strychnin Phosphates (Syrupus Ferri, Quininæ et Strychninæ Phosphatum (Nonofficial).
Syrup of Orange (Syrupus Aurantii).
Compound Syrup of Sarsaparilla (Syrupus Sarsaparillæ Compositus).

Digitized by Google

Compound Syrup of Squill, Hive Syrup (Syrupus Scillæ Compositus).
Syrup of Senna (Syrupus Sennæ).
Syrup of Tolu (Syrupus Tolutanus).

5. Honeys.—Mellita.—Honeys are solutions of certain substances in clarified honey. Honey of rose (mel rosæ) is an example.

6. Elixirs.—Elixiria.—Elixirs are solutions containing aromatic substances, sugar, alcohol, and water. They are used largely to mask the taste of nauseating drugs. There are only two official elixirs:

Aromatic Elixir, Simple Elixir (Elixir Aromaticum).
Elixir of Glycyrrhiza, Elixir of Licorice (Elixir Glycyrrhizæ).
Elixir of Iron, Quinin and Strychnin Phosphates (Elixir Ferri, Quininæ et Strychninæ Phosphatum) (Nonofficial).

7. Glycerites.—Glycerita.—Glycerites are solutions of *medicinal substances* in glycerin. The most important glycerites are:

Glycerite of Boroglycerin (Glyceritum Boroglycerini).
Glycerite of Iron, Quinin and Strychnin Phosphates (Glyceritum Ferri, Quininæ et Strychninæ Phosphatum) (Nonofficial).
Glycerite of Phenol, Glycerite of Carbolic Acid (Glyceritum Phenolis).
Glycerite of Starch (Glyceritum Amyli).
Glycerite of Tannic Acid (Glyceritum Acidi Tannici).

8. Oleates.—Oleata.—Oleates are solutions of *metallic oxids* or *alkaloids* in oleic acid. The useful oleates are:

Oleate of Cocain (Oleatum Cocainæ) (Nonofficial).
Oleate of Mercury (Oleatum Hydrargyri).

9. Collodions.—Collodia.—Collodions are solutions of *medicinal substances* in collodion, *i.e.*, gun-cotton (pyroxylin) dissolved in ether and alcohol. These preparations are used externally, and chiefly as protectants. The important collodions are:

Collodion (Collodium).
Cantharidal Collodion, Blistering Collodion (Collodium Cantharidatum).
Flexile Collodion (Collodium Flexile).
Styptic Collodion (20 per cent. Tannic Acid) (Collodium Stypticum) (Nonofficial).

II. THE MIXTURES

This general class of pharmaceutic preparations includes such liquid preparations as are not clear solutions, or solutions that cannot be classified according to the solvent used. There are three subclasses:

Digitized by Google

1. Mixtures.—Misturæ.—Mixtures are liquid preparations usually holding in suspension in water some insoluble substance. Mixtures should be well shaken before being administered. Examples of official mixtures are:

Chalk Mixture (Mistura Cretæ).
Compound Mixture of Glycyrrhiza, Brown Mixture (Mistura Glycyrrhizæ Composita).

2. Emulsions.—Emulsa.—Emulsions are liquid preparations consisting of oily, fatty, resinous, or otherwise *insoluble* substances, suspended in water by the aid of some gum or mucilage called the *emulsifying agent*, as acacia or tragacanth. Milk and the yolk of egg are natural emulsions. The important official emulsions are:

Emulsion of Cod-liver Oil (Emulsum Olei Morrhuæ).
Emulsion of Oil of Turpentine (Emulsum Olei Terebinthinæ).

3. Liniments.—Linimenta.—These are liquid preparations for external use, consisting of solutions of *oily* or *resinous* constituents in alcohol or oils, or mixtures of liquid soaps. With the exception of belladonna liniment and lime liniment, which are used as sedative applications, all the official liniments are of a stimulating character, and should be applied with friction or massage. The useful official liniments are:

Belladonna Liniment (Linimentum Belladonnæ).
Lime Liniment, Carron Oil (Linimentum Calcis).
Camphor Liniment (Linimentum Camphoræ).
Liniment of Soft Soap, Tincture of Green Soap (Linimentum Saponis Mollis).

III. PRODUCTS BY EXTRACTION[1]

The medicinal constituents, called *active principles*, of crude drugs are obtained by extraction. The liquid used is termed the *menstruum*, and may be water or alcohol or both in varying proportions, with sometimes the addition of glycerin. This general class is represented by nine subclasses.

1. Mucilages.—Mucilagines.—These are solutions of gums or other mucilaginous constituents of vegetable drugs extracted with an aqueous menstruum. They are used as emollients, as emulsify-

[1] The U.S.P. formerly recognized a class of preparations known as "Wines" under "Products by Extraction." This class has been dropped in the U.S.P. IX. It is there stated that wine as a menstruum or solvent can with advantage be replaced by alcohol of various strengths, and the uncertainties due to the variability in quality and alcoholic content of the wines of commerce are avoided. Wines, therefore, will not be discussed here.

Digitized by Google

ing agents for suspending insoluble substances in liquids, and as excipients for pills.

The important mucilages are:

Mucilage of Acacia (Mucilago Acaciæ).
Mucilage of Sassafras Pith (Mucilago Sassafras Medullæ) (Nonofficial).
Mucilage of Tragacanth (Mucilago Tragacanthæ).
Mucilage of Elm (Mucilago Ulmi) (Nonofficial).

2. Infusions.—Infusa.—Infusions are liquid preparations made by pouring boiling water on vegetable drugs in a suitable vessel provided with a cover, allowing it to stand for half an hour, and then straining. Tea, if properly made, is an infusion. There are two official infusions:

Infusion of Digitalis (Infusum Digitalis).
Compound Infusion of Senna, Black Draught (Infusum Sennæ Compositum).

3. Decoctions.—Decocta.—Decoctions are liquid preparations made by pouring boiling water on vegetable drugs in a suitable vessel provided with a cover, allowing it to boil for fifteen minutes, and then, when sufficiently cooled, strain. Coffee, as usually made, is a decoction. There are no official decoctions.

4. Vinegars.—Aceta.—Vinegars are liquid preparations made by treating vegetable drugs with dilute acetic acid. They are not much used in dentistry. Only one is official:

Vinegar of Squills (Acetum Scillæ).

5. Tinctures.—Tinctura.—These are alcoholic or hydroalcoholic solutions of the soluble constituents of crude drugs or of non-volatile substances (except iodin). Tinctures are the simplest form of alcoholic products by extraction, and as a class have no uniform strength. Tinctures of potent drugs are made of the strength of *ten grammes* of drug in *one hundred mils* of tincture. The other tinctures vary in the proportion of drug in the finished product. Where it has been found possible and desirable to standardize the tinctures, an assay is required by the U.S.P. This is true of *tincture of opium*, *tincture of deodorized opium*, and *tincture of nux vomica*. From a tincture all the other preparations may be *progressively* produced through concentration by evaporating the menstruum, as follows:

Fluid extract representing a uniform drug-strength, viz.: 1 troy ounce in 1 fluidounce (1 gram in 1 mil).

Extract, or "solid extract," a semi-solid mass of pilular consistence

Digitized by Google

of no uniform drug-strength, or assayed and powdered with diluent, to represent a certain alkaloidal strength (opium and nux vomica).

Abstract, or "powdered extract," by incorporating sugar of milk with the extract to represent one-half the weight, or twice the strength of the drug.

Resins, separation of the resinous constituents, by precipitation in water of a concentrated alcoholic tincture.

Tinctures are applied locally or administered internally by dentists more than any other subclass of pharmaceutic preparations. The following tinctures are among the most important:

Tincture of Aconite (Tinctura Aconiti).
Tincture of Belladonna Leaves (Tinctura Belladonnæ Foliorum).
Tinctura Benzoin (Tinctura Benzoini).
Compound Tincture of Benzoin (Tinctura Benzoini Composita).
Tincture of Cannabis (Tinctura Cannabis).
Tincture of Cantharides (Tinctura Cantharidis).
Tincture of Capsicum (Tinctura Capsici).
Tincture of Calendula (Tinctura Calendulæ) (Nonofficial).
Tincture of Cinchona (Tinctura Cinchonæ).
Compound Tincture of Cinchona, Huxham's Tincture (Tinctura Cinchonæ Composita).
Tincture of Cinnamon (Tinctura Cinnamomi).
Tincture of Digitalis (Tinctura Digitalis).
Tincture of Ferric Chlorid (Tinctura Ferri Chloridi).
Tincture of Gelsemium (Tinctura Gelsemii).
Compound Tincture of Gentian (Tinctura Gentianæ Composita).
Tincture of Hyoscyamus (Tinctura Hyoscyami).
Tincture of Hydrastis, Tincture of Golden Seal (Tinctura Hydrastis).
Tincture of Iodin (Tinctura Iodi).
Tincture of Kino (Tinctura Kino).
Tincture of Myrrh (Tinctura Myrrhæ).
Tincture of Nux Vomica (Tinctura Nucis Vomicæ).
Tincture of Opium, Laudanum (Tinctura Opii).
Camphorated Tincture of Opium, Paregoric (Tinctura Opii Camphorata).
Tincture of Deodorized Opium (Tinctura Opii Deodorati).
Tincture of Rhubarb (Tinctura Rhei).
Ammoniated Tincture of Valerian (Tinctura Valerianæ Ammoniata).

6. Fluid Extracts.—Fluidextracta.—These are concentrated tinctures of such strength as to closely represent the drug *volume for*

Digitized by Google

weight, i.e., one fluidounce must represent the active principles of one troy ounce of the air-dried and powdered drug of standard quality (1 mil = 1 gram).

The preparations in this class are prescribed largely by physicians, for they possess the advantage of having a uniform strength. They are not employed by dentists, however, as much as are the tinctures. The most important fluid extracts are:

Fluid Extract of Aconite (Fluidextractum Aconiti).
Aromatic Fluid Extract (Fluidextractum Aromaticum).
Fluid Extract of Belladonna Root (Fluidextractum Belladonnæ Radicis).
Fluid Extract of Cannabis (Fluidextractum Cannabis).
Aromatic Fluid Extract of Cascara Sagrada (Fluidextractum Cascaræ Sagradæ Aromaticum).
Fluid Extract of Cinchona (Fluidextractum Cinchonæ).
Fluid Extract of Digitalis (Fluidextractum Digitalis).
Fluid Extract of Ergot (Fluidextractum Ergotæ).
Fluid Extract of Eucalyptus (Fluidextractum Eucalypti).
Fluid Extract of Gelsemium (Fluidextractum Gelsemii).
Fluid Extract of Gentian (Fluidextractum Gentianæ).
Fluid Extract of Hydrastis (Fluidextractum Hydrastis).
Fluid Extract of Hyoscyamus (Fluidextractum Hyoscyami).
Fluid Extract of Ipecac (Fluidextractum Ipecacuanhæ).
Fluid Extract of Nux Vomica (Fluidextractum Nucis Vomicæ).
Fluid Extract of Senna (Fluidextractum Sennæ).

7. Extracts.—Extracta.—These are *soluble active principles* of vegetable drugs concentrated by evaporation to a soft solid. They are called "solid" or "pilular" extracts to distinguish them from fluid extracts. They preserve the useful constituents of the drug in a concentrated, relatively uniform and permanent condition, and in a form suitable for medication. When employed, they are usually dispensed in pills or capsules. The *extract of opium* and *extract of nux vomica* are required to be assayed, as are other extracts of potent drugs where it has been found possible and desirable to standardize them. The important extracts are:

Extract of Aloes (Extractum Aloes).
Extract of Cinchona (Extractum Cinchonæ).
Extract of Ergot (Extractum Ergotæ).
Extract of Hyoscyamus (Extractum Hyoscyami).
Extract of Nux Vomica (Extractum Nucis Vomicæ).
Extract of Opium (Extractum Opii).

Abstracts.—Abstracta.—These are a class of powdered extracts, formerly recognized by the U.S.P. (1880), prepared from the ex-

Digitized by Google

tracts by the addition of sufficient sugar of milk to make the product represent one-half *its weight* of the crude drug. The abstracts have a uniform relation to the drug in that *one grain represents two grains of the drug*, just as the fluid extracts have the uniform relation of representing the drug *volume* for *weight*. There are no official abstracts. An ideal abstract can be made from tincture of valerian, as the volatile oil in valerian does not permit of the evaporation necessary for an extract. Abstract of valerian is one of the most practical preparations of the drug.

8. Oleoresins.—Oleoresinæ.—There are *natural* and *pharmaceutic* oleoresins. The natural oleoresins have been elsewhere considered. The pharmaceutic oleoresins are semi-liquid extracts, obtained by exhausting oleoresinous drugs with ether. The ether extracts *fixed* and *volatile oils* from drugs, as well as *resins*. Oleoresins are not used in dentistry to any extent, but have been briefly considered here in order to make our classification complete. An example of an official oleoresin is:

Oleoresin of Capsicum (Oleoresina Capsici).

9. Resins.—Resinæ.—Resins have previously been considered under the constituents of drugs. The official resins may be divided into the (1) natural resins, (2) resins obtained from oleoresins by separating the volatile oil by distillation, and (3) pharmaceutic resins, prepared by *precipitation*. An example of an official resin is:

Resin of Podophyllum, May Apple (Resina Podophylli).

IV. MIXTURES OF SOLIDS

The general class called *mixtures* of *solids* includes several subclasses of pharmaceutic preparations for internal use:

1. Powders.—Pulveres.—These are impalpable mixtures of one or more active drugs, usually with some nearly inert substance, as sugar and aromatics. The nearly inert substance used to give bulk to official powders is called the *diluent*. The important powders are:

Compound Acetanilid Powder (Pulvis Acetanilidi Compositus) (Nonofficial).
Compound Chalk Powder (Pulvis Cretæ Compositus).
Compound Effervescing Powder, Seidlitz Powder (Pulvis Effervescens Compositus).
Powder of Ipecac and Opium, Dover's Powder (Pulvis Ipecacuanhæ et Opii).
Compound Powder of Morphin, Tully's Powder (Pulvis Morphinæ Compositus).

Digitized by Google

2. Effervescent Salts.—Sales Effervescentes.—These are granulated mixtures of salts with sugar, sodium bicarbonate and organic acids (tartaric and citric), which effervesce when the mixture is added to water and furnish agreeable aerated draughts. They were new additions to the U.S. P. VIII, but as a class are dropped in the U.S.P. IX. They are highly useful in dentistry, and the following examples are here given:

Effervescent Caffein Citrate (Caffeina Citrata Effervescens).
Effervescent Lithium Citrate (Lithii Citrata Effervescens).
Effervescent Magnesium Sulphate (Magnesii Sulphas Effervescens).
Effervescent Potassium Citrate (Potassii Citrata Effervescens).
Effervescent Sodium Phosphate (Sodii Phosphas Effervescens).

3. Confections.—Confectiones.—These are *flavored masses* wherein the adhesive substance is sugar and water, or honey, serving as a *vehicle* to mask the taste of the drug. None are official in the U.S.P. IX. Examples are:

Confection of Rose (Confectio Rosæ).
Confection of Senna (Confectio Sennæ).

4. Troches or Lozenges.—Trochisci.—These are confections made in various forms and dried. Most of the troches are intended to influence the mucous membrane of the mouth and throat, and are useful preparations. The most important are:

Troches of Tannic Acid (Trochisci Acidi Tannici).
Troches of Ammonium Chlorid (Trochisci Ammonii Chloridi).
Troches of Potassium Chlorate (Trochisci Potassii Chloratis).
Troches of Sodium Bicarbonate (Trochisci Sodii Bicarbonatis).

5. Masses.—Massæ.—These are plastic mixtures preserved in bulk and intended for forming into pills. There are two official:

Mass of Ferrous Carbonate, Vallet's Mass (Massa Ferri Carbonatis).
Mass of Mercury, Blue Mass (Massa Hydrargyri).

6. Pills.—Pilulæ.—These are spherical, more or less soluble masses of medicinal substances rendered *cohesive*, *plastic*, and *firm* in consistence by the addition of some substance (usually inert), called *excipient*. The *kind* of excipient used varies with the nature of the medicinal substance. The various excipients employed are water, alcohol, glycerin, syrups, glucose, glycerite of starch, mucilage of tragacanth, etc.

Digitized by Google

The following pills are important:

Pills of Aloes (Pilulæ Aloes).
Compound Cathartic Pills (Pilulæ Catharticæ Compositæ).
Pills of Ferrous Carbonate, Blaud's Pills (Pilulæ Ferri Carbonatis).
Pills of Phosphorus (Pilulæ Phosphori).

7. Tablets.—Tabellæ.—These are small disks containing medicinal substances mixed with sugar and mucilage. They are a convenient form in which to administer potent remedies, such as the alkaloids, calomel, etc. Blank tablets, *i.e.*, those containing no medicinal substance, can be obtained and serve as a pleasant means of administering concentrated liquid preparations, such as the fluid extracts, by dropping from two to five minims of the preparation on the tablet. The U.S.P. IX recognized only one tablet; *and this is not for internal use.* It is here given:

Poison Tablets of Corrosive Mercuric Chlorid,
Corrosive Sublimate Tablets, Bichlorid Tablets
(Toxitabellæ Hydrargyri Chloridi Corrosivi).

These tablets are of an angular shape (not discoid), each having the word "POISON" and the skull and cross bones design distinctly stamped upon it. The tablets are to be colored blue, and each must contain a specified amount of corrosive mercuric chlorid.

V. PREPARATIONS FOR EXTERNAL USE

This class of pharmaceutic preparations includes such products as are used for external medication. Liniments, oleates, and collodions are employed externally, but being *true solutions* are classified as such. The classification of the groups here considered is based upon the *fusibility*, or melting-point, of the preparations, which is governed by the respective *vehicles* employed.

1. Ointments.—Unguenta.—These are mixtures wherein medicinal substances are incorporated in a fatty vehicle. The *vehicles* used are: Benzolated lard, lard and wax or spermaceti in varying proportions, lard oil, olive oil and suet. Petrolatum and lanolin (wool-fat) are largely used in nonofficial ointments. The following are important official ointments:

Ointment of Boric Acid (Unguentum Acidi Borici).
Ointment of Tannic Acid (Unguentum Acidi Tannici).
Ointment of Rose Water, Cold Cream (Unguentum Aquæ Rosæ).

Digitized by Google

Mercurial Ointment (Unguentum Hydrargyri).
Diluted Mercurial Ointment, Blue Ointment (Unguentum Hydrargyri Dilutum).
Iodin Ointment (Unguentum Iodi).
Iodoform Ointment (Unguentum Iodoformi).
Ointment of Phenol, Ointment of Carbolic Acid (Unguentum Phenolis).
Ointment of Zinc Oxid (Unguentum Zinci Oxidi).

Nonofficial ointments in use are:

Ointment of Arsenic Trioxid, Devitalizing Paste (Unguentum Arseni Trioxidi).
Ointment of Camphor (Unguentum Camphoræ, N.F.).
Ointment of Europhen and Orthoform, Euroform Paste (Unguentum Europheni et Orthoformi).
Ointment of Paraformaldehyd and Neothesin, Desensitizing Paste (Unguentum Paraformaldehydi et Neothesini).

2. Cerates.—Cereata.—These are mixtures of medicated fats similar to ointments, but of firmer consistence because they contain wax, resin, or paraffin, which raises the melting-point. The important official cereates are:

Simple Cereate (Cereatum).
Cantharides Cereate, Blistering Cereate (Cereatum Cantharidis).

Important nonofficial cereates are:

Compound Cereate of Camphor, Camphor Ice (Cereatum Camphoræ Compositum, N.F.).
Cereate of Bismuth Subnitrate, Beck's Cereate (Cereatum Bismuthi Subnitras).

3. Suppositories.—Suppositoria.—These are variously shaped masses of medicated fats, intended to be inserted into the orifices of the body, as the rectum, vagina, urethra, or nostril. The usual vehicle is oil of theobroma (cacao butter). Suppositories are expected to melt at body temperature. The only official one is:

Suppositories of Glycerin (Suppositoria Glycerini).

4. Plasters.—Emplastra.—Mixtures of solids having a fatty or resinous vehicle, and of such high melting-point as to be friable when cold, but rendered *adhesive* by the warmth of the body.

The *vehicles* of plasters are: Lead plaster; resinous substances, made adhesive by admixture with the medicinal ingredients, and simple plasters, such as isinglass. Important official plasters are:

Belladonna Plaster (Emplastrum Belladonnæ).
Capsicum Plaster (Emplastrum Capsici).

Digitized by Google

Rubber Plaster, Rubber Adhesive Plaster (Emplastrum Elasticum).
Mustard Plaster, Mustard Paper (Emplastrum Sinapis).

A nonofficial plaster is:

Isinglass Plaster, Court Plaster (Emplastrum Ichthyocollæ).

5. Papers.—Chartæ.—These are strips of unsized, white paper saturated or coated with some medicinal substance. They are intended to be moistened and applied as a plaster, or else to be burned and the fumes inhaled. The only one official in the U.S.P. VIII was Mustard Paper (Charta Sinapis). This is now recognized as a plaster proper, as mentioned above.

6. Poultices.—Cataplasmata.—These are semi-liquid preparations made by mixing such coarsely ground substances as flaxseed, elm-bark, or bread, with hot water or milk. They are spread upon cloth or poured into porous bags, and used for applying heat and moisture to the tissues, or for securing a local stimulant effect. Charcoal is sometimes added as an absorbent and mustard as a stimulant. There are none official. The U.S.P. VIII recognized the following:

Cataplasm of Kaolin (Cataplasma Kaolini).

7. Fomentations.—Fomenti.—These are porous woolen cloths saturated with hot infusion or decoction of herbs, or other hot liquids or lotions (saturated solution of boric acid), and applied hot. They are useful preparations, but none official.

8. Absorbent Cotton.—Gossypium Purificatum.—The hairs of the seed of cotton, freed from oil and resinous substances by treatment with alkalies and bleaching agents. These hairs represent microscopic ducts through which liquids are absorbed by capillary attraction. The absorbability of cotton, then, depends upon its purity, or the freedom from oily and resinous substances. This is equally true of all other material used for bandages.

MISCELLANEOUS LIST OF NONOFFICIAL BANDAGES, SPLINTS, MEDICATED AND ANTISEPTIC DRESSINGS, AND MEDICATED GAUZES

Bandages.—These are mechanical supports, serving also to keep wounds clean by absorbing and withdrawing such secretions as would otherwise prove irritating, and by protecting the wound from extraneous matter, thus promoting the process of healing.

Digitized by Google

Plaster-of-Paris Bandages.—These are made by thoroughly incorporating a good quality of plaster-of-Paris (calcium sulphate) into linen bandages. After the bandage is adjusted, water is applied, when it sets in a few minutes.

Splints.—These are mechanical supports made from wood, metals (gold, platinum, lead, German silver, etc.), and vulcanite rubber. They serve the purpose of holding in proper position or alignment fractured bones and loosened teeth. The metallic splints are especially useful in orthodontia, pyorrheal treatment and the reduction of fractures of the mandible.

Medicated and Antiseptic Dressings.—These are made by saturating such materials as cotton, silk, wool, or asbestos fiber in a certain strength solution of the medicinal agent, or by incorporating the latter in powdered form. The fabric, which conveys the agent, simply serves as a vehicle for the medicinal or antiseptic drug. This means is largely employed in the application of medicines to the canals of teeth.

Medicated Gauzes.—The material used in making medicated gauzes is pure muslin gauze, which is thoroughly saturated with a certain strength solution of the medicinal substance desired, then forcibly expressed, after which it is ready for use. Medicated gauzes should be kept in tightly covered boxes or jars in a cool, dry place. They are largely used for packing and medicating wounds. The following gauzes are in common use:

Borated Gauze.	Iodoform Gauze.
Phenolized Gauze.	Euroform Gauze.

METHODS OF ADMINISTERING OR APPLYING DRUGS

The physiologic and therapeutic effect of remedies is often largely determined by the methods in which they are administered or applied; and it is a well-established principle that the nearer the remedy is applied to the site of the disease the more effectual and safer is its use. Recognizing this principle, remedies should be applied locally as far as possible. There are many pathologic conditions, however, confronting the dentist which cannot be reached and acted upon favorably by the local application of medicines. It is, therefore, the plain duty of every practitioner of dentistry to so familiarize himself with drugs and their internal administration that he will be able to treat successfully any case which arises in his practice.

By the Mouth.—This is the original and most common method employed for the administration of the great majority of medicines.

Digitized by Google

Drugs are given by the mouth for their local action on the mucous membrane and deeper seated tissues of the mouth, throat, stomach, or intestines, or for the purpose of being absorbed. The absorption of drugs may take place from any part of the alimentary canal. Some powerful remedies are readily absorbed from the tongue. A dose of spirit of nitroglycerin, placed under the tongue, will produce its physiologic effect in from three to five minutes. Remedies intended to influence the mouth or throat are often given in the form of a troche or lozenge. When absorption of the remedy from the stomach is desired, it should be administered in solution or in such condition as to be acted upon by the gastric secretions and made soluble. The reaction of the gastric juice is acid, while the intestinal juices are alkaline. Any substance, therefore, soluble in either an acid or alkaline medium, is acted upon favorably by the secretions of the stomach or intestines. Such remedies as calomel, salol, and salophen, requiring an alkaline liquid for their solution, pass through the stomach practically unchanged, and are digested and absorbed almost entirely in the intestines. The general rule for administering remedies intended to be absorbed in the stomach is to give them on an empty stomach, that is, half an hour or an hour before meals. This rule should not be followed, however, in the case of remedies having a local irritant action, as potassium bromid or potassium iodid, etc. It is far better to give these remedies well diluted in water, and immediately after meals, so that their local effect is more or less avoided by their admixture with the food.

Hypodermic.—This method consists in injecting solutions of medicinal substances into the submucous and subcutaneous tissues by means of the hypodermic needle and syringe, and is largely employed in dental practice. The method has many advantages, such as the great rapidity with which absorption is effected, for local medication, and the certainty of securing the action of the entire dose. The alkaloidal salts, as cocain hydrochlorid, on account of their small bulk, are especially adapted for hypodermic use. The dose of a drug given hypodermically is generally about one-half that given by the mouth or stomach. There are several conditions wherein the hypodermic method of administering drugs is strongly indicated, viz.:

1. In conditions where the patient is unable to swallow, or where the stomach is unable to receive or retain medicines.

2. In conditions necessitating the immediate action of a drug or remedy, or where absolute certainty of the dose is desired.

Digitized by Google

3. In conditions where local medication is desired for the production of local anesthesia, for the relief of pain, as in neuralgia, or for stimulation of a deep-seated part.

The first two indications mentioned for this method of administering drugs are of interest to dentists in that the method is employed here in cases of emergency, as in collapse. The third indication is of prime importance, as it is employed every day in a busy practice for the purpose of injecting local anesthetics and other drugs for the mitigation of pain.

The factors to be remembered in using this method are:

1. Guard against septic infection.

2. Prevent the injection of air into a vein.

3. Prevent the injection of the medicine into a vein, unless in cases of emergency.

To *guard against septic infection*, it is necessary to have the hands and the field of operation as nearly sterile as they can be made and to have the hypodermic syringe, needle, and the solution absolutely sterile.

To *prevent injecting air into a vein*, it is essential that all of the air should be exhausted from the syringe before the injection is made. When the syringe is filled by drawing the solution into it, hold the point upward, tapping the side of the syringe gently to dislodge any air bubbles, then by pushing the piston until the solution escapes, the air is expelled. There is little danger of injecting air into a vein when the solution is injected into the submucous tissue of the mouth; nevertheless, it is well to avoid injecting air into the tissues, and when this method of drug administration is used other than in the mouth, the danger is correspondingly increased. If air enters a vein it is carried directly to the right side of the heart, where by the action of the tricuspid valve it forms a foam with the blood, resulting in *air-thrombosis*, which might cause death.

Occasionally in an emergency it is desired to *inject the medicine into a vein* that it may be at once carried to the heart; but ordinarily this should be avoided. To unintentionally inject the entire quantity into a vein might result in an overdose. By injecting slowly and holding the finger over the needle-point, one can readily guard against this danger. If the fluid accumulates, which should be easily detected by the finger, nothing need be feared; but if the fluid escapes readily and the accumulation cannot be detected, one may suspect that a vein has been punctured. In this case the needle should be slightly withdrawn and the injection continued.

Digitized by Google

The Hypodermic Syringe.—There are many varieties of hypodermic syringes on the market. It was difficult to thoroughly sterilize the old-style glass barrel and leather-covered piston syringe. During the past few years a great improvement has been made in both the glass barrel and all-metal syringes. The former has the advantage of permitting a view of the fluid or air within the barrel; the latter the advantage, if, indeed, it is an advantage, of being sterilized by boiling. It is no doubt true that the repeated boiling of a hypodermic syringe will soon cause it to leak and unfit it for use. It has also been found the safest and best practice to keep the syringes, needles, etc., when not in use, immersed in about a 70 per cent. solution of alcohol, to which 1 per cent. of thymol and about 5 per cent. of glycerin has been added. This may be done by having a suitable glass jar for the purpose. There are a variety of syringes and needles on the market. The operator should select and keep on hand the kinds which best meet his daily need.

Technic of the Injection.—The method of injecting medicines hypodermically differs somewhat with the site of application; therefore, it will be discussed under different headings:

1. Through the skin into the cellular tissue of the body.

2. Through the mucous membrane into the various submucous tissues, such as the gums, gingivæ and alveolar process.

3. Through the tooth structure into the pulp tissue.

In injecting drugs hypodermically *through the skin* it is essential to guard against the dangers incident to this method of administering medicine. The solution should be sterile to begin with, the syringe and needle may be sterilized as the operator deems best, the hands by washing with green soap and followed with an application of alcohol (60 to 70 per cent.), 1–1,000 solution of mercuric chlorid, or 1–500 solution of sublamin; the site of application may be sterilized in the same manner as the hands. Various solutions containing iodin are also popular for this purpose. The selection of the site for making the injection depends upon the circumstances of the case. It may be made upon any accessible part of the body, usually, however, the arm or lumbar region of the back. After exhausting the air from the syringe, hold it firmly in the right hand, and with the left grasp the skin at the selected site. The needle should now be pushed quickly through the skin at nearly right angles to the surface, and should penetrate quite deeply. The injection should be made slowly, and with the forefinger of the left hand determine whether it is causing distention of tissue or escaping rapidly.

The dentist, as has been intimated, is particularly interested

Digitized by Google

in the technic of injecting drugs hypodermically *through the mucous membrane* and into the various submucous tissues (both soft and hard) for the purpose of producing local anesthesia. In the past there seems to have been an inherent prejudice by many practitioners against the use of local anesthetics in dentistry. The author and many others have advocated their use for years. Cocain was the drug largely used. With the introduction and use of novocain, a synthetic substitute for cocain, and a drug claimed to be far less toxic, this prejudice has gradually disappeared. The insistent demand for "painless dentistry" has made the use of local anesthetics and the hypodermic method of administering the same very popular in dental practice.

It is sufficient at this time for the student to learn that local anesthesia in the mouth is produced in three ways: *Infiltration*, *interosseous* and *conductive* (nerve blocking) *anesthesia*. In the infiltration method the local anesthetic solution is injected in the submucous tissues immediately around the part to be anesthetized, simply permitting the solution to *infiltrate* the tissues. The interosseous method consists of first making a small submucous injection to anesthetize a small area of gum tissue when the latter and cortex of the bone are pierced with a suitable drill; through which opening a few minims of the solution are deposited slowly, permitting it to *diffuse through the spongiosa of the bone*, thus producing complete anesthesia of one or two teeth almost instantly. By conductive anesthesia or nerve blocking is meant the process of injecting local anesthetic solutions submucously into the tissues surrounding the foramen through which the nerve makes its entrance or exit; thus anesthetizing the nerve at this point, when the effect of which is *conducted* to the periphery, blocking the nerve as it were, and causing temporary loss of sensation in the part supplied by this nerve. Before anesthetizing any part or undertaking any surgical operation, the mouth should be rinsed, or, better, sprayed with an antiseptic solution. The solution, syringe, needle, hands of the operator, and field of operation should be sterilized as previously mentioned. We have considered here the principles of local anesthesia only; the detailed technic of making the various injections will be considered later as occasion requires.

The forcing of local anesthetic agents *through the tooth structure and into the pulp* is known as **pressure anesthesia** and is elsewhere considered.

Epidermic or Inunction.—This method consists in applying medicinal substances, dissolved in fatty vehicles, to the unbroken

Digitized by Google

skin when absorption of the remedy is fairly well brought about, especially if friction be used in their application. Ointments are largely employed in this manner.

Intravenous.—This method is used in great emergency where it is desired to inject a stimulating or restorative agent directly into a vein. Physiologic salt solution (6 parts of sodium chlorid in 1,000 parts of sterile water—6 grams in 1,000 mils) is the remedy mostly employed in this manner. The solution is intended to correspond to blood serum in salinity, and is given intravenously in cases of copious hemorrhage, or in collapse.

Cataphoresis.—This method consists in the introduction of drugs in molecular form into tooth structure or living tissue by means of the electric current. The positive-pole applicator is saturated with a concentrated solution of the drug and placed within a cavity in the tooth being treated, or directly over the part to be medicated, the negative pole being placed somewhere on the patient's body,—usually held in the hand by means of a moist sponge. This method, with cocain hydrochlorid as the drug, has been used to obtund sensitive dentin and to anesthetize the dental pulp for the purpose of its painless removal. The method will, therefore, again be considered more in detail.

By the Rectum.—This method is employed for the administration of both medicines and food, whenever, on account of inability to swallow or persistent vomiting, the mouth or stomach route cannot be used. The process of making the rectal injection is known as **Enema.** Absorption through the rectum is not nearly so rapid as through the stomach, hence to accomplish the same result it generally requires twice the dose by the rectum that would be necessary by the mouth, and solution of the drug should be assured before it is administered, unless a local effect is intended. For local medication suppositories are largely employed.

Inhalation.—This method can only be employed for volatile drugs or finely atomized liquids. Volatile drugs are rapidly absorbed from the respiratory tract, and this method is largely used in dental practice for the administration of such drugs as nitrous oxid, chloroform, and ether, when the general analgesic or general anesthetic effect is desired. The stimulating effect of such drugs as ammonia and amyl nitrite is also produced by inhalation. When it is desired to influence directly the mucous membrane of the mouth and respiratory tract, medicated vapors and sprays are often employed.

Digitized by Google

CONDITIONS MODIFYING THE ACTION AND EFFECT OF DRUGS

There are many conditions or circumstances which influence and modify the action and effect of drugs, chief of which are the age of the patient, the sex, race, size, temperament, disease, temperature, habit and idiosyncrasy, the method, time of administration, preparation, and dose of the drug.

Habit.—The tissues of the body can be induced to tolerate many drugs by their continuous administration. This is particularly true of opium and cocain. It is not definitely known just how this condition is brought about, but it is believed to be largely due to a change in the tissues themselves whereby they are rendered less susceptible to the influence of the drug. There is a crying demand to-day for "painless dentistry," and most dental operations can be made practically painless by the judicious use of narcotic drugs, especially the local anesthetics. Therefore, a word of caution here regarding the danger of forming the drug-habit will not be out of place. This habit is far more common than is generally known. It is the duty of every dentist to employ such reasonable measures as will mitigate pain, but he should constantly guard his patient, as well as himself, against the formation of the drug-habit. In order to prevent the miscellaneous and injudicious prescribing of such habit-forming drugs as opium and cocain, Congress in 1915 passed a law, known as the "Harrison Narcotic Act," which requires physicians, dentists, and veterinarians to keep a record of all drugs used which are included in the Act.

Idiosyncrasy.—This is a peculiar susceptibility or insusceptibility of one or more of the tissues of the body to the influence of certain drugs for which no explanation can be found. Less than ¼ of a grain of calomel has been known to induce salivation, causing an inflammation in the pericemental membrane and teeth sore to pressure. With some individuals the smallest dose of quinin will produce a diffuse erythematous rash. Many patients have an idiosyncrasy for cocain, the smallest amount causing all of the toxic symptoms characteristic of the drug. Other patients have what may be called a presupposed idiosyncrasy, for cases are on record where the patient had all the symptoms of cocain-poisoning when only distilled water had been hypodermically injected, the patient, however, thinking cocain had been used.

One form of idiosyncrasy consists in the failure of the individual to react to the ordinary dose of the drug, and this particular form is called **Tolerance.**

Digitized by Google

Cumulative Effect.—This is another phenomenon of drugs caused by their prolonged administration when sudden and oftentimes a severe effect is produced, owing to the accumulation of the drug in the tissues of the body. Cumulative action may occur along with tolerance.

Dosage or Posology.—Under this heading can be discussed most of the conditions which modify the effect of drugs not previously considered, for whatever modifies the effect of drugs must also necessarily influence dosage. In regard to dosage Butler[1] says: "Common sense ought long since to have told us that the doses prescribed in text-books are only based upon experience in certain cases, or upon experimentation made upon animals. From such data, however, the first author who wrote upon the posology of different substances started, and others have simply copied after the first. If any fact went beyond the well-defined limits, it was wont to be explained by the defective quality or method of preparation of the drug, or by an idiosyncrasy so rare that one would not even take the pains to investigate the matter, and see if it were really less rare than had been believed." While there is perhaps a *maximum* and a *minimum* dose for the various drugs, the dose of a remedy should be governed largely by the conditions found at the time the diagnosis is made and the medicine prescribed, taking into consideration the various circumstances which influence the action and effect of drugs. The U.S.P. IX, recognizing this fact, gives only the "average dose" for an adult. Commenting upon this the U.S.P. states: "It is to be distinctly understood that neither this Convention nor the Committee of Revision created by it intends to have these doses regarded as obligatory on the physician or as forbidding him to exceed them whenever in his judgment this seems advisable." Only the *average dose* of drugs and their preparations will be given in this book.

The age of a patient must be taken into account in the internal administration of drugs. Children ought to receive much smaller doses than adults. Young calculates the dose for a child according to the following formula: Divide the age by the age + 12, the fraction obtained is taken as the proportion of the adult dose required. Thus, for a child four years old, the dose would be $(\frac{4}{4+12}=)$ ¼ of the adult dose; for a child twelve years old $(\frac{12}{12+12}=)$ ½ of the adult dose.

In regard to the **sex,** women require somewhat smaller doses than men. During *pregnancy*, purgative drugs, or preparations of ergot

[1] Text-book of Materia Medica, Therapeutics, and Pharmacology, p. 46.

Digitized by Google

used frequently in dental practice in cases of hemorrhage after extraction, have to be used with the greatest care, because purgatives induce congestion of the pelvis, and ergot acts directly upon the muscular walls of the uterus, causing contraction, either of which conditions may lead to abortion. Many drugs also pass from the mother to the child, and this should be remembered, as quantities which are insufficient to poison the former may have serious effects upon the latter. During *lactation*, it should be borne in mind that many active drugs may be excreted in the milk, and may either act on the child or render the milk distasteful to it.

Pathologic conditions very often modify the effects of drugs to a considerable extent, and in a way which pharmacologists at present cannot explain. As an example of this, the antipyretics reduce the temperature in fever, but have no effect on it in health; bromids lessen the convulsions in epilepsy, or during the teeth-erupting period in children, but have much less effect in depressing the brain in normal persons. Strange as it may seem to the student or inexperienced practitioner, the **climate** or **temperature** has a controlling influence on the action and effects of drugs, as well as on pathologic conditions, which fact has been demonstrated by clinical experience.

The method and time of administration also have some influence on the effects of drugs. It has been mentioned elsewhere that the nearer the site of the disease the remedy is applied the more effectual and safer is its use. It is also true that the body is generally more resistant in the morning than in the evening, especially in the case of hypnotic drugs; thus a dose of chloral hydrate, for example, which may have little or no effect in the morning when the brain is clear and active, induces sound sleep when given in the evening, because the brain now is already fatigued and depressed.

CLASSIFICATION OF MEDICINES

In their attempt to keep pace with the advancement of knowledge, writers upon, and teachers of, Materia Medica, Pharmacology, and Therapeutics have devised, from time to time, various systems of classification of drugs and remedial agents. The unsettled state of knowledge regarding normal physiologic processes and of the physiologic action of remedies upon pathologic conditions which they are expected to correct, is sufficient reason, in the author's opinion, for stating that therapeutics is far from being an exact science. At this time, therefore, no really scientific classification of these substances is possible. It is imperative, however, as an

Digitized by Google

aid to the student, that some system of classification be followed, and, inasmuch as the tendency in modern therapeutics is along rational lines, *i.e.*, administering or applying the remedy because of its known pharmacologic action, a system of classification will be followed by which drugs will be divided into local and general remedies, and grouped, so far as possible, according to their physiologic action and therapeutic application. It is important, however, that the student familiarize himself at the beginning of the study of drugs and their uses with the definitions of *remedies* with reference to their action upon the tissues, organs, and functions of the body. Therefore, as an appropriate introduction to that part of this work devoted to *drugs* proper, brief definitions of remedies, alphabetically arranged, are here inserted, together with practical examples of each.

DEFINITIONS OF REMEDIES

Antacids.—These are agents which neutralize acids by reason of their alkaline or basic properties. Examples are:

Sodium Bicarbonate.
Solution of Calcium Hydroxid (Lime-water).
Magnesium Hydroxid (Milk of Magnesia).

Alteratives.—Agents that *alter* or counteract morbid conditions by promoting metabolism or the processes of nutrition. Examples are:

Potassium Iodid.	Arsenic.
Mercury.	Cod-liver Oil.

Analgesics or Anodynes.—These are agents which relieve pain either by direct depression of the centers of perception and sensation in the cerebrum or by impairing the conductivity of the sensory nerve fibers. Examples are:

Opium.	The Bromids.
Butyl-chloral Hydrate.	Aspirin.

Anesthetics.—These are agents which temporarily destroy sensation. They are divided into two classes, *local* and *general*. A local anesthetic abolishes sensation in a part, while a general anesthetic abolishes all sensation and induces unconsciousness. Examples are:

Local anesthetics.	*General anesthetics.*
Cocain Hydrochlorid.	Nitrous Oxid.
Eucain Hydrochlorid.	Chloroform.
Novocain Hydrochlorid.	Ether.
	Ethyl Chlorid spray.

Digitized by Google

Antagonists.—These are agents which directly oppose each other in some or all of their pharmacologic actions. Advantage is taken of drugs which antagonize each other in cases of *poisoning*. Important examples are:

Strychnin and Cocain. Atropin and Morphin.
Caffein and Cocain.

Anthelmintics.—These are agents which destroy (vermicides) or expel (vermifuges) intestinal worms. Examples are:

Pepo (Pumpkin-seed). Oil of Turpentine.
Thymol.

Antipyretics.—These are drugs or remedies which reduce the body temperature when abnormally high. Examples are:

Aconite.
Quinin.
The Coal-tar Products:
Antipyrin. Acetanilid.
Phenacetin.

Antiseptics.—These are agents which inhibit the growth of microorganisms. Examples are:

Oil of Cloves.
Phenol (5 per cent. solution).
Boric Acid.
Alcohol (20 per cent. solution).
Benzoic Acid.
Sodium Borate (Borax).
Glycerin.
Betanaphthol.

Antispasmodics.—These are agents which control spasms and lessen states of general nervousness. Examples are:

Camphor. Compound Spirit of Ether (Hoffmann's Anodyne).
Valerian.

Astringents.—These are agents which contract or condense tissue. Examples are:

Alum.
Tannic Acid.
Bismuth Subnitrate.
Zinc Chlorid.
Zinc Phenolsulphonate.
Zinc Iodid.
Silver Nitrate.
Copper Sulphate.

Bleachers.—These are agents used to restore the color of tooth-structure. Examples are:

Sodium Dioxid.
Hydrogen Dioxid.
Alphozone.
Chlorin.
Sulphurous Acid.

Carminatives.—These are agents which promote the expulsion of gas from the stomach. Examples are:

Digitized by Google

Capsicum.	Pepper.
Mustard.	Cinnamon.
Ginger.	Cardamom.

Cathartics.—These are agents used to produce evacuation of the bowels. Cathartic drugs are classified according to the intensity of their action. Thus, those that are mild in action and produce a nearly normal stool are called *laxatives*. Those more powerful, usually producing more copious stools, are termed *purgatives*. Those which produce a watery evacuation of the bowels are called *hydragogues*. Those which gripe, having a violent action, are called *drastics*. Examples of each class follow:

Laxatives.	*Purgatives.*
Tamarind.	Aloes.
Cascara Sagrada.	Senna.
Manna.	Castor Oil.
Honey.	Calomel.
Figs.	Rhubarb.
Prunes.	Blue Mass.
Hydragogues.	*Drastics.*
Magnesium Sulphate.	Croton Oil.
Sodium Sulphate.	Colocynth.
Potassium and	Gamboge.
Sodium Tartrate (Rochelle Salt).	Jalap.
Sodium Phosphate.	Podophyllum.
Magnesium Citrate.	

Demulcents.—These are substances largely of a mucilaginous nature, which soothe and protect the parts to which they are applied. Examples are:

Acacia.	Marshmallow.
Licorice.	Starch.
Sassafras Pith.	Flaxseed.
Slippery Elm.	White of Egg.

Dentifrices.—These are medicated powders or pastes applied with a suitable brush to cleanse the teeth and gums. Precipitated chalk (calcium carbonate) is the base of all dentifrices. For examples, see Practical Therapeutics, p. 270.

Deodorants.—These are agents which destroy offensive odors. Examples are:

Formaldehyd.	Potassium Permanganate.
Chlorin Gas.	Charcoal.
Hydrogen Dioxid.	Sulphurous Acid.

Diaphoretics or Sudorifics.—These are agents which promote the secretion of sweat. When the action of the remedy is such that

Digitized by Google

the perspiration stands in beads upon the surface, it is called *sudorific*. Examples are:

Pilocarpus (Pilocarpin).	Ammonium Acetate.
Dover's Powder.	Spirit of Nitrous Ether.

Disinfectants or Germicides.—These are agents which destroy microorganisms and their spores. Examples are:

Mercuric Chlorid.	Urotropin.
Formaldehyd.	Hydrogen Dioxid.
Cresol.	Potassium Permanganate.
Phenol.	Silver Compounds.
Thymol.	Betanaphthol.
Heat.	Chlorin Gas.

Diuretics.—These are agents which increase the flow of urine. Examples are:

Potassium Salts.	Spirit of Nitrous Ether (Sweet
Lithium Salts.	Spirit of Niter).
Effervescent Salts.	

Emetics.—These are agents which produce vomiting. Examples are:

Ipecac.	Alum.
Tartar Emetic.	Mustard.
Zinc Sulphate.	Apomorphin.
Copper Sulphate.	Tepid Water, in quantity.

Emollients.—These are substances which protect, soften, and relax the tissues to which they are applied. Examples are:

Hot Fomentations.	Linseed Oil.
Poultices.	Petroleum.
Lard.	Cacao Butter.
Lanolin.	Glycerin.
Olive Oil.	Almond Oil.

Escharotics or Caustics.—These are agents which destroy the tissues upon which they act. Examples are:

Mineral Acids.	Osmic Acid.
Caustic Alkalies.	Zinc Chlorid.
Phenol.	Sodium Ethylate.
Arsenic Trioxid.	Mercuric Chlorid.
Trichloracetic Acid.	Silver Nitrate.

Actual Cautery.

Expectorants.—These are agents which modify the secretion of mucus from the mucous membrane of the air-passages and facilitate its expulsion. Examples are:

Digitized by Google

Ammonium Chlorid.	Squill.
Eucalyptus.	Ipecac.
Potassium Citrate.	

Hypnotics or Somnifacients.—These are agents which produce sleep. Examples are:

Chloral Hydrate.	Pyramidon.
Butyl-chloral Hydrate.	Trional.
Sulphonal.	Paraldehyd.
Opium (and Alkaloids).	The Bromids.

Irritants.—These are agents which, when applied to the skin or mucous membrane of the mouth, cause active hyperemia or inflammation. When they are applied not simply for their local action, but to influence favorably a deep-seated part which is diseased, they are called **counterirritants.** Irritants are largely used for the latter purpose in dental practice. Examples are:

Iodin.	Aconite.
Mustard.	Chloroform.
Capsicum.	Volatile Oils.
Camphor.	Menthol.

Mydriatics.—These are agents which produce dilatation of the pupil of the eye. Examples are:

Atropin.	Homatropin.
Hyoscyamin.	Cocain.
Anesthetics (late in their action).	

Myotics.—These are agents which produce contraction of the pupil of the eye. Examples are:

Physostigma, Eserin.	Anesthetics (early in their action.)
Opium, Morphin.	

Narcotics.—These are agents which produce stupor. Examples are:

Opium (and Alkaloids).	Chloroform.
Alcohol.	Ether.

Restoratives.—These are agents, somewhat similar to alteratives, which promote constructive metamorphosis. Restoratives include:

FOODS, HEMATICS, AND TONICS

Foods are substances which, when introduced into the body, supply material to renew some structure or to maintain some vital process. They differ from medicines in that the latter modify vital processes, but furnish no material to sustain such.

Digitized by Google

Hematics are medicines which increase the hematin in the blood, and enrich the red blood-corpuscles. The compounds of iron are the principal hematics.

Tonics are agents which improve the tone and give strength and energy to the tissues. Among the tonics are:

Iron and Compounds.	Cod-liver Oil.
Phosphorus.	Nux Vomica.
Calcium Phosphate.	Cinchona.
Hypophosphites.	Arsenic.

Sedatives.—These are agents which exert a soothing influence on the system by lessening functional activity and diminishing pain. They have been largely considered in other classes of remedies, as: *General sedatives* include anesthetics and narcotics. *Nervous sedatives* include the bromids, tobacco, etc.

Sialogogues.—These are agents which stimulate the salivary and buccal mucous glands, increasing the secretion and flow of saliva and buccal mucus. Holding the mouth open, as in dental operations, changes the character and flow of the mouth secretions. Examples of drugs producing this effect are:

Pilocarpus (Jaborandi).	Iodin Compounds.
Mercurials.	Tobacco.
Echinacea, Echafolta.	Potassium Chlorate.

Stimulants.—These are agents which increase the activity of an organic function or process. When applied to medicinal agents the term is used in various senses, for different agents stimulate the functional activity of the various organs of the body. As examples we have:

Cardiac.	*Respiratory.*	*Gastric.*	*Restorative.*
Strychnin.	Atropin.	Gentian.	Physiologic Salt Solution.
Digitalis.		Bitter Tonics.	
Caffein.			
Alcohol.			

Styptics and Hemostatics.—These are agents which arrest hemorrhage. When the agent is applied locally it is called a *Styptic;* when administered internally it is called a *Hemostatic.* Examples are:

Styptics.	*Hemostatics.*
Acids.	Ergot.
Alum.	Gallic Acid.
Ferric Subsulphate.	Hamamelis.
Adrenalin Chlorid.	
Cauterization.	

Digitized by Google

DRUGS

As stated elsewhere, an effort will be made to divide drugs into *local* and *general remedies*, and group them, so far as possible, according to their physiologic action and therapeutic application. Those drugs which are largely applied *locally* in dental practice will first be considered.

LOCAL REMEDIES

ANTACIDS

Antacids are agents which neutralize acids by virtue of their alkaline or basic property. All acids, whether mineral or organic, have a destructive action on the tooth-structure. Acids are found in the mouth as a result of the fermentation of carbohydrate foodstuffs, from eructations of the stomach, and from perverted buccal mucous glands. Agents which are capable of neutralizing acids, therefore, have an important rôle to play in the broad field of *oral prophylaxis*. They form the base of nearly all dentifrices and enter as an essential constituent into most of the mouth-washes on the market. The most important antacids are:

Precipitated Calcium Carbonate.	Sodium Borate (Borax).
Lime-water.	Magnesium Oxid.
Sodium Bicarbonate.	Soap.

CALCII CARBONAS PRÆCIPITATUS—U.S.P.

(Precipitated Calcium Carbonate; Precipitated Chalk; $CaCO_3$.)

Formerly there were two official forms of chalk: **Precipitated calcium carbonate** and **prepared chalk.** The former is the only form recognized in the U.S.P. IX and is made by mixing aqueous solutions of calcium chlorid and sodium carbonate, the resulting precipitate of calcium carbonate being purified. The latter is native calcium carbonate, freed from most impurities by elutriation (washing). Precipitated calcium carbonate occurs as a fine, white, micro-crystalline powder, odorless and tasteless, and permanent in the air, nearly insoluble in water; the solubility is increased by the presence of ammonium salts and especially by carbon dioxid. It is insoluble in alcohol. The average dose is 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.).

Therapeutics.—Chalk is an antacid and mild astringent. It is an excellent antacid when the acidity of the fluids of the mouth is due to eructations from the stomach. It may be prescribed as an

Digitized by Google

antidote in general poisoning by any of the *mineral acids* or by *oxalic acid*, care being taken to avoid the rapid evolution of large quantities of gas (CO_2). Because of its antacid properties and its almost absolute insolubility, it enters into the composition of nearly all dentifrices, forming the base of most *tooth-powders* and *pastes*.

LIQUOR CALCIS—U.S.P.

(Solution of Calcium Hydroxid; Lime-water; $Ca(OH)_2$.)

Lime-water is a saturated solution of pure calcium hydroxid in water. The liquid should be clear and colorless, without odor, and having a saline and feebly caustic taste. It should contain not less than 0.14 per cent. of calcium hydroxid. When administered internally the average dose is 4 fl. dr. (15.0 mils). A useful official preparation is Linimentum Calcis (equal volumes of lime-water and linseed oil).

Therapeutics.—In all cases where cows' milk is the chief article of diet, as in the artificial feeding of children, lime-water should be added to the milk to prevent the formation of hard curds in the stomach. In cases of *obstinate vomiting*, as in pregnancy, when the vomiting or eructations are due to a high degree of acidity, it is a useful remedy. In *chronic catarrh* with an excessive secretion of mucus, lime-water diluted with two-thirds cinnamon water, to which a small amount of alcohol is added, can be used as a spray and for rinsing the mouth and brushing the teeth, gums, and tongue with gratifying results. The official liniment, called also Carron Oil, is employed as a soothing application for *burns* and *scalds*.

SODII BICARBONAS—U.S.P.

(Sodium Bicarbonate; $NaHCO_3$.)

Sodium bicarbonate is a white, opaque powder, without odor, and having a cooling and slightly alkaline taste. It is freely soluble in water, 1 part dissolving in 10 parts of water at 25°C.; insoluble in alcohol. The average dose is 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.). An important official preparation is:

> Trochisci Sodii Bicarbonatis (containing about 2½ gr. (0.18 Gm.) each).

Therapeutics.—Sodium bicarbonate is extensively used to neutralize the excess of hydrochloric acid or abnormal acids in the stomach. Given in the form of a troche an hour or two before

Digitized by Google

meals, it allays the burning pain, eructations, and palpitations caused by the *acids of fermentation.*

Sodium bicarbonate is often applied externally as a sedative dressing for *superficial burns.* A 5 to 10 per cent. solution has been used in cases of *thrush* with excellent results. It is an ingredient of the popular Dobell's solution (see p. 271) and used as an antacid or detergent in many mouth-washes. Sodium bicarbonate is added to the water in which instruments are boiled for sterilization to prevent the latter from rusting. Sodium carbonate and borax are also used for this purpose. When acids are employed in root-canals, they should subsequently be neutralized with some ant-acid, and nothing is better than a solution of sodium bicarbonate. The agent not only neutralizes the excess acid, but the effervescence produced removes from the canal all of the "mushy" and disintegrated material; thus leaving it clean and sterile. The powder is used by direct application to lessen the hypersensitiveness of dentin when due to acidity. In the treatment of pyorrhea and oral prophylaxis, the teeth, oftentimes after the scaling and polishing, are extremely responsive to thermal changes, especially where the gums have receded, exposing the cementum. This can be controlled by warm solutions of the drug.

It is stated in many clinical, pharmacologic and physiologic text-books that the alkaline salts of sodium promote a flow of gastric juice. Pawlow, Sippy, Stone, and other internists claim that clinical experience does not confirm this theory. In fact, it has been shown that alkalies exert a distinct inhibitory influence on the gastric glands, separate and distinct from their neutralizing effects on acids already present in the stomach. Sodium bicarbonate 20 parts, heavy magnesium oxid 5 parts, and bismuth subcarbonate 5 parts make an excellent "alkaline powder" to be taken after meals in from one-half to one teaspoonful doses in cases of *hyperacidity of the stomach, gastric* and *duodenal ulcers.* The powder should be taken in a small quantity of water, thoroughly agitated, as the magnesia oxid and bismuth salt do not dissolve in the water.

Incompatibilities.—Sodium bicarbonate is incompatible with acids, metallic salts, and alkaloids.

SODII BORAS—U.S.P.

(Sodium Borate; Sodium Pyroborate; Borax; $Na_2B_4O_7.10H_2O$.)

Borax occurs in colorless, transparent, monoclinic prisms, or white powder; inodorous, and of a sweetish, alkaline taste. It is

Digitized by Google

soluble in about 16 parts of water and 1 part of glycerin, and is insoluble in alcohol. The average dose is 12 gr. (0.75 Gm.). An official preparation for external use containing a small amount of borax is:

Unguentum Aquæ Rosæ (Cold Cream).

Theapeutics.—The alkaline and antiseptic properties of borax make it a useful drug. It is a valuable ingredient in mouth-washes possessing the above qualities, and can be used freely in saturated solution (6½ per cent.) in cases of *stomatitis* and in *thrush.* In the latter disease, which generally occurs in the mouths of infants where it is impracticable to use a mouth-wash to advantage, a saturated solution in glycerin, made by dissolving the drug in hot glycerin, can be employed. This thick, sweet solution should be applied by means of a swab to the mucous membranes of the infant's mouth. A saturated solution in a 10 per cent. formaldehyd solution makes an excellent sterilizing fluid for small instruments. The borax prevents the formaldehyd from attacking the metal. A good collyrium (eye-water) can be made by adding 2 per cent. of borax to a saturated solution of boric acid.

Incompatibilities.—Borax is incompatible with acids, metallic salts, and alkaloids, and glycerin slowly converts it into boric acid.

MAGNESII OXIDUM—U.S.P.

(Magnesium Oxid; Light Magnesia; Calcined Magnesia; MgO.)

Light Magnesia is a white, very bulky, and very fine powder, without odor, and having an earthy-like taste. It is practically insoluble in water, and insoluble in alcohol, but chemically soluble in dilute acids. The average dose is 30 gr. (2.0 Gm.). An important official preparation is:

Ferri Hydroxidum cum Magnesii Oxido (Arsenic Antidote).

Therapeutics.—The preparation of ferric hydrate with magnesia has long been recognized as an efficient antidote in *arsenical poisoning.* Other compounds of magnesia, recognized by the U.S.P., are **Heavy Magnesia** (**Magnesia Oxid**—3½ times as heavy as light magnesia) and **Magnesium Carbonate.** Both have practically the same properties and uses as light magnesia. Magnesium carbonate, however, should be used cautiously when there is much acid in the stomach on account of the unpleasant eructations of gas (CO_2). Magnesium carbonate, being cheap and insoluble, is often substituted for talc or precipitated calcium phosphate in the preparation

Digitized by Google

of the aromatic waters. The suspended precipitate of magnesium hydrate, commercially called milk of magnesia, is a useful antacid. In cases of *erosion of the teeth*, in *pregnancy*, and other conditions wherein the mouth secretions are acid in reaction, it can be used to advantage by coating the exposed tooth-surfaces with it. Its gelatinous consistence causes it to adhere and remain for a considerable length of time, especially if applied on retiring at night when the jaws and buccal tissues are at rest.

In cases of *hyperacidity of the stomach*, due either to an excess of hydrochloric acid or the acids of fermentation, Sippy recommends an average dose (30 gr.–2.0 Gm.) each of heavy magnesia and sodium bicarbonate; this to be taken in a small amount of water soon after each meal. Besides these antacids, the proper diet must be observed and 1 fl. oz. (30.0 mils) each of milk and cream should also be taken after the meal. Magnesia is partly converted by the acids of the stomach into soluble salts that act as laxatives; hence, when internally administered, the antacid properties of magnesia are combined with those of a mild aperient or laxative.

SAPO—U.S.P.

(Soap; White Castile Soap.)

The only official **soap** is white castile soap, made by boiling olive oil with sodium hydroxid. Any fat boiled with sodium or potassium hydroxid will form soap. Hard soap is a sodium soap, soft soap is a potassium soap. White castile soap should be hard, but easily cut when fresh, easily pulverized when dry, and free from rancid odor. It has a rather unpleasant taste and an alkaline reaction, hence it is an antacid, soluble in water and in alcohol.

A useful preparation is:

> Linimentum Saponis Mollis—U.S.P. (Liniment of Soft Soap, Tincture of Green Soap).

Therapeutics.—White castile soap is alkaline in reaction and somewhat antiseptic, possessing detergent properties to a marked degree. The greatest value of soap lies in its power to dissolve fats. Advantage is taken of this fact in bleaching teeth, as will be explained in Practical Therapeutics (p. 407). White castile soap is chiefly used in dental practice as a constituent of dentifrices, both tooth-powders and tooth-pastes. The preparation should not contain more than about 15 per cent.; for, in greater quantities, too much suds is formed in the mouth by its employment. The preparation known as tincture of green soap is a valuable toilet article for dentists' hands.

Digitized by Google

Incompatibilities.—Soap is incompatible with all acids and with earthy and metallic salts. It is precipitated in hard water (containing earthy salts) as an insoluble soap.

ANTISEPTICS, DISINFECTANTS, AND DEODORANTS

The term **antiseptic** has been defined elsewhere as applying to that class of remedies which inhibit or have a restraining influence on the life and activity of microorganisms. The terms **disinfectant** and **germicide** have been previously referred to as applying to that class of remedies which destroy microorganisms and their spores. Some authors have endeavored to distinguish between the two latter terms, using the term germicide in the sense that the agent simply kills the germ, and disinfectant in the sense that the agent not only kills the germ, but also acts upon the noxious products of putrefaction and fermentation. As a matter of fact, this distinction is largely theoretical, for there are few agents which, if used in sufficient strength to kill the germ, will not also act upon and thus destroy or remove the by-products of germ-growth. In this work, therefore, the term disinfectant will be used in preference to the term germicide, and for the reason given. A **deodorant** is an agent which destroys offensive odors, and inasmuch as the odor generally comes from the noxious products of putrefaction, the deodorization results from true disinfection. Therefore, deodorants will be discussed conjointly with antiseptics and disinfectants.

Many agents belong to both the antiseptic and disinfectant classes of remedies, depending upon the strength in which they are employed. In weak solutions they act as antiseptics; in strong solutions, as disinfectants. These two classes of remedies are among the most important classes employed in dental practice, and it is well that the student should understand at the outset the significance of these remedies.

In all surgical work the ideal condition sought is the absence of disease-producing germs (asepsis), rather than to depend upon the chemic destruction of them at the time of operating. With this end in view, the instruments are sterilized by boiling, and the site of operation as well as the operator's hands are disinfected by washing in certain solutions. Strictly speaking, infected animal tissue cannot be sterilized by employing disinfectants. An ideal disinfectant would be an agent which, employed in certain strength solution in a septic process or disease, would kill the disease-producing germ and destroy or remove the poisonous by-products without acting deleteri-

Digitized by Google

ously upon the animal cell. But bacteriologists inform us that the cell-wall of a vegetable cell (bacteria) is less permeable to disinfecting agents than is the cell-wall of the animal cell. Therefore, in our present state of knowledge we should not employ disinfectants in our effort to kill the germ when its habitat is among living animal cells. It becomes necessary, then, to attack these germs in another manner. This can be done by the use of certain antiseptic agents which check the growth and activity of the germs, cripple them, as it were, and which agents also are just sufficiently irritating to the animal cells to produce stimulation. This stimulating or awakening process on the part of the animal cells will cause the latter to attack and destroy the already crippled vegetable cells, thus bringing about nature's method of sterilization.

When the germs which we are endeavoring to destroy are among the contents of a gangrenous root-canal, for example, surrounded by hard tooth-structure and removed from live animal tissue, the problem presents an entirely different aspect. Here true disinfectants can be employed. The fact that a remedy will destroy microorganic life in a certain length of time in a test-tube, or in a gangrenous root-canal, is no criterion that the remedy, as such, can be used for disinfecting the soft tissues of the mouth.

The chief antiseptics are:

Boric Acid.
Borax.
Benzoic Acid.
Salicylic Acid.
Salol.
Salophen.
Sodium Salicylate.
Iodin and Compounds.
Betanaphthol.
Resorcin.
Silver Compounds.
Many Volatile Oils:
  Oil of Cajuput.
  Oil of Cinnamon.
  Oil of Cloves.
  Oil of Eucalyptus.
  Oil of Peppermint.
  Oil of Thyme.
Charcoal.
Calendula.
Arnica.
Myrrh.
Ozone and Oxygen.

The chief disinfectants are:

Mercuric Chlorid (Discussed under Mercury in *Alteratives*).
Phenol.
Cresols.
Creosote.
Formaldehyd.
Urotropin.
Hydrogen Dioxid.
Potassium Permanganate.
Chinosol.
Heat.

Digitized by Google

ACIDUM BORICUM—U.S.P.

(Boric Acid; Boracic Acid; H_3BO_3.)

Boric acid occurs in transparent, colorless, pearly scales or crystals, nearly colorless and of a somewhat bitterish taste, and slightly unctuous to the touch. It is soluble in about 18 parts of water and alcohol, and 4 parts of glycerin at 25°C. When given internally the average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.).

It enters into two official preparations which are valuable in dental practice. They are:

> Glyceritum Boroglycerini, Glycerite of Boroglycerin (contains 31 per cent. of boric acid in glycerin).
> Unguentum Acidi Borici, Ointment of Boric Acid (10 per cent.).
> Liquor Antisepticus, Antiseptic Solution (contains 2 per cent. of boric acid, 0.1 per cent. each of benzoic acid and thymol, 25 per cent. of alcohol, and minute quantities of eucalyptol, oil of peppermint, oil of gaultheria, and oil of thyme, in an aqueous vehicle). N.F.

Physiologic Action.—Boric acid is a nonirritating antiseptic and deodorant. In quantities generally employed by dentists, boric acid produces no appreciable symptoms. It is rapidly absorbed and rapidly eliminated by the saliva, perspiration, feces, and urine—the bulk of it escaping in the urine within twenty-four hours after its administration. It is not a drug to be used indiscriminately, for repeated external applications have led to the same train of symptoms as those observed following the continued internal administration of the drug. The term *borism* has been applied to this condition, and the most important phenomena are digestive disturbances, dryness of the skin and mucous membranes, and a tendency toward certain rashes. The drug has been used as a preservative of milk and foods, and there is a difference of opinion among investigators as to whether or not boric acid has a deleterious action when so used.

Therapeutics.—Boric acid is a constituent of many mouth-washes. It is largely employed in a saturated aqueous solution (5 per cent.) as an antiseptic and stimulating wash. Because of its nonirritating properties it can be applied to the most sensitive tissue. A good collyrium (eye-wash) can be made by adding 10 gr. (0.6 Gm.) of borax to 1 fl. oz. (30.0 mils) of the saturated solution of boric acid. Lotions, ointments, and dusting-powders containing boric acid are used to advantage in many acute inflammatory conditions of the mucous membranes and skin. As a stimulating and antiseptic mouth-wash there are few better than the formerly official liquor antisepticus.

Digitized by Google

Probably the only objection to boric acid as a constituent of mouth-washes is its *slightly acid* reaction and rather sparing solubility in water. Whenever a stronger solution than the saturated is desired, the official glyceritum boroglycerini (glycerite of boroglycerin) can be used. This is *neutral* in reaction and can be employed in full strength or diluted. However, strong solutions should not be used continuously on account of the tendency to produce borism.

Incompatibilities.—In aqueous solution it will decompose carbonates and bicarbonates.

SODII BORAS—U.S.P.

Borax.—This salt has been fully discussed under Antacids (see p. 38). Its antiseptic and alkaline properties give it a prominent place among dental remedies. The physiologic action of borax closely resembles that of boric acid, for which it is often substituted to good advantage, especially in mouth-washes where it is desired to have an alkaline solution, and in tooth-powders and pastes. Boric acid, as well as all other acids, is incompatible with carbonates, and as calcium carbonate (chalk) is the base of nearly all dentifrices, boric acid should not be a constituent. Here the sodium salt, borax, can be employed with the same result without any reaction (incompatibility) between the ingredients of the mixture.

ACIDUM BENZOICUM—U.S.P.

(Benzoic Acid; $HC_7H_5O_2$)

Benzoic acid is an organic acid obtained from benzoin and balsam of Peru, or prepared synthetically. It occurs in white or slightly yellow scales or needle-shaped crystals of an aromatic odor and taste. It is sparingly soluble in water, but with an equal quantity of borax it can be dissolved to the extent of 1 per cent., freely soluble in alcohol and glycerin. The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Benzoic acid has proven to be an antiseptic of considerable power. Long states that a solution of 1 : 400 has been found to destroy developed bacteria. It also acts as a stimulant to mucous membranes. Internally administered it increases, to a variable degree, the nitrogenous output and lessens the quantity of ethereal sulphates and indican in the urine. In large doses benzoic

Digitized by Google

acid and benzoates have an irritant action on the stomach, and in consequence excite nausea and vomiting (Stevens).

Therapeutics.—It is found that a saturated solution of borax (6¼ per cent.) will dissolve 1 per cent. of benzoic acid and still be alkaline. This is doubtless due to a reaction between the substances whereby sodium benzoate is formed, which is freely soluble. In this way it may be employed as a constituent of mouth-washes. It possesses no advantage over the sodium salt, which had better be employed direct. Sodium benzoate is an excellent constituent of dentifrices. In the form of the benzoates it has been recommended in *rheumatism* or the *gouty diathesis*, but is not so efficacious as the salicylates. Balsam of Peru, which contains benzoic acid, is used externally as a parasiticide in *scabies* (itch). The acid is frequently added to ointments to prevent rancidity.

Incompatibility.—Benzoic acid in the presence of moisture will react upon carbonates and bicarbonates. It should not be employed, therefore, as a constituent of dentifrices with calcium carbonate as the base.

ACIDUM SALICYLICUM—U.S.P.

(Salicylic Acid; $HC_7H_5O_3$.)

Salicylic acid is an organic acid obtained from various plants, especially from gaultheria (wintergreen), but it is chiefly prepared synthetically. It occurs as a white crystalline powder, or in fine needle-shaped crystals, or as a bulky crystalline powder, odorless, but possessing a sweetish, afterward acrid taste. It is soluble in about 460 parts of water, 13 parts of alcohol, and 60 parts of glycerin at 25°C. The average dose is 12 gr. (0.75 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Salicylic acid, like many other drugs, acts differently upon different individuals and upon the same individual at different times. In susceptible subjects even small doses give rise to a peculiar feeling of fullness in the head, ringing in the ears, and, at times, interference with the senses of hearing and sight, causing deafness and dimness of vision. It enters the circulatory fluids as an alkaline salicylate, and is eliminated from the body in most of the secretions, but principally in the urine. It is claimed on good authority that it increases the output of urea and uric acid.

Therapeutics.—This drug must be classed with our best antiseptics. Miller has shown that a 1 per cent. solution of salicylic acid will disinfect the mouth, as ordinarily considered, in one-quarter of a minute. It must not be forgotten, however, that the mouth cannot

Digitized by Google

be disinfected in the true sense of the term. Its sparing solubility in water and its *acid* character render it practically useless as a constituent of mouth-washes, unless a salt, like borax, or alcohol be added to the solution. The chief use of salicylic acid and its compounds is in *acute rheumatism*, in which condition they are considered *specific remedies*. In some diseases, as certain kinds of *pyorrhea alveolaris*, which seem to be related to the rheumatic diathesis, salicylic compounds have proven to be efficacious. Dissolved in collodion, a dram (4.0 Gm.) to the ounce (30.0 mils), it has been long used with success in removing *corns* and *warts*.

Incompatibilities.—Salicylic acid will react with carbonates, potassium chlorate, and potassium permanganate.

PHENYLIS SALICYLAS—U.S.P.

(Phenyl Salicylate; Salol; $C_6H_5C_7H_5O_3$.)

Salol is prepared by heating salicylic acid with phenol in the presence of phosphorus pentachlorid. It occurs as a white crystalline powder, of a faintly aromatic odor, and slightly sweetish taste; practically insoluble in water, but soluble in alcohol, and freely so in ether, chloroform, and in fixed and volatile oils. The average dose is 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Salol acts as an antiseptic like either of its constituents, salicylic acid and phenol. It is not a disinfectant, as it will not destroy bacteria, although it prevents their proliferation. It differs from salicylic acid in its action in that it is not irritating to the mucous membrane. Salol resists to a great extent the action of the gastric juice, passing through the stomach practically unchanged, but is gradually broken up in the intestine by the alkaline fluids into salicylic acid (60 parts) and phenol (40 parts).

Therapeutics.—On account of its insolubility in water, salol is not employed, to any extent, as a local antiseptic, except at times in alcoholic solution, as in mouth-washes. We find its chief use as an intestinal antiseptic. Like other salicylic compounds, it is used in the various forms of *rheumatism*. It may be prescribed in powders or capsules in *diarrheas* and other intestinal fermentations. Large doses must be avoided on account of the possible poisoning by phenol, which is liberated.

In cases of *neuralgia* associated with rheumatism, the salicylates combined with some hypnotic drug are especially indicated. A powder composed of 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.) of salol and 4 Gr. (0.27 Gm.) of phenacetin to the dose is a useful combination.

Digitized by Google

ASPIRIN (Nonofficial)

(Acetyl-salicylic Acid; $C_9H_8O_4$.)

Aspirin is the acetyl derivative of salicylic acid. It is prepared by the prolonged heating of 50 parts of salicylic acid and 75 parts of acetic anhydrid at about 150°C. under a reflux condenser, and subsequently purified by recrystallization from chloroform. It occurs in the form of small, colorless, crystalline needles, odorless, and having an acidulous taste; soluble in 100 parts of water, freely soluble in alcohol and ether. Boiling water decomposes the drug into acetic acid and salicylic acid or a salicylate. The average dose is 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.) in capsules or wafers. It should be dispensed in wax paper, free from moisture.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Aspirin passes through the stomach unchanged, the decomposition being in the intestine. Its action is similar to that of salicylic acid, over which it possesses the advantage of producing less of the undesired local and systemic side effects, due to the slow liberation and assimilation of the salicylic acid. The promiscuous use of aspirin by the laity, especially for the relief of headache, has frequently led, even in small doses, to cases of rather severe poisoning; the chief symptoms being edema (swelling) of the lips, tongue, eyelids, nose, or entire face, and occasionally an erythematous rash. Some individuals are especially susceptible to the drug and these symptoms are usually ascribed to an idiosyncrasy. Aspirin is especially useful in cases of *rheumatism* of a neuralgic character.

Incompatibles.—Heat, moisture, alkalies, their carbonates and bicarbonates. It keeps well when properly protected.

SALOPHEN (Nonofficial)

(Acetyl-paramino-phenyl Salicylate; $C_7H_5O_2$.)

Salophen is an unofficial compound of salicylic acid, and is prepared by a chemic process similar to that of preparing salol. It occurs in white scales, tasteless and odorless; insoluble in water, but soluble in alcohol an dether. The average dose is 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.). On account of the liability to poisoning from the phenol which is liberated in the intestine from salol, this compound was introduced. It contains about 50 per cent. of salicylic acid, and is decomposed by the alkaline fluids of the intestine into salicylic acid and a comparatively nonpoisonous compound, acetyl-paramino-phenyl. The action of

Digitized by Google

salophen is similar to that of other salicylic compounds. While it is not as efficacious in *rheumatism* as sodium salicylate, being tasteless and unirritating to the stomach it can be given before meals in the milder manifestations of the disease. In cases of *neuralgia* of rheumatic origin associated with acute pain, salophen may be combined with such drugs as phenacetin and codein sulphate. A powder composed of 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.) each of salophen and phenacetin and ¼ gr. (0.016 Gm.) codein sulphate is a valuable combination.

SODII SALICYLAS—U.S.P.

(Sodium Salicylate; $NaC_7H_5O_3$.)

Sodium salicylate occurs as a white amorphous powder, without odor, but of a sweetish, saline taste. It is freely soluble (0.9 part) in water, in 9 parts in alcohol, and in glycerin at 25°C. The average dose is 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—The action of this salt is the same as that of salicylic acid. It has the advantage, however, of being more soluble and less irritating to the stomach. It is probably the most generally used of all the salicylic compounds, and is especially indicated in the *acute stage of rheumatism.* In cases of *pyorrhea* associated with rheumatism it may be given in 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.) doses after meals, well diluted with water.

Sodium salicylate is discussed here more because of its relation to the previously considered drugs than because of its antiseptic properties. It is not considered a very efficient antiseptic.

VOLATILE OIL GROUP

A true classification of this general group is not practicable. The volatile oils vary so markedly in their physical and chemic make-up that only those which possess antiseptic properties, and are employed in dental practice as such, will be considered here. As a class the volatile oils have enjoyed a wide range of usefulness as antiseptic remedies in the past. They are sparingly soluble in water, but freely soluble in alcohol. Some are useful remedies to be applied to carious cavities in vital teeth, where the pulp is involved, because of their penetrating and slightly analgesic properties. Those which are just sufficiently irritating to stimulate the pulp to healthy activity are the ones especially indicated for this purpose. These will be mentioned later. For years the volatile oils were employed in an effort to disinfect gangrenous root-canals. In this they have proved to be a

Digitized by Google

dismal failure. Here the noxious products of pulp decomposition are surrounded by hard tooth-structure and removed from live animal tissue; therefore, we are justified in using true disinfectants—agents which will kill the germs and destroy their by-products. To use any of the essential oils for this purpose to-day, is but to adhere to the old empirical method of treatment.

OLEUM CAJUPUTI—U.S.P.

(Oil of Cajuput.)

Oil of cajuput is a thin, bluish-green, volatile oil distilled from the *fresh leaves* and *twigs* of *Melaleuca Leucadendron*, a small tree growing in the East Indies. It has a camphoraceous odor and an aromatic, bitter taste. Its chief constituent is *cineol*, of which it should contain not less than 55 per cent. by volume. The average dose is 8 min. (0.5 mil).

Physiologic action and therapeutics resemble those of oil of cloves and oil of eucalyptus.

OLEUM CASSIÆ—U.S.P.

(Oil of Cinnamon, Oil of Cassia.)

Oil of cinnamon is a yellowish or brownish volatile oil distilled from the *bark* of the *shoots* of *Cinnamomum Cassia*, a tree which grows in China. The oil is sometimes commercially called oil of cassia, and the U.S.P. IX recognizes it by this name. A species of cinnamon which grows in the Ceylon Islands produces a volatile oil having a finer flavor, though less employed. It has the characteristic odor of cinnamon and a spicy, burning taste. The chief constituent of oil of cinnamon is *cinnamic aldehyd*, formerly official, and of which it should contain not less than 80 per cent. by volume. The average dose is 3 min. (0.2 mil). There are two official preparations of oil of cinnamon; both are valuable in dental practice.

Aqua Cinnamomi (Cinnamon Water), used as a spray and as a vehicle for mouth-washes.
Spiritus Cinnamomi (Spirit of Cinnamon) used largely as a flavoring agent.

CINNALDEHYDUM (Nonofficial)

(Cinnamic Aldehyd; C_9H_8O.)

Cinnamic aldehyd is a colorless liquid obtained from the oil of cinnamon or prepared synthetically. It has a cinnamon-like odor,

Digitized by Google

and a burning, aromatic taste. Sparingly soluble in water, freely in alcohol, fixed and volatile oils. Pure synthetic cinnamic aldehyd has largely displaced the natural oil of cinnamon and may be used for nearly all purposes for which the latter is employed. The average dose is the same as oil of cinnamon.

Physiologic Action.—Oil of cinnamon and cinnamic aldehyd are active antiseptics. Both are rather irritant to the pulp and pericemental membrane. Cinnamon is an agreeable aromatic stimulant, carminative, and stomachic. It is also claimed to possess feebly astringent properties. It enters into aromatic fluid extracts and also into many of the compound tinctures.

Therapeutics.—Oil of cinnamon has been employed in root-canal treatment, but because of its irritant properties and of its liability to stain the tooth-structure, it should be used cautiously, if at all. It is a constituent of Black's 1–2–3 mixture which contains oil of cassia 1 part, oil of wintergreen 2 parts, and phenol (carbolic acid) 3 parts. The most practical use that can be made of oil of cinnamon in dental practice, however, is as a flavoring agent. The official water may be employed as a vehicle for mouth-washes and sprays. Every dentist should know how to prepare the solution (see p. 9), as it should be freshly made and used freely in prophylactic and phyorrheal treatment.

OLEUM CARYOPHYLLI—U.S.P.

(Oil of Cloves.)

Oil of cloves is a thin, pale yellow, volatile oil distilled from *cloves*, the *dried flower buds* of *Eugenia Aromatica*, a shrubby evergreen, introduced and cultivated in the East Indies. It has a strong aromatic odor of cloves and a pungent, spicy taste. The oil gradually becomes darker and thicker by age and exposure to the air. Its chief constituent is *eugenol*, which is also official, and of which it should contain not less than 82 per cent. by volume. The average dose is 3 min. (0.2 mil).

EUGENOL—U.S.P.

(Eugenol; $C_{10}H_{12}O_2$.)

Eugenol is an aromatic phenol obtained from oil of cloves and other sources. It occurs as a thin, colorless or pale yellow liquid, highly refractive, and possessing a strongly aromatic odor of cloves and a pungent, spicy taste. It is practically insoluble in water, but

Digitized by Google

freely soluble in alcohol. It may be used instead of oil of cloves, of which it is the chief constituent; it is also the chief constituent of oil of pimenta (allspice). The average dose is the same as of oil of cloves.

Physiologic Action.—Oil of cloves is just sufficiently irritant to the animal cell to be classed as an ideal antiseptic. It also possesses marked local analgesic properties. Internally administered, it is a powerful carminative and stimulant.

Therapeutics.—Because of its antiseptic and local analgesic properties, oil of cloves is one of the most valuable volatile oils. It has long been a popular remedy for odontalgia (toothache). Oil of cloves, and its chief constituent, eugenol, are excellent agents to be employed as the liquid for making pastes when pulp-capping is indicated. A paste made of precipitated calcium phosphate or pure zinc oxid, in either of which 2 per cent. of thymol has been incorporated as the powder, and oil of cloves or eugenol as the liquid, is a valuable remedy for capping the pulp, or protecting this organ when it is involved from a deep-seated carious cavity. (See Practical Therapeutics, p. 312.) Applied to a *canker sore* or in cases of *ulcerative stomatitis*, oil of cloves will prove to be one of the best healing agents. It is a counter-irritant, and as such will stimulate morbid processes.

OLEUM EUCALYPTI—U.S.P.

(Oil of Eucalyptus.)

Oil of eucalyptus is a colorless, or faintly yellowish volatile oil distilled from the *fresh leaves* of *Eucalyptus Globulus*, a tree which grows in the swampy regions of Australia and California. It has a characteristic, aromatic, somewhat camphoraceous odor and a pungent, spicy, and cooling taste. The chief constituent is *eucalyptol*, also official, and of which it should contain not less than 70 per cent. by volume. The average dose is 8 min. (0.5 mil).

EUCALYPTOL—U.S.P.

(Eucalyptol; $C_{10}H_{18}O$.)

Eucalyptol is a colorless liquid, obtained from oil of eucalyptus and several other volatile oils, especially oil of cajuput. It is an organic oxid, probably identical with *cineol*, the chief constituent of oil of cajuput. It has a characteristic and distinctly camphoraceous odor and a pungent, spicy, and cooling taste. Almost insoluble in water, freely soluble in alcohol. The average dose is 5 min. (0.3 mil).

Digitized by Google

Physiologic Action.—Locally applied, both oil of eucalyptus and eucalyptol are antiseptics, but have an irritant action. Commercial oil of eucalyptus is so irritating that it should not be employed in root-canal treatment. Many cases of pericementitis have been produced by commercial oil of eucalyptus having been sealed in the canals of teeth. Eucalyptol is also irritant, but not nearly so irritant as commercial oil of eucalyptus. When desired to be used in root-canal treatment, eucalyptol should be employed, or a refined specimen of the oil which is practically all eucalyptol.

Therapeutics.—Both oil of eucalyptus and eucalyptol have been employed in root-canal treatment. Like all of the volatile oils, they are practically worthless as remedies for correcting gangrenous pulp conditions, where they have been largely employed in the past. While eucalyptol is not nearly as irritant as the oil of eucalyptus, it is still too irritant, unless modified, to be sealed in a canal as an antiseptic remedy after the removal of a live pulp. Agents, such as oil of cloves or eugenol, having local analgesic as well as antiseptic properties, are far preferable. Oil of cajuput, containing cineol, a compound identical with eucalyptol, has a solvent action on gutta-percha, as has also eucalyptol, hence these agents find their greatest use in dental practice as remedies for moistening cavities to be temporarily sealed with gutta-percha, or root-canals previous to filling with gutta-percha. The author's formula for a remedy to be used for this purpose, as well as for sealing in the canals of all teeth where a mildly antiseptic dressing is indicated, is: Menthol 2 gr. (0.14 Gm.), thymol 3 gr. (0.2 Gm.), eucalyptol 1 dr. (4.0 mils). This remedy is called *eucalyptol compound* (modified eucalyptol).

Oil of eucalyptus is an excellent remedy in chronic inflammation of mucous membranes, where it can be used as a spray combined with liquid petroleum in the proportion of 30–60 min. to the ounce (2–4 mils to 30.0 mils).

An infusion of eucalyptus leaves (5 per cent.) can be used as a mouth-wash or gargle in *stomatitis*.

As a stimulant expectorant eucalyptus is of great value in *colds* and *chronic bronchial catarrh*. A few drops of the oil of eucalyptus, or eucalyptol, can be dropped into hot water and the steam inhaled.

OLEUM MENTHÆ PIPERITÆ—U.S.P.

(Oil of Peppermint.)

Oil of peppermint is a colorless, or pale green volatile oil, distilled from the *fresh* or *partly dried leaves* and *flowering tops* of *Mentha*

Digitized by Google

piperita, having the characteristic strong odor of the latter plant and a strong, aromatic, pungent taste, followed by a cool sensation upon inhalation. Its chief constituent is *menthol*, also official, and of which it should yield not less than 50 per cent. The average dose is 3 min. (0.2 mil). There are two official preparations of oil of peppermint, both of which are useful in dental practice.

> Aqua Menthæ Piperitæ, Peppermint Water, used as a spray, as a vehicle for mouth-washes and local anesthetic solutions. Spiritus Menthæ Piperitæ, Spirit of Peppermint, is used also as a flavoring agent.

MENTHOL—U.S.P.

(Menthol; $C_{10}H_{20}O$.)

Menthol is a stearoptene, or secondary alcohol, obtained from the oil of peppermint and other mint oils. It occurs in colorless, acicular, or prismatic crystals, having a strong and characteristic odor of peppermint, and a warm, aromatic taste, followed by a sensation of cold when air is inhaled. Sparingly soluble in water, freely in alcohol, ether, and chloroform. When triturated with about equal amounts of phenol, thymol, camphor, or chloral hydrate, it forms a liquid. The dose is 1 gr. (0.06 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Oil of peppermint and menthol are antiseptics, as well as possessing local analgesic properties to a marked degree. Like many other volatile oils of an aromatic character, oil of peppermint is a valuable carminative, stimulant, antifermentative, and antispasmodic.

Therapeutics.—Oil of peppermint, or menthol, is an ingredient of many remedies for obtunding sensitive dentin. A useful formula consists of menthol 20 gr. (1.33 Gm.), chloroform 2 fl. dr. (8.0 mils), and ether 6 fl. dr. (24.0 mils). The official water is an excellent vehicle for local anesthetic solutions, as well as for mouth-washes and sprays. Menthol is a constituent of many dental liniments for *neuralgia* and *pericementitis*. A good liniment for this purpose contains menthol 20 gr. (1.33 Gm.), chloroform 1½ fl. dr. (6.0 mils), and tincture of aconite 6 fl. dr. (24.0 mils).

Oil of peppermint, or menthol, is a constituent of many lotions and sprays for the local treatment of diseases of the *mouth*, *ear*, *nose*, and *throat*. Menthol is used extensively in *headache*, being rubbed on the forehead or inhaled from a metal container. In cases of *itching* of the skin or mucous membrane, menthol is a valuable remedy because of its analgesic properties. For this purpose it

Digitized by Google

should be dissolved in a bland oil, like liquid petroleum, in the proportion of 30 gr. to the ounce (2.0 Gm.–30.0 mils). It is also a constituent of *phenol compound* (see below).

OLEUM THYMI—U.S.P.

(Oil of Thyme.)

Oil of thyme is a thin, colorless or pale yellow, sometimes red, volatile oil, distilled from *Thymus vulgaris*, a common shrub (garden thyme) which is indigenous to France, but cultivated in the gardens of the United States. It has a strong odor of thyme, and a warm, pungent and, afterward, cooling taste. Its chief constituent is ***thymol***, which is official, and of which the oil should contain not less than 20 per cent. by volume, of phenols. The average dose is 3 min. (0.2 mil).

THYMOL—U.S.P.

(Thymol; $C_{10}H_{14}O$.)

Thymol is a phenol obtained from the oil of thyme. It occurs in large, colorless, translucent crystals, having a thyme-like odor and a pungent, aromatic taste, with a slight caustic effect upon the lips and mucous membranes. It is sparingly soluble (about 1,100 parts) in water and in less than its own weight in alcohol, ether, and chloroform, also readily soluble in fixed and volatile oils. When triturated with about equal quantities of phenol, menthol, camphor, or chloral hydrate, it liquefies.

Physiologic Action.—Thymol is a powerful antiseptic. It might almost be classed as a true disinfectant. It resembles phenol in its action, but being slowly absorbed is far less poisonous, yet vastly superior to it as an antiseptic. It possesses a peculiar, but favorable action on animal tissue. It undoubtedly has a preservative action on dead animal tissue. It is a stimulant though not an irritant or corrosive, and also has local analgesic properties.

Therapeutics.—Oil of thyme is not much used in dental practice except as a source from which thymol is obtained. Thymol has not been used to the extent which its importance merits, although it is rapidly gaining favor with modern therapeutists. It is a constituent of many remedies for root-canal treatment after live pulps have been removed. The author's *phenol compound* for this purpose contains menthol, 20 gr. (1.3 Gm.), thymol, 40 gr. (2.6 Gm.), and phenol (U.S.P.) 3 dr. (12.0 mils). In order to make the remedy less irritating, camphor has been substituted for the thymol in the latter

Digitized by Google

formula. Dr. E. C. Kirk suggests using equal parts of thymol and phenol, called *thymophen*. Dr. H. Prinz uses thymol, camphor and phenol, called *thymocamphen*. A solution of a grain (0.06 Gm.) to the ounce of water (30.0 mils), with a little alcohol used as a solvent, makes a good mouth-wash in the infectious forms of *stomatitis* and *pharyngitis* (Stevens). It is a constituent of the formerly official mouth-wash, liquor antisepticus (see p. 43); also the author's Desensitizing Paste (see p. 293).

IODUM—U.S.P.

(Iodin; I.)

Iodin is a nonmetallic element obtained chiefly from the ashes of sea-weeds (kelp). Fine specimens of such sea-weeds may be seen in the "submarine gardens" around Catalina Island, off the shore of Southern California. It occurs in heavy, bluish-black, friable crystals, having a metallic luster, a distinctive odor, and a sharp, acrid taste. On heating, it emits a violet-colored vapor. Iodin is sparingly soluble in water (5,000 parts), quite soluble in a solution of potassium iodid, and freely so in alcohol, ether, and chloroform. The average dose is $\frac{1}{12}$ gr. (0.005 Gm.).

The three official preparations are of value in dental practice. They are:

Liquor Iodi Compositus, U.S.P. Compound Solution of Iodin (Lugol's Solution; 5 per cent. of Iodin in a 10 per cent. solution of Potassium Iodid).
Tinctura Iodi, U.S.P., Tincture of Iodin (7 per cent.).
Unguentum Iodi, U.S.P., Iodin Ointment (4 per cent.).

IODOFORMUM—U.S.P.

(Iodoform; CHI_3.)

Iodoform is methyl tri-iodid, made by heating in a closed vessel iodin, alcohol, sodium hydrate, and water, wherein 3 atoms of hydrogen of the methane radicle (CH_4) are displaced by 3 of iodin. It occurs in small, lemon-yellow, hexagonal crystals, having a peculiar, very penetrating, and persistent odor, and an unpleasant, slightly sweetish, and iodin-like taste. It is very feebly soluble in water, soluble in about 60 parts of alcohol at 25°C. and freely soluble in ether, chloroform, and oils. It contains about 96 per cent. of iodin. The average dose is 4 gr. (0.25 Gm.). The official ointment of iodoform contains 10 per cent.

Digitized by Google

IODOLUM (Nonofficial)

(Iodol; Tetra-iodo-pyrrol; C_4I_4NH.)

Iodol, or tetra-iodo-pyrrol, is a derivative of the base pyrrol (C_4H_5N), obtained by the direct action of iodin upon the base in the presence of alcohol. It occurs as a yellowish, crystalline powder, without odor or taste, and contains about 90 per cent. of iodin. Iodol is practically insoluble in water, but freely soluble in alcohol, ether, and oils. It is used as a substitute for iodoform, and, though more expensive, has the decided advantage of being odorless.

THYMOLIS IODIDUM—U.S.P.

(Thymol Iodid; Di-thymol-di-iodid; Aristol; $C_{20}H_{24}O_2I_2$.)

Thymol iodid or aristol, is obtained by acting upon thymol in aqueous solution of sodium hydrate with iodin dissolved in a solution of potassium iodid. It occurs as a brownish-red powder, tasteless and almost odorless, and contains about 43 per cent. of iodin. It is nearly insoluble in water, but freely soluble in ether, chloroform, and oils. It is used as a substitute for iodoform, but is rather unstable, being decomposed by heat, light, acids, alkalies, alcohol, and corrosive sublimate. It is more expensive than iodoform and less effective.

EUROPHEN (Nonofficial)

(Di-isobutyl-cresol-iodid; $C_{22}H_{29}O_2I$.)

Europhen is obtained in exactly the same manner as that of preparing aristol, except that isobutyl-cresol is substituted for thymol. It occurs as a very bulky, yellow, amorphous powder, of an aromatic odor, and contains 28 per cent. of iodin. It is insoluble in water and glycerin, but freely soluble in alcohol, ether, and oils. In dental practice it is an excellent substitute for iodoform, and is far more stable than aristol.

NOSOPHEN (Nonofficial)

(Tetra-iodo-phenol-phthalein; $(C_6H_2I_2OH)_2C_8H_4O_2$.)

Nosophen is obtained by the action of iodin on a solution of phenol-phthalein. It is a pale yellow powder, without odor and taste, and contains 60 per cent. of iodin. It differs from iodoform in being an active antiseptic and in not yielding its iodin to the tissues.

Digitized by Google

Physiologic Actions.—Iodin can be classed as an ideal antiseptic in that it is just sufficiently irritant to the animal cell to cause stimulation, giving to the latter new life and energy whereby the animal cells attack and kill the invading germ, thus producing nature's method of disinfection.

When applied to the skin or mucous membrane it produces a yellowish-brown or black evanescent stain, and acts as an irritant or caustic, according to the strength of the solution used, and the frequency of the application. This discoloration can be readily removed by solutions of potassium cyanid, sodium hyposulphite or ammonia. When tincture of iodin is frequently applied, vesication is produced, or perhaps sloughing. The blood-vessels subjacent to the area to which it is applied are reflexly dilated, hence this drug is an efficient counterirritant.

When internally administered, it is rapidly absorbed in the form of iodids and soon reappears in all the secretions of the body; the bulk being eliminated, however, in the urine, also in the form of iodids. The continuous use is followed by a group of symptoms known as *iodism*. The more common manifestations of this condition are associated with the mucous membrane of the respiratory tract and with the skin, consisting of frontal headache, lacrimation, coryza, soreness of the throat, an increased flow of saliva, and sometimes an eruption on the skin. The amount of the drug required to produce iodism varies with different individuals. Iodoform differs somewhat in its action from iodin. Instead of being an irritant, it acts as a mild analgesic when applied to the mucous membrane and abraded surfaces, especially the latter. Iodoform and allied compounds have a favorable action on infected wounds, but how the result is produced is not well understood. It is known that as dry powders they possess little or no bactericidal action, yet when applied to raw surfaces they retard germ-growth, probably through the free iodin liberated, as they nearly all liberate their contained iodin when in contact with the fluids of the tissues.

Therapeutics.—Applied to infected wounds, iodin is an efficient antiseptic. The tincture of iodin or the compound solution may be employed in full strength, or diluted, to *sluggish ulcers* and *abscess cavities*, or in cases of *local arsenical poisoning*. For the latter condition, a creamy paste made of europhen and liquid petroleum can be applied to the affected part on sterile gauze or cotton. Where pain is a prominent symptom, as in cases of lacerated *gum tissue* and *exposed process after extraction*, othoform (40 parts) can be mixed with europhen (60 parts) and made into a paste with liquid petroleum. Ap-

Digitized by Google

plied in the same manner it will stop the pain like magic. This remedy is called *euroform paste*. As a counterirritant iodin is a valuable drug, as the blood-vessels subjacent to the area to which it is applied are reflexly dilated. The tincture of iodin in full strength should not be used as a dental counterirritant because of its local destructive action on the mucous membrane. For this purpose the compound solution should be employed or the tincture of iodin modified. A favorite combination is tincture of aconite 2 parts, tincture of iodin and chloroform, of each, 1 part. The chloroform volatilizes rapidly when applied and the irritant action of the iodin is modified by the aconite, a local sedative. This remedy is especially valuable in cases of pericementitis, where a mild but persistent counterirritant effect is desired. It is also used to sterilize the mucous membrane before injecting local anesthetic solutions.

Iodin will stain the tooth-structure and there is no necessity for using the drug within the tooth, as other remedies are at hand which will accomplish all that can be expected of iodin without discoloration.

Iodin is useful as an antiseptic and stimulant in the treatment of *pyorrhea alveolaris* and will be referred to again in Practical Therapeutics (p. 435). Iodoform has little use in dental therapeutics except iodoform gauze, which is used in packing surgical wounds, abscess cavities, etc.

BETANAPHTHOL—U.S.P.

(Betanaphthol; $C_{10}H_7OH$.)

Betanaphthol is a monatomic phenol occurring in coal-tar, but usually prepared artificially from naphthalene. It occurs in white, shining crystalline scales, or as a yellowish-white crystalline powder, having a faint, phenol-like odor and a sharp, pungent, but not persistent taste. It is sparingly soluble in water, freely in alcohol, ether, and chloroform. It should be kept in dark, amber-colored, well-stoppered bottles. The average dose is 4 gr. (0.25 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Betanaphthol is antiseptic, antifermentative, deodorant, and may also be considered a disinfectant. Its action closely resembles that of phenol, but is less poisonous.

When applied locally to the skin or mucous membrane, betanaphthol is readily absorbed, and, in concentrated solutions, it is irritating to the tissues to which it is applied. Toxic symptoms may result from its absorption by the skin; these also resemble those of phenol.

Therapeutics.—Betanaphthol has been recommended as a constituent of root-canal filling materials. It will not corrode metal

Digitized by Google

instruments, therefore solutions can be used for immersing instruments during the surgical treatment of *pyorrhea* and other operations. The solubility of the drug is increased in boiling water. A suitable solution can be prepared in hot water and used when sufficiently cooled. Some of the drug will be precipitated as the solution cools, but as it is not irritating in this strength solution it does not matter materially. The saturated aqueous solution may also be employed to irrigate wounds and as a constituent of mouth-washes.

In medicine it is used as a parasiticide in certain diseases of the skin, as *scabies* (itch) and *ring-worm*. It is best to employ it in the form of an ointment in the strength of a dram (4.0 Gm.) to the ounce (30.0 Gm.), for in this way it is not irritating.

RESORCINOL—U.S.P.

(Resorcin; $C_6H_4(OH)_2$.)

Resorcin is a diatomic phenol occurring in the form of colorless or faintly reddish, needle-shaped crystals, or rhombic plates, having a faint peculiar odor and a sweetish, and afterward pungent taste. It is freely soluble in water, alcohol, ether, and glycerin. It darkens when exposed to light and air, and should be kept in dark amber-colored, well-stoppered bottles. The average dose is 2 gr. (0.125 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Resorcin acts very much like phenol, but is less poisonous and less irritant. It has marked antiseptic properties, and being practically nonirritating is a useful drug in the treatment of many pathologic conditions about the mouth and throat.

Therapeutics.—Resorcin has been used for keeping instruments sterile during surgical operations, but its continued use will affect the metal. In a 2 to 5 per cent. solution it is efficacious as a mouth-wash or gargle in the treatment of certain subacute and chronic conditions of the mucous membrane, as in *ulcerative stomatitis*, *pharyngitis*, *laryngitis*, *whooping-cough*, and *diphtheria*. An ointment of resorcin (5 per cent.) is an excellent remedy to apply to *sloughing wounds*, *foul ulcers*, and *syphilitic ulcers*. A dusting powder, consisting of 1 part resorcin and 10 parts boric acid, can be used with much benefit in cases of *suppurating wounds*. As a remedy for dandruff of the scalp, Stevens recommends the following: Resorcin 1½ dr. (6.0 Gm.), castor oil ♏ xx–xxx (1.2–2.0 mils), bay-rum 3½ fl. oz. (105.0 mils).

Digitized by Google

CARBO LIGNI—U.S.P.

Carbon was formerly official in the following forms: *Animal charcoal, purified animal charcoal*, and *wood charcoal*. The latter is the only form recognized in the U.S.P. IX. Animal charcoal, or bone-black, is prepared by burning bones in closed iron cylinders. It is composed of carbon and certain earthy salts (calcium carbonate and phosphate). Purified animal charcoal is bone-black from which the above-mentioned salts have been removed by hydrochloric acid. Wood charcoal is prepared by burning soft wood without access to air; it is very finely powdered. It occurs as a black, odorless and tasteless powder, free from gritty matter.

Charcoal is mentioned here because of its deodorizing power. It has the peculiar property of absorbing many times its own volume of gases and vapors. It is not used much in dental practice, except in the laboratory for refining metals. When well ignited it will deoxidize the most obdurate metals. Animal charcoal is largely used by chemists for decolorizing many solutions and for removing coloring matter from alkaloids. It is also employed as a filtering medium for purifying drinking-water. White wood ash was formerly used for cleaning teeth by the laity. Because of the grittiness of the particles, it should not be so employed. It is sometimes internally given as an absorbent in *flatulent dyspepsia*. Here it is best administered in the form of lozenges.

CALENDULA (Nonofficial)

(Marigold.)

Calendula is the *dried ligulate florets* of *Calendula officinalis*, an annual plant, indigenous to Southern Europe and the Levant, frequently cultivated as a garden ornament. It contains a bitter principle, *calendulin*, and a trace of volatile oil. The average dose is 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.). The tincture is the only preparation employed:

> Tinctura Calendulæ, U.S.P. VIII (20 per cent.). *Dose*, 15 min. (1.0 mil).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Calendula has a stimulating action upon mucous membranes, and has been used chiefly for its local influence. It acts similar to arnica, and is employed for practically the same conditions. The tincture may be applied to *recent wounds, lacerated gums, open sores, etc.* It hastens the healing of wounds, and materially aids union of coapted surfaces by *first intention*. It causes a *scar*, or *cicatrix*, to form without contraction of tissue, and is especially useful in *severe burns*.

Digitized by Google

ARNICA—U.S.P.

Arnica is the *dried flower-heads* of *Arnica montana*, a perennial plant, growing in temperate regions of Europe, Asia, and America. It contains a glucosid, *arnicin*, and a volatile oil. The dose is about 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.). The tincture is the only official preparation:

Tinctura Arnicæ, U.S.P. *Average dose*, 15 min. (1.0 mil).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—The action of arnica closely resembles that of calendula. The tincture has been extensively used as a stimulating application in *sprains* and *bruises*. Its antiseptic power is doubtless due to its irritant effect upon animal cells, and to the alcohol which the tincture contains.

MYRRHA—U.S.P.

(Myrrh.)

Myrrh is a *gum-resin* obtained from *commiphora myrrha*, a small tree growing in Eastern Africa and Arabia. It occurs in the form of brownish-red, irregularly-shaped tears, having an agreeable aromatic odor and a bitter, acrid taste. The dose is about 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.). Its official preparations and those into which it enters are:

Tinctura Myrrhæ, U.S.P. *Average dose*, 15 min. (1.0 mil).
Pilulæ Rhei Compositæ, U.S.P. (Aloes, ½ gr. 0.1 Gm.; Rhubarb 2 gr.–0.13 Gm.; Myrrh, 1 gr.–0.06 Gm.). *Average dose*, 2 pills.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Myrrh is a stimulant to mucous membranes and acts as an antiseptic and astringent. The tincture, diluted with water or with a weak solution of borax or potassium chlorate, has been extensively used as a local application in *ptyalism*, *ulcerative stomatitis*, and *spongy gums*. Water added to the tincture causes a milky solution on account of the resinous constituent of myrrh.

OXYGENIUM—U.S.P.

(Oxygen; O.)

Oxygen, for the first time, is recognized by the U.S.P. It is a colorless, odorless and tasteless gas; practically insoluble in water, more readily soluble in alcohol. It contains not less than 95 per cent. by volume of O (16); and, for convenience, it is usually compressed in metal cylinders. The U.S.P. IX has adopted oxygen (16) as the *standard* for atomic weights, in accordance with the report of the International Committee on Atomic Weights for 1915. Formerly hydrogen (1.01) was taken as the standard. Oxygen is

Digitized by Google

correct as it weighs exactly 16, while hydrogen was only approximately correct since it weighs 1.01. The gas is used extensively in *nitrous oxid, ether* and *chloroform narcosis*, as well as in *bronchitis, anemia, phthisis*, and the later stages of *acute pneumonia*. It is given by inhalation by means of a specially devised apparatus. It is also used in dentistry as a bleaching agent (see Practical Therapeutics p. 404). For bleaching purposes the oxygen is obtained from compounds containing it, such as sodium dioxid and hydrogen dioxid. For experimental purposes, it may be obtained by carefully heating potassium chlorate in a suitable retort. If the potassium chlorate be previously mixed with about one-fourth of its weight of manganese dioxid, it gives up the whole of its oxygen at a temperature considerably below the melting-point of the salt, and at a greatly accelerated rate.

Ozone is an allotropic form of oxygen, and may be prepared from the latter electrically. It occurs in the air, especially after an electrical storm. It is no doubt an important factor in the antiseptic processes of nature, and has been used to some extent as a therapeutic agent in the treatment of *pyorrhea alveolaris*, and other pathologic conditions; but its practical application, as yet, has not been fully demonstrated.

PHENOL—U.S.P.

(Phenol; Carbolic Acid; C_6H_5OH.)

Phenol is obtained from coal-tar by fractional distillation. It is also prepared synthetically. When pure, it occurs in the form of colorless, needle-shaped crystals, of a characteristic odor and of an acrid, burning taste. On exposure to damp air it deliquesces, and the solution exposed to light gradually acquires a reddish tint. It is soluble in about 15 parts of water, at 25°C., and freely in alcohol, glycerin, ether, chloroform, and oils. It should be kept in dark amber-colored bottles, well-stoppered. Although it was official up to 1900 under the name Acidum Carbolicum, chemically considered, it is not an acid, but an alcohol of the benzene group. The average dose is 1 gr. (0.06 Gm.).

All of the official preparations are valuable in dental practice. They are:

Phenol Liquefactum, U.S.P. (contains 86.4 per cent. of absolute Phenol and 13.6 per cent. of Water).
Unguentum Phenolis, U.S.P. Ointment of Phenol (2½ per cent.).
Glyceritum Phenolis, U.S.P. Glycerite of Phenol (20 per cent.).

Digitized by Google

Physiologic Action.—Phenol is a disinfectant, as it destroys microorganisms. Some spore-bearing forms, however, are very resistant to its action. In weak solutions (2 per cent.) it acts as an antiseptic. Phenol is also a caustic and local analgesic. When applied to the skin or mucous membrane it blanches the surface and causes a burning sensation, which is soon followed by numbness. Later the part becomes red, then brown, and ultimately desquamation takes place. Its action is much more severe on mucous membranes, and it should be used about the mouth with caution. Phenol coagulates albumin, therefore its caustic action is limited, and does not extend deeply into the tissues. Absorption of the drug occurs readily from the skin, mucous membranes, and wounds. Its prolonged use, even in dilute solutions (2–5 per cent.) may cause gangrene of the parts.

Poisoning by Phenol.—Poisoning by phenol may occur either from the drug being taken internally or from its external application. It is a poison used more widely for suicidal purposes, perhaps, than any other. Because of this fact, a law is in force in many States of the Union preventing its sale to the laity in stronger solutions than 33⅓ per cent, the dilution being made with alcohol or glycerin.

Toxic doses render the patient rapidly unconscious, or the patient may drop dead in from twelve to fifteen minutes after taking it from respiratory paralysis. Butler states that 8.5 Gm. have caused the death of an adult in fifteen minutes. One and one-half grams have caused the death of a child in a short time. If the dose has not been sufficient to cause respiratory paralysis in so short a time, the symptoms are those of gastroenteritis—intense pain, violent vomiting of white slimy mucus, and purging. The pupils are contracted, stertorous breathing appears, with cold, clammy skin, pinched face, anxious expression, and a rapid, feeble pulse, finally followed by unconsciousness and death from failure of respiration. The characteristic phenomena are the odor on the breath, the destruction of the buccal mucous membrane, and the smoky urine. In poisoning from the external use of phenol the initial symptoms generally are headache, vertigo, pallor, muscular weakness, and discoloration of the urine.

Treatment of Poisoning.—When the poison has been taken by the mouth there are two drugs especially indicated in the treatment —alcohol and magnesium sulphate (Epsom salt). The alcohol neutralizes the caustic action, and the soluble sulphate forms with the phenol the innocuous phenol sulphonate. Two or three ounces (60.0 –90.0 mils) of diluted alcohol should be poured into the stomach

Digitized by Google

through a tube, followed by frequent washing out of the stomach with warm water containing magnesium sulphate. Warm demulcent drinks are useful in allaying the irritation. To increase the efficiency of the function of the heart and respiration, strychnin sulphate and atropin sulphate are indicated. For the relief of pain, opium or its alkaloids may be administered. When phenol is accidentally or otherwise applied to the skin or mucous membrane, its caustic action can be prevented by immediately applying alcohol to the part.

Therapeutics.—Phenol, possessing as it does the properties of an antiseptic, disinfectant, cauterant, and local analgesic, is one of the most useful drugs in dental practice. As a disinfectant, the true value of the drug has been overestimated. Its great affinity for albumin, which it quickly and firmly coagulates, prevents any penetration beyond the superficial layer of tissue to which it is applied. At best, then, it is but a surface disinfectant. A 1 per cent. solution can be employed for immersing the points of instruments while scaling the teeth in *pyorrheal* treatment. Probably the only objection to this solution is the odor, and yet patients have been taught that any solution possessing the odor of phenol is cleansing, so even this objection loses its weight.

The drug can be added to local anesthetic solutions for the purpose of keeping the latter sterile. Two to 3 gr. (0.13–0.19 Gm.) to the ounce (30.0 mils) is sufficient to prevent the growth of bacteria, and in this strength it can be injected into the tissue without any appreciable coagulation of the albumin.

Its local analgesic property makes it a valuable remedy for desensitizing dentin, to apply to an aching pulp in the early stages of *pulpitis*, and also as a root-canal dressing after the removal of the pulp tissue by either the anesthetization or devitalization method. It has been used for devitalizing the pulp tissue in deciduous teeth. Its action here is slow and unsatisfactory. As a stimulating agent for cauterizing *sinuses* associated with *dento-alveolar abscesses*, it has long been used with success where there is no root or bone complication. In cases of painful *canker sores* it is a most useful remedy. Applied full strength to the ulcerated or denuded spot, it arrests the septic process, and the coagulum formed serves as a protection to the exposed nerve-endings.

CRESOL—U.S.P.

(Cresol; Tricresol; $C_6H_4\begin{cases}CH_3\\ \\ OH\end{cases}$)

Digitized by Google

Cresol, formerly commercially called *tricresol*, is a refined mixture of three isomeric cresols obtained from coal-tar, freed from phenol, hydrocarbons, and water. It occurs as a colorless or straw-colored refractive liquid, having a phenol-like odor and a burning, caustic taste. It is soluble in 50 parts of water at 25°C., and miscible with alcohol and glycerin in all propotions. Cresol is sometimes erroneously called crecylic acid. It is not an acid, but is methyl phenol, the three isomeric forms being known chemically as ortho-, meta-, and paracresol. On exposure to light, cresol turns to a yellowish-brown color. It should be kept in dark amber-colored bottles, well-stoppered. The dose is 1 minim (0.06 mil.). The official *Liquor Cresolis Compositus* (Compound Solution of Cresol) is practically identical with the commercial preparation known as *lysol*. It is a linseed-oil-soap solution of cresol, 50 per cent. in strength.

Lysol (nonofficial) is a cresol preparation made by dissolving in fat, and subsequently saponifying with alcohol that portion of tar-oil which boils between 347° and 392°F. (190° and 200°C.). It contains 50 per cent. of comparatively pure cresols. It is a brown, oily liquid, and mixes with water to form a clear, saponaceous, frothy liquid.

Physiologic Action.—Cresol is one of the newer preparations, and its action is almost identical with that of phenol. Some authorities claim, however, that cresol is more toxic to bacteria than is phenol, but that it is less toxic to the animal cell than is the latter. In this respect it approaches what might be termed an *ideal disinfectant*—an agent which will kill the bacteria without acting deleteriously upon the animal cell; but cresol is too toxic to the animal cell to be so considered. Cresol is a caustic, though somewhat milder in action than phenol, and it possesses marked local analgesic properties.

Therapeutics.—Cresol is a disinfectant. It may be used in dental practice with equal results in almost every condition where phenol is indicated. In some instances it is greatly superior to the latter drug. Its odor may be considered an objection, but its valuable properties far outweigh this slight objection. As a local analgesic or anodyne for root-canal dressings it is valuable, and can be used with success as a cauterizing and stimulating agent in uncomplicated *sinuses* associated with *dento-alveolar abscesses*. It can be dissolved in glycerin or alcohol, with both of which it is miscible in all proportions, and the solution added to mouth-washes, sprays, and other antiseptic remedies. A 1:500 solution may be used as a vehicle in which to dissolve local anesthetic agents, as cocain hydrochlorid. Such solutions remain free from bacteria, and are not irritant to the

Digitized by Google

tissues in which they are injected. It is a constituent of the author's *formocresol* remedy which is an absolute *specific* for *gangrenous pulp conditions*.

The compound solution of cresol and lysol is used in from 1 to 2 per cent. solutions in surgical work, as in the treatment of *pyorrhea*.

CREOSOTUM—U.S.P.

(Creosote.)

Creosote is a mixture of phenols and phenol derivatives, chiefly guaiacol and creosol, obtained during the distillation of wood-tar, preferably of that derived from the beech. It is an almost colorless, or a faintly yellow, oily liquid, having a penetrating, smoky odor, and a burning, caustic taste. It is slightly soluble in water, soluble in all proportions in alcohol, ether, chloroform, and oils. It seems rather difficult to obtain pure beech-wood creosote. Much of the creosote on the market is impure phenol (carbolic acid). Tests for the purity of the drug can be made as follows: 1. Mix equal quantities of the suspected specimen and collodion in a clean, dry test-tube; the formation of a coagulum will indicate the presence of phenol. 2. Mix intimately equal volumes of the suspected liquid and glycerin, then add one or more volumes of water; the absence of turbidity indicates an impure specimen of creosote. The average dose is 4 min. (0.25 mil). The one official preparation, Aqua Creosoti, is not much used in dentistry. As stated above, the chief constituents of creosote are guaiacol and creosol; the former is official.

GUAIACOL—U.S.P.

Guaiacol is a phenol derivative obtained by fractional distillation from creosote. It is a colorless, oily liquid, having a rather unpleasant aromatic odor and taste. It is sparingly soluble in water, freely so in alcohol and ether. The average dose is 8 min. (0.5 mil).

Physiologic Action.—Like all members of the phenol groups, creosote is an antiseptic, disinfectant, caustic and local analgesic. Its action closely resembles that of phenol, but it is less irritant and toxic.

Therapeutics.—Creosote is employed in dental practice chiefly as a disinfectant and local analgesic. It is probably used more because of its analgesic property than any other. Three or four minims (0.18–0.24 mil) placed on a blank tablet, a piece of loaf sugar, or candy form a valuable remedy for preventing *nausea in taking impressions*. This should be held in the mouth until the vehicle is dissolved. Creosote mixed with an equal volume of liquor for-

Digitized by Google

maldehyd, to which a small quantity of alcohol (20 min. to the ounce —1.3–30.0 mils) is added, makes an excellent remedy for the treatment of *gangrenous pulp conditions*. Equal volumes of creosote and tincture of iodin have long been employed as a local analgesic and stimulant in *apical pericementitis*. Care must be taken to prevent the remedy from staining the dentin of the crown of the tooth, causing discoloration. Creosote is largely used as a *toothache* remedy by the laity. Guaiacol is not much used in dentistry, but is used in medicine in *pulmonary tuberculosis* as a substitute for creosote.

FORMALDEHYDUM (Nonofficial)

(Formaldehyd; Formic Aldehyd; CH_2O.)

Formaldehyd is a colorless gas, having a very pungent odor, obtained by the partial oxidation of methyl alcohol (wood-alcohol). The Pharmacopeia recognizes a 37 per cent. aqueous solution of the gas under the name Liquor Formaldehydi—Solution of Formaldehyd. Various solutions of the gas are on the market, commercially called *formalin*, *formol*, *etc.* The gas in solution readily undergoes polymerization, whereby a solid form is obtained, now also recognized by the U.S.P. as Paraformaldehyd and called synonymously *trioxymethylen* or *paraform* (CH_2O_3). This is a white crystalline powder, which yields formaldehyd on heating, or at body temperature. The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Formaldehyd is one of the best disinfectants. Stevens states that a 1 per cent. solution of liquor formaldehyd kills pure cultures of pathogenic bacteria in an hour. It is a powerful deodorizer, readily uniting with hydrogen sulphid, mercaptan, ptomains, ammonia, and fetid ammonia bases to form inodorous compounds.

The gas is intensely irritating; when inhaled it causes severe hyperemia and even inflammation of the mucous membrane of the entire respiratory tract. Concentrated solutions will produce a slough almost as readily as arsenic trioxid.

The antidote for formaldehyd poisoning is ammonia, with which it forms the harmless hexamethylenamin (urotropin).

Therapeutics.—Because of the power formaldehyd has of uniting with the intermediate and end-products of *pulp decomposition*, forming with them nonpoisonous substances and converting the *gases* into *liquids* and *solids*, it is a most essential constituent of *gangrenous pulp* remedies. Its irritating action can be controlled by mixing the official liquor formaldehyd with cresol, phenol, or creosote. The

Digitized by Google

author's *formocresol* remedy is equal volumes of cresol and liquor formaldehyd. When used, this remedy should always be hermetically sealed within the tooth with a nonyielding sealing material, such as the dental cements.

A 10 per cent. solution of liquor formaldehyd, to which 2 per cent. of borax or sodium carbonate is added, makes an excellent sterilizing fluid for small instruments. The alkaline salt (borax or sodium carbonate) prevents the formaldehyd from attacking the metal. In weak solutions (1 : 1,000 to 1 : 500) it may be added to mouth-washes and sprays. Apparatus are on the market for using paraform for sterilizing instruments. Probably the only objection to this method is the liability of the gas escaping in the office. Some individuals are peculiarly susceptible to formaldehyd, having an idiosyncrasy for the drug. The author has known of a few such cases among dentists, where even a slight exposure to the gas would cause red blotches on the face and hands, resulting in desquamation (scaling). The condition has been erroneously diagnosed as *psoriasis*, a chronic inflammatory disease of the skin characterized by the development of reddish patches covered with whitish scales. Individuals thus affected should avoid exposure in any manner to formaldehyd. Fortunately these cases are rare, for the drug is a valuable one in dental practice, if properly used.

In medicine formaldehyd is extensively employed as a *surface disinfectant for rooms* containing the germs of contagious diseases. Both the aqueous solutions and the solid paraform are used for this purpose.

Incompatibilities.—Formaldehyd is incompatible with ammonia, alkalies, tannic acid, and mineral salts.

HEXAMETHYLENAMINA—U.S.P.

(Hexamethylenamin; Urotropin.)

Hexamethylenamin, or urotropin, is the product formed by the action of formaldehyd on ammonia. It is not used in dental practice, but mentioned here because of its formation within the tubular structure of the dentin when formaldehyd gas is sealed within a gangrenous root canal. The average dose is 4 gr. (0.25 Gm.). The drug is especially indicated in *suppurative diseases* of the genito-urinary tract; and is also frequently given in severe **sore throat,** especially in cases of infection by the *streptococcus* germ.

Digitized by Google

LIQUOR HYDROGENII DIOXIDI—U.S.P.

(Solution of Hydrogen Dioxid; H_2O_2.)

Hydrogen dioxid is a very unstable compound, prepared by the action of mineral acids (usually sulphuric acid) on barium dioxid. The official aqueous solution should contain, when freshly prepared, about 3 per cent. by weight of absolute hydrogen dioxid, which corresponds to about 10 volumes of available oxygen. In previous pharmacopeias the solution was classified as a "water." It is now properly classified as a "liquor." The solution is a colorless liquid, without odor, slightly acidulous to the taste, and producing a peculiar sensation and a soapy froth in the mouth. It is liable to deteriorate with age or by exposure to heat or protracted agitation. The dose is 1 fl. dr. (4.0 mils), well diluted with water.

There is an unofficial ethereal solution of hydrogen dioxid on the market which contains 25 per cent. of the drug.

Physiologic Action.—When hydrogen dioxid is applied to mucous membranes it decomposes into water and oxygen, the latter being given off in large quantities. The oxygen thus liberated is in the nascent state and readily oxidizes surrounding substances. Applied to suppurating wounds or abraded surfaces, effervescence follows from the free oxygen. This effervescence is not necessarily an indication of the presence of infection or pus, as hydrogen dioxid will produce effervescence when in contact with blood. Hydrogen dioxid, because of the liberation of nascent oxygen, destroys healthy granulations in healing wounds and should, therefore, be employed with caution, if used at all. It may cause sudden death when injected hypodermically or intravenously by the formation of gaseous emboli in a blood-vessel.

Therapeutics.—As a cleansing agent and disinfectant, hydrogen dioxid has been extensively applied to diseased surfaces, such as *canker sores* and other *ulcers*, *pyorrheal pockets*, *sinuses*, etc. It is used extensively by the laity for cuts and bruises. It has little value here as a therapeutic agent, except that the effervescence caused by its action on the blood may mechanically remove dirt or other foreign bodies. In diluted solution it has been much used as an antiseptic remedy in many diseases of the *mouth*, *throat*, and *nose*. The drug may be used as a gargle or spray, or applied with a syringe or a swab. The value of hydrogen dioxid as a therapeutic agent depends upon the readiness with which it liberates oxygen when it is brought in contact with abraded tissues and with the fluids of the body. It should, therefore, be used with great caution in *all practically closed sinuses*

Digitized by Google

and on *granulating surfaces*. While the drug has its use in dental practice, its real value has been overestimated, and much harm has resulted from its injudicious employment. It is used for moistening pumice in prophylactic work; the only objection to its employment here is that the agent causes effervescence and hides the field of operation. As a cleansing and whitening agent for the teeth, it is also used by the laity, but its continued use as a mouth-wash is likely to affect deleteriously the tooth-structure, on account of the uncombined sulphuric acid it contains. This latter agent seems necessary to preserve the solution, and is added by manufacturers. As a bleaching agent it is of great value. The preparation mostly used for bleaching tooth-structure is the 25 per cent. ethereal solution.

POTASSII PERMANGANAS—U.S.P.

(Potassium Permanganate; $KMnO_4$.)

Potassium permanganate occurs in the form of slender, dark-purple prisms, odorless, and of a sweetish, astringent taste. It is soluble in 13.5 parts of water at 25°C., and is decomposed by alcohol and hydrogen dioxid. It should be kept in glass-stoppered bottles, protected from light, and care should be taken not to bring it in contact with organic or readily oxidizable substances. The average dose is 1 gr. (0.06 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—In the presence of organic matter potassium permanganate quickly yields its oxygen; hence it is a good disinfectant and deodorant. Its usefulness, however, is limited, for when its oxygen is given up it is rendered inert.

Therapeutics.—Its readiness to part with oxygen renders it of great value as a deodorant, and in dilute solutions, 1–5 gr. (0.06–0.32 Gm.) to 1 ounce (30.0 mils) of water, it is a useful remedy in *thrush*, *foul ulcers*, *putrid sore throat*, *syphilitic chancre*, and *cancer of the tongue*.

It is employed in surgical practice for disinfecting the hands, and should be followed with a saturated solution of oxalic acid to remove the stain. Its disadvantage for use in the mouth is its tendency to discolor the enamel of the teeth. This is only a surface and, therefore, temporary discoloration.

Incompatibilities.—Potassium permanganate is incompatible with organic substances, alcohol, and hydrogen dioxid.

CHINOSOL (Nonofficial)

Chinosol occurs as a yellowish, crystalline powder, having a saffron-like odor and a burning taste; soluble in water, but insoluble

Digitized by Google

in alcohol and ether. The aqueous solution has an acid reaction. The average dose is 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Chinosol is a powerful antiseptic. Cook and Mawhinney have spoken highly of the drug as a pus-destroyer, recommending its free use in from 1 to 10 per cent. solutions in *foul, chronic abscesses* and all other violent suppurations. Experimental evidence thus far has proven chinosol to be non-toxic. As a disinfectant it is weaker than phenol, and much weaker than mercuric chlorid; though as an antiseptic it is considered stronger than and preferable to either of these drugs. It has been found to exert a restraining (antiseptic) influence on germs in solutions containing 1 part to 10,000. The drug does not coagulate albumin nor injure the mucous membranes or tissues. Therefore, its solution in various strengths is used to advantage in treating many conditions in both medicine and dentistry. As an antiseptic wash the average strength of solution is 1:1,000. In gargles the strength may be increased to 1:250. The drug is claimed to possess marked analgesic power and to be an efficient deodorant.

HYDRARGYRI CHLORIDUM CORROSIVUM—U.S.P.

While **mercuric chlorid** will be discussed with the class of alteratives under Mercury and its Compounds (see p. 198), the class of disinfectants would indeed be incomplete without the mention of this important and valuable drug.

Mercuric chlorid is the most popular of all the disinfectants for surgical work. The drug is cheap, soluble, and attacks bacteria and their by-products with energy. However, there are three principal objections to its employment: It is extremely poisonous; it attacks metallic instruments detrimentally; and it readily acts upon albuminous matter, rendering the drug inert. Stevens claims this last objection may be eliminated by adding to its solution a weak acid (tartaric or citric acid).

Heat is a valuable disinfectant, and without doubt is the most reliable for sterilizing instruments. All known pathogenic bacteria and their spores are destroyed by heat. The best method of sterilizing operative and surgical instruments is to immerse them in boiling water for from 2 to 15 minutes, according to the demands of the case. Many practical "sterilizers" are on the market for this purpose (see p. 278).

Digitized by Google

ASTRINGENTS, STYPTICS, AND HEMOSTATICS

Astringents are agents which produce contraction and condensation of tissue. **Styptics** and **hemostatics** apply to agents that arrest hemorrhage. When the agent is applied locally it is called a styptic; when administered internally it is called a hemostatic. Many of the styptic and hemostatic agents control hemorrhage by virtue of their astringent property, for which reason these classes of remedies are discussed here conjointly. Astringent agents exert their influence most markedly when applied upon raw surfaces and mucous membranes. Many of them also have the property of diminishing or arresting glandular secretion. This result is produced more by the direct action of the agent upon the secreting cell than it is by the constriction of the blood-vessels of the part. Cook, in his experiments upon dogs, has shown that mouth-washes which contain astringent agents, notably zinc chlorid, arrest the secretion of ptyalin for a considerable number of hours after the solution is employed.

Most of the astringents are also irritants; especially is this true of some of the metallic salts, the action of which is more irritant and caustic than astringent. This is largely due to the liberation of an acid by the union of the metal with the albumin of the cells.

Astringents may be conveniently divided into two classes, *vegetable* and *mineral*. The efficacy of those of vegetable origin depends upon the tannic acid which they contain. It should be remembered that among the mineral astringents, bismuth subnitrate, zinc oxid, and lead acetate have more of a sedative than an irritant action. The vegetable astringents of importance are:

Tannic acid.	Ergot.
Gallic Acid.	Krameria.
Hematoxylon.	Hamamelis.
Hydrastis.	

The important mineral astringents are:

Alum.	Zinc Oxid.
Lead Acetate.	Zinc Iodid.
Copper Sulphate.	Zinc Chlorid.
Zinc Sulphate.	Calcium Chlorid.
Zinc Phenolsulphonate.	Bismuth Subnitrate.
Silver Compounds.	

ACIDUM TANNICUM—U.S.P.

(Tannic Acid; Tannin; $HC_{14}H_9O_9$.)

Tannic acid is the active constituent of all vegetable astringents. Its chief source is from *nutgall*. It occurs in the form of a light-

Digitized by Google

yellowish, amorphous powder, odorless, and of a strongly astringent taste. Soluble in about 0.34 part of water and in 0.23 part of alcohol; also soluble in about 1 part of glycerin with the aid of moderate heat. The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.).

All of the official preparations are valuable astringent remedies. They are:

Glyceritum Acidi Tannici, Glycerite of Tannic Acid (20 per cent.).
Unguentum Acidi Tannici, Ointment of Tannic Acid (20 per cent.).
Trochisci Acidi Tannici, Troches of Tannic Acid (1 gr.–0.06 Gm. in each).
Collodium Stypticum, Styptic Collodion (20 per cent.), U.S.P. VIII.

Physiologic Action.—Tannic acid, especially when applied to raw surfaces, coagulates the albumin of the superficial cells, causing condensation of the tissue, which is evidenced by the sensation of puckering. On mucous membranes it acts in a similar manner, combining with the proteids of the glandular cells, thus drying up the secretion. It also paralyzes the sensory nerve-endings and blunts the sense of taste. It may be considered a styptic, as it coagulates the albumin of the blood and checks hemorrhage. When administered internally, tannic acid is changed in the intestine into gallic acid, and in this form a certain amount is absorbed and eliminated in the urine; it also acts as a hemostatic.

Therapeutics.—Tannic acid is a valuable astringent drug. It may be applied locally in the form of the glycerite in cases of *spongy gums*, or the glycerite may be added to mouth-washes to the extent of from 2 to 5 per cent., thus giving to the solution an astringent property. For years the glycerite was applied to the pulp tissue after devitalization for the purpose of toughening the tissue and aiding in its subsequent removal from the canals of teeth, but its liability to discolor the tooth-structure when so used constitutes a serious objection to its employment (see p. 329).

A solution of from ½ to 1 per cent. is a useful remedy to be used as a spray or gargle in cases of *stomatitis*, *laryngitis*, and *pharyngitis*. Many dentists are troubled with *hyperidrosis of the hands*. Lotions containing tannic acid are often beneficial in this condition. Dusting-powders, as well as lotions, are also used in *hyperidrosis of the feet*.

Styptic collodion serves as a protection to *lacerated* or *incised*

Digitized by Google

wounds. Troches of tannic acid may be dissolved in the mouth with benefit in cases of *sore throat.*

Incompatibility.—Tannic acid is incompatible with alkaloids, gelatin, lime-water, the salts of iron, silver, lead, and copper. When potassium chlorate is triturated with tannic acid or organic drugs containing the latter, the mixture is liable to explode.

ACIDUM GALLICUM

(Gallic Acid; $HC_7H_5O_5 + H_2O$.)

Gallic acid is prepared generally from *tannic acid.* It occurs as white or pale fawn-colored, silky needles, odorless, having an astringent or slightly acidulous taste. It is soluble in 87 parts of water, in 4.6 parts of alcohol, and in 10 parts of glycerin at 25°C. The average dose is 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.), given in powders or capsules.

Physiologic Action.—Gallic acid resembles tannic acid when administered internally; but, applied locally, it is a very feeble astringent, as it does not coagulate albumin and hence does not influence the tissue like tannic acid.

Therapeutics.—About the only indication for gallic acid in dental practice is in cases of *hemorrhage following extraction.* Here it would be employed purely as a hemostatic, and its action as such is questionable, except in *intestinal hemorrhage.*

KRAMERIA (Nonofficial)

(Krameria; Rhatany.)

Krameria is the *dried root* of *Krameria triandra*, a low shrub growing in sandy localities in the mountains of Bolivia and Peru. Tannic acid is the chief constituent. The following preparations, which with the drug itself were official in the U.S.P. VIII, are of value in dentistry:

Extractum Krameriæ. *Average dose,* 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.).
Fluidextractum Krameriæ. *Average dose,* 10 min. (0.6 mils).
Syrupus Krameriæ. *Average dose,* 1 fl. dr. (4.0 mils).
Tinctura Krameriæ. *Average dose,* ½ fl. dr. (2.0 mils).
Trochisci Krameriæ. *Average dose,* 2 troches (each contains 1 gr.–0.06 Gm. of the extract).

Phyiologic Action.—The action of krameria is identical with that of its chief constituent, tannic acid.

Therapeutics.—The astringency of the drug is due entirely to the tannic acid which it contains in large amount. It has no special advantage over tannic acid. The various preparations of krameria,

Digitized by Google

especially the tincture, may be added to mouth-washes and gargles to be used in cases of *rubber sore mouth*, *spongy gums*, *ptyalism*, and *pharyngitis*. The troches are also useful in *sore throat*.

HAMAMELIS (Nonofficial)

(Witch-hazel.)

Hamamelis was formerly official as the *bark* and *dried leaves* of *Hamamelis Virginiana*, a shrub growing in the damp woods of North America. It contains a volatile oil, a small amount of tannic acid, and a bitter principle. The official preparations are:

Aqua Hamamelidis, U.S.P.; distilled extract of Witch-hazel.
Average dose, 2 fl. dr. (8.0 mils).

Physiologic Action.—The action of hamamelis is that of an astringent, due largely to the tannic acid it contains. Besides its astringent property, the drug is credited with having a marked sedative effect when topically applied.

Therapeutics.—Preparations of hamamelis are useful household remedies. As a topical application after *shaving*, and for *sprains* and *bruises* hamamelis water has long enjoyed a popular reputation. Diluted with water, alcohol, or glycerin (1 part to 3), the distilled extract may be used as a spray in *inflamed* and *spongy gums*, in *pharyngitis*, and applied to the nasal mucous membrane after the removal of *polypi*.

Hamamelis water has been recommended, diluted one-half with distilled water, as a vehicle for local anesthetic solutions. It should not be so employed, as the tannic acid will act upon the alkaloidal salt (usually cocain hydrochlorid) and precipitate the alkaloid.

HÆMATOXYLON (Nonofficial)

(Logwood.)

Hematoxylon is the *heart-wood* of *Hæmatoxylon campechianum*, a rather small tree growing along the shores of the Gulf of Campeachy and in certain parts of South America. Besides tannic acid it contains a crystalline coloring principle, *hematoxylin*. The extract as well as the drug itself was official in the U.S.P. VIII. The drug has no dental use except as a staining agent for tissues in microscopic study, for which purpose it is extensively employed, and may be found among the "reagents" of Part II, U.S.P. IX.

Digitized by Google

ERGOTA—U.S.P.

(Ergot; Ergot of Rye.)

Ergot is the sclerotium of *Claviceps purpurea*, a parasitic fungus, which replaces the *grain of rye, Secale cereale.* Ergot is obtained chiefly from the rye growing in Russia, Spain, and Germany. The following preparations are official:

Fluidextractum Ergotæ, U.S.P. *Average dose*, 30 min. (2.0 mils).
Extractum Ergotæ, U.S.P. *Average dose*, 4 gr. (0.25 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Ergot has no local action. The drug must be taken internally to produce its effects. When it enters the circulation it acts directly upon the muscular coats of the vessels, causing constriction of the arterioles, with an increase in arterial pressure. The involuntary muscles throughout the body appear to be influenced by ergot; the voluntary muscles are unaffected.

Therapeutics.—Ergot is used in dentistry for its hemostatic property. In cases of known *hemorrhagic diathesis* (*hemophilia*), it is well to administer the drug a few hours previous to the extraction of teeth or other operations involving hemorrhage. The fluid extract is the most reliable preparation and may be given in doses of ½–1 fl. dr. (2.0–4.0 mils).

Ergot should not be given when the hemorrhage proceeds from a large vessel, because here the muscular contraction could not close the vessel, and the increased arterial pressure, occasioned by the drug, would naturally increase the flow of blood.

The drug should not be given to *pregnant* women, because of the contraction it produces on the unstriped muscle of the uterus. Ergot is the one drug relied upon to prevent *postpartum hemorrhage* during and following labor in confinement cases.

HYDRASTIS—U.S.P.

(Golden Seal.)

Hydrastis is the *dried rhizome* and roots of *Hydrastis canadensis*, a perennial herb growing in the woods of North America. One of the chief constituents is *hydrastin*, which is official under the title *Hydrastina.* Hydrastin hydrochlorid, Hydrastinæ Hydrochloridum, is also official; as is also the hydrochlorid of an alkaloid obtained by the oxidation of hydrastin, called Hydrastinin Hydrochlorid, Hydrastininæ Hydrochloridum. Other constituents are *berberin* and *canadin.*

Digitized by Google

The official preparations of hydrastis are:

Fluidextractum Hydrastis, U.S.P. *Average dose*, 30 min. (2.0 mils).
Tinctura Hydrastis, U.S.P. *Average dose*, 1 dr. (4.0 mils).
Glyceritum Hydrastis, U.S.P. Externally.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—The action of hydrastis is due almost entirely to the presence of the alkaloid, *hydrastin*, which it contains. Applied locally, it appears to have a stimulating influence upon the *oral mucous membrane*. The glycerite may be added to mouth-washes (5 per cent.) and used in sluggish conditions of the mucous membranes, as in *chronic catarrh, etc.* The drug also has astringent and antiseptic properties. The fluid extract applied to *indolent ulcers* stimulates the condition to a healthy activity. Internally administered it acts as a stomachic and is a constituent of many bitter tonics.

Incompatibles.—These are the same as those of other alkaloids.

SUPRARENALUM SICCUM—U.S.P.

(Desiccated Suprarenal Glands; Suprarenal Extract.)

This product is neither a vegetable nor mineral astringent, but is considered here because it belongs to this group. It is the *suprarenal gland* of the animals which are used for food by man (sheep, ox, etc.), freed from fat, cleaned, dried, and powdered; and containing not less than 0.4 per cent. nor more than 0.6 per cent. of *epinephrin*, the active principle of the suprarenal gland. It occurs as a light, yellowish-brown powder, having a slight, characteristic odor; partially soluble in water. The average dose is 4 gr. (0.25 Gm.).

The active principle has been separated by different men and variously named *epinephrin* (Abel), *suprarenin* (Von Furth), *adrenalin* (Takamine and Aldrich). According to the best authorities, the last-named, adrenalin, represents more fully the active properties of the gland. It occurs as a white, crystalline substance. It dissolves with difficulty in cold water; but dissolves readily in acids, forming salts. A solution of adrenalin chlorid is on the market, as are other liquids and solids for styptic and hemostatic purposes. Epinephrin is produced synthetically and is on the market in various forms under the name "L.-Suprarenin Synthetic."

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Suprarenal gland, or solutions of its active principle, act locally on a variety of structures, probably by stimulating the sympathetic nerve terminals. Its most important action is the constriction of blood-vessels, with the usual

Digitized by Google

high rise of blood pressure. The drug is used in dentistry largely for its hemostatic properties. It should be remembered that the solution of epinephrin (adrenalin, suprarenin) will better prevent hemorrhage if used before operating than it will check hemorrhage after it has begun. Braun, Fischer and others recommend its use for the vasoconstrictor action to intensify and prolong the anesthetic effect of local anesthetics by retarding the circulation in the affected part and thus hindering the dilution of the anesthetic agent by too rapid absorption into the general blood stream. Solutions of adrenalin chlorid have been recommended as the vehicle for dissolving cocain hydrochlorid in the removal of the dental pulp by pressure anesthesia. Its use here, however, is unwarranted and objectionable (see Practical Therapeutics, p. 323).

The dilute aqueous solutions are rather unstable, the deterioration being accompanied by a reddish or brownish discoloration. The drug can be obtained alone or combined with other drugs, in tablet form. The powder is stable.

THYROIDEUM SICCUM—U.S.P.

(Desiccated Thyroid Glands; Thyroid Extract.)

This product is the *thyroid gland* of animals which are used for food by man, freed from fat, cleaned, dried, and powdered. It must contain not less than 0.17 per cent. nor more than 0.23 per cent. of iodin in thyroid combination. One part represents approximately 5 parts of the fresh gland. It is a yellowish, amorphous powder, partially soluble in water. Average dose, 1½ gr. (0.1 Gm.). The product is not much used in dentistry, its general properties being alterative, hemostatic, and antifat.

ALUMEN—U.S.P.

(Alum.)

The United States Pharmacopeia now recognizes two kinds of **alum—ammonium alum** and **potassium alum.** The ammonium or potassium is combined chemically with aluminum in the form of a sulphate, and is what is known in chemistry as a double sulphate. Both occur in large, colorless, octahedral crystals, odorless, but having a sweetish and strongly astringent taste. Soluble in water and in warm glycerin, insoluble in alcohol. The ammonium alum is somewhat less soluble in water than is the potassium alum. The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.). As an emetic it may be given in much larger doses—1–2 dr. (4.0–8.0 Gm.). The dried or burnt alum is also official under the title Alumen Exsiccatum, U.S.P.

Digitized by Google

Physiologic Action.—Alum is a powerful astringent when applied to the broken skin or mucous membranes. It acts by coagulating the albumin of the superficial cells, thus causing condensation of the tissues. With the blood it forms a firm coagulum, and tends to arrest hemorrhage. When applied to the unbroken skin, it has a tendency to thicken and harden it.

Therapeutics.—In edentulous mouths alum may be used to toughen the mucous membrane. A solution of from 5 to 10 gr. (0.3–0.6 Gm.) to the ounce (30.0 mils) is a useful remedy in cases of *rubber sore mouth, subacute and chronic pharyngitis* and *laryngitis*, especially where there is a viscid mucous secretion. It has a destructive action on the tooth-structure, hence its prolonged use in the mouth is contraindicated, except in edentulous mouths. It may be used as a styptic to arrest *hemorrhage from small wounds*. A large smooth crystal may be moistened and applied to the face after *shaving*, as the alum thickens and toughens the unbroken skin and also tends to arrest any *small hemorrhages* which may follow the operation. Dried alum may be employed as a mild caustic for *indolent ulcers* and for destroying *exuberant granulations*, as are often seen covering the fragment of a broken tooth-root a few days after an unsuccessful attempt at extraction.

Lotions of alum and dilute alcohol are sometimes employed in *hyperidrosis of the hands and feet.*

Incompatibles.—Alum is incompatible with alkalies, alkaline carbonates, lead acetate, mercury, iron salts, and tannic acid.

PLUMBI ACETAS—U.S.P.

(Lead Acetate; Sugar of Lead; $Pb(C_2H_3O_2)_2 + 3H_2O$.)

Lead acetate occurs in colorless, shining, transparent, heavy prismatic crystals or crystalline masses, having a faintly acetous odor and a sweetish, astringent, afterward metallic taste. It is soluble in 1.4 parts of water and in 38 parts of alcohol at 25°C. The average dose is 1 gr. (0.065 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Metallic lead is practically inert, and the tissues take kindly to it. A clean lead bullet may become encysted in the tissues. Lead acetate has valuable therapeutic properties. Applied in solution to denuded or highly inflamed surfaces, its action is both astringent and sedative. In the mouth it acts immediately, coagulating the mucus and producing a sweet, styptic taste. When taken internally and absorbed, the lead enters as a constituent part into the protoplasm of the cells, and is exceedingly slow in being

Digitized by Google

eliminated. *Lead poisoning* may result from the internal administration, but the cases fortunately are rare, for the acetate is an emetic and the emesis produced prevents toxic effects of the drug.

Therapeutics.—Lead acetate is not much employed in dental practice. Its sedative as well as its astringent properties make it a useful drug to be applied to *acute inflammatory conditions* of all mucous membranes. In cases of *inflammation* following the removal of foreign substances from the eye, a solution of lead acetate, 1–2 gr. (0.065–0.13 Gm.), to the ounce (30.0 mils) of distilled water makes an excellent collyrium. Should the solution be turbid or milky, it indicates a trace of lead oxid. The smallest amount (1 min.–0.05 mil) of dilute acetic acid will clear the solution.

CUPRI SULPHAS—U.S.P.

(Copper Sulphate; Blue Vitriol; $CuSO_4 + 5H_2O$.)

Copper sulphate occurs in large, transparent, deep-blue crystals, odorless, and of a nauseous metallic taste. It is soluble in about 2.5 parts of water at 25°C., and almost insoluble in alcohol. The average dose as an astringent is ½ gr. (0.032 Gm.); as an emetic, 4 gr. (0.25 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—The mode of action of copper sulphate depends largely upon the strength of the solution employed. Dilute solutions act upon mucous membranes and raw surfaces as an astringent. In concentrated solutions or applied in the crystal or powdered form, it acts as a mild caustic. Internally administered in large doses, it produces emesis by its direct irritant action on the stomach.

Therapeutics.—Copper sulphate is a useful drug in cases of *canker sores*, *ulcerative stomatitis*, and other *indolent ulcers*. Light applications of the solid crystal produce a stimulant effect upon the sluggish cells.

It is a prompt and powerful emetic, but considered too irritant to the stomach for ordinary use.

Bevan and Brophy report good results with copper sulphate in the treatment of *actinomycosis* occurring in man. They begin with about ¼ gr. (0.016 Gm.) given three times a day, gradually increasing the dose to 1 gr. (0.065 Gm.). In addition to the internal administration of the drug, irrigations of a 1 per cent. solution are also employed.

Digitized by Google

CUPRI OXIDUM (Nonofficial)

(Black Copper Oxid; CuO.)

Copper oxid occurs as a heavy dark-brown powder; insoluble in water. This product has been modified by Ames, and is used as the powder for the copper phosphate cement, a material extensively employed in filling cavities in children's teeth. This cement is claimed to possess marked antiseptic properties as well as serving the function of a temporary filling material. It has one distinct advantage in that it may be applied directly against the gums or other tissues, which take kindly to it.

ZINCI SULPHAS—U.S.P.

(Zinc Sulphate; White Vitriol; $ZnSO_4 + 7H_2O$.)

Zinc sulphate occurs in colorless, transparent crystals, or granular crystalline powder, odorless, and of an astringent metallic taste. It is efflorescent in dry air. Soluble in less than its own weight (0.53 part) in water, in about 2.5 parts glycerin at 25°C.; insoluble in alcohol. It is rarely given internally except as an emetic, when the average dose is 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Zinc sulphate acts as an astringent, styptic, emetic, and antiseptic. In weak solutions it is astringent and antiseptic; in strong solutions it acts as an irritant or caustic, tending to arrest slight hemorrhage when applied externally, and, when administered internally, producing emesis.

Therapeutics.—Weak solutions of zinc sulphate may be applied to raw surfaces and to mucous membranes whenever a slight astringent effect is desired. A solution of from ½–2 gr. (0.06–0.1 Gm.) to the ounce (30.0 mils) is a valuable collyrium in *simple conjunctivitis*. A 1 per cent solution is also useful in *ulcerative stomatitis*, *cancrum oris*, and as a gargle in *enlarged tonsils* and *sore throat*.

As an emetic it is employed in *narcotic poisoning*, 10–30 gr. (0.6–2.0 Gm.) dissolved in water, being given and repeated in fifteen to twenty minutes, if necessary.

Incompatibles.—Zinc sulphate is incompatible with alkalies, alkaline carbonates, vegetable astringents, lead acetate, silver nitrate, and lime-water.

Digitized by Google

ZINCI PHENOLSULPHONAS—U.S.P.

(Zinc Phenolsulphonate; Zinc Sulphocarbolate; $Zn(C_6H_4(OH)SO_3)_2$.)

Zinc phenolsulphonate, also commonly, though erroneously, called zinc sulphocarbolate, occurs in colorless, transparent prisms, or tabular crystals, odorless, and having an astringent, metallic taste; on exposure to air and light it effloresces and may acquire a pink tint. It is freely soluble in water and alcohol. The aqueous solution is acid to litmus. It is rarely given internally; the average dose is 2 gr. (0.125 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Zinc phenolsulphonate is an astringent and antiseptic, and produces a stimulant effect upon mucous membranes. It acts similarly to other zinc salts, but the contained phenol radical adds to its antiseptic power.

Therapeutics.—This salt has but recently been employed in dental practice. Whitslar suggests the use of a 10 per cent. solution in cinnamon water as a stimulating antiseptic following the surgery of *pyorrhea alveolaris*. ½ dr. (2.0 Gm.) added to 8 oz. (240.0 mils) of liquor antisepticus makes a valuable astringent mouth-wash to be used in *stomatitis* and *sore throat*.

ZINCI OXIDUM—U.S.P.

(Zinc Oxid; ZnO.)

Zinc oxid is a fine, white, amorphous powder, without odor or taste. Insoluble in water or alcohol. It is rarely used internally, an average dose being 4 gr. (0.25 Gm.). There is one official preparation:

Unguentum Zinci Oxidi, U.S.P. (20 per cent.).

Physiologic Action.—Zinc oxid is a mild astringent and antiseptic.

Therapeutics.—This drug has been used extensively as a vehicle for making pastes of liquids for treating *gangrenous pulps* and *dento-alveolar abscess*, also for *root-canal fillings*. In the light of our present knowledge of "focal infection" and its relation to systemic disease, all "pastes" of whatever nature should be discarded for filling root-canals. Zinc oxid is the base of the powder for all zinc phosphate cements.

The ointment may be employed to soften and protect the mucous membrane of *dry* and *cracked lips* previous to operating or adjusting the rubber dam. The ointment is also extensively used as a slightly

Digitized by Google

astringent and protective dressing for *cold-sores*, *burns*, *acute ulcers*, and *acute inflammatory skin diseases*.

ZINCI IODIDUM (Nonofficial)

(Zinc Iodid; ZnI_2.)

Zinc iodid is a white, granular powder, without odor, and having a sharp, saline, and metallic taste. It is a very deliquescent salt and liable to absorb oxygen from the air, becoming brown from liberated iodin. Readily soluble in water, alcohol, or ether. It should be kept in glass-stoppered bottles. When used internally the average dose is ½ gr. (0.03 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Zinc iodid is astringent, antiseptic, and alterative.

Therapeutics.—This salt may be used as a mild astringent, antiseptic and alterative in cases of *ulcerative stomatitis* and *pyorrhea alveolaris*. Talbot suggests using the following remedy in cases of *flabby* and *inflamed gums;* Zinc iodid 15 parts, water 10 parts, iodin 25 parts, and glycerin 40 parts. The salt can also be added to mouth-washes to give astringency to the solution.

ZINCI CHLORIDUM—U.S.P.

(Zinc Chlorid; $ZnCl_2$.)

Zinc chlorid occurs as a white, granular powder, or fused mass, very deliquescent, odorless, and of a caustic, metallic taste. *It is so intensely caustic as to make tasting dangerous*, unless the salt is dissolved in a large quantity of water, in which it is freely soluble; it is also freely soluble in alcohol. It is not used internally. The official preparation is:

Liquor Zinci Chloridi, U.S.P. (50 per cent.).

Physiologic Action.—Zinc chlorid is feebly astringent and antiseptic. It is the most caustic of all the zinc salts, and possesses marked styptic properties. Its prolonged use in the mouth interferes with the secretory action of the salivary glands (Cook).

Therapeutics.—Solutions of zinc chlorid of various strengths have enjoyed an unmerited reputation as disinfectants in dental practice. For years the saturated solution has been mixed with zinc oxid to make the so-called zinc oxychlorid cement, and used for filling root-canals. This cement is not used to-day to any great extent for filling root-canals; but its use is strongly recommended for the purpose of covering the gutta-percha canal filling. Webster proved the material

Digitized by Google

to be impervious to bacteria, which is a distinct advantage. Black, Poundstone, and others claim this is not true of the ordinary zinc phosphate cements. A 10 per cent. solution may be employed for *arresting profuse hemorrhage* in pressure anesthesia. Applied to *sensitive dentin* it acts as an obtundent. Care must be taken not to use it in deep-seated cavities nearly involving the pulp, as the hydrochloric acid liberated will irritate the pulpal organ. This irritant property may be controlled by dissolving the salt in alcohol and then adding chloroform. A formula for sensitive dentin follows: Zinc chlorid 20 gr. (1.3 Gm.), alcohol and chloroform, of each, ½ fl. oz. (15.0 mils). The drug has been recommended to be added to mouth-washes to impart astringency to the solution. Its value here has been overestimated, for it is the least astringent of all zinc salts, and its continued use in the mouth changes temporarily the character of the saliva.

CALCII CHLORIDUM—U.S.P.

(Calcium Chlorid; $CaCl_2$.)

Calcium chlorid occurs in white, rather translucent, hard fragments, is very deliquescent, odorless, and of an acrid saline taste. It is freely soluble in water, somewhat less so in alcohol. The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Internally administered calcium chlorid increases the coagulability of the blood. This property was first mentioned by Wright, of England, in 1893. It has been used with success in *hemophilia*, and in *small persistent hemorrhages*, like those which sometimes follow the extraction of teeth.

Wright found that the prolonged administration of the drug rather decreases than increases the coagulability of the blood, and that it acts best as a hemostatic by giving it in doses of from 3–10 gr. (0.2–0.6 Gm.) three times a day, for a period of two or three days, and discontinuing its use for a like period. The drug is very irritating to the stomach and should be given after meals, well diluted.

BISMUTHI SUBNITRAS—U.S.P.

(Bismuth Subnitrate; $BiONO_3 + H_2O(?)$.)

Bismuth subnitrate is a heavy white powder, of a somewhat varying chemic composition, odorless, almost tasteless, and slightly hygroscopic. It is insoluble in water and alcohol, but soluble in glycerin in about 12 parts (Hereth). The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.).

Digitized by Google

Physiologic Action.—Upon the unbroken skin bismuth subnitrate simply acts as a protective agent; but upon raw surfaces and mucous membranes it also acts as an astringent and antiseptic. From denuded surfaces absorption of the drug takes place rather speedily, and poisoning has been known to occur from its too frequent application. The symptoms of *bismuth poisoning* are stomatitis, salivation, black discoloration of the mucous membrane of the mouth, and finally ulceration of the throat, diarrhea and albumin in the urine. Because of the protection the insoluble compound affords to the part, and also because it is just sufficiently astringent to act as a stimulant to the sluggish cells, this drug may be called an ideal antiseptic when applied to abraded surfaces.

Therapeutics.—Until recently bismuth subnitrate had not been employed in dentistry. In medicine it has long been a standard remedy in both *acute* and *chronic gastric catarrh* and *gastric ulcer*. Beck has recently proved its value in *chronic tubercular sinuses*. The drug is now extensively employed in *dento-alveolar sinuses*, *pyorrhea pockets*, and as a packing for *wounds* after surgical operations about the roots of teeth and the alveolar process. The formula for Beck's paste is: Bismuth subnitrate 30 parts, white wax and paraffin, of each 5 parts, and vaselin 60 parts. Mix with heat.

ARGENTUM (Nonofficial)

(Silver; Ag.)

Metallic silver is used extensively in dental practice in the form of a wire for suturing fractured jaws, ligating loose teeth, etc. The most important salt of silver used in dentistry is silver nitrate, which is official.

ARGENTI NITRAS—U.S.P.

(Silver Nitrate; $AgNO_3$.)

Silver nitrate occurs in colorless, transparent, tabular crystals, odorless, and of a caustic and rather metallic taste. It is soluble in about 0.4 part of water and in 30 parts of alcohol at 25°C. The salt darkens on exposure to light, and should be kept in amber-colored bottles. The average dose is ⅙ gr. (0.01 Gm.). The only official preparation is:

> Argenti Nitras Fusus, U.S.P., Lunar Caustic (Silver Nitrate fused and molded into hard white cones or pencils).

Physiologic Action.—While silver nitrate, in dilute solution, acts as an astringent upon mucous membranes and raw surfaces

Digitized by Google

in that it contracts the tissues to which it is applied by precipitating the albumin of the cells, in concentrated solutions or crystal form it acts as an unirritating caustic, coating and protecting the parts with white silver albuminate. Much investigation has been done by dentists in regard to the depth of penetration of silver nitrate, especially when applied to the tooth-structure. The prevailing opinion is that its penetration is limited on account of the impenetrable nature of the coagulum formed.

In weak solutions (1:2500), silver nitrate is active as a disinfectant. Internally administered in medicinal doses, its only action is that of an astringent and antiseptic.

The long-continued use of silver nitrate, even when locally applied, may result in a condition known as *argyria*. The manifestation of this condition is a characteristic, bluish-gray discoloration of the skin and mucous membranes. As a rule, it does not interfere with the general health, but the discoloration is permanent.

Therapeutics.—Silver nitrate is a valuable therapeutic agent in dentistry, being used largely for its caustic action. It is chiefly employed for its beneficent effect on *unnaturally exposed tooth-structure*, and on *inflamed mucous membranes* and *ulcerative surfaces*. To *exposed sensitive cementum* it may be applied in from 10 to 20 per cent. solution, the part first being dried; or the surface to be cauterized may be left moist and the solid stick used. Black calls attention to the fact that exposure to sunlight aids the action of the salt. In the absence of sunlight, the electric mouth lamp will be found serviceable.

This drug is one of the best caustics for destroying *exuberant* and *superfluous granulations*, for which purpose a solution may be used up to 50 per cent. in strength. In *chronic stomatitis* a 2 to 5 per cent. solution may be used with advantage; the pencils may be used in lightly touching *mucous patches*. Elliot recommends a 10 per cent. solution as a local application in the cracks which frequently occur about the hands and feet. It is stated on good authority that there are 60,000 blind people in the United States, and that fully one-third of these unfortunates are blind because of a disease which is easily preventable. This is known scientifically as *ophthalmia neonatorum;* but mothers and midwives simply call it "baby sore eyes." It can be prevented by dropping a few minims of a one per cent. solution of silver nitrate in the baby's eyes when born. Some States have a law making it obligatory for the physician in attendance at birth to use a solution of the silver compounds.

Precautions.—There is little danger of producing argyria from

Digitized by Google

silver nitrate in dental practice, yet dentists should be familiar with this condition. In using the drug, care should be taken to prevent the cauterization of parts not intended, as the patient's lips, gums, tongue, buccal mucous membranes, etc. Sodium chlorid (common salt) is a positive antidote, as it forms with the drug the insoluble and inert silver chlorid. A solution of the antidote should always be in a convenient place when silver nitrate is used about the mouth.

Incompatibles.—With creosote it causes an explosion. It is also incompatible with organic matter and many salts, as chlorids, bromids, iodids, sulphids, cyanids, carbonates, and phosphates.

OTHER SILVER SALTS AND SOLUBLE COMPOUNDS

An effort has been made by manufacturing chemists to produce compounds of silver which possess the stimulant and disinfectant power of silver nitrate and which will not precipitate albumin or chlorids. Some of these preparations have proved exceedingly valuable.

Argyrol (Silver Vitellin).—This is a compound of a derived vegetable proteid and silver oxid, containing from 20 to 25 per cent. of silver. It occurs in black, glistening, hygroscopic scales, freely soluble in water and glycerin, insoluble in alcohol and oils.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—In strong solutions (20–50 per cent.) argyrol is claimed to be nonirritating to mucous membranes. It, without doubt, possesses marked antiseptic properties. It is recommended in nearly all diseased conditions of the mucous membranes; as in *stomatitis*, *acute ulcerous gingivitis*, *aphthous sore mouth*, *maxillary sinusitis*, *pharyngitis*, and *conjunctivitis*. Brophy recommends the drug in the after-treatment of antral operations. It is used in from 10 to 50 per cent. solutions. It will stain the skin and mucous membrane as well as the clothing. Care should be taken, therefore, in using the drug not to stain the latter. Hot water immediately applied will remove the stain from fabrics.

Protargol.—This is a proteid compound containing about 8 per cent. of silver. It occurs as a fawn-colored powder, freely soluble in water. It is claimed to be a good disinfectant, and comparatively free from irritant properties. Its action is similar to that of argyrol, and it is used for practically the same pathologic conditions. The extreme solubility of argyrol and the high percentage of silver which it contains have caused this drug to largely supersede protargol in dental practice.

Digitized by Google

Silver Preparations, Colloidal.—Under certain conditions involving a very fine state of subdivision, metallic silver and some of its compounds ordinarily insoluble become capable of colloidal suspension, forming with water mixtures closely resembling solutions. These preparations are not precipitated by the ordinary precipitants of silver salts. As a result they can be mixed with organic liquids or injected into tissues or even into the blood-stream without precipitation and without causing marked symptoms of irritation. They possess to a greater or less degree the antiseptic properties of solutions of silver compounds. Several similar preparations of this kind are on the market and are variously known as *cargentos*, *collargol*, *electrargol*.

BLEACHERS

Bleachers, or **bleaching agents,** have been defined as agents used to restore the color of tooth-structure. The methods employed in bleaching teeth will be described in detail later in this work. It is intended here to discuss only the drugs used for this purpose. However, it is important that the student should know that the methods of bleaching teeth involve more or less of chemistry. The general principle of bleaching teeth is to chemically change the insoluble colored pigment into a soluble compound so that it may be washed out of the tooth-structure, or else chemically attack the pigment in such a way as to break up its molecular arrangement and thus destroy its color. This may be accomplished by one of two general chemic processes—*oxidation* or *reduction*. The agents used for bleaching teeth, therefore, can be divided into two classes: Those which *oxidize* and those which *reduce* the pigment.

OXIDIZING AGENTS

This class of drugs may also be conveniently subdivided into two classes—*direct* and *indirect* oxidizing agents. The former is any agent from which oxygen may be obtained directly, and the latter is any agent from which oxygen may be obtained indirectly.

The direct oxidizing agents used for bleaching teeth are:

Sodium Dioxid. Acetozone.
Hydrogen Dioxid.* Alphozone.
Oxalic Acid.

There is only one indirect oxidizing agent used and that is:

Chlorin.

Digitized by Google

SODII DIOXIDUM (Nonofficial)

(Sodium Peroxid; Na_2O_2.)

Sodium dioxid occurs as a light yellow, more or less granular powder. It is the sodium salt of hydrogen dioxid containing at least 90 per cent. Na_2O_2, equivalent to 18.4 per cent. available oxygen. It is chemically soluble in water, and insoluble in absolute alcohol and chloroform. It readily absorbs moisture from the air, thus deteriorating, and is best kept in tightly covered tin cans. The drug is never given internally.

Action.—To speak of the physiologic action of sodium dioxid would be incorrect, for it is such a violent caustic when applied to live tissue that its action cannot be confined within physiologic limits. It is, therefore, rarely used in medicine. As a direct oxidizing agent for bleaching teeth, where its action can be confined to the tooth-structure, it has no equal; especially is this true when the sodium dioxid is decomposed by water, which liberating *nascent oxygen* forms *sodium hydroxid* as a by-product. The nascent oxygen attacks the pigment which has stained the tooth, and the sodium hydroxid attacks any fatty substances which may be present, forming therewith a soluble soap. This double action of sodium dioxid, when decomposed by water, gives to the agent its great advantage as a bleaching agent. The drug may be decomposed by acids with the liberation of nascent oxygen, but by this means the valuable by-product (sodium hydroxid) is destroyed. Used in this way, then, sodium dioxid has no advantage over any other agent which liberates an equal volume of oxygen. It is a fact long recognized by those engaged in the bleaching of hair, feathers, wool, broom-corn, ivory, bone, etc., that the bleaching process is favored when carried on in an *alkaline* medium. This is likewise true in bleaching teeth.

Therapeutics.—In dental practice, where the violent caustic properties of sodium dioxid can be confined to the tooth-structure, this agent has a rather wide range of usefulness. Both the powder and *a solution* made by carefully adding the powder to cold water are used.

There are two important reactions which take place when sodium dioxid is added to water, and it is well to explain these here. If the powder is added to water in small quantities, care being taken to keep down the temperature with ice or cold water, a reaction takes place which results in a solution containing hydrogen dioxid and sodium hydroxid. This solution freshly prepared may be used for bleaching teeth. The hydrogen dioxid will liberate oxygen which does the

Digitized by Google

bleaching and the sodium hydroxid creates an alkaline medium which favors the bleaching process; it also acts to advantage upon any fats which may be present. The great difficulty here is in obtaining the solution fresh, as the sodium hydroxid gradually decomposes the hydrogen dioxid into water and oxygen, the latter gas being lost. If sodium dioxid is added to water without any precaution as to lowering the temperature, a somewhat different reaction takes place. Here the drug is at once decomposed into oxygen and sodium hydroxid. For all dental purposes this is the best way to use the drug, viz.: Place the powder in the cavity or canal of the tooth and decompose it into oxygen and sodium hydroxid by adding distilled water. In this way it may be used for *bleaching teeth, disorganizing remnants of pulp tissue*, and *enlarging tortuous root-canals*. For the latter purposes the use of the drug should alternate with a 30 per cent. solution of sulphuric acid. Though not employed to any extent in medicine, the drug has been used in *acne*, applied in the form of a paste prepared with liquid paraffin, or as a soap to remove comedones. It has been suggested as an air purifier; this suggestion being based on the theory that the moisture of the air would decompose the chemical gradually, thus liberating oxygen and forming the alkali, sodium hydroxid, which absorbs carbon dioxid. The theory is correct, but it is doubtful if the drug could be used to any practical advantage, except, perhaps, on a limited scale.

Incompatibles.—Sodium dioxid will produce a pyrotechnic display with many of the volatile oils, ether and phenol. It is decomposed by water and acids.

HYDROGEN DIOXID

The direct oxidizing agent has been fully discussed under the heading of Disinfectants. The official 3 per cent. solution is sometimes concentrated or used with other drugs for bleaching purposes. As a bleacher this solution has largely been superseded by the commercial preparation called "caustic pyrozone," which is a 25 per cent. ethereal solution of pure hydrogen dioxid. Like all direct oxidizers, its value depends upon the nascent oxygen which it liberates. For *bleaching teeth* better results are produced when the tooth-structure has been previously moistened with a weak alkaline solution, such as lime-water.

ACETOZONE (Nonofficial)

(Benzoylacetyl Dioxid; $C_6H_5COO.O.COCH_3$. = $C_9H_8O_4$.)

Acetozone, or **benzoylacetyl dioxid,** is made by the oxidation of a mixture of benzaldehyd and acetic anhydrid. It occurs as a

Digitized by Google

white, shining crystalline powder. Slightly soluble in water, alcohol, and fairly so in ether and chloroform. In oils it is soluble to the extent of about 3 per cent. All solvents slowly decompose the drug with the exception of neutral petroleum oils. Not used internally in dentistry.

Action and Uses.—Acetozone belongs to a class of compounds known as the *organic dioxids or peroxids* in which an excess of oxygen has been combined in such a way that it is slowly given off in the nascent state. In the presence of water it hydrolyzes, forming benzoperacid and aceto-peracid which exert marked oxidizing and disinfectant action. Acetozone is used in dentistry as a bleaching agent. Hoff recommends placing the powder in *the cavity of the tooth to be bleached*, moisten with water to bring about the hydrolysis, and hermetically seal. It is claimed to be useful as an antiseptic in ophthalmic, aural and nasal practice, and to give good results by acting as an intestinal antiseptic when given internally, especially in *typhoid fever*.

ALPHOZONE (Nonofficial)

(Succinic Dioxid $(COOH.CH_2.CH_2.CO)_2O_2 = C_8H_{10}O_8$.)

Alphozone, or **succinic dioxid,** is an organic dioxid, or peroxid, resulting from the condensation of hydrogen dioxid with succinic anhydrid. It occurs as a fluffy, white, crystalline powder. Soluble in 30 parts of water at ordinary temperature; moderately soluble in alcohol, sparingly so in ether, and insoluble in chloroform. It should be kept in a dark place and in tightly stoppered bottles. Not used internally in dentistry.

Action and Uses.—Alphozone is a powerful oxidizer, and thus becomes an antiseptic, disinfectant, and deodorant. It possesses marked bleaching properties. It is claimed to possess an advantage over hydrogen dioxid as a therapeutic agent in that it does not effervesce with pus nor in contact with living tissues. Alphozone may be used for *bleaching teeth* in the same manner as acetozone. Water does not decompose the drug. It may also be employed for *disinfecting the hands* and such instruments as are not attacked by oxidizing agents. The drug can be obtained in the powder form or in tablets containing 1 gr. (0.065 Gm.) each, which is used for making solutions for external use. One tablet to 2 fl. oz. (60.0 mils) makes a suitable disinfectant solution for general use.

Digitized by Google

ACIDUM OXALICUM (Nonofficial)

(Oxalic Acid; $H_2C_2O_4 + H_2O$.)

Oxalic acid occurs in the form of transparent, prismatic crystals, is odorless, and of a very acid taste. It is readily soluble in water and alcohol. Not used internally in dentistry.

Action and Uses.—Oxalic acid is a direct oxidizer. As a bleaching agent for teeth its power is limited. Kelley and others have recommended it as a *disinfectant for the hands.*

CHLORUM (Nonofficial)

(Chlorin; Cl.)

Chlorin is a heavy, yellowish-green gas, of a very suffocating odor and a caustic taste. It may be prepared by acting upon chlorinated lime with an acid. The gas is soluble in water.

Action and Uses.—Chlorin is a powerful irritant. When inhaled it causes inflammation, and, at times, edema of the lungs. It has such a great affinity for hydrogen that it will abstract this element from a molecule of water, liberating the oxygen in the nascent state. Because of this fact it is an indirect oxidizing agent, and its bleaching ability as well as its disinfectant power depends upon this property. About the only use made of chlorin in dental practice is as a bleaching agent. It bleaches indirectly. For *bleaching teeth*, compounds and preparations of chlorin, from which the gas is liberated, are used.

CALX CHLORINATA—U.S.P.

(Chlorinated Lime; $CaOCl + CaCl_2$.)

Chlorinated lime is a mixture of calcium hypochlorite and calcium chlorid. It is prepared by acting upon slaked lime with chlorin gas, and should contain not less than 30 per cent. of available chlorin. It occurs as a grayish-white powder, having a strong odor of chlorin and a disagreeable saline taste. It is partially soluble in water and alcohol.

Action and Uses.—As the mixture constantly liberates chlorin gas, it is a disinfectant and bleacher. It is used in dentistry as a means of obtaining chlorin for *bleaching teeth.*

LIQUOR SODÆ CHLORINATÆ—U.S.P.

(Solution of Chlorinated Soda; Labarraque's Solution.)

This is a solution of several chlorin compounds of sodium containing not less than 2.5 per cent. by weight of available chlorin.

Digitized by Google

Action and Uses.—Solution of chlorinated soda is a disinfectant, deodorant and bleacher. Like chlorinated lime, it is used in dentistry as a means of obtaining chlorin for *bleaching teeth*. The solution should be freshly prepared.

REDUCING AGENTS

These are agents which have the power of abstracting oxygen from a compound containing it. The process is called *reduction* or *deoxidation*.

There is only one reducing agent used for bleaching teeth. That is sulphurous acid.

ACIDUM SULPHUROSUM (Nonofficial)

(Sulphurous Acid; H_2SO_3.)

Sulphurous acid is generally used in the form of a 6 per cent. aqueous solution of sulphur dioxid. This was the official solution of the U.S.P. VIII.

Action and Uses.—Sulphur dioxid is a gas which chemically dissolves in water and forms sulphurous acid. This acid has a great affinity for oxygen, and absorbs the latter gas from the air or abstracts it from compounds containing it, thus reducing the compound and forming sulphuric acid.

For *bleaching teeth* it is best to use a mixture of such compounds as, when dissolved, will react upon each other and produce sulphur dioxid within the tooth to be bleached. The gas unites with the water present, forming sulphurous acid, which has a tendency to abstract oxygen from the colored pigment which has stained the tooth, and thus the rearrangement of the elements of the colored molecule destroys its color. Kirk suggests using a mixture of 10 parts of sodium sulphite and 7 parts of boric acid. This mixture may be packed into the cavity of the tooth, moistened with water, and hermetically sealed. The tooth should subsequently be washed with an alkaline solution to neutralize the acid formed.

ESCHAROTICS OR CAUSTICS

Escharotics or caustics are agents which destroy the tissue upon which they act. While the action of this class of drugs varies with the drug employed, it may be stated in general that their action is purely chemic or physico-chemic. Many of them have an immediate chemic action upon the tissues, and are sometimes called *corrosives*. Nearly all escharotics produce an eschar, the character

Digitized by Google

of which depends largely upon the tissue involved. This eschar is ultimately separated from the living tissues by the inflammatory process thus inaugurated. Some of the agents belonging to this class are quite readily absorbed, and may cause systemic poisoning. The compounds of arsenic—especially arsenic trioxid, long used in dentistry for devitalizing the pulps of teeth—are of this character, as they have a specific poisonous action upon the cells. The salts of chromium and osmium may also be mentioned in this connection. The strong mineral acids abstract water from the tissues and precipitate the proteids; the alkaline hydrates, on the other hand, not only abstract water but dissolve the proteids and form with them soluble compounds.

The chief escharotics are:

Mineral Acids:	Arsenic Trioxid.
Sulphuric Acid.	Chromium Trioxid.
Nitric Acid.	Osmic Acid.
Hydrochloric Acid.	Potassium Hydroxid.
Phenol.*	Sodium Hydroxid.
Acetic Acid.	Zinc Chlorid.*
Trichloracetic Acid.	Mercuric Chlorid.*
Monochloracetic Acid.	Silver Nitrate.*
Lactic Acid.	Actual Cautery.

Several of the above escharotics have been considered elsewhere. Those which have not will here be discussed in detail.

ACIDUM SULPHURICUM—U.S.P.

(Sulphuric Acid; Oil of Vitriol; H_2SO_4.)

Sulphuric acid is a colorless, heavy, oily liquid, without odor, and of an extremely sour taste and acid reaction. It is miscible with water and alcohol in all proportions with the evolution of heat. A precaution to be remembered is that, in diluting, the acid should be added to the water or other diluent, and not the reverse. The acid is not used internally in dentistry. The official preparations are:

> Acidum Sulphuricum Dilutum, U.S.P. (Contains 10 per cent. of absolute Sulphuric Acid.)
> Acidum Sulphuricum Aromaticum, U.S.P. (Contains about 10 per cent. of Sulphuric Acid in Alcohol with the addition of such aromatics as Ginger and Cinnamon.)

Phenolsulphonic acid ($HC_6H_3(HSO_3)_2O$) is prepared from phenol and chemically pure sulphuric acid. It occurs as a faint reddish-colored, heavy, syrupy liquid, of a rather phenol-like odor and a characteristic acid taste and reaction. It unites with some metals to form

Digitized by Google

salts, notably zinc. It is rather difficult to combine phenol and sulphuric acid so that the resultant mixture may be diluted with water without separation of the original constituents. Inasmuch as the concentrated phenolsulphonic acid is rarely used in dentistry, directions here follow for preparing it so that any dilution may be made: Ninety-seven parts by weight of pure concentrated sulphuric acid are gradually added to 93 parts by weight of pure phenol and the mixture kept at a temperature of about 100°C. for about twenty hours, until only a small percentage of sulphuric acid remains uncombined. When the reaction is thus complete, sufficient distilled water is added to make the finished product assay about 80 per cent. phenolsulphonic acid. This liquid is miscible with water in all proportions; and whenever phenolsulphonic acid is mentioned in these pages this product is meant. It should not be confused with the preparation suggested by Cook, of Chicago, which is a heavy, oily, dark brown liquid made by mixing crude sulphuric acid and crude phenol, and which can only be used in full strength, as water causes a separation of the constituents.

Physiologic Action.—When applied to the skin, accidentally or otherwise, sulphuric acid in concentrated form causes an intense, burning pain, and results in a rapid destruction of tissue. The eschar is at first white, gradually becoming brown. The corrosive effect upon mucous membranes is still more marked than upon the skin. The acid rapidly extracts water from the tissue, the alkalies are neutralized, and the proteids precipitated; this results in the complete destruction of the tissue (dissolution). When taken internally large doses cause burning in the throat and esophagus, violent pain in the abdomen, constant vomiting of dark matter, mixed with blood and mucus, difficult breathing, and ultimate collapse.

Therapeutics.—Sulphuric acid is used in dentistry more than any of the other mineral acids. Because of its violent action upon soft tissue, it is seldom used as an escharotic except at times on pulp tissue where its action can be controlled. By many it is used in 30 per cent. solution to neutralize the contents of *gangrenous root-canals*, and for enlarging *fine and tortuous canals*. This is known as the Callahan method. It may also be employed to destroy a *remnant of a pulp* in the apical end of a root, and for *dislodging pulp nodules* in the pulp-chambers and root-canals of teeth. A 10 per cent. solution may be cautiously used for sterilizing the dentin and opening the tubules previous to removing a pulp by pressure anesthesia or bleaching the tooth-structure. Care must always be exercised in the use of sulphuric acid, even in weak solutions, not to get the agent on

Digitized by Google

the enamel of the crown of the tooth or soft tissues of the mouth. It should be remembered here that a weak solution of an alkaline salt, such as sodium bicarbonate, will at once neutralize the action of all mineral acids, and such a solution should be ready to use when these agents are employed. Perhaps the most useful combination of sulphuric acid in dental practice is *phenolsulphonic acid*. This agent may be used in nearly every instance where sulphuric acid is indicated and often to advantage. The author especially recommends its use following the initial dressing of formocresol in cases of *gangrenous pulps* and *dental granulomas*. In *caries* or *necrosis of bone*, in *chronic alveolar abscess*, and *pyorrhea alveolaris*, where the "acid treatment" is indicated, phenolsulphonic acid, properly employed, will give beneficial results.

Incompatibles.—Sulphuric acid is incompatible with alkalies, alkaline carbonates, iodids, and certain salts of lead. It is explosive with oil of turpentine and sugar, and carbonizes syrups because of the sugar therein contained.

ACIDUM NITRICUM—U.S.P.

(Nitric Acid; Aqua Fortis; HNO_3.)

Nitric acid is a strongly corrosive, fuming, caustic liquid, composed of 68 per cent. absolute nitric acid and 32 per cent. of water with which liquid it is miscible in all proportions. It reacts explosively with alcohol and glycerin, and is not used internally in dentistry. The official preparations are:

> Acidum Nitrohydrochloricum, U.S.P. (Aqua Regia; Nitric Acid 18 vols.; Hydrochloric Acid 82 vols.).
> Acidum Nitrohydrochloricum Dilutum, U.S.P. (Nitric Acid, 10.0 mils; Hydrochloric Acid, 45.5 mils; Distilled Water, 194.5 mils).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Nitric acid, though a powerful escharotic, is not as penetrating or painful as sulphuric acid. It produces a characteristic yellow stain on the skin and mucous membrane. In large doses it causes practically the same train of symptoms as sulphuric acid, except that the discoloration is yellow instead of white and then brown. The acid is not used to any extent in dental practice. It may be applied to *warts* and other *fungous growths*, and has proved to be a reliable agent in *phagedenic ulcers*, *chancroids* and *chancres*.

Incompatibles.—This acid is incompatible with alkalies, alkaline carbonates, oxids, lead acetate, and iron sulphate. It explodes with such agents as alcohol, glycerin, phenol, and volatile oils.

Digitized by Google

ACIDUM HYDROCHLORICUM—U.S.P.

(Hydrochloric Acid; Muriatic Acid; HCl.)

Hydrochloric acid is a fuming, corrosive liquid, consisting of about 32 per cent. of absolute hydrochloric acid. It is miscible with water and alcohol in all proportions. It is not used internally in dentistry. The official preparation is:

> Acidum Hydrochloricum Dilutum, U.S.P. (10 per cent. by weight.)

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—The action of hydrochloric acid closely resembles that of the other mineral acids. As a therapeutic agent the strong acid is not used to any extent in dentistry. It is chiefly used to prepare the diluted and other acids. Dilute hydrochloric acid has been used by Andrew and Morris for the *removal of sequestra*, and necrosed bone in *osteitis* and *caries*. It is inferior to phenolsulphonic acid for these purposes.

Incompatibles.—The acid is incompatible with alkalies, carbonates, and silver nitrate.

Treatment of Poisoning by Mineral Acids.—The treatment of poisoning by the mineral acids to be effective should be prompt. The cautious administration of alkalies is indicated to chemically neutralize the acid. Lime-water, magnesia, and soap are best. Carbonates must be used with care, if at all, on account of the liability to rupture the stomach from the evolution of carbon dioxid (a gas). Stevens cautions against the use of the stomach-pump on account of the risk of piercing the softened esophagus. After the acid is neutralized with the alkaline solutions, demulcent drinks, such as albumin-water, milk and raw eggs, should be given to soothe the parts. To control the pain, opium, or its alkaloids, are indicated, and whisky or brandy should be injected subcutaneously in case of collapse.

ACIDUM ACETICUM—U.S.P.

(Acetic Acid; $HC_2H_3O_2$.)

Acetic acid is a liquid composed of 36 per cent. by weight of absolute acetic acid and 64 per cent. of water. It occurs as a clear, colorless liquid, having a strong, vinegar-like odor, and a purely acid taste. Miscible with water and alcohol in all proportions. The average dose of the *diluted acid* is 30 min. (2.0 mils).

Digitized by Google

The official preparations are:

Acidum Aceticum Dilutum, U.S.P. (6 per cent. by weight of absolute Acetic Acid).
Acidum Aceticum Glaciale, U.S.P. (Glacial Acetic Acid; 99 per cent. absolute Acid).

Physiologic Action.—The concentrated acetic acid when applied locally produces redness, vesication, and ultimately slight sloughing. Internally it causes severe gastritis.

Therapeutics.—Acetic acid is applied externally to *indolent ulcers* of the mouth and *canker sores*. A weak solution may be used as a gargle in cases of *pharyngitis* or *sore throat*. Glacial acetic acid may be applied to *fungous growths* in the mouth. It is also used to remove *warts* and *corns*. The dilute acid or vinegar is especially indicated as an antidote in cases of poisoning by alkalies. The quantity to be given must be governed largely by the probable amount of alkali to be neutralized. In bleaching teeth with sodium dioxid, or in using the caustic alkalies about the teeth, a weak solution of acetic acid should be at hand to neutralize any alkali which may get on the soft tissues of the mouth.

ACIDUM TRICHLORACETICUM—U.S.P.

(Trichloracetic Acid; $HC_2Cl_3O_2$.)

Trichloracetic acid occurs as white, deliquescent crystals, freely soluble in water, alcohol, and ether. It is made by acting on glacial acetic acid with chlorin or on hydrated chloral with fuming nitric acid.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Trichloracetic acid acts as an escharotic, astringent, and hemostatic. A solution of 5 to 10 per cent. may be applied to *indolent ulcers*, *mucous patches*, etc. A 10 to 20 per cent. solution is an excellent stimulating agent to be forced through a *sinus* in *chronic alveolar abscess* and into a *stubborn pyorrheal pocket*. It may also be employed in this strength solution as a hemostatic in case of *profuse hemorrhage* after the removal of a pulp by pressure anesthesia. The pure drug or a concentrated solution has been employed to some extent for the removal of small growths about the mouth, such as *hypertrophied gum* or *pulp tissue*. The agent is also used for the removal of *warts* and *corns*.

Monochloracetic Acid.—($HC_2H_2ClO_2$).—This agent occurs as a white crystalline substance, soluble in water and alcohol. As shown by the formula, only one of the hydrogen atoms in glacial

Digitized by Google

acetic acid is displaced by chlorin. Harlan recommended the use of this agent in the treatment of *gangrenous canals* of teeth. The remedy never gained any favor, as its action is uncertain.

ACIDUM LACTICUM—U.S.P.

(Lactic Acid; $HC_3H_5O_3$.)

Lactic acid is an organic acid usually obtained by the fermentation of grape-sugar or milk-sugar. The official preparation is composed of not less than 85 per cent. nor more than 90 per cent. absolute lactic acid. It occurs as a colorless, or slightly yellow, syrupy liquid, nearly odorless, having an acid taste, and absorbing moisture on exposure to air. Besides being miscible with water, it will mix with alcohol and ether in all proportions. The average dose is 30 min. (2.0 mils).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Lactic acid acts as a mild caustic on mucous surfaces. It is also a stimulant and refrigerant. Younger advocates the use of the official acid as a stimulating agent in *pyorrhea alveolaris*. After the roots are scaled, the acid is warmed and injected into the pockets. Stevens recommends a 20 to 50 per cent. solution to be applied to *tuberculous* and *lupous ulcerations of mucous membranes*.

ARSENI TRIOXIDUM—U.S.P.

(Arsenic Trioxid; Arsenous Acid; White Arsenic; As_2O_3.)

Arsenic trioxid occurs either as an opaque, white powder, or in irregular, heavy masses of two varieties: one, amorphous, transparent, and colorless, like glass; the other, crystalline, opaque, and white, resembling porcelain. Contact with moist air gradually changes the glassy into the white, opaque variety; and frequently the same piece has an opaque, white outer crust enclosing the glassy variety. Both are odorless and tasteless. The drug is soluble in water, the amorphous or glassy variety being somewhat more soluble than the crystalline variety. It is sparingly soluble in alcohol and ether, but freely soluble in glycerin, hydrochloric acid and alkaline solutions. In the presence of water it reacts and forms arsenous acid (H_3AsO_3). The average dose is $\frac{1}{30}$ gr. (0.002 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Internally administered in the proper form and dose arsenic acts as an alterative and tonic, improving the appetite and increasing the secretions. It modifies the blood, and in this manner removes morbid conditions. For this reason it is frequently used in the treatment of *syphilis*, *phthisis*, and certain *nervous diseases*. *Salvarsan* and *neosalvarsan*, newer remedies for

Digitized by Google

syphilis, and which will be discussed later, are compounds of arsenic. The drug has been used by some people as a beautifier of the complexion to whiten the skin. Care must be exercised in giving arsenic internally owing to its cumulative effect which may develop poisonous symptoms.

It is the *local action* in which dentists are most interested. Applied to denuded surfaces, such as an exposed pulp, unless its action is controlled, arsenic trioxid is a powerful and painful escharotic. It is readily absorbed by the tissue, and exerts a specific poisonous action upon the cells. It is a peculiar escharotic, and stands in a class by itself. Long[1] states that "the dry powder may be placed on the tongue and allowed to remain for one minute without causing the slightest irritation and, if then thoroughly removed, without producing any effect upon the tissues. On the contrary, if it is allowed to remain until it becomes dissolved and penetrates the tissues, extensive sloughing will result. It acts only after being absorbed by the tissue elements, altering or destroying their vital processes in an obscure manner. Because of this action it is difficult, if not impossible, to limit or antagonize its influence upon the tissue which it has penetrated; and its penetration is not limited by any action of its own, as it does not coagulate albumin. The fact of its being tasteless and nonirritating at first renders its use about the mouth the more dangerous, for by careless handling it may become lodged about the teeth or beneath the edge of the gum, and its presence be not appreciated for hours, until devitalization of the tissue has begun."

Under certain conditions, which are not well understood, the pulp tissue, though exposed, will absolutely resist the action of arsenic trioxid. When this occurs the tissue will generally be found to be equally resistant to other drugs. It is claimed that many of the peasants of Austria have acquired a toleration for the drug, and can take large doses without any untoward effects.

Poisoning and Treatment.—Arsenical poisoning may well be considered in two forms—*local* and *systemic*. *Local arsenical poisoning* occurs most frequently by the escape of arsenical preparations from the cavity during the devitalization of pulp tissue. There is seldom any pain connected with the devitalization of the gum tissue, and herein lies the great danger of extensive necrosis of the soft and frequently the bony structures. The prominent symptom is a white gum, absolutely lifeless; there may be pain, most frequently this symptom is absent; the tooth becomes sore to percussion. In the

[1] Dental Materia Medica, Therapeutics and Prescription Writing.

Digitized by Google

more severe cases the destruction of soft tissue, if unnoticed, goes on until the alveolar process between the affected teeth becomes involved and is destroyed. Sometimes the affected tooth is lost, together with one or two teeth on either side.

In the *treatment of local arsenical poisoning* where the drug has remained only long enough to cause devitalization of the gum tissue, all that is necessary is to first wash the part with an antiseptic solution and then mechanically pick off the dead or sloughed tissue with sterile pliers until hemorrhage ensues, if this is possible; after which stimulating disinfectants should be employed. Here is a good place to use the official solution of hydrogen dioxid. The cavity is open and there is no danger of spreading a possible infection. After removing the dead tissue and disinfecting, the author suggests drying the part and covering it with the oleaginous euroform paste. The patient should be instructed to keep the mouth clean by the use of an antiseptic wash, and the local treatment repeated every day until granulations begin to form; usually one or two treatments will suffice.

In those severe cases where the agent has penetrated to and devitalized the alveolar process, as well as the overlying soft tissue, the first treatment is surgical. After washing with an antiseptic solution, the affected part should be thoroughly curetted with a bone curet or a suitable bur in the engine. It may be necessary in extensive cases to extract the affected tooth, after which the treatment is practically the same as has been outlined above, except where there has been much removal of tissue in operating it is best to pack the part at first with plain gauze thoroughly saturated with the euroform paste. The case should be watched closely, and the stimulating treatment kept up until the part has healed. The tissue in the interproximal space will never be fully reproduced, and will always be the source of more or less annoyance.

Acute systemic arsenical poisoning is manifested by severe abdominal pains, vomiting and purging of "rice-water," persistent thirst, muscular cramps, cyanosis, and collapse. Death usually occurs in from one to three days, and is often preceded by delirium, convulsions, and coma. If recovery follows, the acute symptoms may be gradually replaced by those of *chronic arsenical poisoning*. This condition may also follow the prolonged use of the drug as a medicine, may result from the use of foods or liquors contaminated with arsenic (beer, etc.), may occur from constant inhalation of dust arising from wall-paper or other fabrics colored with arsenical pigments, or may be acquired by workmen in arsenic mines, or in factories in which fumes of the metal are formed. This form of poison-

Digitized by Google

ing may be manifested by gastroenteritis, conjunctivitis, and catarrh of the upper air-passages, anemia, peripheral neuritis, and various cutaneous lesions.

In the treatment of *acute systemic arsenical poisoning*, emetics should be promptly given or the stomach emptied by means of the stomach-pump. The best chemic antidote is freshly prepared ferric hydroxid or ferric hydroxid with magnesia, administered while moist in doses of a tablespoonful or more every ten or fifteen minutes. These compounds themselves are harmless and act by forming insoluble arsenites. Dialysed iron liberates in the stomach a certain amount of free ferric hydroxid and may also be given. This agent has also been recommended in local arsenical poisoning, but its use here is of no benefit, and is wrong (see p. 329). Demulcents and opiates are usually indicated.

Therapeutics.—Arsenic trioxid is used only in dental practice for the purpose of *devitalizing the pulp tissue*. The agent was introduced to the dental profession by Spooner, of Montreal, in about 1836. He first advocated its use for the treatment of sensitive dentin, for he discovered that by sealing the drug in a cavity for a few days, the most sensitive dentin yielded to its influence. The fact, however, that nearly all teeth thus treated subsequently gave trouble because of the death of the pulp and the usual sequelæ, led the profession to abandon this agent for the purpose for which it was introduced; but it has ever since been used as a means of destroying the vitality of the pulp. In fact, until the last few years, it was the only agent employed with any satisfaction. The detail method of using arsenic trioxid as a devitalizing agent will be discussed later. It is well to remember here, however, that when the drug is applied to the pulp of a fully developed tooth, its action and effect are confined to the pulp tissue only, as the organ dies by strangulation at its apex due to the inflammatory reaction from the drug when thus used. Here thrombosis and death of the pulp take place and absorption of the drug by continuity is not likely to occur. This is not true in teeth the roots of which are not fully developed, as in young patients; therefore, arsenic trioxid should be used very cautiously in such cases, if at all. This does not mean that the drug may be used indiscriminately in any case. There is no excuse for careless technic in the local use of the agent.

CHROMII TRIOXIDUM—U.S.P.

(Chromium Trioxid; Chromic Acid; CrO_3.)

Chromium trioxid, called also chromic acid, occurs in small, crimson crystals or rhombic prisms of metallic luster. The drug is

Digitized by Google

without odor, very deliquescent, and thus freely soluble in water. It should be kept in glass-stoppered bottles, and great caution should be observed to avoid an explosion when brought in contact with organic substances, such as cork, tannic acid, sugar, alcohol, glycerin, ether, and collodion. It is very destructive to animal and vegetable tissues.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Chromic acid is an active escharotic, due to its powerful oxidizing influence. Internally administered, it causes intense pain in the abdomen, vomiting and purging; often there is blood in the vomit and stools, ultimately collapse, which frequently ends in death. Alkalies neutralize the compound, but the salts thus formed are poisonous and the stomach should be emptied after the administration of the antidote. Chromium trioxid has been employed for the purpose of devitalizing the pulp tissue in children's teeth. Though the agent may be considered safer than arsenic trioxid, because it is less penetrating, its action is uncertain and unreliable. Stevens recommends a solution of from 20–30 gr. (1.3–2.0 Gm.) to the ounce (30.0 mils) as a stimulating application in *mucous patches*. The fused crystals on a suitable probe may be used with excellent results in the removal of *hypertrophied gum or pulp tissue*, and in closing small *salivary fistulæ*.

Incompatibles.—With organic substances, such as cork, tannic acid, alcohol, glycerin, etc., chromic trioxid easily explodes.

Potassium Dichromate ($K_2Cr_2O_7$).—This salt, sometimes called potassium bichromate, may be employed in weak solutions (5 per cent.) in *indolent ulcers*, *mucous patches* and *sloughing wounds*.

OSMII TETROXIDUM (Nonofficial)

(Osmium Tetroxid; Osmic Acid; OsO_4.)

Osmium tetroxid, called also osmic acid, occurs in yellow, crystalline needles, possessing a pungent odor and burning taste. It is slowly soluble in water (1 : 50); also soluble in alcohol and ether, but the solutions decompose.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—This is a very irritant and caustic agent. When injected into the tissues, even in weak solutions, the blood and tissues turn black, but healing of the wound generally proceeds without interruption. Intraneural injections are used to produce degeneration of nerves for the relief of persistent *neuralgias*. Murphy, Bennett, and others claim excellent results. The affected nerve is exposed by a small incision, and a 1.5 per cent. solution, freshly prepared, is injected into its substance at different

Digitized by Google

points, to the amount of from .5–10 min. (0.3–0.6 mil). If successful, the effects may persist for several months, when it may become necessary to repeat the injection as the cure is rarely, if ever, permanent. Murphy especially mentions the inherent tendency of nerve tissue to regenerate.

POTASSII ET SODII (Nonofficial)

(Kalium and Natrium; Potassium and Sodium; K and Na.)

Potassium and **sodium** are known in chemistry as *alkali-metals;* they vigorously decompose water at ordinary temperatures, forming the hydroxid (hydrate) of the metal, with liberation of hydrogen. The metals occur in soft cylinders, having a silver-white color; and on account of their tendency to combine with oxygen they must be kept under a hydrocarbon liquid, such as coal-oil, benzene, etc.

Action and Therapeutics.—Because of their violent action on soft tissue they are not used as such in medicine. Schreier, of Vienna, introduced a mixture of these metals as a remedy for treating *gangrenous root-canals*. When the mixture is placed in a canal containing dead pulp tissue a violent reaction takes place, water is decomposed, with the evolution of considerable heat, and the hydroxids of the metals are formed. The potassium and sodium hydroxids unite with the fatty products present to form soluble soap, which may be removed by washing. Thus it will be seen that the contents of the canal are chemically destroyed and physically removed, leaving the canal white and clean. Rhein recommends a further sterilization of the canal with a 1 : 500 solution of mercury bichlorid in a 3 per cent. solution of hydrogen dioxid. The use of metallic potassium and sodium will be discussed in detail in that part of this book devoted to Practical Therapeutics.

POTASSII HYDROXIDUM—U.S.P.

(Potassium Hydroxid; Caustic Potash; KOH.)

Potassium hydroxid, more commonly called caustic potash, occurs in hard, white, translucent pencils or fused masses, odorless, and having an acrid and caustic taste. It is freely soluble in water and in alcohol. The official preparation is:

Liquor Potassii Hydroxidi, U.S.P. (5 per cent.).

SODII HYDROXIDUM—U.S.P.

(Sodium Hydroxid; Caustic Soda; NaOH.)

Sodium hydroxid, or caustic soda, occurs in hard, white, translucent pencils or fused masses, odorless, and having an acrid and

Digitized by Google

caustic taste. It is freely soluble in water and in alcohol. The official preparation is:

Liquor Sodii Hydroxidi, U.S.P. (5 per cent.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—The action of caustic potash and caustic soda is similar. They may be classed among the strongest and most penetrating escharotics known. *They should be handled about the mouth and other soft tissues with the greatest caution.* Their action is both rapid and painful. When applied to soft tissue they produce a slough which separates in a few days leaving a granulating ulcer. The escharotic effect is caused by the abstraction of water from the tissues; this softens the latter, and the hydroxyl radical forms with the proteids a soluble alkaline albuminate. When either are taken internally in large doses they produce all the symptoms of corrosive poisoning—burning in the throat and esophagus, intense pain in the abdomen, vomiting and purging of mucus and bloody matter, dysphagia, and ultimate collapse. Small doses freely diluted have the same action as the alkaline carbonates—that of an *antacid.*

Caustic potash and caustic soda are sometimes employed in dental practice to destroy *exuberant granulations.* They are also used in about 10 per cent. solutions to cauterize and destroy a *remnant of a pulp* and to disorganize and aid in the removal of all organic material from the canals of pulpless teeth. This is recognized to-day as absolutely essential in the treatment of these teeth. Whenever these alkalies are employed in the canals of teeth, care must be taken not to force them through the root-end, and their caustic action should be neutralized with weak acids.

Treatment of Poisoning.—The treatment of poisoning with the caustic alkalies to be effective must be prompt. Dilute acetic acid or vinegar will neutralize the alkali and should be given at once. Demulcent drinks are indicated to soothe the corroded parts, and opium to control the pain.

Hydrofluoric Acid (HF).—This is a colorless gas, freely soluble in water. It may be obtained commercially in solution, and because of its power to etch glass, it must be kept in rubber or gutta-percha bottles. On account of its extremely irritating and penetrating property, it is not employed as a therapeutic agent, but is used extensively in dentistry for etching porcelain inlays. It must be handled with the greatest care, for if it is accidentally applied to the soft tissue and not instantly neutralized it will penetrate deeply

Digitized by Google

and produce an ugly ulcer. Many cases of severe local poisoning by the agent have been reported, and it is largely for this reason that it has been included in this work on therapeutics.

The treatment of local poisoning consists in neutralizing the drug chemically by the use of alkalies. A weak solution (5 per cent.) of ammonia water serves the purpose nicely, and the sooner the application is made after the discovery of the burn, the less destruction of tissue there will be. To apply the antidote, the part can be wrapped in plain sterile gauze and this saturated with the remedy. The ammonia will irritate the part and probably cause pain, but the acid must be neutralized, even at the expense of causing pain. After we are reasonably certain that the acid is neutralized, the burn should be antiseptically treated in the usual way. The euroform paste is an excellent remedy to employ.

Ionization.—This is the process of dissociating the ions or radicals of a salt or compound by setting them free by means of the electric current (electrolysis). When the process is used in the treatment of disease, it is called *ionic medication*. Ionization with solutions of zinc chlorid and iodin is frequently used in the treatment of *dental granulomas* and *infections* about the root-ends of pulpless teeth. Whether the benefit comes from the supposed fact that the tissues thus treated are sterilized by virtue of the ions being set free, or from the cauterization by the current used, is a debatable question. Price is of the latter opinion.

Actual Cautery.—The cauterization of tissue by means of heat should be considered briefly under the heading of *Escharotics*. This is accomplished by means of the hot iron or platinum wire, or the galvano-cautery, and affords a prompt and powerful means of destroying tissue. The process is not as painful as one would naturally suppose, and may be used for the purpose of destroying *hypertrophied gum tissue* and other growths. The dental switch boards have an attachment by which this means of cauterization may be easily and practically applied.

IRRITANTS AND COUNTERIRRITANTS

Irritants have been elsewhere defined as agents which, when applied to the skin or mucous membrane of the mouth, produce active hyperemia or inflammation. When irritants are applied to a normal part for the purpose of influencing favorably a diseased part, usually deep-seated, they are called **counterirritants,** and the

Digitized by Google

process *counterirritation*. It is for this latter purpose that irritants are largely employed in dentistry. The extent to which counter-irritation may be carried depends upon how severely diseased is that part which the irritation of the normal part is intended to influence. The agents used are subdivided into different classes according to the degree of irritation following their application. Those which simply produce active hyperemia (redness) of the surface are called *rubefacients;* those which act more severely and cause the formation of a blister are known as *vesicants* or *epispastics*. In many instances the same agent may produce a rubefacient or a vesicant effect, depending upon the strength of the drug and the duration of its application.

Counterirritation may be carried to a greater degree of intensity when a true escharotic effect (destruction of tissue) is produced. This, however, is seldom necessary in dental practice. In fact, as a rule, it should be guarded against, for the formation of an ulcer in the mouth is liable to so cripple the cells that a *mixed infection* may readily follow.

Care should be exercised in the application of counterirritants when the inflammation is superficial. To apply an irritant directly to an inflamed part would only tend to aggravate the condition. Here the site of application should be a short distance from the diseased part. In all deep-seated inflammations, or in cases of neuralgia, it is best to make the application directly over the affected part.

Long[1] states that "the remedial effect of a counterirritant is probably brought about by a threefold action. They influence, *first*, the circulation by causing a hyperemia at the point of irritation, the tendency of the blood supply will be in that direction and away from the original disease; *second*, they turn the attention of the system toward the new point of irritation and away from the disease, partly a mental effect; and, *third*, they influence the innervation of the diseased part by the reflex influence of the irritation. In the sum of their effects they stimulate the movement of fluids within the tissues; hence they are regarded as lymphatic stimulants, and are often employed to stimulate the absorption of a serous or inflammatory exudate."

Counterirritation may be said to be truly indicated in dental practice in the treatment of *pericementitis* and *trigeminal neuralgia*.

[1] Dental Materia Medica, Therapeutics and Prescription Writing.

Digitized by Google

The most important irritants used in dentistry for counter-irritation are:

Heat.	Cantharides.
Iodin.*	Chloroform.
Capsicum.	Aconite.
Mustard.	Camphor.
Oil of Turpentine.	Volatile Oils.*
Menthol.*	

Heat.—This physical agent occupies a prominent place in dentistry as a counterirritant, because of the convenience of the variety of forms and the different degrees in which it can be utilized. Moderate heat applied over a deep-seated inflammation will at once produce active hyperemia. The heat may be gradually carried to a higher degree with comfort to the patient until the serum escapes from the engorged blood-vessels, thus promoting *resolution*. Hot water, the hot-water bag, hot foot-bath, and dry and moist poultices, are all employed in various manners in the treatment of *pericementitis*, *acute alveolar abscess*, *neuralgias*, and for the absorption of *serous* or *inflammatory exudates*.

CAPSICUM—U.S.P.

(Cayenne Pepper.)

Capsicum is the *dried ripe fruit* of *Capsicum frutescens*, a plant growing in tropical America, in Asia, in Africa, and cultivated in gardens. The active principle is *capsicin*, which appears in the form of colorless crystals and has an exceedingly pungent odor; other constituents are a volatile alkaloid, fixed and volatile oil, and fatty acids. The average dose is 1 gr. (0.06 gm.). All of the official preparations may be used in dentistry. They are:

Tinctura Capsici, U.S.P. *Dose*, 8 min. (0.5 mil).
Oleoresina Capsici, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½ gr. (0.03 Gm.).
Emplastrum Capsici, U.S.P. (externally).

Physiologic Action.—Applied to the skin or mucous membrane, capsicum produces a burning sensation and results in a rubefacient or vesicant effect, depending upon the concentration of the drug. Taken internally, in medicinal doses, it creates a sense of warmth in the stomach, stimulates the circulation, and aids the digestive process. In large doses it acts as an irritant poison.

Therapeutics.—Capsicum is used chiefly as a rubefacient, stomachic, and carminative. In dentistry advantage is taken of its irritant properties, and it is largely employed as a counterirri-

Digitized by Google

tant in *pericementitis*. The oleoresin is the most irritating preparation. The official plaster may be prepared by spreading the oleoresin upon resin plaster; this may be cut in convenient form and applied to the dried gum over the affected tooth, resulting in a small blister, but having a beneficial effect upon the deep-seated inflammation. When a rubefacient effect only is desired, the powdered drug may be confined in small concave rubber disks and pressed on the gum, suction holding the remedy in place.

SINAPIS ALBA—U.S.P.

(White Mustard.)

SINAPIS NIGRA—U.S.P.

(Black Mustard.)

White mustard is the *seed* of *Sinapis alba*. **Black mustard** is the *seed* of *Brassica nigra*. Both of these herbs are cultivated extensively in Europe and America. The powdered mustard of commerce is a ground mixture of white and black seed, often more or less adulterated. Mustard in the dry state is not irritating, but in the presence of water it is extremely irritating, and for this reason: White mustard contains a ferment, *myrosin*, and a glucosid, *sinalbin*. In the presence of water the myrosin acts upon the sinalbin and separates from it an irritant volatile oil.

Black mustard contains the same ferment, *myrosin*, and a glucosid, *sinigrin*, which by the action upon it of the ferment in the presence of water also converts it into an intensely irritant volatile oil. This oil of mustard is official, and to it is due both the pungent taste and odor of the moistened powder. Average emetic dose, 2½ dr. (10.0 Gm.). The following preparation is official:

> Oleum Sinapis Volatile, U.S.P. (Volatile Oil of Mustard).
> *Dose*, ⅛ min. (0.008 mil).

Physiologic Action.—Mustard made into a paste with water and applied to the skin, or the powder applied to the moist mucous membrane, causes redness, heat, and a burning pain. Any degree of irritation, from a slight rubefacient effect to severe vesication, may be produced. It should be remembered that the presence of moisture is necessary for the irritant action of mustard, the dry powder is not irritating. Hot water should not be used, as the high heat tends to destroy the ferment necessary to evolve the irritating oil from the glucosid.

Taken internally in small doses, mustard acts as a carminative.

Digitized by Google

In large doses it acts as an emetic, producing prompt emesis without depression, owing to the reflex stimulation of the cardiac and respiratory centers.

Therapeutics.—Mustard is useful in dentistry as a rubefacient. The paper, which was formerly official, cut in proper form, may be applied to the *moist* gum in *nonseptic pericementitis*. Concave rubber cups may also be used to hold the powder, and applied by suction. Powdered mustard may be mixed with warm water to bring about the reaction necessary to produce the irritant volatile oil, and this added to the hot water in taking a hot foot-bath for counter-irritant purposes. To add the mustard direct to the hot water would defeat the object for which the drug is used, as the heat checks the action of the ferment.

On account of the prompt emetic properties of mustard the drug may be employed in cases of *narcotic poisoning*, the dose being a tablespoonful stirred up in warm water, and repeated in fifteen minutes, if necessary.

The drug is sometimes used in *neuralgia* and *muscular rheumatism*. The blisters produced by mustard heal with difficulty; therefore, extensive vesication should be guarded against.

TEREBINTHINA (Nonofficial)

(Turpentine.)

Turpentine is a *solid oleoresin*, or pitch, obtained from *Pinus palustris* and other species of *Pinus*, growing in the Southern United States, especially in North Carolina. The oleoresin exudes from the pine tree when the bark is cut, and when subjected to distillation it yields a volatile oil, which is official, and a solid residue called resin or rosin, also official.

OLEUM TEREBINTHINÆ—U.S.P.

(Oil of Turpentine.)

Oil of turpentine is a thin, colorless liquid, highly inflammable, and of a characteristic odor and taste. It should be kept in well-stoppered bottles, protected from light. The rectified oil is made by distilling the ordinary oil with lime-water. This is the preparation which is largely used in dentistry and the one always used for internal medication. Average dose is 10 min. (0.6 mil) in emulsion. The official preparations are:

Oleum Terebinthinæ Rectificatum, U.S.P.
Emulsum Olei Terebinthinæ, U.S.P. (15 per cent.).
Liniment Terebinthinæ, U.S.P. (35 per cent. with Resin Cerate).

Digitized by Google

Physiologic Action.—When applied to the skin, the drug dilates the cutaneous blood-vessels, producing a sensation of heat and redness, and, if continued long, vesication follows. The drug has decided antiseptic properties, and even in dilute solutions prevents fermentation and putrefaction. Taken internally in medicinal doses, it produces warmth in the stomach, quickened respiration, and increases the rate and tension of the pulse. It also acts as a circulatory stimulant and diuretic.

In large doses it produces all the symptoms of an irritant poison. Some individuals are peculiarly susceptible to the drug, and an erythematous or papular eruption may result from either its internal or external use.

Therapeutics.—Externally, oil of turpentine may be used as a rubefacient in various inflammatory affections. In an *acute alveolar abscess* a turpentine stupe may be employed to advantage. The latter is made by soaking a large piece of flannel in boiling water, wringing it dry, and folding it several times until it is about 6 in. square; from 10 to 30 min. (0.6–2.0 mils) of the oil are then distributed over it, and it is quickly applied to the cheek of the affected side and covered with several layers of fabric. The official liniment makes an excellent remedy to be applied in cases of *neuralgia* and *muscular rheumatism.*

RESINA—U.S.P.

(Rosin; Colophony.)

Rosin is the residue left after distilling the volatile oil from the concrete oleoresin obtained from *Pinus palustris*, and from other species of *Pinus*. It generally occurs in sharp, angular, transparent, amber-colored fragments, frequently covered with a yellow dust; brittle at the ordinary temperature; odor and taste slightly terebinthinate. It is freely soluble in alcohol, ether, chloroform, benzene, fixed or volatile oils. There is one official preparation:

Emplastrum Resinæ; U.S.P. (Rosin Plaster).

Therapeutics.—Rosin is recommended by Callahan to be dissolved in chloroform, making a thin solution to be used in *filling the canals of pulpless teeth* with gutta-percha. Callahan's "rosin solution" contains rosin 12 gr. (0.8 Gm.) and chloroform 3 fl. dr. (12.0 mils).

Digitized by Google

TEREBENUM—U.S.P.

(Terebene.)

This is a liquid hydrocarbon made by oxidizing oil of turpentine with strong sulphuric acid. The average dose is 4 min. (0.25 mil).

Terebene has proved to be a very satisfactory remedy in *bronchitis* with free expectoration. It has also been used in *phthisis*, and may be inhaled from a spray or from the sponge of a respirator. Harlan recommended its use for *gangrenous root-canals;* but, like the essential oils, its use here is unreliable.

CANTHARIS—U.S.P.

(Cantharides; Spanish Flies.)

Cantharides, commonly called Spanish fly, is the *dried* and *powdered beetle* or *insect, Cantharis vesicatoria*, indigenous to Southern and Central Europe. The active principle is *cantharidin*, which is also found in a number of beetles. The drug is used only externally in dentistry. The official preparations are:

Tinctura Cantharidis, U.S.P.
Ceratum Cantharidis, U.S.P.
Collodium Cantharidatum, U.S.P. (60 per cent.).

Physiologic Action.—Cantharides is a powerful irritant, though rather slow in its action. When applied to the skin or mucous membrane, the drug excites a tingling and burning sensation, producing redness and, later, vesication. Its long-continued application often results in pustulation, ulceration, and sloughing.

Butler states that the drug not only causes vascular dilatation of the part to which it is applied, but reflexly dilates the blood-vessels of the deep-seated organs underneath, thus acting as a counter-irritant.

The active principle, cantharidin, may be absorbed through the unbroken skin, and is quite readily absorbed through the mucous membrane, thus its constitutional effects may result from the external use of the drug. The toxic symptoms are great pain in the throat, stomach, and bowels, excessive thirst, irritation of the genitourinary tract with a desire to urinate constantly, albuminous and bloody urine, painful erections of the penis in males, and in women abortion may follow the irritant effect of the drug upon the pelvic viscera. While these symptoms are not liable to follow the use of

Digitized by Google

the drug in dental practice where a limited area is selected as the site of application for counterirritant purposes, it is, nevertheless, well to be familiar with them.

Treatment of Poisoning.—The stomach should be emptied, and demulcents given freely to relieve the irritation. Opium may be required to relieve the pain, and stimulants administered, if necessary. Oils and fatty substances dissolve the cantharidin, and thus hasten its absorption; they should therefore be avoided as demulcents.

Therapeutics.—Cantharides may be used as a counterirritant in cases of *severe pericementitis*, and as it dilates the arterioles subjacently the effect of the drug will ultimately afford relief. Its action is slow but certain. The cerate may be applied as a plaster or the collodion as a varnish. To insure greater activity of the drug, the site of application should be oiled. In *facial neuralgia* cantharides is valuable, the preparation being applied behind the ear.

ACONITUM—U.S.P.

(Aconite; Wolfsbane; Monkshood.)

Aconite is official in the form of the *dried tuberous root* of *Aconitum Napellus*, a plant growing in Europe, Asia, and in America, mostly in mountainous regions. The root closely resembles horseradish; the latter, however, has a pungent odor when scraped, while aconite is odorless. The root at first has a sweetish taste, but soon produces a sense of warmth and tingling, followed by numbness. The active principle is *aconitin*, also official under the title **Aconitina,** U.S.P. This is an alkaloid, occurring in colorless or white rhombic prisms or prismatic powder, is without odor, permanent in the air, and when brought in contact with the mucous membrane, even in dilute solutions, produces a characteristic tingling and more or less anesthesia. The average dose of aconitin is $\frac{1}{400}$ gr. (0.00015 Gm.). The official preparations of aconite are:

Tinctura Aconiti, U.S.P. (10 per cent.). *Dose*, 5 min. (0.3 mil).
Fluidextractum Aconiti, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½ min. (0.03 mil).
Extractum Aconiti, U.S.P. *Dose*, $\frac{1}{6}$ gr. (0.01 Gm.).
Linimentum Aconiti (nonofficial; externally).

Physiologic Action.—Aconite is a true circulatory depressant. It may also be considered a nervous sedative. Applied to the mucous membrane or to the skin for any length of time, it first irritates, caus-

Digitized by Google

ing stimulation, and then depresses the sensory nerve-endings, producing, respectively, tingling, numbness, and local analgesia. The drug lowers the blood-pressure by directly depressing the heart. In the febrile state, moderate doses of aconite cause a decided fall of temperature. Butler claims this is due to various causes: (1) The slowing of the circulation, diminishing the metabolism; (2) the peripheral action of the drug, causing dilatation of the cutaneous blood-vessels; (3) the depressant action upon all muscle-tissue.

Toxicology.—Poisoning by aconite is first manifested by a peculiar tingling sensation of the tongue and lips, which soon extends to the fingers, and may affect the entire surface of the skin. The pulse becomes slow and weak; later it may become rapid and irregular; the respiration is slow and feeble. There is an extreme muscular weakness, especially noticeable in the lower extremities.

Treatment of Poisoning.—The patient should be kept in a recumbent position, the feet slightly raised. The stomach should be thoroughly emptied, keeping the patient in this position. External applications of heat should be made to raise the temperature, and diffusible stimulants, such as alcohol and aromatic spirit of ammonia, should be given; strychnin, atropin, and digitalis may be hypodermically administered for their effect upon the cardiac and respiratory centers; and, if necessary, artificial respiration should be employed.

Therapeutics.—Though the first effect of aconite, locally applied, is that of an irritant, it has not been discussed here because of this property; but rather for the reason that certain preparations of the drug, notably the tincture, have long been used in dental practice as a constituent of counterirritant remedies for the treatment of *apical pericementitis* and *facial neuralgia*. Tincture of aconite has been extensively used to dilute the tincture of iodin for dental purposes. A favorite liniment of the author's for *nonseptic pericementitis* is: Menthol, 20 gr. (1.3 Gm.); chloroform, 1½ fl. dr. (6.0 mils); tincture of aconite, 6½ fl. dr. (26.0 mils). The therapeutics of aconite will be discussed more fully later.

CAMPHORA—U.S.P.

(Camphor; $C_{10}H_{16}O$.)

Camphor is a stearoptene obtained from *Cinnamomum Camphora*, a tree indigenous to Eastern and Southeastern Asia, and cultivated in Italy as an ornamental tree. The drug occurs in white, trans-

Digitized by Google

lucent masses, of a tough consistence and crystalline structure, readily pulverizable in the presence of a little alcohol, ether, or chloroform. It is sparingly soluble in water, but freely soluble in alcohol, ether, chloroform, fixed and volatile oils. When camphor is triturated in about equal proportions with menthol, thymol, phenol, or chloral hydrate, a syrupy liquid results. The average dose is 2 gr. (0.125 Gm.). The following preparations are official:

Aqua Camphoræ, U.S.P.
Linimentum Belladonnæ, U.S.P. (5 per cent.).
Linimentum Camphoræ, U.S.P. (20 per cent. in Cottonseed Oil).
Linimentum Chloroformi, U.S.P. (30 per cent. Chloroform in Soap Liniment.).
Linimentum Saponis, U.S.P. (4.5 per cent.).
Spiritus Camphoræ, U.S.P. (10 per cent.).
Tincturæ Opii Camphorata, U.S.P. (Camphorated Tincture of Opium; Paregoric; 0.4 per cent.). *Dose*, 2 fl. dr. (8.0 mils).

Physiologic Action.—Upon the unbroken skin, camphor acts as an anesthetic; but on the mucous membrane it is irritating, and in concentrated form may produce inflammation and even sloughing. In medicinal doses it acts as a carminative and antispasmodic. In large doses, it causes confusion of thought, headache, gastric irritation, a rapid feeble pulse, convulsions, and collapse.

Therapeutics.—Camphor is used as a rubefacient, circulatory stimulant, and antispasmodic. The spirit of camphor has long been a household remedy for *headache*, *syncope*, and *faintness*. It is administered by inhalation; camphorated oil (5 per cent. of camphor in olive oil) is a useful remedy in *colds* and *croup*. The liniments containing camphor, as well as the spirit, are extensively used in *sprains*, *bruises*, *muscular rheumatism*, and *neuralgia*. Prinz advocates a combination of thymol (2 parts), phenol crystals (2 parts), and camphor (1 part), called *thymocamphen*, as an anodyne in *root-canal treatment*. In *acute coryza*, Stevens recommends adding a teaspoonful of powdered camphor to a tumbler of hot water, and inhaling the fumes.

EMOLLIENTS, DEMULCENTS, AND PROTECTIVES

Emollients are substances of a fatty nature which soften and relax the tissue to which they are applied, and at the same time shield the part from external irritation.

Digitized by Google

The most important emollients are:

Glycerin.	Fats and Oils:
Soap Liniment.	Lard.
Starch.	Olive Oil.
Hot Fomentations.	Almond Oil.
Poultices:	Linseed Oil.
Linseed Meal.	Cottonseed Oil.
Oatmeal.	Lanolin.
Bran.	Petrolatum.
Bread.	Paraffin.
Flour.	Cacao Butter.
Figs, etc.	Wax.

Demulcents are substances largely of a mucilaginous character which soothe and protect the tissues to which they are applied. The important demulcents are:

Acacia.	Marshmallow.
Tragacanth.	White of Egg.
Licorice Root.	Sassafras Pith.
Flax Seed.	Slippery Elm.

Protectives are agents used to mechanically cover and protect injured or diseased surfaces from extraneous influences, as air, water, bacteria, etc. Some protectives, besides affording mechanical protection to the part, also absorb moisture or fluids by capillary attraction. The so-called *dusting powders* and *fixed dressings* are included in this group. The chief protectives are:

Collodion.	Talc.
Solution of Gutta-percha.	Kaolin.
Court Plaster.	Lycopodium.
Charcoal.*	Zinc Oxid.*
Animal Charcoal.*	Chalk.*
Purified Cotton.	Magnesium Carbonate.*

"Emollient" and "demulcent" are largely interchangeable terms, and no distinct division between the substances used as such can be made. The emollient, demulcent, and protective agents will, therefore, be discussed here without reference to the three subdivisions into which they have been grouped.

GLYCERINUM—U.S.P.

(Glycerin; $C_3H_5(OH)_3$.)

Glycerin is a syrupy liquid obtained by the decomposition of fats and fixed oils. It is clear, colorless, without odor, of a sweetish, warm taste, and when exposed to the air slowly absorbs moisture.

Digitized by Google

Freely soluble in water and alcohol, but insoluble in ether, chloroform, and oils. Chemically considered, it is an alcohol. Average dose is 1 fl. dr. (4.0 mils). The following preparations are official:

Glyceritum Phenolis, U.S.P. (20 per cent. of Phenol).
Glyceritum Acidi Tannici, U.S.P. (20 per cent. Tannic Acid).
Glyceritum Amyli, U.S.P. (Starch, 10; Water, 10; Glycerin, 80).
Glyceritum Boroglycerini, U.S.P. (50 per cent. of Boroglycerin).
Glyceritum Hydrastis, U.S.P. (1.0 mils of preparation contains 1.0 gm. of Hydrastis).
Glyceritum Ferri, Quininæ, et Strychninæ Phosphatum, U.S.P. VIII. *Dose*, 10–30 min. (0.6–2.0 mils).
Gelatinum Glycerinatum, U.S.P. (equal parts of Gelatin and Glycerin).
Suppositoria Glycerini, U.S.P. (each Suppository contains 45 gr.–3.0 gm. of Glycerin gelatinized by means of a Sodium Soap).
Cataplasma Koalini, U.S.P. VIII. (Kaolin, 57.7 parts; Glycerin, 37.5 parts; Boric Acid, 4.5 parts; Methyl Salicylate, 2 parts; Thymol and Oil of Peppermint, each ½ part).

Glycerin is also a constituent of many extracts and fluid extracts, added largely to preserve the preparations.

Physiologic Action.—When glycerin is applied to sensitive skin or mucous membrane, it has a tendency to irritate, due to the abstraction of water from the tissues. Taken internally, in large doses, glycerin acts as a cathartic, its action here probably being due also to its hygroscopic property. It is antiseptic in that it inhibits, to an extent, microorganic growth. Authorities differ as to whether or not glycerin in moderate doses acts as a food.

Therapeutics.—Externally applied, glycerin is an efficient and popular emollient. For *chapped hands* and *after shaving* the following lotion is valuable: Witch-hazel and bay-rum, each 1 fl. oz. (30.0 mils); glycerin, 1 fl. oz. (30.0 mils); borax, ½ dr. (2.0 Gm.). The formerly official cataplasm of kaolin, applied hot, is an excellent substitute for ordinary poultices where the latter are indicated. In *inflammatory disease of the mouth, throat, and nose*, glycerin is used to advantage as a vehicle for other drugs.

Glycerite of boroglycerin is a constituent of many *antiseptic mouth-washes;* and glycerite of tannic acid may be added, ½ fl. dr. to the fl. oz. (2.0 mils–30.0 mils), to mouth-washes to add astringency. Glycerite of tannic acid may also be applied to *flabby* and *inflamed gums*. Glycerin is a constituent of the author's "pyorrhea

Digitized by Google

astringent" (see p. 429). It not only depletes the engorged capillaries, but also serves to spread the drugs contained therein over the entire surface.

Internally it is largely employed in *habitual constipation*. Here the official suppository may be employed.

Incompatibles.—Powerful oxidizing agents, like sodium dioxid, chromic acid, and potassium permanganate, explode with glycerin.

AMYLUM—U.S.P.

(Starch; $C_6H_{10}O_5$.)

Starch is a white powder, or masses, obtained from the fecula of the *seed* of *Zea Mays*, or Indian corn. Wheat starch (flour) and rice starch are also used in therapeutics. It is insoluble in water; soluble in boiling water. There is only one official preparation:

Glyceritum Amyli, U.S.P. (10 per cent.).

Therapeutics.—Starch is used externally in the form of dusting powders or "pastes" as protective applications. It is an antidote for *iodin poisoning*, the insoluble starch iodid being formed.

In pharmacy the glycerite of amyl is used as an excipient for making pill-masses of certain drugs.

OLEUM OLIVÆ—U.S.P.

(Olive Oil; Sweet Oil.)

Olive oil is a fixed oil expressed from the *ripe fruit* of *Olea europea*, a shrubby tree indigenous to Western Asia, but cultivated in several countries, including the southern part of the United States, especially California. The oil is a pale yellow or light greenish-yellow liquid, of a characteristic odor, and an oleaginous taste. It should be kept in well-stoppered bottles, in a cool place. The average dose is 1 fl. oz. (30.0 mils).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Olive oil is a bland and agreeable oil, and is used extensively as an emollient and demulcent. It is readily absorbed from the skin and mucous membrane, and with phenol (5 per cent.) it makes a soothing, protective application for superficial *wounds, bruises, burns, insect bites, stings, etc.* Camphorated olive oil (camphor 5 per cent.) is a useful remedy to rub on the throat and chest in cases of *colds* and *croup* in children.

In cases of *poisoning from corrosive irritating drugs*, olive oil is a valuable demulcent, unless the poison be soluble in an oil, in which

Digitized by Google

case any fat or oil is contraindicated, as it would tend to hasten the absorption of the poison. Internally administered, olive oil is not only demulcent, but possesses marked nutritive and laxative properties. It is often taken in wines and liquors for its nutritive value.

LINUM—U.S.P.

(Linseed; Flaxseed.)

Linseed is the *ground seed* of *Linum usitatissimum*, or common flax, which is cultivated in all temperate countries. Its chief ingredients are a fixed oil and a mucilaginous principle. The oil (Oleum Lini, U.S.P.) is official, and enters as an essential constituent into the following preparations:

Linimentum Calcis, U.S.P.
Liquor Cresolis Compositus, U.S.P.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—An infusion or tea of flaxseed makes an excellent *demulcent drink*. The ground flaxseed is probably used for the ordinary poultice *in deep-seated inflammations* more than any other substance. The oil is similar to olive oil in its action and uses. Mixed with an equal quantity of lime-water, it makes the official linimentum calcis, commonly called carron oil, an excellent remedy for the treatment of *burns*. The liniment of soft soap, called tincture of green soap, should be in every dental office, and used frequently on the *hands for detergent purposes*.

OLEUM GOSSYPII SEMINIS—U.S.P.

(Cottonseed Oil.)

Cottonseed oil is a fixed oil obtained from the *seed* of cultivated varieties of *Gossypium herbaceum*. It occurs as a pale yellow, oily liquid, odorless or nearly odorless, and having a bland taste. It is slightly soluble in alcohol; miscible with ether, chloroform, and petrolatum. It enters as an essential constituent into *soft soap*, which is official (Sapo Mollis, U.S.P.); as is also the *liniment of soft soap* (Linimentum Saponis Mollis, U.S.P.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Cottonseed oil is used for its emollient and soothing properties. It has taken the place of linseed oil in the U.S.P. IX in the manufacture of soft soap. It is also used as a substitute for almond and olive oil, and enters into the composition of many liniments.

Digitized by Google

ADEPS LANÆ—U.S.P.

(Lanolin; Wool Fat.)

Lanolin, or **wool fat,** is the *purified fat* of the *wool* of sheep, freed from water. It is a yellowish-white, unctuous substance, having a faint peculiar odor. The Pharmacopeia also recognized a wool fat which contains about 30 per cent. of water (Adeps Lanæ Hydrosus, U.S.P.).

Therapeutics.—Lanolin is extensively used as a vehicle for ointments. It is bland and unirritating, does not become rancid, and has the distinct advantage of being miscible with twice its weight of water without losing its ointment-like character. With this vehicle, therefore, aqueous substances may be made into ointments. It is used as the vehicle for *devitalizing pastes* for the dental pulp. The hydrous wool fat, in pharmacy, is used as a constituent in many of the official ointments. It possesses the advantage over many vehicles used for ointments in that it is rapidly absorbed by the skin, thus carrying with it the medicaments contained therein.

PETROLATUM—U.S.P.

(Petroleum Jelly; Vaselin.)

Petrolatum is a mixture of hydrocarbons, chiefly of the methane series, obtained by distilling off the more volatile portions of petroleum and purifying the residue. The melting-point should be between 45° and 48°C. Three forms are official: Petrolatum, U.S.P. (ordinary petrolatum), a yellowish, ointment-like mass; Petrolatum Album, U.S.P. (white petrolatum), a white ointment-like mass, and Petrolatum Liquidum, U.S.P. (liquid petroleum), a clear, colorless, oily liquid. The latter is also called *Liquid vaselin* and is known by such trade names as *petronol* and *albolin.*

Therapeutics.—Petrolatum is bland and unirritating, and is extensively used as an emollient and protective dressing. It is largely substituted for benzolated lard in ointments. Phenolized vaselin (3 per cent. phenol) is a household remedy for *burns*, *bruises*, and other *excoriations.* An ointment made from orthoform (40 parts) and europhen (60 parts), with liquid vaselin as the vehicle, is a specific for pain following the *extraction of teeth* where the alveolar process has been exposed; it acts here also as an emollient and protective. Liquid vaselin containing 2 per cent. of menthol is an excellent emollient to be used as a spray in *acute coryza.*

Digitized by Google

PARAFFINUM—U.S.P.

(Paraffin.)

Paraffin should be discussed in connection with *petrolatum*. It is a mixture of solid hydrocarbons obtained from the same source. It is a white solid, and should melt between 51.6° and 57.2° C.

Therapeutics.—Gersung, in 1900, recommended the subcutaneous and submucous injection of paraffin for the correction of various defects and for cosmetic purposes. Beck, of Chicago, has employed the method quite extensively for the correction of nasal deformities; and paraffin has also been injected about the jaws with excellent results in cases of *necrosis* and other *diseases where bone tissue has been lost or removed*. The paraffin should be sterilized by boiling and must be injected with a specially prepared syringe while warm and semisolid. This substance when so injected is not absorbed, but finally becomes encapsulated. Paraffin has also been used for filling root-canals. It affords the protection from moisture necessary when filling teeth with "plastic porcelain," or the various silicate cements on the market; and may also be used to protect the enamel of the crown of the tooth when employing acids in the canal.

ACACIA—U.S.P.

(Gum Arabic.)

Acacia is a *gummy exudation* obtained from *Acacia Senegal*, and other species of *Acacia*, a small tree, deeply and firmly rooted, growing in India, Africa, and other countries. It is soluble in water. The following preparations are official:

Mucilago Acaciæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, freely.
Syrupus Acaciæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, freely.

Therapeutics.—Acacia is used in therapeutics chiefly for its demulcent property. The mucilage may be further diluted with water and administered freely in cases of *poisoning from corrosive drugs*. In pharmacy it is the *emulsifying agent* generally employed in making emulsions of oleaginous drugs; it is also used in pills and lozenges for holding together the active ingredients.

Incompatibles.—It is incompatible with alcohol, ferric salts, and borax.

TRAGACANTHA—U.S.P.

(Tragacanth.)

Tragacanth is a *gummy exudation* obtained from *Astragalus gummifer*, a small shrub growing in Western Asia. This gum differs

Digitized by Google

from acacia in that it does not dissolve in water, but swells up in it and forms a gelatinous mass. The official preparation is:

Mucilago Tragacanthæ, U.S.P.

Therapeutics.—Though possessing demulcent properties, it is impracticable to use it as such on account of its insolubility. The mucilage of tragacanth may be used as an emollient in *chapped hands* and other *skin lesions*. In pharmacy it is used for suspending resinous and oleaginous drugs in water; it also enters into most of the official troches.

GLYCYRRHIZA—U.S.P.

(Licorice Root.)

Glycyrrhiza is the dried *rhizome* and *root* of *Glycyrrhiza glabra*, or *Glycyrrhiza glandulifera*, a perennial herb growing in the countries lying on the northern and southern shores of the Mediterranean Sea; also cultivated in England and the United States. It contains a glucosid, *glycyrrhizin*, to which is due its sweetish taste; it also contains an acrid resin, starch and gum. The following preparations of licorice are official:

Fluidextractum Glycyrrhizæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 15–60 min. (1.0–4.0 mils).
Extractum Glycyrrhizæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, freely.
Extractum Glycyrrhizæ Purum, U.S.P. *Dose*, freely.
Mistura Glycyrrhizæ Composita, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–4 fl. dr. (4.0–16.0 mils).
Pulvis Glycyrrhizæ Compositus, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½–2 dr. (2.0–8.0 Gm.).
Elixir Glycyrrhizæ (from Fluidextract), U.S.P. *Dose*, freely.
Glycyrrhizinum Ammoniatum, U.S.P. *Dose*, 4 gr. (0.25 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Licorice root is demulcent and slightly laxative, and when chewed increases the flow of saliva. It slightly stimulates and favors the secretion of mucus in the respiratory passages. It is a popular remedy for *cough*, *sore throat*, and *hoarseness*. It is found in many of the pharmaceutic preparations, and may be used to advantage in masking the taste of nauseating drugs. The official fluid extract, the extract, and the syrup (N. F.) are largely used for this latter purpose.

ALTHÆA—U.S.P.

(Marshmallow Root.)

Marshmallow is the *dried root* of *Althæa officinalis*, a perennial herb growing in most countries with a temperate climate. Its chief constituents are mucilage, sugar, and starch.

Digitized by Google

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Marshmallow is emollient, demulcent, and protective, and may be employed as such in all *irritable* and *inflamed conditions* of the mucous membrane and skin.

SASSAFRAS MEDULLA (Nonofficial)

(Sassafras Pith.)

Sassafras is the *dried pith* obtained from the branches of *Sassafras variifolium*, a tree indigenous to North America. Both the drug and mucilage of sassafras were official in the U.S.P. VIII.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Mucilage of sassafras pith is a pleasant demulcent, and may be used wherever such is indicated. An infusion or tea made from the bark of the root of the sassafras tree has long been a domestic remedy as a "spring tonic."

ULMUS—U.S.P.

(Slippery Elm.)

Slippery elm is the *dried inner bark* of *Ulmus fulva*, a large tree growing in the United States and Canada. It contains much mucilaginous matter.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—The mucilage of elm, formerly official, is a decided demulcent, and is supposed to possess nutritive properties. It is pleasant to the taste, and generally does not disturb the stomach. It is especially useful after *washing out the stomach* for any purpose. In the form of troches (elm lozenges), it is useful as a soothing agent in *irritated* or *sore throat*.

COLLODIUM—U.S.P.

(Collodion.)

Collodion is a solution of pyroxylin, or gun cotton, 4, in ether 75, and alcohol 25 parts. It is a colorless, syrupy liquid, highly inflammable, and having a strong ethereal odor. The following preparations are official:

Collodium Flexile, U.S.P.
Collodium Cantharidatum, U.S.P. (Blistering Collodion; Cantharides, 60 per cent.).

Therapeutics.—When applied to the skin, collodion quickly dries and forms a thin film, which not only protects an exposed part, but produces slight compression. It therefore makes an excellent protective for *aseptic wounds*, *fissures*, and *punctures*. This agent affords

Digitized by Google

an efficient means of securing neat antiseptic dressings on dentists' hands which may be *abraded* or *punctured* by instruments. The wound, if necessary, can be cauterized with phenol or silver nitrate, and then covered with an antiseptic powder like europhen or boric acid; this should be covered with absorbent cotton and the dressing retained with collodion. Thus treated, the wound is well protected and should heal by first intention. The flexible collodion cracks less readily than the plain collodion, and may be used if desired.

Styptic collodion was formerly official and contained 20 per cent. of tannic acid. When applied to small wounds, like *cold-sores* on the lip, it will check capillary oozing. Cantharidal or blistering collodion may be used as a counterirritant in *pericemental inflammations* and *neuralgias*.

Gutta-perchæ (nonofficial).—Gutta-percha is a *milky, concrete exudation*, occurring in several species of the gutta tree, which is indigenous to the Malay Archipelago, Sulu Islands, and Java; recently it was learned that the gutta tree grows abundantly in the Philippine Islands. When pure, gutta-percha has a specific coloring between pink and grayish-white. Single pieces are not adhesive at ordinary temperatures, but heated slightly and pressed together the pieces adhere and cannot be separated. Gutta-percha is insoluble in water and alcohol, but soluble in chloroform, eucalyptol, and cineol.

Therapeutics.—Gutta-percha dissolved in chloroform may be used as a protective for *small wounds*. It has also been employed as a means of retaining antiseptic and other dressings in the canals of teeth. For this purpose it does not exclude the bacteria-laden saliva, and should be discarded. The solution, known as *chloropercha*, has long been successfully used in moistening the dried canal previous to filling with a gutta-percha cone. The author suggests heating the white base-plate gutta-percha in eucalyptol (see p. 360), when a thick, creamy solution results, which becomes a soft solid when cold. This preparation is used in filling root-canals, as will be explained in Practical Therapeutics. Cochran suggests making a saturated solution of thymol in eucalyptol, and after cutting the gutta-percha with chloroform mixing the two solutions, permitting the chloroform to evaporate, when a soft solid results which is used in filling root-canals.

TALCUM PURIFICATUM—U.S.P.

(Purified Talc; Magnesium Silicate; Soapstone.)

Purified talc is a native, hydrous *magnesium silicate*, and occurs as a very fine, white, or grayish-white powder, which adheres to the

Digitized by Google

skin. It feels greasy to the touch, hence it is commonly called *soapstone*. The Pharmacopeia suggests using purified talc in the preparation of essential oil waters.

Therapeutics.—Finely powdered talc is employed as a dusting powder in inflammatory diseases of the skin, such as *acute erythematous eczema*. A useful formula is: Pulverized talc, 4 dr. (16.0 Gm.); zinc oxid, 3 dr. (12.0 Gm.); boric acid, 1 dr. (4.0 Gm.). This powder is also useful in *chafing*. Many of the commercial talcum powders contain talc and boric acid in varying proportions. Talc, or soapstone, is used in dentistry also to coat the model so that it will draw nicely from the moulding sand in making a metal die.

KAOLINUM (Nonofficial)

(Fuller's Earth; Hydrated Aluminum Silicate.)

Kaolin is a native *aluminum silicate*, occurring as a soft, white, or yellowish-white powder, odorless, and having an earthy or clay-like taste. It is insoluble in water, but becomes unctuous when moist. It is a very pure clay, having the chemic formula, $H_2Al_2Si_2O_8.H_2O$.

Therapeutics.—The cataplasm, formerly official, is used as a poultice, applied hot, in *mild local infections* about the face and jaws. Kaolin is also used in dusting powders, and is a constituent of *porcelain body*. In pharmacy it is used in pills containing easily reduced drugs, like silver nitrate and potassium permanganate, which cannot be mixed with the ordinary pill excipients.

LYCOPODIUM—U.S.P.

Lycopodium is the *spores* of *Lycopodium clavatum* and other species of *Lycopodium*, mosses growing in nearly all temperate countries. It is a fine powder, pale yellow in color, very mobile, nearly inodorous, tasteless, floats upon water and is not wetted by it, and burns quickly when thrown into a flame.

Therapeutics.—Lycopodium is employed in therapeutics as a protective. It possesses great absorbent power for oils, which, together with its dryness and lightness, renders it an excellent dusting-powder for superficial *ulcers*, *eczema*, etc. In dentistry it is also used, like soapstone, for coating models in making dies; and in pharmacy it is employed to prevent the adhesion of newly-made pills and suppositories.

Digitized by Google

In the discussion of drugs thus far, the author has endeavored to group them, as far as was possible, into local and general remedies. Those which have been considered are employed largely in therapeutics for their *local effects* upon the skin and mucous membranes of the respiratory and alimentary passages. The consideration of the next group, *local anesthetics*, will naturally lead us into the discussion of *general anesthetics*, and from then on general remedies will be considered.

ANESTHETICS

Anesthetics have been elsewhere defined as agents which temporarily destroy sensation. They are subdivided into two classes: (1) Those which produce *local anesthesia;* and (2) those which produce *general anesthesia*. By local anesthesia is meant the abolition of sensibility to *pain* in a part; general anesthesia means the abolition of all sensibility, including unconsciousness. In the administration of general anesthetics, the patients experience a stage where they are *insensible to pain*, though not unconscious. This condition is known as *analgesia*, which means the absence of sensibility to pain. Agents which produce the condition, whether general anesthetics, like *nitrous oxid*, *chloroform* or *ether*, or other drugs, such as *opium*, the coal-tar derivatives—*antipyrin*, *acetanilid*, and *phenacetin*—the *bromids*, *chloral*, etc., are called *analgesics*. Closely associated with these drugs is the term *anodyne*, which means an agent that relieves *pain*. An anodyne effect presupposes the presence of pain, an analgesic effect does not; it simply means that pain cannot be experienced. Many drugs possess local anodyne properties, such as many *volatile oils*, *phenol*, *cresol*, etc.

LOCAL ANESTHETICS

Local anesthetic agents may be conveniently subdivided into two classes, according to the mode of action by which the anesthetic effect of the drug is produced.

1. **Refrigerant.**—Those agents which produce a degree of *cold* by the abstraction of heat from the part to which they are applied, even to the point of freezing the tissue.

2. **Paralyzant.**—Those agents which, when applied locally, have a direct paralyzant action upon the sensory nerve terminals.

Refrigerant.	*Paralyzant.*
Ethyl Chlorid Spray.	Cocain.
Ether Spray.	Tropacocain.

Digitized by Google

Rhigolene Spray.	Eucain.
Ice.	Novocain.
	Neothesin.
	Chloretone.
	Orthoform.

ÆTHYLIS CHLORIDUM—U.S.P.

(Ethyl Chlorid; Kelene; C_2H_5Cl.)

Ethyl chlorid is prepared by the action of hydrochloric acid gas upon absolute ethyl alcohol, the hydroxyl radical in the latter being replaced by chlorin. It occurs as a colorless, extremely volatile liquid, having an odor resembling that of chloroform and a burning taste. The vapor is highly inflammable, *and it should not be used near a gas-flame or burning alcohol-lamp.*

Physiologic Action.—Applied locally by means of a spray, ethyl chlorid acts as a refrigerant local anesthetic, the tissues soon becoming white and superficially frozen from the abstraction of heat.

The drug may be inhaled from gauze or a specially devised inhaler which is adjusted to the face, when it acts as a general anesthetic. The anesthesia is usually accompanied by a fall of arterial pressure and a gradual decrease in the pulse-rate, due in all probability to a direct action upon the heart. The patient becomes anesthetized, as a rule, in from 1 to 3 minutes, and from 1–2 fl. dr. (4.0–8.0 mils) of the drug being required, depending upon the patient. Its action is rapid and unirritating to the mucous membrane of the respiratory passages; there is an absence of choking sensation or cyanosis; and but rarely does nausea or vomiting follow. The recovery is generally complete in from 2 to 5 minutes.

Therapeutics.—Ethyl chlorid is usually sold in small metallic or glass tubes, provided with a lever-spring or screw top. When the lever is depressed or the screw released, the liquid is expelled as a spray by the heat of the hand. This drug is a safe and convenient local anesthetic for *minor operations* requiring but a single incision, as in the lancing of *abscesses, boils,* etc., or for the *extraction of loose teeth.* Its local anesthetic action is not sufficiently profound to permit the painless extraction of firmly attached teeth. There is very little danger attending the local use of the drug from inhalation.

The drug may be used as a general anesthetic for *minor surgical operations* necessitating the administration of a general anesthetic. Ethyl chlorid is a constituent of many commercial products sold for general anesthetic purposes, among which may be mentioned *somnoform, narcotile,* etc.

Digitized by Google

As a general anesthetic, ethyl chlorid has the one advantage over nitrous oxid, or nitrous oxid and oxygen, of not requiring a cumbersome apparatus for its administration, but its safety cannot be compared with that of nitrous oxid. Though the drug has only been used a few years as a general anesthetic, quite a number of deaths from its use have been reported.

Ether Spray.—Ether, or ether and alcohol, in the form of a spray, has been suggested as a means of *desensitizing dentin*. It acts as a refrigerant local anesthetic.

Rhigolene Spray.—Rhigolene is an unofficial distillate of petroleum. It may be used as a spray for the same purpose as ether, but has no advantages over the latter.

Ice.—Ice, or the ice and salt mixture, was probably the first of all local anesthetics. Though its use is largely superseded, especially in the mouth, by the volatile liquids, like ether and ethyl chlorid, it still has a place of usefulness upon accessible surfaces.

An ice-poultice may be made by sewing up tightly in rubber cloth crushed ice mixed with salt and sawdust, bran, or ground flaxseed. Local applications of cold in this manner abstract heat from the part, lessen the sensibility of the peripheral nerve-filaments, cause constriction of the blood-vessels traversing the tissues exposed to the cold, and by reflex action affect the vascularity of the parts subjacent to the site of application.

COCA (Nonofficial)

Coca is the *dried leaves* of *Erythroxylon coca*, a plant growing in the mountainous regions of Peru, Bolivia, and other South American states. It contains a number of alkaloids, the most important being *cocain*, which is official both as the alkaloid and alkaloidal salt under the titles, respectively, *Cocaina* and *Cocainæ Hydrochloridum*.

The general rule adopted by the United States Pharmacopeia in the nomenclature of articles of botanical origin is for the Latin title to be the *genus* name of the plant and not the species. Coca, which was official in the U.S.P. VIII, is a notable exception to this rule; for instead of calling this article Erythroxylon it was officially designated Coca. While the early generic names of plants were selected rather arbitrarily, the differentiation of their species is almost invariably indicated in their specific names; yet some of the native plant names lead to great confusion. Students frequently confuse the names cocoa (cacao), coco (nut), and coca, three separate and distinct plants. When Von Humboldt discovered the chocolate nut he

Digitized by Google

named it Theobroma (meaning God's drink) and cacao, after the native Indian name; but it has always been confused, because of the similarity of names, with the Cocos nucifera, the milk-bearing cocoa-nut; and by many to-day the oil of theobroma is called cocoa-butter instead of cacao. It should be remembered that *coca* is the name for the plant, from the leaves of which that valuable alkaloid, *cocain* is obtained. There are now no official preparations of this drug.

COCAINA—U.S.P.

(Cocain; $C_{17}H_{21}NO_4$.)

Cocain occurs in the form of colorless, prismatic crystals, having the bitter taste characteristic of all alkaloids, and producing on the tongue a temporary numbness. It is sparingly soluble in water (1–600 parts), much more so in alcohol (1–6.5 parts), more readily in both when warm, in ether (1–3.5), and in the oils (about 1–12). The average dose is about ¼ gr. (0.016 Gm.).

COCAINÆ HYDROCHLORIDUM—U.S.P.

(Cocain Hydrochlorid; $C_{17}H_{21}NO_4.HCl$.)

Cocain hydrochlorid, called previous to the U.S.P. of 1900 cocain hydrochlorate, occurs in the form of colorless prisms, lustrous leaflets or flakes, or crystalline powder. This alkaloidal salt, like the alkaloid itself, has a bitter taste, and leaves a temporary numbness on the tongue. It is freely soluble in water (1–c.4 part), somewhat less so in alcohol (1–3.2 parts); soluble in glycerin and insoluble in ether and oils.

The amount to be injected hypodermically at one time should not exceed ¼ to ½ gr. (0.016–0.03 Gm.).

Brief History.—It may be stated as a matter of history that the introduction of cocain to the medical and dental world was due to Koller, of Vienna, who, in 1884, reported his experiments with the drug to the Congress of German Oculists. In a few weeks cocain or the alkaloidal salt, cocain hydrochlorid, was being used as a local anesthetic all over the world. Among the men whose names should be mentioned as early investigators are the following: Hepburn, Biggs, Hall, Halsted, Rudolph Matas, J. L. Corning, and C. P. Pruyn. Hall, in 1884, demonstrated by an experiment upon himself that he could inject solutions of cocain hydrochlorid into the infraorbital nerve and anesthetize the teeth. Halsted, in the following year, 1885, and some gentlemen in South America about

Digitized by Google

the same time, not knowing that Halsted was working along the same line, demonstrated that they could inject 9 min. of a 4 per cent. solution into the inferior dental nerve as it entered the inferior dental canal, and produce complete anesthesia of the gums and teeth on that side of the jaw. This method is known to-day as "nerve blocking" or *conductive anesthesia.* It was about this time that Pruyn, of Chicago, conducted a long series of experiments on dogs, and to him much credit is due for the high place which cocain occupies in dental practice to-day. In speaking of these experiments, Pruyn[1] says: "The first dog that I experimented on, and subsequently killed, made me shudder to see the poor animal in the throes of death *fighting for his breath.* It made an impression on me that has lasted ever since, and taught me that cocain should be handled very carefully, particularly when we are using it upon the human subject." Therefore, the alarming symptoms and the frequent fatalities which followed the early use of cocain caused it for a time to be barred from general use in general and dental surgery. The fact, however, that many patients objected to general anesthetics on account of the unconsciousness induced, and the further fact that every conscientious surgeon recognized that a certain amount of danger always attends the administration of general anesthetics were sufficient to cause a few men to experiment further with the drug. They diminished the strength of the solution, and gradually mastered the technic of its administration until alarming symptoms and fatalities became very infrequent.

Physiologic Action.—Whatever effects result from the administration of preparations of coca are due entirely to the alkaloids contained therein. Cocain is a typical local anesthetic of the paralyzant group. When the drug enters the circulation its first action is that of a stimulant, followed shortly by a depressant effect. It is a general protoplasmic poison, and acts deleteriously upon all kinds of tissue. It has been supposed that the drug acts more prominently upon nerve tissue, but such is not the case. It is true that its action is more discernible upon nerve tissue for the reason that this tissue is the medium of sensation and expression. When applied locally or injected beneath the mucous membrane or skin, its depressant action on the sensory nerve filaments is sufficiently profound to induce complete local anesthesia or analgesia. It is also a powerful vaso-constrictor; the ischemia produced, however, is ultimately followed by congestion.

Long before the drug was used as a medicine, the natives of

[1] Dental Review, Vol. 16, p. 312.

Digitized by Google

South America learned that by eating the leaves of the coca plant they could travel for days through the deserts without experiencing the sensation of hunger. We now know that the cocain paralyzed the nerve filaments which control the appetite.

Poisoning and Treatment.—The symptoms of *acute cocain poisoning* are rather variable. The usual manifestations are nervous

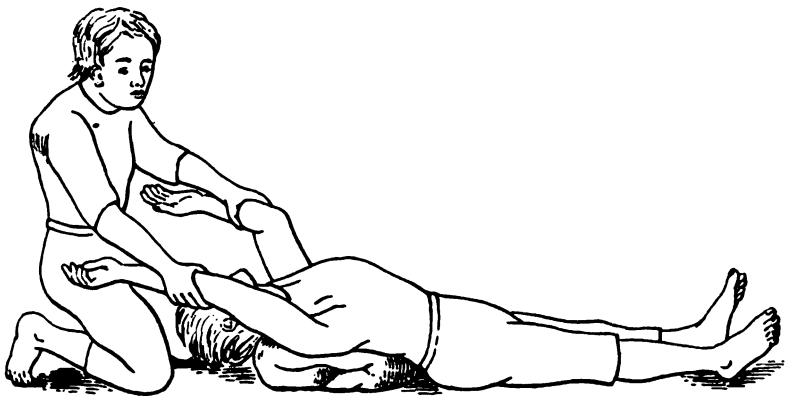


FIG. 1.—Artificial Respiration. First Movement.

excitement, followed by delirium, and later by drowsiness and stupor; nausea, vomiting, a rapid pulse, hurried and difficult respiration, dilatation of the pupils, cold sweat, blanched expression, blue lips, convulsive seizures, and finally death through asphyxia.

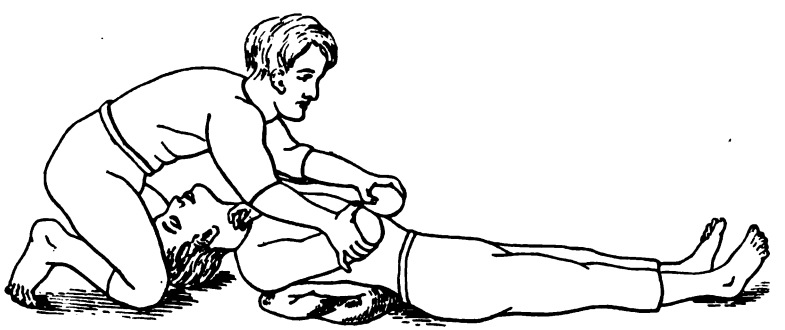


FIG. 2.—Artificial Respiration. Second Movement.

Individuals differ widely in their susceptibility to cocain. The local application of even moderate solutions of the drug to the nose or throat in some subjects is followed by toxic symptoms. Some have a peculiar idiosyncrasy for cocain. Cases have been authentically reported where the drug was not used, but where the patient

Digitized by Google

supposed it had been, and exhibited the usual toxic symptoms in mild form.

There is no known antidote for cocain; therefore, *the treatment of poisoning* is purely symptomatic. When the symptoms are rather mild the patient should be kept in a recumbent position, the head lower than the feet, if possible (the modern dental chair makes this possible), and such stimulants given as whisky, brandy, and aromatic spirit of ammonia, 15–20 min. (1.0–1.3 mils) of the latter in a small quantity of water. The irritation of the ammonia is what is desired, and it is best here not to dilute the drug too much. Spirit of ammonia or spirit of camphor may be given by inhalation. Ammonia irritates the mucous membrane, and thus directly stimulates the heart. When the symptoms are more pronounced, especially when the patient is unable to swallow and a direct cardiac stimulant is required, strychnin is the drug to administer. This may be given hypodermically in the form of strychnin sulphate, the injection being made in the arm or cellular tissue of the lumbar region. One-thirtieth grain (0.0025 gm.) may be administered at a time and repeated every 15 minutes, if occasion requires, until 3 injections are made. When there is danger of respiratory failure atropin sulphate in from $\frac{1}{120}$–$\frac{1}{60}$ gr. (0.0005–0.001 Gm.) should be given. As a last resort to prevent asphyxia, artificial respiration should be performed. *Sylvester's method* is the one most commonly employed. Figs. 1 and 2 show the position of patient and attendant.

With the patient placed on his back, on a flat surface, supporting the head and shoulders with a cushion or articles of dress, all tight clothing should be loosened or removed from the neck and chest.

The movements of inspiration and expiration should regularly succeed each other at the rate of from 20 to 25 respirations per minute, or slightly in excess of the normal rate (about 18 per minute). The inspiratory period should be slightly longer than the expiratory. In all cases artificial respiration should be continued until natural respiration is established. This may require hours, and necessitate a relay of assistants. In the treatment of poisoning of any kind the operator should avoid the appearance of excitement, and remember that as long as there is life there is a chance of recovery.

Habit.—Cocain is one of the most seductive of the drugs that are taken habitually, and its effects are most disastrous. A potent cause of the cocain habit has been the frequent use of the drug in diseases of the nose and throat. As the drug is used in dentistry there is little chance of producing the habit; yet it is very unwise to prescribe the drug to be used by the patient at home in the form of toothache reme-

Digitized by Google

dies, mouth-washes, gargles, or nasal sprays. Cocain is one of the drugs that come under the "Federal Narcotic Law;" and whenever ordered or prescribed, it must be done on a "record blank" furnished by the United States Government. The chief symptoms of the cocain habit are emotional excitement, physical unrest, mental impairment, a disregard for morals, hallucinations, gastric disturbances, a gradual wasting away, and anemia.

Therapeutics.—There is a demand by the laity for painless dentistry, and no one drug aids the dentist more in meeting this demand than cocain or its alkaloidal salt, cocain hydrochlorid. The drug is extensively used in the *painless extraction of teeth*, *lancing of abscesses*, *removal of vital dental pulps*, and many other conditions. Cocain hydrochlorid is recommended in cases of *nausea in taking impressions*. Goslee suggests using a 2 per cent. solution in an atomizer, spraying the entire palate and the uvula. A glass of tepid water should be at hand and the patient may rinse the mouth after a few seconds, to avoid swallowing the solution. The spraying process may be repeated about every five minutes until two or three applications have been made.

Cocain is also added to many arsenical preparations to control the irritating action of the arsenic trioxid. If the vehicle for such preparations is an oil, the alkaloid should always be used, as the alkaloidal salt is insoluble in oils.

The formerly official oleate (5 per cent. of the alkaloid) may be used to lessen the pain in setting crowns and bridges. This is done by applying the remedy under the margin of the gum a few minutes before setting the crown. Cocain hydrochlorid is used more extensively by the hypodermic method of administration for the painless extraction of teeth than for any other purpose in dentistry. A brief discussion, therefore, of the hypodermic use of the drug will here be considered.

Sodium chlorid has been recommended by Schleich and others as an excellent agent to be added to local anesthetic solutions for two reasons: One is that it aids in the elimination of the drug, and the other, and more important, is that with it *isotonic solutions* can be prepared with local anesthetics as the base. The action of the so-called "salt solutions" will be discussed under Cathartics (which see, p. 215). Transitory anesthesia can be produced ultimately by pressure, or by simply injecting with force distilled water into the gum tissue; but distilled water being hypoisotonic to the normal fluids in the tissues, its injection causes a temporary swelling of the cells, due to osmotic action, and primary pain is produced. On the other

Digitized by Google

hand, the injection of a hyperisotonic solution causes a temporary condensation of the cells, due also to osmosis, and primary pain is produced. If, therefore, isotonic solutions are employed for the purpose of inducing local anesthesia, osmotic action is avoided, and the relation of the cells to each other is not materially affected. Prinz suggests adding sodium chlorid in the following proportion in making an isotonic solution of cocain hydrochlorid:

Cocain Hydrochlorid,	5 gr. (0.3 Gm.)
Sodium Chlorid,	4 gr. (0.25 Gm.)
Distilled Water,	1 fl. oz. (30.0 mils)

To each syringeful (30 min.–2.0 mils) add one minim (0.065 mil) of a 1–1000 solution of adrenalin chlorid when used. The adrenalin solution should be fresh. The technic of making the injection has been fully discussed under the Hypodermic Method (p. 24).

The principal objections to the use of cocain hydrochlorid as a local anesthetic for hypodermic use are the *sloughing of tissue* so often induced, and the *liability to poisoning*. These are important considerations and will be discussed separately.

1. Sloughing.—It has been demonstrated quite conclusively that the aseptic injection of sterile isotonic solutions of cocain hydrochlorid will not result in sloughing. Therefore, sloughing is caused either by septic infection due to the injection or to the irritation produced by the disturbed relations of the cells from the injection of solutions which are not isotonic to the fluids in the tissues. It must be understood here that the latter cause mentioned would not result in sloughing of itself, but the irritation thus produced, together with the poisoning of the protoplasm of the cells by the cocain, so lowers the vital resistance of the affected tissues that infection is more liable to follow hematogenously (through the blood stream), or from external influences, especially where there has been laceration of tissue, as in extraction. Sloughing, therefore, is due entirely to *septic infection*, either directly or indirectly from the injection or from external influences. How to guard against septic infection has been previously considered.

2. Poisoning.—Poisoning by cocain hydrochlorid is due either to the injection of an *overdose* or to *idiosyncrasy*. As has been elsewhere stated, individuals differ widely in their susceptibility to cocain. In the manner of its action, which has alse been mentioned cocain is a peculiar drug. Its action differs with different individuals, and with the same individual at different times. There is no way of foretelling how the drug is going to affect the patient in a given case.

Digitized by Google

For this reason many physicians and dentists are afraid to use cocain. However, if we master the technic of its administration and *always know the quantity injected*, there is no necessity for fright, even though toxic symptoms develop, providing, of course, that an overdose has not been injected. It is practically agreed by the best authorities that the maximum quantity of cocain hydrochlorid to be permitted to enter the circulation at one time should not exceed one-quarter of a grain (0.016 Gm.).

A great many of the ill-results attributed to cocain are due to the carelessness with which the drug is used or to shock or fright on the part of the patient for which the drug is not at all responsible. This is equally true of the hypodermic use of all local anesthetics. Many times patients collapse from shock or faint from fear or dread of the operation; and, when cocain was used these results have frequently been attributed to the drug, when, as a matter of fact, the same result might have been and often is produced when no anesthetic has been used. Whenever cocain is used about the mouth for any purpose we should always have the patient rinse the mouth to prevent swallowing any of the remedy, for the smallest quantity of cocain in the stomach will often produce nausea.

Solutions of cocain hydrochlorid should be made at the time from soluble hypodermic tablets, or should contain antiseptics to keep the solution sterile. Phenol is an excellent agent to add for this purpose, and in from ½ to 1 per cent. it has no perceptible coagulant action on the albumin of the cells. Two per cent. of boric acid may also be added. The author's formula for hypodermic injection, which is practically isotonic, follows:

Cocain Hydrochlorid,	5 gr. (0.3 Gm.)
Sodium Chlorid,	1 gr. (0.06 Gm.)
Phenol (95 per cent.),	2 min. (0.13 mil)
Peppermint Water,	1 fl. oz. (30.0 mils)

It is well to add 1 min. (0.06 mil) of a fresh 1–1,000 solution of adrenalin chlorid to 30 min. (2.0 mils) of the solution at the time of injection. It should be remembered that about 23 min. (1.5 mils) of this solution contain ¼ gr. (0.016 Gm.) of the alkaloidal salt, the maximum quantity which may safely enter the circulation at one time. This does not mean that only 23 min. can be used at one injection; for a certain amount is lost in exhausting the air from the syringe, and a certain amount actually injected is removed before it enters the circulation, due to the subsequent hemorrhage. If the technic of injection has been mastered, one barrelful

Digitized by Google

of the syringe should be amply sufficient to painlessly extract all of the teeth that should be extracted at one time, when any local anesthetic has been employed. Cocain should never be used without having at hand in a convenient and practical form the several antidotes for the drug.

There are many proprietary local anesthetic solutions on the market, and it is safe to say that cocain enters into most of them as the base of the formula. In this day of advanced dental therapeutics there is no necessity or excuse for using any proprietary remedy, the composition of which is unknown, especially when we are dealing with so powerful a drug as cocain. The National Food and Drugs Act makes it obligatory for manufacturers to place on the label the amount of cocain in their preparations; and, as previously mentioned, the Anti-Narcotic Law requires practitioners to keep a record of the amount of cocain ordered and used.

Neurocain.—Neurocain is a name given to billets of cocain hydrochlorid, each containing $\frac{1}{12}$ gr. (0.005 Gm.), without excipient. The billets are $\frac{1}{8}$ in. long, $\frac{1}{20}$ in. in diameter, and very soluble in water. Cocain hydrochlorid is put up in this form expressly for dentists' use in the *removal of the pulp* by pressure anesthesia. They are convenient for this purpose, especially where it is desired to dissolve the local anesthetic in the serum of the blood in cases of *pulp exposure*. Similar preparations on the market are called *cocain points*.

Incompatibles.—Cocain hydrochlorid is incompatible with alkalies and alkaline carbonates and all alkaloidal reagents. The drug is decomposed by boiling water.

Tropacocain Hydrochlorid.—Tropacocain is an alkaloid obtained from the leaves of the Java coca plant. The hydrochlorid occurs as white needles, readily soluble in water. In its action it resembles cocain, but is less toxic and does not produce contraction of the blood-vessels. Its local anesthetic property is not sufficiently profound to merit employment as such in dental practice.

Ever since cocain has been used as a local anesthetic in dental and general surgery numerous attempts have been made by manufacturing chemists to prepare, synthetically, substitutes for the drug; among which may be mentioned the following: The eucains, acoin, nirvanin, stovain, chloretone, novocain, and neothesin. Many of these products were short-lived and failed to fill the place for which they were introduced, viz., to displace cocain as a local anesthetic. Those which proved to possess merit will here be discussed.

Digitized by Google

EUCAINA (Nonofficial)

(Eucain; $C_{12}H_{12}NO_2(CH_3)_3$.)

Eucain is a synthetic product and was placed upon the market at first as "Alpha-eucain" and "Beta-eucain," two closely allied bases, differentiated as eucain "A" and eucain "B." The former has been withdrawn from the American market, while the latter is used quite extensively in dentistry as a local anesthetic in the form of *beta-eucain hydrochlorid.*

BETA-EUCAINÆ HYDROCHLORIDUM (Nonofficial)

(Beta-eucain Hydrochlorid; Eucain Hydrochlorid *B;* $C_{12}H_{12}NO_2(CH_3)_3$.HCl.)

Beta-eucain hydrochlorid occurs as a white crystalline powder, soluble in 20 to 30 parts of water at the ordinary temperature, more soluble in warm water, soluble in 25 to 30 parts of alcohol. The solutions are neutral and can be sterilized by boiling without change.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Eucain is a local anesthetic, like cocain, but weaker and devoid of the stimulating action of the latter. It does not dilate the pupil, and it differs from cocain in that it does not produce ischemia by the contraction of the blood-vessels. By some this is claimed to be an advantage, as it permits more profuse hemorrhage after operating, and thus it is supposed some of the drug is carried out of the part and does not enter the circulation. The solutions of beta-eucain hydrochlorid have the one distinct advantage of being stable even on prolonged boiling. The drug may be used in almost all cases where cocain is indicated, a 2 per cent. solution being about the strength used for the *painless extraction of teeth.*

Incompatibles.—Alkalies and their carbonates and alkaloidal reagents.

NOVOCAINÆ HYDROCHLORIDUM (Nonofficial)

(Novocain Hydrochlorid; $C_{13}H_{20}O_2N_2$.HCl.)

Novocain hydrochlorid is a synthetic product, and occurs in colorless needle-shaped crystals, readily soluble in water (1 part) and less soluble in alcohol (30 parts). The aqueous solutions of the salt are neutral and may be boiled without decomposition. The dose depends upon the purpose for which the drug is employed.

Digitized by Google

Owing to its feeble toxicity it may safely be used hypodermically up to 4 gr. (0.25 Gm.) in adults.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Novocain is claimed to be far less toxic than any of the synthetic substitutes for cocain. It is unirritating, but when injected beneath the skin or mucous membrane it exerts a prompt and powerful local anesthetic action. This effect, however, is not long sustained, but may be overcome by the simultaneous injection of the suprarenal alkaloid (adrenalin or suprarenin). The drug may be employed as a local anesthetic wherever cocain is indicated, and often to advantage. It is extensively employed for producing anesthesia by the *conductive* or "nerve-blocking" method. This method requires special study and technic. Excellent books on the subject, to which the reader is referred, are those of Braun-Shields, Fischer-Rietmüller, Lederer, and Throma. In recent years many valuable articles have appeared in dental literature by Prinz, Blum, Rietmüller, Smith, and others.

Incompatibles.—Novocain hydrochlorid is incompatible with alkalies and their carbonates and all alkaloidal reagents.

NEOTHESINÆ HYDROCHLORIDUM (Nonofficial)

(Neothesin Hydrochlorid; $(CH_3)_2N(C_2H_{11})(C_2H_5)OCO(C_6H_5).HCl$.)

Neothesin is a new synthetic product. It occurs as a white, freely soluble powder. Not administered internally.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—This drug possesses marked local anesthetic properties. Experiments have shown it to be equal in anesthetizing power to cocain, one-half as toxic and more rapid in its action. It has the disadvantage of being irritating to the tissues when administered hypodermically; and is used only thus far in dentistry as a constituent of the author's "Desensitizing Paste." Here its rapid anesthetic action is of great value and its irritant effect is of no consequence. Applied directly to the exposed sensitive dentinal fibrillæ it acts quickly thereon and temporarily paralyzes the terminal ends thus exposed. It should be remembered that the drug, like cocain or other local anesthetics, thus applied will not penetrate the softened dentin. To desensitize the dentin sufficiently deep to permit of its painless removal, agents like paraformaldehyd, from which formaldehyd gas is generated by the heat of the body, must be used. Neothesin will prevent the tooth from aching while the dentin is being desensitized.

Digitized by Google

(CHLORBUTANOL (Nonofficial)

(Chloretone; $C_2Cl_3(CH_3)_2OH$.)

Chloretone is a synthetic product, and occurs as a white crystalline powder, with a camphoraceous odor and taste. It is sparingly soluble in water, but freely so in alcohol and ether. The average dose is 10 gr. (0.6 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Chloretone, when first introduced, was claimed to have marked, local, anesthetic properties and was recommended as a substitute for cocain. The local anesthetic property, however, proved to be rather feeble. The drug may be classed as a local anodyne and antiseptic, and also acts when taken internally as a somnifacient. Its use in dentistry is largely that of an antiseptic, and it is added as a preservative to solutions of organic compounds, such as cocain and adrenalin.

ORTHOFORMUM (Nonofficial)

(Orthoform; Methyl Meta-Amino-Para-Oxybenzoate; $C_8H_9O_3N$.)

Orthoform, called also *orthoform-new*, is a synthetic compound, and is the methyl ester of meta-amino-para-oxybenzoic acid. It occurs in a fine, white, or yellowish-white, crystalline powder, neutral in reaction, odorless and tasteless. It is practically insoluble in water, but soluble in 5 or 6 parts of alcohol and in 50 parts of ether. The average dose is 10 gr. (0.6 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Orthoform is a local anesthetic, and in its local action closely resembles cocain, but differs from the latter in that it does not penetrate the tissue on account of its insolubility. It has practically no action on the unbroken skin or mucous membrane and produces no irritation except slight corrosion about the site to which it is applied. The drug is mildly antiseptic and practically nontoxic in the usual doses. As an anodyne remedy for *painful wounds or abraded surfaces* it is an absolute specific. Mawhinney suggests using equal parts of orthoform and europhen as a dusting powder for *burns, exposed alveolar process after extraction*, etc. It can be handled more conveniently in the mouth if a paste be made of the mixture of orthoform and europhen, using liquid petroleum as the vehicle. Plain aseptic gauze may be saturated with this paste and carefully packed into *painful sockets after extraction*, covering the exposed process and lacerated tissue with the oleaginous paste. The same packing is excellent after *root amputation* and other *minor operations* about the jaws.

Digitized by Google

Incompatibles.—Orthoform is decomposed by boiling water, and incompatible with alkalies and their carbonates.

GENERAL ANESTHETICS

The detail technic of the administration of **general anesthetics** is a topic of sufficiently great importance as to merit discussion in a separate volume by specialists in this line of work. Several excellent books covering this phase of general anesthetics are on the market.

In our discussion of the drugs grouped under this heading, the author will confine himself largely to materia medica proper. The description of the drugs, their general action, and the indication or contraindication for their use are subjects which should naturally be considered in a work of this kind. The most important general anesthetics are:

Nitrous Oxid. Chloroform.
Ether. Ethyl Chlorid.*
Ethyl Bromid.

NITROGENII MONOXIDUM—U.S.P.

(Nitrogen Monoxid; Nitrous Oxid; Laughing Gas; N_2O.)

Nitrous oxid is a gas prepared by carefully heating, in a proper apparatus, ammonium nitrate. The gas is collected over water and purified by running it through a series of wash-bottles. It is colorless, odorless, and possesses a somewhat sweetish taste. By cold and pressure it is converted into a liquid, when it is usually placed in iron cylinders and kept for subsequent use. When the gas is administered many times daily, as with extraction specialists, it is best to manufacture the gas fresh each morning and store it in an ordinary gas tank for this purpose.

Physiologic Action.—Nitrous oxid is the safest known general anesthetic. The death-rate from this gas, used as an anesthetic, is less than 1 : 500,000. It is nonirritating when inhaled, but produces an increase of blood-pressure, a sense of exhilaration, ringing in the ears, and lividity of the face; in about one minute, if the gas is undiluted with oxygen, these symptoms are followed by complete unconsciousness. The muscles are not fully relaxed, and the conduct of the patient while under the influence of the gas depends largely upon the confidence the patient reposes in the anesthetist. Excitement, laughing, crying, and a pugilistic tendency, though all unconsciously, are often indulged in. It is claimed that the anesthesia

Digitized by Google

is induced by a twofold action: the temporary displacement of oxygen from the blood, and the direct influence of the gas on the central nervous system. The recovery is almost instantaneous upon the removal of the anesthetic agent. When the gas is mixed with air or pure oxygen the excitement is apt to be greater and the anesthetic effect more slowly produced.

Therapeutics.—Nitrous oxid is the ideal general anesthetic for all *minor surgical operations*. Indeed, the gas mixed in proper proportions with pure oxygen has gained a reputation for operations in *major surgery*. By this means the patient may be kept under the influence of the anesthetic for hours. Much credit is due Teter, of Cleveland, Bevan, of Chicago, and others, for developing the technic and encouraging the use of prolonged anesthesia by nitrous oxid and oxygen.

Many dental operations, like the *preparation of cavities in sensitive teeth, opening abscesses, removing partially decalcified pulp tissue*, etc., may be performed absolutely without pain under the influence of nitrous oxid and oxygen, carried to the analgesic stage. This method was quite popular for a few years past; but it has been practically superseded by the author's Desensitizing Paste for painless cavity preparation, and by conductive anesthesia for this and other dental operations.

ÆTHER—U.S.P.

(Ether; Ethyl Oxid; $(C_2H_5)_2O$.)

Ether is made by the action of sulphuric acid on ethyl alcohol. It is a transparent, colorless, mobile, and very volatile liquid, having a characteristic odor and a burning, sweetish taste. Freely soluble in alcohol, chloroform, oils, and in about ten times its volume of water. Ether is highly inflammable; its vapor, when mixed with air and ignited, explodes violently. It should be kept in well-stoppered containers, preferably in tin cans, in a cool place, away from lights or fire. The official product contains about 4 per cent. of alcohol. The average dose is 15 min. (1.0 mil); for anesthesia about 1 fl. oz. (30.0 mils). When ether is to be used for anesthesia it is to be dispensed only in small, well-closed containers and is not to be used for this purpose if the container has been opened longer than twenty-four hours. The following preparation is official:

Spiritus Ætheris, U.S.P. *Dose*, about 1 fl. dr. (4.0 mils).

Physiologic Action.—When applied to the skin, mucous membrane, or tooth-structure, ether produces intense cold by its rapid

Digitized by Google

evaporation, and acts as a refrigerant local anesthetic. If it is confined on soft tissue, great irritation results. When inhaled as a general anesthetic, it irritates the mucous membrane of the respiratory tract, and at first coughing, choking, and a sense of strangulation follow. These symptoms are soon overcome, and complete loss of consciousness marks the subsequent stage of anesthesia, when total relaxation supervenes, accompanied by gentle, regular breathing. The drug is eliminated chiefly by the lungs and kidneys; on the latter organs it has an irritant effect, therefore, it should be employed cautiously as a general anesthetic in cases of nephritis.

Therapeutics.—Ether is used largely as a general anesthetic, and, when thus administered for dental purposes, it had better be given by an experienced anesthetist. The ether spray is used for *obtunding sensitive dentin*. This requires a specially designed apparatus. Good results can also be immediately obtained by adjusting the rubber dam and evaporating the following remedy, applied to the cavity on a small pledget of cotton: Cocain, 20 gr. (1.3 Gm.); chloroform, 2 fl. dr. (8.0 mils); ether, 6 fl. dr. (24.0 mils). Ether is a valuable solvent for many substances insoluble in water, such as resins and oils.

The spray may also be used as a local anesthetic, preliminary to opening *abscesses*, but it is inferior to ethyl chlorid for this purpose.

The compound spirit of ether (formerly official and commonly called "Hoffmann's Anodyne") may be mixed with an equal volume of camphorated tincture of opium (paregoric) and given in doses of 1 fl. dr. (4.0 mils) to check *diarrhea* in hot weather. The compound spirit of ether also is a useful remedy as an antispasmodic in children with complications of first dentition.

Contraindications.—Ether is contraindicated as a general anesthetic in cases of advanced arteriosclerosis; tuberculosis with a tendency to hemorrhage; acute and chronic diseases of the kidneys; anemia, when the hemoglobin is less than 30 per cent.; diabetes, especially when well established. Death from ether usually results from asphyxia.

CHLOROFORMUM—U.S.P.

(Chloroform; Methyl Trichlorid; $CHCl_3$.)

Chloroform is made for commercial purposes by the action of chlorin on alcohol. It is a heavy, clear, colorless, mobile, and diffusible liquid, having a characteristic odor and a burning, sweet taste. Soluble in about 200 times its volume of cold water, and in

Digitized by Google

all proportions in alcohol, ether, and oils. It is not inflammable, but its heated vapor burns, emitting a green flame and *noxious gases* are produced. For this reason care should be taken not to vaporize chloroform in the presence of a naked flame. It should be kept in amber-colored, glass-stoppered bottles, in a dark, cool place. The average dose is 5 min. (0.3 mil); for anesthesia, about ½ fl. dr. (15.0 mils). The following preparations are official:

Aqua Chloroformi, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½–2 fl. oz. (15.0–60.0 mils).
Spiritus Chloroformi, U.S.P. *Dose*, 20–60 min. (1.3–4.0 mils).
Linimentum Chloroformi, U.S.P. (externally).

Physiologic Action.—When applied to the skin or mucous membrane locally, chloroform produces a sense of coldness by its rapid evaporation. If confined, it causes redness and even vesication. When inhaled it produces general anesthesia; the phenomena observed may be grouped under three stages, and are described by Stevens[1] as follows: The first stage is characterized by excitement, muscular rigidity, and lessened sensibility (analgesia); the second by anesthesia and muscular relaxation; and the third by stertorous breathing, abolition of reflexes, profound narcosis, and absolute muscular relaxation.

The drug is eliminated practically unchanged through the lungs and kidneys, and while it irritates the latter organs its deleterious effects are less pronounced, owing to the smaller quantity necessary to induce profound anesthesia.

Therapeutics.—Chloroform is a rapid and agreeable general anesthetic. It is far more dangerous than ether, the mortality being five times greater, and should never be administered as a general anesthetic except by, or in the presence of, an experienced anesthetist.

With the patient in the upright position, chloroform may be carried to the analgesic stage, and *sensitive cavities prepared, deciduous teeth extracted*, or *abscesses lanced*. Most authorities agree, however, that the drug should not be inhaled by the patient unless in the recumbent position, and that the analgesic stage is the most dangerous. It is the safest practice to refrain from using the drug in this manner, except, perhaps, in special cases.

Chloroform is a constituent of many liniments used for counter-irritation in cases of *pericementitis* and *neuralgia*. The drug itself may be confined, and redness and even vesication follow. It has long been used as a solvent for gutta-percha, forming a solution known as *chloropercha*, used in *filling root-canals*. Like ether, the

[1] Modern Materia Medica and Therapeutics.

Digitized by Google

agent is used also as a solvent for many otherwise insoluble substances.

The liniment of chloroform has been extensively used as a stimulating remedy in *muscular rheumatism*, *sprains*, and *bruises*.

Indications and Contraindications.—Chloroform, though more dangerous than ether, is to be preferred to the latter as a general anesthetic in all acute inflammatory diseases of the bronchi or lungs, advanced diseases of the blood-vessels, acute and chronic diseases of the kidneys. In the extraction of teeth ether is considered the safer anesthetic; chloroform being more apt to cause cardiac paralysis reflexly by way of the superior or inferior dental nerve. Chloroform is contraindicated in all cardiac diseases, and if administered here must be given cautiously. Death from chloroform usually results from circulatory failure.

As has been stated, the drug is pleasant to inhale, and many individuals have the *chloroform habit*.

ÆTHYLIS BROMIDUM (Nonofficial)

(Ethyl Bromid; Hydrobromic Ether; C_2H_5Br.)

Ethyl bromid is made by heating a mixture of ethyl alcohol, sulphuric acid, and potassium bromid. When pure, it occurs as a colorless, highly volatile liquid, having an odor resembling chloroform and a sweetish taste. It is inflammable, and on exposure to air it liberates bromin and hydrobromic acid and becomes unfit for use. It should be kept in dark amber-colored bottles, tightly stoppered. The dose as a general anesthetic is from 1–6 drams (4.0–24.0 mils), depending upon the age and condition of the patient.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—As a general anesthetic, ethyl bromid somewhat resembles the action of chloroform. It may be used for *short operations*, but has nothing to recommend its employment over nitrous oxid except that it does not require cumbersome apparatus for its administration. The anesthesia is quickly and pleasantly induced and the recovery is rapid, but subsequently the patient may have general mild depression. Pain is abolished before consciousness. The respiration is paralyzed at about the same time as the reflexes, so that the zone of safety is very narrow. Tetanic spasms have occurred. Deaths caused by this drug were formerly attributed to impurities, but several have occurred when a pure article was given. It must be regarded as a very dangerous agent, especially in inexperienced hands.

Those drugs not included in this group, which possess general

Digitized by Google

analgesic or anodyne properties, will be considered under other headings in the following pages.

ANTIPYRETICS

Antipyretics, called also *febrifuges*, are drugs which reduce the body temperature when abnormally high. This group includes:

Coal-tar Derivatives:
- Antipyrin.
- Acetanilid.
- Phenacetin.
- Pyramidon.

Cinchona, especially its alkaloid.
- Quinin.

ANTIPYRINA—U.S.P.

(Antipyrin; $C_6H_5(CH_3)_2C_3HN_2O$.)

Antipyrin is a coal-tar derivative, basic in character, obtained by the condensation of phenyl hydrazin with diacetic ether and methylization of the product. It occurs as a white, crystalline powder or scales, odorless, of a slightly bitter taste, freely soluble in water, alcohol, and chloroform. The average dose is 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Antipyrin has no action on the unbroken skin. It first irritates and then blanches mucous membranes, resulting in an analgesic effect. It may be considered a mild antiseptic, and applied locally to abraded surfaces it contracts the blood-vessels and acts as a mild styptic. Internally administered, it reduces abnormally high temperatures, as in fevers, but has practically no action in health. The drug here dilates the blood-vessels and increases perspiration, and thus heat reduction is brought about. Antipyrin differs from other anilin derivatives (acetanilid) in that it has no appreciable action upon the blood itself, and in this respect it is a much safer analgesic.

Therapeutics.—Antipyrin is a comparatively safe and useful drug in all conditions, the treatment of which calls for the relief of pain. Some authorities place it next to opium as a general analgesic. The drug may be given in powdered form or in solution for the *relief of pain of a neuralgic character*, and whenever it is desirable to *lower temperature in fever*. As an antispasmodic, it is useful in the *childhood period of tooth-eruption*, in *whooping-cough*, etc. Here it may be taken in combination with a bromid. The following may be given in teaspoonful doses, further diluted with water, to a child three years old, varying the dose according to the age: Antipyrin, 45 gr. (3.0 Gm.); sodium bromid, 1½ dr. (6.0 Gm.); glycerin, ½ fl.

Digitized by Google

oz. (15.0 mils); peppermint water, 2½ fl. oz. (75.0 mils). [In *capillary oozing after operations*, the drug may be applied locally in powdered form, or a 20 to 30 per cent. solution, which is less irritating.

Incompatibles.—Antipyrin is incompatible with tincture of iodin, mercuric and mercurous chlorid, the ferric salts in solution, phenol, chloral, beta-naphthol, sodium bicarbonate, sodium salicylate, orthoform, spirit of nitrous ether, and the salts of quinin and caffein. The wide range of incompatibles is due to the basic properties of the drug.

ACETANILIDUM—U.S.P.

(Acetanilid; Antifebrin; $C_6H_5NH.C_2H_3O$.)

Acetanilid is a coal-tar product, derived from anilin, an atom of hydrogen in the latter being replaced by the acetic acid radical. It occurs as a white, shining, crystalline powder, without odor, of a faintly burning taste; sparingly soluble in water, freely in alcohol and chloroform, and somewhat less so in ether. The average dose is 3 gr. (0.2 Gm.). There was formerly one official preparation:

> Pulvis Acetanilidi Compositus, U.S.P. VIII (Compound Acetanilid Powder; Acetanilid, 70 parts; Caffein, 10 parts; Sodium Bicarbonate, 20 parts). *Dose*, 7½ gr. (0.5 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Like antipyrin, in moderate doses in health acetanilid has no perceptible effect. Internally administered in fever, the drug produces marked fall of temperature, due, in all probability, to its direct influence on the centers which regulate heat-production. Free perspiration frequently accompanies the fall of temperature. In large doses acetanilid acts as a cardiac depressant and induces blood-changes. The blood assumes a chocolate color, due to the production of methemoglobin. It is, therefore, not as safe an analgesic as antipyrin, though exerting a greater influence over the nerve centers which control pain. Applied locally to mucous membranes or abraded surfaces, the drug is nonirritating and exerts an analgesic effect by depressing the sensory nerve-endings.

Poisoning and Treatment.—The symptoms of poisoning by acetanilid are marked cyanosis, feeble breathing, pulse soft, slow, later rapid and weak, free perspiration, pupils dilated and ultimate collapse. In the *treatment of poisoning* the body temperature should be maintained by external heat and such cardiac and respiratory stimulants given as strychnin sulphate, ammonia, and atropin sul-

Digitized by Google

phate. In combating the cyanosed condition inhalations of pure oxygen and artificial respiration are important.

Therapeutics.—Acetanilid, judiciously employed, is a valuable drug for the relief of pain in many diseased dental conditions, such as *acute abscess*, *neuralgia*, *headache*, etc. It is always best to combine the drug with a stimulant to overcome the depressant effect of acetanilid upon the heart. In the formerly official powder, caffein is added for this purpose. Harlan suggested a formula wherein whisky was added as the cardiac stimulant. It is: Acetanilid, 10 gr. (0.65 Gm.); simple syrup, ½ fl. oz. (15.0 mils); whisky, 2 ½ fl. oz. (75.0 mils). The compound powder, which can be obtained in tablets, is an excellent form in which to administer the drug.

The drug may be cautiously applied locally in powdered form in the treatment of *wounds*, *burns*, *ulcers*, or other *abraded surfaces*, but is far inferior, as a local analgesic, to orthoform.

ACETPHENETIDINUM—U.S.P.

(Acetphenetidin; Phenacetin; $C_6H_4OC_2H_5.NHC_2H_3O$.)

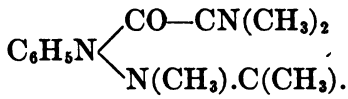
Acetphenetidin, commonly called **phenacetin,** is a coal-tar product obtained by the action of glacial acetic acid on paraphenetidin (an anilin derivative), one atom of hydrogen in the latter being replaced by the acetic acid radical. It occurs as white, glistening, crystalline scales or fine powder, without odor or taste, sparingly soluble in water, but freely so in alcohol and glycerin. The average dose is 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Internally administered, phenacetin exerts a similar action to that produced by antipyrin and acetanilid, though all authorities claim that it is far less toxic than either of these drugs. Everything considered, it is the most satisfactory of all of the coal-tar antipyretics. Probably the only objection that may be offered to its use is that it is more expensive than antipyrin or acetanilid, but when its safety is considered even this possible objection is outweighed. It may be advantageously employed in all cases where the other coal-tar analgesics have been mentioned. A useful formula is the combination of phenacetin and codein sulphate in the proportion of 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.) of the former to ½ gr. (0.03 Gm.) of the latter for an adult dose.

Though the actions of antipyrin, acetanilid, and phenacetin are similar, frequently results are obtained by the use of one of the drugs where the others have failed.

Digitized by Google

PYRAMIDON (Nonofficial)



Pyramidon is dimethylaminoantipyrina and differs from antipyrin in that a dimethylamino group, $N(CH_3)_2$, has replaced a hydrogen atom of the pyrazolon nucleus. It occurs in small, colorless, slightly alkaline crystals, almost tasteless; soluble in 11 parts of cold water and readily soluble in alcohol, ether and benzene. The average dose is 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.), most conveniently given in the form of tablets, a single dose usually sufficing for twenty-four hours.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Pyramidon acts as an antipyretic and general anodyne, like antipyrin, but is effective in smaller doses and the effect persists longer, though somewhat slower at the beginning. It is claimed to be comparatively free from harmful influences on the blood, heart, or kidneys. In all cases in dentistry calling for the *relief of pain* it may be given. Like other antipyretics, it should be cautiously employed in the treatment of infectious fevers.

Incompatibles.—In general the drug is incompatible with the same agents as is antipyrin. Oxidizing agents (also acacia) often produce colored solutions.

CINCHONA—U.S.P.

(Yellow Peruvian Bark; Yellow Cinchona.)

Cinchona is the *dried bark* of *Cinchona calisaya*, *Cinchona ledgeriana*, *Cinchona officinalis*, and several other species of *Cinchona*, tall evergreen trees indigenous to South America, and now cultivated in Ceylon, Java, and Jamaica. Red cinchona is also official, Cinchona Rubra, U.S.P., and is the *dried bark* of *Cinchona succirubra*. Both specimens should yield not less than 5 per cent. of total anhydrous cinchona alkaloids, of which there are several; the most important are *quinin*, *quinidin*, *cinchonin* and *cinchonidin*. The following preparations are official:

Fluidextractum Cinchonæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½–1 fl. dr. (2.0–4.0 mils).
Tinctura Cinchonæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–2 fl. dr. (4.0–8.0 mils).
Tinctura Cinchonæ Composita, U.S.P. (Huxham's Tincture; Red Cinchona, 10; Bitter Orange Peel, 8; Serpentaria, 2). *Dose*, 1–4 fl. dr. (4.0–15.0 mils).

Digitized by Google

Several of the alkaloids and their salts are also official. They are:

Quinina, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–10 gr. (0.06–0.65 Gm.).
Quininæ Sulphas, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–20 gr. (0.06–1.3 Gm.).
Quininæ Bisulphas, U.S.P.
Quininæ Dihydrochloridum, U.S.P.
Quininæ Hydrochloridum, U.S.P.
Quininæ Hydrobromidum, U.S.P. } *Dose*, 1–15 gr. (0.06–1.0 Gm.).
Quininæ Salicylas, U. S. P. *Dose*, 1–10 gr. (0.06–0.65 Gm.).
Cinchoninæ Sulphas, U.S.P.
Cinchonidinæ Sulphas, U.S.P. } *Dose*, 1–2.0 gr. (0.06–1.3 Gm.).
Quininæ Dihydrochloridum, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–15 gr. (0.06–1.0 Gm.).
Quininæ et Ureæ Hydrochloridum. *Dose*, hypodermic (one dose daily) 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.).

It will be observed that there is rather a wide range of dosage given for these alkaloidal salts of quinin. The reason for this is that they, like quinin itself, are given both as a tonic and antimalarial. The dose as a tonic is much smaller than for antimalarial purposes.

Inasmuch as quinin is the most important alkaloid of cinchona and represents largely its active properties, it will be the only constituent here described.

QUININA—U.S.P.

(Quinin.)

Quinin occurs as a white, flaky, amorphous or crystalline powder, odorless, and of an extremely bitter taste. It is practically insoluble in water, but is readily soluble in acidulated water, alcohol, and ether.

Physiologic Action.—Quinin acts differently upon different individuals. In large doses, and with some subjects in comparatively small doses, it causes a sense of fullness in the head, ringing in the ears, deafness, headache, and sometimes dimness of vision. This group of symptoms is included in the term *cinchonism*. The drug is absorbed chiefly from the stomach, and its action augments the secretions from the salivary and gastrointestinal glands; it, therefore, may be considered a stomachic and tonic. Through the kidneys is the principal mode of elimination. Butler[1] states that quinin has a remarkable effect upon the constituents of the blood. The ameboid movements of the white blood-corpuscles are arrested, preventing them from migrating through the capillary walls in inflammation. Full doses of the drug also diminish the white blood-corpuscles, while the red corpuscles are proportionately increased. Quinin diminishes the metabolism of the body by lessening the oxygen-carrying power

[1] Text-Book of Materia Medica, Therapeutics and Pharmacology.

Digitized by Google

of the red blood-corpuscles. Though it is doubtful that quinin ever directly caused the death of a human being, idiosyncrasies are frequently encountered. Two or 3 gr. (0.13–0.2 Gm.) have been known to produce intense cinchonism in some individuals, and quinin rashes are not uncommon. The drug also acts as an antiseptic and it is claimed to possess local anesthetic properties. Quinin and urea hydrochlorid is now being used as a local anesthetic. This is a compound of quinin hydrochlorid and urea hydrochlorid, containing approximately 60 per cent. of anhydrous quinin. When injected hypodermically or when applied locally to mucous membranes it exerts an anesthetic action similar to that of cocain, which, however, may be prolonged for several days.

Therapeutics.—Quinin has been used extensively as a domestic remedy for many ills, and most individuals know how the drug affects them. This will govern the dentist in regard to the dose to be administered in a given case. The drug is a specific for *malarial fever*, and may be given in cases of *neuralgias* associated with the teeth; especially is it indicated here in malarial regions and in the spring of the year when the climate is more or less damp. The author prefers quinin bisulphate, as it is more soluble. It should be given in gelatin capsules rather than in the dry, hard, pilular form, as the latter may pass through the stomach undissolved. The newly official quinin dihydrochlorid is also very soluble, and its use has been proposed where concentrated solutions of quinin are wanted, as for subcutaneous injections and similar purposes. Quinin is a constituent of many bitter tonics. Quinin sulphate has been recommended for its tonic and antiseptic properties as a local application in *pyorrheal pockets*. The bitter taste of the drug makes its use here almost prohibitive.

HYPNOTICS

Hypnotics, also called *somnifacients*, are agents which induce sleep. The chief hypnotics are:

Chloral Hydrate.	Trional.
Butyl-chloral Hydrate.	Paraldehyd.
Sulphonal.	The Bromids.

CHLORALUM HYDRATUM—U.S.P.

(Hydrated Chloral; Chloral; $C_2HCl_3O + H_2O$.)

Hydrated chloral is obtained by the union of a molecule of water with trichloraldehyd, commonly called chloral, the latter being pre-

Digitized by Google

pared by the action of chlorin upon alcohol, whence the name *chlor-al*. Chloral hydrate is the official preparation and the only one used in dentistry or medicine. It occurs as colorless, transparent crystals, having an aromatic, penetrating odor, and a bitterish, caustic taste; freely soluble in water, alcohol, ether, and chloroform. It liquefies when triturated with an equal quantity of menthol, thymol, phenol, or camphor. The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Applied locally, chloral hydrate acts as an antiseptic, mild anesthetic and vesicant. Even when applied to the unbroken skin, it produces redness and sometimes vesication. Internally administered in therapeutic doses, the drug induces quiet sleep of a natural character. It is irritating to the stomach and had better be given after meals. The chief action of chloral hydrate is upon the nervous system, the sleep being the result of the direct influence of the drug over the cerebral cells which lessens reflex activity by depressing the motor neurons of the spinal cord. The drug has a depressant effect upon the cardiac and respiratory centers, which is an objection to its use. Attempts to modify the drug so as to make it safer have resulted in weakening its hypnotic action. It is the standard hypnotic of its class. It is eliminated principally by the kidneys.

Poisoning and Treatment.—The symptoms of *acute chloral poisoning* are sleep, deepening into coma. The pulse is feeble, thready, and irregular; temperature subnormal; respiration slow, followed by rapid shallow breathing, and ultimate collapse. Death may result from either cardiac or respiratory paralysis. In the *treatment of poisoning* the temperature should be maintained or restored by artificial heat—warm blankets, hot bottles, etc. Cardiac and respiratory stimulants, like strychnin, ammonia, atropin, and digitalis should be employed. To prevent asphyxia, inhalations of pure oxygen and artificial respiration should be resorted to early.

Therapeutics.—The principal use of chloral hydrate is to induce sleep in cases of *insomnia*. It is especially indicated when the sleeplessness results from overwork, excitement, fear, or dread. It should not be given continuously on account of the liability to form habit. As a hypnotic for insomnia resulting from pain, the drug is far inferior to opium. On account of the powerful depressant effect chloral hydrate exerts upon the motor neurons of the spinal cord, it is a valuable drug in the treatment of the various *convulsions* and *spasmodic disorders of childhood*, such as the *complications of temporary dentition*, *whooping-cough*, etc. Combined with potassium bromid it is considered one of the best sedatives in the treatment of the *convulsions of tetanus* and *strychnin poisoning*.

Digitized by Google

Chloral camphor, a clear, syrupy liquid, can be made by triturating equal parts of chloral hydrate and camphor. This remedy may be used as an anodyne in cases of *pulpitis*, and in *neuralgia*.

Contraindications.—The drug is contraindicated in cases of marked cardiac and respiratory weakness.

Incompatibles.—Chloral hydrate is incompatible with alkalies and strong solutions of antipyrin.

Butyl-chloral Hydrate.—This product is produced by the action of chlorin on acetic aldehyd, hydrated by the addition of water. It occurs in white, pearly scales, having a pungent odor, and an acid, disagreeable taste. It is practically insoluble in water, but freely soluble in alcohol and glycerin. The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—In its action, butyl-chloral hydrate resembles chloral hydrate, except that it is less powerful as a hypnotic and more analgesic. Authorities claim that the fifth or trigeminal nerve is especially susceptible to the influence of butyl-chloral hydrate, and the drug has been extensively used in the treatment of *trifacial neuralgia* and *migraine*. The drug is best given in the form of capsules on account of its disagreeable taste.

Incompatibles.—Butyl-chloral hydrate is incompatible with alkalies.

SULPHONMETHANUM—U.S.P.

(Sulphonmethane; Sulphonal; $(CH_3)_2C(SO_2C_2H_5)_2$.)

Sulphonal is a synthetic product obtained by the oxidation of a mixture of ethyl hydrosulphid and acetone (a liquid resembling ethyl alcohol in its action). It occurs as a colorless, odorless, and nearly tasteless, crystalline powder; soluble in 360 parts of cold water, in 15 parts of boiling water, and in 65 parts of cold or 2 parts boiling alcohol. The drug is stable and is not affected by strong acids or alkalies. The average dose is 12 gr. (0.75 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Sulphonal is a pure hypnotic, its action as such being intensified by combining it with morphin or codein. It has no depressant effect upon the heart, but, like chloral hydrate, it acts chiefly on the nervous system by depressing the cerebral cortex; its influence, however, is less than the latter drug and its action much slower, due to its insolubility in the gastric fluids. The hypnotic effect of sulphonal may not be evidenced for several hours after the administration of the drug.

Poisoning and Treatment.—The symptoms of acute sulphonal poisoning are headache, vertigo, marked cyanosis, vomiting, diarrhea,

Digitized by Google

respiration shallow, pulse feeble, unconsciousness and final collapse. Some individuals who become habitual takers of this class of drugs present irregular toxic symptoms, consisting of sleepiness and stupidity, loss of appetite and muscular weakness. With some papular eruptions are not uncommon. The *treatment of acute poisoning* consists in the discontinuance of the drug; the administration of saline cathartics, and cardiac and respiratory stimulants as indicated by the symptoms present.

Therapeutics.—Sulphonal is used internally as a hypnotic. It has no other effect, and is never used externally. In *insomnia*, caused by *nervous excitement, grief*, or *overwork*, it is a useful hypnotic. In insomnia due to pain, it is practically worthless, unless combined with the alkaloids of opium. Sulphonal should always be given in powder or capsules or hot whisky. The compressed tablets, unless crushed, should be avoided on account of the sparing solubility of the drug.

SULPHONETHYLMETHANUM—U.S.P.

(Sulphonethylmethan; Trional; $C_2H_5.CH_3.C(SO_2C_2H_5)_2$.)

Trional is a synthetic product containing three ethyl radicals, where sulphonal contains but two. It occurs in colorless, lustrous, odorless, and almost tasteless, crystalline scales; soluble in 195 parts of cold water, and freely soluble in hot water, alcohol and ether. The average dose is 12 gr. (0.75 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Trional closely resembles sulphonal in its action. Being more readily soluble, however, the drug acts more quickly and has a tendency to accumulate in the body. It is, therefore, more poisonous than sulphonal. It is best administered in a warm vehicle, such as milk, tea, or brandy. The treatment of poisoning does not differ from that of sulphonal.

PARALDEHYDUM—U.S.P.

(Paraldehyd; $C_6H_{12}O_3$.)

Paraldehyd is a synthetic product obtained by treating aldehyd with dilute sulphuric or nitric acid. It occurs as a colorless liquid, having a strong ethereal odor, and a burning, pungent taste. It is soluble in 8 parts of cold water, somewhat less so in hot water, and is miscible in all proportions with alcohol, ether, chloroform, and the oils. The average dose is 30 min. (2.0 mils).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Paraldehyd resembles chloral hydrate in its action in that it depresses the brain and spinal

Digitized by Google

cord. It differs from the latter, however, in that its depressant action upon the heart is not nearly so marked, though it causes a noticeable fall in arterial pressure. The drug is used only internally as a hypnotic, and as such it is safe and reliable. It has the great disadvantage of a nauseating taste which is difficult to mask, and its disagreeable odor is imparted to the breath for some time after its administration. The symptoms of *poisoning* and the treatment of the same are similar to chloral hydrate. As a hypnotic in dental practice, chloral hydrate is far preferable to sulphonal, trional, or paraldehyd.

THE BROMIDS

The **bromids** of certain metals, notably potassium, sodium, and ammonium, might well be discussed under different headings; but they are true *spinal cord depressants*, and when administered produce hypnotic influence; therefore, they will be considered here.

POTASSII BROMIDUM—U.S.P.

(Potassium Bromid; KBr.)

Potassium bromid is a salt which occurs in colorless, or white cubical crystals or granules, odorless, with a pungent, saline taste; soluble in about 1.5 parts of water and in 180 parts of alcohol. The average dose is 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—The chief action of potassium bromid is on the nervous system. It depresses both the cerebrum and spinal cord. The drug is rapidly absorbed from the stomach, having been found in the urine fifteen minutes after its ingestion. Its elimination is somewhat slower than its absorption, and there is a tendency for the drug to accumulate in the body. The continued use of potassium bromid is followed by a group of symptoms, called *bromism*, chief among which are anemia, fetor of the breath, gastric disturbance, mental depression, failure of memory, abolition of sexual appetite, and muscular weakness. In the treatment of *acute poisoning*, eliminatives should be given (diuretics and cathartics), the administration of the drug should be withdrawn, and other symptoms treated as presented. No fatal case of poisoning by potassium bromid is on record.

Therapeutics.—Perhaps there is no drug which will control the nervousness due solely to the *dread of the dental chair* better than potassium bromid. The drug is especially indicated in *nervousness* caused by *fear* or *dread*. In cases of highly nervous individuals the

Digitized by Google

drug may be given in 10 gr. (0.6 gm.) dose, after meals and well diluted, one day previous to the time of the dental operation. On account of the nauseating taste the drug should be dissolved in one of the official syrups. The compound syrup of sarsaparilla is an excellent vehicle.

Potassium bromid is one of the best drugs to control the convulsions of *epilepsy*, and is often used to advantage in the *complications of temporary dentition*. The drug is irritating to the stomach, and should always be given after meals, well diluted. It may be combined with the antipyretic drugs with excellent results.

Incompatibles.—Potassium bromid is incompatible with acids and acid salts. Certain alkaloids are precipitated from neutral solutions by the drug.

SODII BROMIDUM—U.S.P.

(Sodium Bromid; NaBr.)

Sodium bromid is a salt which occurs in colorless, or white, cubical crystals or granules, odorless, and of a saline, bitter taste; soluble in 1.7 parts of water and in 12.5 parts of alcohol. The average dose is 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Sodium bromid closely resembles potassium bromid in its action. It is less irritant to the stomach and less depressant, due to the sodium *ion*. Because of this fact, it may be substituted to advantage for the potassium salt in certain cases in which a bromid is indicated. It should be given after meals, well diluted.

Incompatibles.—The same as protassium bromid.

AMMONII BROMIDUM—U.S.P.

(Ammonium Bromid; NH_4Br.)

Ammonium bromid is a salt which occurs in white crystals or as a yellowish-white powder, odorless, and having a disagreeable salty taste; soluble in 1.2 parts of water and in 12.5 parts of alcohol. The average dose is .15 gr. (1.0 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Ammonium bromid resembles potassium bromid in its action. Like the sodium salt, it is less irritant to the stomach and less depressant to the nervous system. It may be substituted for potassium bromid in all cases calling for the administration of a bromid. It should be given after meals, well diluted.

Digitized by Google

Incompatibles.—The same as potassium bromid, also spirit of nitrous ether.

NARCOTICS

Narcotics are agents which induce stupor, and are closely related to stimulants in that the first effect of their action is generally that of an excitant and stimulant to the higher brain, to the mind, and to all of the bodily functions; this stage of their action is followed by profound sleep characterized by increasing stupor, and, if the dose has been sufficient, the second stage is followed by a third, that of coma and insensibility (narcotism) and ultimate death due to paralysis of the centers which govern respiration and other functions of life. The chief narcotics are:

Opium (and Alkaloids).	Alcohol.
Hyoscyamus.	Ether.*
Scopola.	Chloroform.*
Cannabis Indica.	Chloral Hydrate.*

Tobacco.

OPIUM—U.S.P.

Opium is the *concrete milky exudation* (*juice*) obtained by incising the unripe capsules of *Papaver somniferum*, a poppy plant indigenous to Western Asia and cultivated in Egypt, Persia, Asia Minor, and other countries. It appears in irregular cakes or lumps, having a dark brown color, a gummy consistence, a peculiar narcotic odor, and a bitter taste. With the possible exception of cinchona, opium contains more alkaloids than any other drug. The chief alkaloids, in the order of their therapeutic significance, are *morphin*, *codein*, *narcein*, *thebain*, *narcotin*, and *papaverin*. To be up to the official standard, opium, in its normal, moist condition, should yield not less than 9.5 per cent. of anhydrous morphin. The average dose is 1 gr. (0.6 gm.). The official preparations are:

Opii Pulvis, U.S.P. (should contain not less than 10 nor more than 10.5 per cent. of anhydrous Morphin). *Dose*, ¼–2 gr. (0.016–0.13 Gm.).

Opium Deodoratum, U.S.P. (Denarcotized Opium, 10 to 10.5 per cent. of Morphin). *Dose*, ½–2 gr. (0.03–0.13 Gm.).

Opium Granulatum, U.S.P. (10 to 10.5 per cent. of Morphin). *Dose*, ½–2 gr. (0.03–0.13 Gm.).

Extractum Opii, U.S.P. (20 per cent. of Morphin). *Dose*, ¼–1 gr. (0.016–0.65 Gm.).

Tinctura Opii, U.S.P. (Laudanum; 10 per cent.). *Dose*, 5–20 min. (0.3–1.3 mils).

Digitized by Google

Tinctura Opii Deodorati, U.S.P. (10 per cent.). *Dose*, 5–20 min. (0.3–1.3 mils).

Tinctura Opii Camphorata, U.S.P. (Paregoric; contains Camphor, Benzoic Acid, Oil of Anise, and Powdered Opium; 4 fl. dr. (15.0 mils) represent about 1 gr. (0.065 gm.) of Opium). *Dose*, ½–4 fl. dr. (2.0–15.0 mils).

Pulvis Ipecacuanhæ et Opii, U.S.P. (Dover's Powder; contains 10 per cent. of Powdered Opium; 10 per cent. of Powdered Ipecac; and 80 per cent. of Sugar of Milk). *Dose*, 5–10 gr. (0.3–0.65 Gm.).

Mistura Glycyrrhizæ Composita (from Camphorated Tincture of Opium). *Dose*, 2–3 fl. dr. (8.0–12.0 mils).

Morphin and **codein** are the chief alkaloids of opium, and they represent the physiologic activity of the drug. Both are official. Morphin occurs in white, prismatic, shining crystals or fine needles, odorless, of a bitter taste, and sparingly soluble in water, freely so in alcohol. The average dose is ⅛ gr. (0.008 Gm.).

Codein occurs in white or nearly translucent prisms, or a crystalline powder, odorless, and having a faintly bitter taste; soluble in 120 parts of water and in 2 parts of alcohol. The average dose is ½ gr. (0.03 Gm.).

The salts of morphin and codein are much more soluble than the alkaloids themselves, and these are generally prescribed. The following are official:

Morphinæ Hydrochloridum, U.S.P. *Dose*, ⅛–½ gr. (0.008–0.032 Gm.).

Morphinæ Sulphas, U.S.P. *Dose*, ⅛–½ gr. (0.008–0.032 Gm.).

Codeinæ Sulphas, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½–2 gr. (0.03–0.13 Gm.).

Codeinæ Phosphas, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½–2 gr. (0.03–0.13 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Opium is a narcotic inducing stupor, and as a result true analgesic and hypnotic effects are produced, the dominant action being due to the morphin which it contains. The drug acts principally upon the brain, which it soon depresses, causing sleep. When the dose has been moderate, a stage of excitement or exhilaration generally precedes the narcosis. In large doses opium is a powerful respiratory depressant, and in fatal cases of poisoning death usually results from paralysis of the respiratory centers.

All of the secretions, except the perspiration, are diminished by opium; the salivary glands are especially affected, causing great dryness in the mouth and consequent thirst; digestion is also impaired and constipation results.

There is a difference of opinion in regard to the local action of

Digitized by Google

morphin. Stevens[1] states that morphin, applied locally, acts as a direct depressant to the sensory nerve filaments. Many pharmacologists claim that the alkaloid has little or no local action, and that to produce its effect it must enter the circulation and be carried to the brain where it depresses the central nervous system.

Opium is rapidly absorbed and is eliminated chiefly from the viscera of the stomach and intestines (gastrointestinal mucous membrane) and very little by the kidneys.

Conditions and Drugs Modifying the Action of Opium.—There are certain symptoms, diseases, and drugs which greatly modify the action of opium. Patients suffering from severe pain, as in acute alveolar abscess, neuralgia, etc., or patients having diabetes can frequently take with advantage doses which, under ordinary circumstances, would produce profound narcosis. The age and sex also modify the action of opium. Children are peculiarly susceptible to the drug on account of their sensitive nervous mechanism, and, therefore, smaller doses must be given than the age would naturally indicate. The action of opium is more pronounced on women than on men.

Patients rapidly acquire a tolerance of the drug through frequent repetition of the dose, so that habitués can often take large quantities without experiencing the usual effects.

The hypnotic action of opium is enhanced by combining it with hypnotic drugs; its anodyne influence is increased by belladonna and cocain, and its diaphoretic effects by ipecac.

Poisoning and Treatment.—It is the acute rather than the chronic poisoning by opium with which the dentist should be familiar. Unless the dose is very large, the narcotic symptoms are manifested by three distinct stages. The first is excitement or exhilaration, in which the imagination is stimulated and the feelings are exalted. This is soon followed by the second stage in which listlessness and drowsiness are the prominent symptoms, the patient finally falling into a deep sleep; the pulse is slow and full, the pupils are contracted to a pin-point size, the respirations are slow and difficult, the muscles are relaxed, and the face is pale. In this stage it is still possible to arouse the patient by loud noises, shaking, etc. From this stage, unless proper treatment is given, the patient gradually passes into the third, that of absolute coma and insensibility—a sleep from which he never awakens, death finally resulting from paralysis of the respiratory and other life-centers.

The author well remembers his first experience in poisoning a cat

[1] Modern Materia Medica and Therapeutics.

Digitized by Google

with opium in the pharmacy course of instruction. A moderate dose of morphin sulphate was hypodermically administered. In a few minutes the animal imagined it had caught a mouse and was happy playing with it; after a short time, it became drowsy and fell asleep—here the pupils were contracted, respiration was slow and labored; and the muscles completely relaxed; finally, perhaps a half-hour from the time the first symptoms were manifested, the cat passed into that comatose state from which it never awoke.

In the treatment of *acute opium poisoning*, at least three objects are of prime importance: to eliminate the poison, maintain respiration, and prevent failure of the circulation. The first thing to do is to empty the stomach either by means of the stomach-pump or stimulating emetics, as zinc sulphate or mustard flour, and evacuate the bowels. Strong black coffee may be given by the mouth or bowel; it promotes wakefulness and stimulates respiration. Atropin and strychnin may also be given. The best chemic antidote is potassium permanganate; 3–5 gr. (0.2–0.3 gm.) of this drug should be dissolved in a glassful of water and given at once, repeated in thirty minutes, if necessary. Tannic acid has also been recommended as a chemic antidote, but neither the morphin sulphate nor hydrochlorid is precipitated by it. Counterirritants, slapping, shouting in the ear, may arouse the patient from his lethargy. Continually walking the patient or anything to keep him awake is indicated. When the third stage (narcotism) is approaching, artificial respiration by Sylvester's method or by a pump is imperative.

Therapeutics.—Opium, or its alkaloids, have practically but one use in dental practice and that is to *control or relieve pain*. It is the greatest analgesic known and may well be remembered as the great "pain killer." In allaying the severe pain of *fractures*, *malignant growths*, and *acute inflammations of serous membranes* this drug has no rival. Pain of moderate intensity may often be allayed by the ordinary antipyretic and hypnotic drugs; when it is severe and excruciating and the cause cannot be at once removed, it is a waste of time to experiment with other drugs when so potent an agent as opium is obtainable. In *neuralgias* and other forms of recurrent pain opium or morphin should be used only after all other measures have failed, and then with extreme caution, on account of the danger of forming the opium habit. No drug except, perhaps, alcohol is more enticing, nor its continued use more liable to form the drug-habit than opium. It is safest for a dentist never to write a prescription for the drug. With a prescription the patient may be relieved from the pain for which the remedy was prescribed, but subsequently he

Digitized by Google

might get the prescription refilled on the least provocation, and thus the habit be innocently formed. Dover's powder is a common and valuable remedy in *acute coryza*. It is also a most efficient diaphoretic, and may be used in dentistry to *abort an acute alveolar abscess*. In conditions where the pain is not so severe, codein sulphate may be advantageously combined with other hypnotic drugs, such as phenacetin, etc.

Morphin has been added to various formulas for *devitalizing the pulps* of teeth. But as the drug has been shown to possess little or no local action, its use here is practically valueless, cocain being far preferable to control the irritating action of the devitalizing agent (arsenic trioxid). It should be remembered that opium and its alkaloids come under the Federal Anti-Narcotic Law; and when purchased or administered a record must be kept.

Contraindications.—On account of the peculiar susceptibility of children to the drug, if avoidable, opium should not be given under five years of age. One minim (0.06 mil) of tincture of opium (laudanum) has caused the death of a child one day old, and a few minims of camphorated tincture of opium (paregoric) have proved fatal to an infant nine months old. The death of a nursing babe is even reported where the mother had taken a medicinal dose of laudanum. The drug is, therefore, contraindicated in pregnancy and nursing mothers.

HYOSCYAMUS—U.S.P.

(Henbane.)

Hyoscyamus is the *dried leaves* and *flowering tops* of *Hyoscyamus niger*, a plant growing in Europe, Asia, and North America. The specimen should be collected from plants of the second year's growth, and should yield, when assayed, not less than 0.065 per cent. of alkaloids, of which there are two—*hyoscyamin* and *hyoscin*. Both are official in the form of the hydrobromid, the former Hyoscyaminæ Hydrobromidum, U.S.P.; the latter Scopolaminæ Hydrobromidum; also known as hyoscin hydrobromid, obtained from various plants of the *Solanaceæ*. The average dose of the leaves of hyoscyamus is 4 gr. (0.25 Gm.). The average dose of hyoscyamin hydrobromid is $\frac{1}{200}$ gr. (0.0003 Gm.). The average dose of scopolamin hydrobromid is $\frac{1}{200}$ gr. (0.0003 Gm.). The following preparations of hyoscyamus are official:

Tinctura Hyoscyami, U.S.P. *Dose*, 10–60 min. (0.6–4.0 mils).
Fluidextractum Hyoscyami, U.S.P. *Dose*, 5–15 min. (0.3–1.0 mil).
Extractum Hyoscyami, U.S.P. *Dose*, $\frac{1}{2}$–3 gr. (0.03–0.2 Gm.).

Digitized by Google

Physiologic Action.—In therapeutic doses hyoscyamus resembles belladonna in its action; it causes dilatation of the pupils, checks the salivary secretions, produces dryness of the throat, and quickens the pulse and respiration. Its narcotic action upon the brain is somewhat more profound than that of belladonna. The consensus of clinical experience seems to be, also, that hyoscyamin and atropin closely resemble each other in their action; with scopolamin (hyoscin) the action is quite different, this drug being a distinct hypnotic in that it depresses rather than stimulates the respiratory center.

Therapeutics.—Neither hyoscyamus nor its alkaloids are extensively used in dentistry; belladonna and atropin answering all of the purposes for which the former drugs could be employed. Scopolamin hydrobromid and morphin sulphate in combination have been injected hypodermically previous to the administration of general anesthetics as a means of inducing a more *tranquil anesthesia.* By this means there is said to be an absence of mental excitement, bronchial irritation, and vomiting. In *neuralgia* in individuals where a tonic is indicated or in malarial regions, the following remedy made into 12 pills or capsules, one given before meals, will prove beneficial:

Quinin Valerianate, 24 gr. (1.5 Gm.).
Extract of Hyoscyamus, 4 gr. (0.25 Gm.).
Extract of Cinchona, 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.).

CANNABIS—U.S.P.

(Cannabis Indica, U.S.P. VIII; Indian Hemp.)

Cannabis is the *dried flowering tops of Cannabis sativa*, or of the variety *indica*, a pistillate plant growing in the East Indies. It contains a natural resin called *cannabin*, and the specimen of the drug should be collected while the fruits are as yet undeveloped, for they then carry the whole of their resin. The average dose is 2 gr. (0.13 gm.). The official preparations are:

Tinctura Cannabis, U.S.P. *Dose*, 5–20 min. (0.3–1.3 mils).
Fluidextractum Cannabis, U.S.P. *Dose*, 2–5 min. (0.13–0.3 mils).
Extractum Cannabis, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1/8–1 gr. (0.008–0.065 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Internally administered in therapeutic doses, cannabis acts as a mild analgesic, hypnotic, and sedative. At first there is a marked stimulation of cerebral activities, the imagination is quickened and the flow of ideas heightened. There is generally

Digitized by Google

a dreamy state accompanying these symptoms, and the sensation of pain and touch are blunted, as the centers governing these are affected. The excitement is finally followed by sleep which may last for several hours. Although alarming symptoms often follow large doses of the drug, death directly attributable to it has not been reported.

Therapeutics.—Cannabis is employed for its mild analgesic action in certain forms of *neuralgia*, especially *migraine* and *headache*. It is extensively employed as a hypnotic in *melancholia*.

The extract should be given in pill or capsule, the tincture and fluid extract in alcoholic menstruum on account of the resinous constituent (cannabin) being precipitated by aqueous solutions. The drug is not employed for many of the disorders for which it was formerly used.

TABACUM (Nonofficial)

(Tobacco.)

Tobacco is the commercial *dried leaves* of *Nicotiana tabacum*, an annual plant indigenous to tropical America, but cultivated in several parts of the world, especially in Virginia and Cuba. It contains a very poisonous, volatile, oily liquid alkaloid, called *nicotin*. The quantity of the alkaloid varies greatly in the different specimens, depending largely upon the climate and soil of the various countries in which it is raised. Cuba is supposed to produce about the best specimens of tobacco.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Tobacco is a marked depressant nauseant, and produces emesis by irritation as well as by systemic action. Its continued use by smoking or chewing it to excess produces granular inflammation of the mucous membrane of the mouth and pharynx, atrophy of the retina, dyspepsia, lowered sexual vitality, sudden faints, nervous depression, and cardiac irritability. Used by the young, it hinders the development of the brain, and interferes with metabolism in general (Osler). It is claimed to produce cancer of the lips and tongue, blunting of the moral sense, mental aberration, and even insanity. The so-called "tobacco heart," induces many forms of nervous, painful, and oppressed cardiac action, depending upon the age, quantity used, and other conditions.

Nicotin is one of the most deadly poisons known. The author remembers poisoning a cat with this agent in the pharmacy school. The animal at once became greatly excited, then there was a wild stare, a deep sigh, and sudden death within three minutes after the

Digitized by Google

ingestion of the drug. The claim that nicotin enters the body from smoking tobacco is without foundation, as the liquid alkaloid is volatile and the heat breaks it up into other compounds far less poisonous. Chewing tobacco is supposed by many laymen to allay *toothache*. The claim is not justified from the physiologic action of the drug. Tobacco is not used therapeutically in dentistry.

STIMULANTS

Stimulants are agents which increase the activity of life processes or functions. When the term "stimulant" is applied to medicinal agents it is used in various senses and is generally accompanied by such adjectives as cardiac, respiratory, gastric, restorative, etc., to indicate the various organs and processes of the body stimulated by the administration or application of the drug.

CARDIAC STIMULANTS

These are agents which *increase the functional activity or the efficiency* of the heart's action. The chief cardiac stimulants are:

Nux Vomica (Strychnin).	Digitalis.
Alcohol.	The Nitrites.
Ammonia.	Camphor.
Caffein.	

NUX VOMICA—U.S.P.

Nux vomica is the *dried ripe seeds* of *Strychnos nux vomica*, a small tree growing in the East Indies. The drug contains two important alkaloids—*strychnin* and *brucin*, the former being in excess and fully representing the action of the crude drug, which should contain, when assayed, not less than 2.5 per cent. of the alkaloids. Brucin resembles strychnin in its action, but is much less powerful. The average dose of powdered nux vomica is 1 gr. (0.06 Gm.). The following preparations are official:

Tinctura Nucis Vomicæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 5–20 min. (0.3–1.3 mils).
Fluidextractum Nucis Vomicæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–5 min. (0.06–0.3 mil).
Extractum Nucis Vomicæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, ⅛–½ gr. (0.008–0.03 Gm.).

As has been stated, strychnin fully represents the action of nux vomica. This alkaloid is official.

Digitized by Google

STRYCHNINA—U.S.P.

It occurs as colorless crystals or a white crystalline powder, odorless and having an intensely bitter taste; sparingly soluble in water. Two salts of strychnin are official, the sulphate (Strychninæ Sulphas, U.S.P.) and the nitrate (Strychninæ Nitras, U.S.P.). Both in appearance resemble the alkaloid itself, but are much more soluble in water. The average dose of strychnin or of either of its salts is $\frac{1}{40}$ gr. (0.0015 Gm.).

Strychnin is a constituent of the following preparations:

Glycerite of the Phosphates of Iron, Quinin, and Strychnin, N.F.
Syrup of the Phosphates of Iron, Quinin, and Strychnin, N.F.
Compound Syrup of Hypophosphites, N.F.
Compound Laxative Pills, N.F.
Elixir Iron, Quinin, and Strychnin, N.F.

Physiologic Action.—Strychnin is a true cardiac stimulant, the pulse becoming stronger and more rapid under its influence as a result of its action upon the heart and vasomotor center. The drug also acts as a powerful respiratory stimulant, the movements of respiration becoming deepened and quickened. The chief action of strychnin is upon the nervous system. Here it acts as a powerful stimulant to the spinal cord, especially the centers governing the movements of the body. The most marked effect of the drug, in toxic doses, is increased reflex irritability of the spinal cord, which is shown most conspicuously by the production of muscular rigidity. Nux vomica or strychnin, in small doses, strengthens the muscular movements of the stomach and increases the flow of gastric secretions. It therefore acts as a stomachic. The drug is eliminated principally through the kidneys.

Poisoning and Treatment.—If the dose of strychnin is within therapeutic limits, yet sufficient to produce slight toxic effects, the first symptom is likely to be a feeling of uneasiness with heightened reflex irritability, and this may be followed by muscular twitching in some part of the body. With larger doses, spinal convulsions result from the slightest external irritation, causing the patient to rest on his head and feet (opisthotonos); the flexor muscles are overcome by the extensors, and the feet are curved inward. The convulsions for the most part are intermittent; during the intermission there is complete muscular relaxation. During the attack the contraction of

Digitized by Google

the facial muscles causes the patient to grin in a ghastly manner, but the muscles of the jaws are unaffected until toward the last. This latter diagnostic sign should be remembered, as strychnin poisoning may become confused with tetanus on account of the rigidity of the muscles during the convulsive attacks. In tetanus the muscles of the jaw are very early implicated. Other diagnostic marks of tetanus, as contrasted with it, are slower development of the symptoms and the continuous muscular rigidity. There is never complete muscular relaxation even in the intermission of the spasms as there is in strychnin poisoning.

The number of convulsive seizures varies in different instances, but generally three or four are fatal; the patient succumbing to asphyxia and exhaustion. In the *treatment of strychnin poisoning*, if the patient is seen early enough, emetics, particularly apomorphin hydrochlorid (1/10 gr.–0.006 Gm.) hypodermically, should be given, followed by washing out the stomach. If violent convulsions already are present, evacuation of the stomach, as a rule, is contraindicated, as either emetics or the stomach-pump would provoke further attacks. Inhalations of chloroform or amyl nitrite will control the spasms. As a chemic antidote tannic acid in solution may be administered. Probably the best physiologic antidotes are potassium bromid (1–2 dr.—4.0–8.0 Gm.) and chloral hydrate (20 gr.–1.3 Gm.); when the patient is unable to swallow, the latter drug (1 dr.–4.0 Gm.) may be given in an enema (per rectum). These agents depress the nerve centers stimulated by the strychnin. Since the slightest external stimulus will provoke convulsions, the patient should be disturbed as little as possible.

Therapeutics.—Nux vomica or strychnin is used chiefly as a cardiac stimulant, a respiratory stimulant, a motorexcitant, and a stomachic. Strychnin sulphate, in soluble tablet form of proper therapeutic dose (1/40 gr.–0.0015 Gm.), should be in every dental office. Being both a cardiac and respiratory stimulant it makes a valuable remedy in cases of *poisoning* by drugs which depress the cardiac and respiratory center. In poisoning by cocain, opium, chloral hydrate, aconite, ether, chloroform, or ethyl chlorid, it should be given hypodermically in full doses and repeated, if necessary, in fifteen minutes. In *neuralgia* due to an atonic condition, strychnin is indicated. Here it may be given in either the elixir, syrup, or glycerite of the phosphates of iron, quinin, and strychnin.

Incompatibles.—Strychnin is incompatible with tannic acid, alkalies, and the salts of the halogen elements (Cl, I, and Br.).

Digitized by Google

ALCOHOL—U.S.P.

(Ethyl Alcohol; C_2H_5OH.)

Ethyl alcohol is obtained by the distillation of fermented saccharaceous substances. To be up to the official standard it must contain 92.3 per cent. by weight or 94.9 per cent. by volume at 15.56°C. of absolute ethyl alcohol. It will be observed that the temperature at which alcohol is measured is not the standard temperature (25°C.) of the U.S.P. IX. Exception was made in the temperature for alcohol in order to correspond with the Government regulation. It occurs as a colorless, transparent, mobile, and volatile liquid, having a pungent odor, and a burning taste; miscible with water, ether, and chloroform in all proportions. It is inflammable and burns with a bluish, nonluminous flame.

The following preparations are official:

Alcohol Dehydratum, U.S.P., Alcohol Absolutum, U.S.P. VIII (99 per cent. Alcohol).
Alcohol Dilutum, U.S.P. (41 to 42 per cent. by weight or 48.4 to 49.5 per cent. by volume, at 15.56°C. of Absolute Alcohol).

The following nonofficial preparations contain alcohol:

Spiritus Frumenti, U.S.P. VIII (Whisky; 37 to 47.5 per cent. Alcohol, distilled from fermented grain).
Spiritus Vini Gallici, U.S.P. VIII (Brandy; 39 to 47 per cent. Alcohol, distilled from fermented grapes).
Spiritus Juniperi Compositus, U.S.P. VIII (equivalent to Gin; about 60 per cent. Alcohol).
Vinum Album, U.S.P. VIII (White Wine; 7 to 12 per cent. Alcohol).
Vinum Rubrum, U.S.P. VIII (Red Wine; 7 to 12 per cent. Alcohol).
Rectified Spirit (85 per cent. by weight of Absolute Alcohol).
Proof Spirit (49 per cent. by weight of Absolute Alcohol, Volatile Oil, and other foreign material).
Gin (42 per cent. by weight of Absolute Alcohol, distilled in Holland from rye or barley, and flavored with juniper berries or hops).
Malted Liquors (Beer, Ale, and Porter) are prepared by fermenting malted grain with hops and adding other bitters. Beer contains 2 to 3 per cent. of Alcohol; ale and porter, from 4 to 6 per cent., besides carbonic and lactic acids, malt extract, various aromatics, and certain salts of sodium and potassium.

The formerly official wines are made by fermentation of pure grape juice.

Digitized by Google

Physiologic Action.—There is much diversity of opinion regarding the physiologic action and uses of alcohol. Applied to the skin, it extracts water from the tissues and acts as a detergent and antiseptic. On the mucous membrane it extracts water with greater rapidity, coagulates albumin, and causes a whitened and corrugated surface. The gastric functions, as well as the flow of saliva, are reflexly stimulated by its local action in the mouth.

Internally administered, alcohol reflexly and rapidly stimulates the heart before absorption can take place, the effect upon the circulation persisting after the absorption of the drug. It depresses the vasoconstrictors; thus arterial tension is raised, though the arterioles are dilated. Toxic doses depress the heart's action, and still further dilate the peripheral blood-vessels. This action of alcohol, in causing the heart to beat stronger and faster, at the same time dilating the blood-vessels—especially those of the peripheries—renders the drug one of the most valuable diffusible stimulants (Butler). The dominant action of alcohol is on the nervous system. It first stimulates and then paralyzes all parts of the nervous system.

Poisoning and Treatment.—The poisonous action of alcohol may be discussed as *acute* and *chronic alcoholism*.

Acute Intoxication.—The ingestion of large quantities of alcohol produces certain characteristic symptoms: Flushing of the face, mental excitement, a quickened pulse and respiration; in a short time the speech becomes incoherent, the pupils are dilated, then follows delirium, loss of coördination, subnormal temperature, vomiting, loss of ability to control the acts of toilet, and, finally, stupor and coma. If the dose has not been too large, recovery follows in a day or two.

Stevens[1] emphasizes the care to be taken in order to distinguish acute alcoholism from uremia, opium poisoning, and apoplexy. The urinous odor of the breath, the small pupils, and the presence of albumin in the urine will serve to distinguish *uremia*. The small pupils, slow and labored respiration, and slow and full pulse will point to *opium poisoning*. The unequal pupils, hemiplegia, and high temperature will indicate *apoplexy*. In the *treatment of acute alcoholism* the stomach should be emptied of all unabsorbed alcohol by the stomach-pump, and a stimulating emetic (mustard flour), or the hypodermic injection of apomorphin (1/10 gr.–0.006 Gm.) is indicated. Cautious inhalations of ammonia should be given, together with the internal administration of black coffee. The patient should be made to perspire freely by the application of external heat (warm blankets,

[1] Modern Materia Medica and Therapeutics.

Digitized by Google

etc.), and if there is danger of collapse, strychnin sulphate (1/30 gr.–0.002 Gm.) should be hypodermically administered and artificial respiration practised.

Chronic alcoholism is generally the result of the continuous and excessive use of alcohol, and is characterized by disturbed sleep, fine tremor, mental impairment, gastric irritation, injection of the eyes, and redness of the nose and cheeks from permanent dilatation of the capillaries. A frequent complication of chronic alcoholism is *delirium tremens*. This condition is manifested by great mental excitement, insomnia, incoherent speech, tremors, and terrifying hallucinations of sight and hearing. In favorable cases recovery follows in a few days, but frequently symptoms of typhoid and pneumonia develop, and the attack ends in death. In the *treatment of delirium tremens* the main indications, according to Butler,[1] are:

1. *Elimination* by diaphoresis, catharsis, diuresis, warm baths, etc.

2. *Support.*—Some alcohol may be necessary. Easily digested food. Enemata, if necessary.

3. *Quiet.*—Hypnotics: opium, chloral hydrate, the bromids.

In the *treatment of chronic alcoholism* it is necessary to consider the character of the individual affected. Butler states that a thoughtful and extended experience with dipsomaniacs will convince most observers that the vast majority of them suffer from a disease possessing usually a distinct and traceable etiology, and resulting from either an inherited or acquired neurosis. It is a condition akin to epilepsy; the treatment, therefore, turns on the discovery of the conditions preliminary to the drinking period and the determination whether this can be prevented by dietetic and therapeutic measures, as is done in cases of epilepsy.

The medicinal agents employed are strychnin, atropin, small doses of such alteratives as arsenic, potassium iodid, and mercury, while phosphorus and other restoratives and tonics will prove efficacious.

Therapeutics.—Alcohol is extensively used locally in dentistry as a dehydrater, detergent, and antiseptic. Its action upon bacteria is no doubt due to its power of abstracting water and of coagulating albumin. According to the experiments of pharmacologists, the most effective dilutions of alcohol against the strongly resisting (nonsporing) bacteria, such as the pus organisms, are those containing from 60 to 70 per cent. by volume. The author suggests 70 per cent. alcohol to which 1 gr. (0.064 gm.) of thymol to the fl. oz. (30.0 mils) is added. This is called *modified alcohol*, and is useful for sterilizing

[1] Text-Book of Materia Medica, Therapeutics and Pharmacology.

Digitized by Google

the teeth included in the rubber dam for *aseptic root-canal work*, and other aseptic operations involving the mucous membrane.

For spraying the mouth previous to performing any dental operation, the author is very partial to cinnamon water to which from 2–5 per cent. of alcohol has been added. It should be remembered that alcohol is less valuable as a disinfectant than as an antiseptic and as a vehicle for stronger agents of this class; therefore, from 10 to 25 per cent. alcohol makes an excellent addition to aqueous antiseptic solutions. Absolute alcohol is frequently added to tooth-pastes for its antiseptic and solvent power. The drug is used as a styptic to check *capillary oozing*, and a very efficient means of reducing *temperature in fever* is to bathe the skin with alcohol; the method is also employed to check *excessive sweating*. Alcohol is a positive antidote for phenol, and whenever the latter agent is being used about the mouth, it should be in a convenient place to neutralize the caustic action of phenol, should the latter accidentally get on the soft tissues of the mouth. Alcohol is employed internally as a diffusible circulatory stimulant, a stomachic, a food, and a chemic antidote for phenol. In all forms of sudden heart-failure, as in *syncope*, *shock*, *snake-bite*, etc., it is an invaluable stimulant. Whisky or brandy should be in every dental office to be used as a cardiac stimulant in cases of *cocain poisoning* or other conditions which depress the heart.

AMMONIA

(NH_3.)

Ammonia is obtained as a by-product in the manufacture of coal-gas. It occurs as a colorless gas, having a very penetrating odor and an acrid taste. It is chemically soluble in water, and in chemistry it is considered a hypothetical metal, as it acts like a base in uniting with acids to form salts. The following preparations are official:

Aqua Ammoniæ Fortior, U.S.P. (Stronger Ammonia Water; 28 per cent. by weight of the Gas).
Aqua Ammoniæ, U.S.P. (Ammonia Water; 10 per cent. by weight of the Gas).
Spiritus Ammoniæ Aromaticus, U.S.P. (Aromatic Spirit of Ammonia; contains Ammonium Carbonate, 34; Ammonia Water, 90; Oil of Myristica, 1; Oil of Lemon, 10; Oil of Lavender Flowers, 1; Alcohol, 700; Water to make 1,000). *Dose*, ¼ to 1 fl. dr. (1.0–4.0 mils).
Linimentum Ammoniæ, U.S.P. Externally.

Physiologic Action.—Ammonia has a decidedly irritant local action, and in concentrated solution it speedily produces vesication.

Digitized by Google

The drug has the decided advantage of being a gas which permits of inhalation, and its irritant action upon the mucous membrane of the respiratory passages reflexly stimulates the cardiac and respiratory centers; both the strength and rapidity of the pulse and the depth and rapidity of the respirations are markedly increased. Given in weak solutions, the drug stimulates the flow of gastric juice, its action here resembling that of other alkalies. The gas acts upon the nervous system by stimulating the motor centers of the spinal cord, and thus reflex activity is increased.

Poisoning and Treatment.—In toxic doses preparations of ammonia are powerful corrosive poisons. The characteristic symptoms are severe burning pain in the fauces, esophagus, and stomach, with intense gastroenteritis. The violent irritation of the throat sometimes causes edema of the larynx, resulting in almost immediate death from asphyxia. In the *treatment of ammonia poisoning* the drug should be neutralized by some weak acid, like vinegar. This should be followed by demulcent drinks, opium being indicated for the relief of pain.

Therapeutics.—The chief use of ammonia in dental therapeutics is as a cardiac and respiratory stimulant. The drug acts quickly, and is an invaluable remedy in *syncope*, *collapse*, and other forms of *sudden heart failure*. When it is desired to give the drug by inhalation, as can easily be done on account of the volatility of the gas from its solutions, it is best to select ammonia water as the preparation to use. For internal administration the aromatic spirit of ammonia should be selected and given well diluted. Ammonia water in a specially prepared ampule, called "aspirol," and aromatic spirit of ammonia in 30 min. (2.0 mils) ampules are now on the market. These are convenient forms in which to keep the drug and should be in every dental office.

The liniment of ammonia is a popular counterirritant remedy in *chronic rheumatism*, *joint affections*, and *chilblains*.

Incompatibles.—Ammonia is incompatible with all acids, chloral hydrate, and alkaloids. With ferric salts it forms ferric hydroxid, which is an antidote for arsenic. With formaldehyd it forms urotropin.

AMMONII CARBONAS—U.S.P.

(Ammonium Carbonate; $NH_4HCO_3.NH_4NH_2CO_2$.)

The official **ammonium carbonate** is really a mixture of ammonium acid carbonate and ammonium carbamate. It occurs in white,

Digitized by Google

internally translucent, crystalline masses, having an extremely pungent odor, and an acrid taste; soluble in 4 parts of water. The average dose is 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—This drug is a cardiac and respiratory stimulant, due to the ammonia gas which is constantly liberated. It is also a stimulating expectorant. It enters into the composition of aromatic spirit of ammonia, which preparation is extensively used in dental therapeutics.

CAFFEINA—U.S.P.

(Caffein; $C_8H_{10}N_4O_2.H_2O$.)

Caffein is an alkaloid obtained from the *leaves* of *Thea sinensis* (tea), or from the *seeds* of *Coffea arabica* (coffee). It occurs in fine, colorless, silky crystals, without odor, and having a bitter taste; soluble in about 46 parts of cold water. The average dose is 2½ gr. (0.15 gm.). The following preparations are official:

Caffeina Citrata, U.S.P. (Caffein Citrate). *Dose*, 2–5 gr. (0.13–0.3 Gm.).
Caffeina Citrata Effervescens, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–2 dr. (4.0–8.0 Gm.).
Caffeinæ Sodio-Benzoas, U.S.P. *Dose*, by mouth, 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.), hypodermic, 3 gr. (0.2 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Caffein is a powerful cardiac and respiratory stimulant. Its action upon the circulatory system results in high blood-pressure and increased frequency of the pulse, due in part to its direct influence upon the heart and its stimulating action upon the vasomotor centers. The brain seems to be especially susceptible to the influence of caffein, small doses sharpen the intellect and produce profundity of thought, and wakefulness. The drug also acts as a diuretic, stimulating the secreting structure of the kidneys, and is quickly eliminated through these organs.

Therapeutics.—Caffein is an entirely safe drug to be used in large dose, hence it is one of the best stimulants to employ in *poisoning* by narcotic drugs, like cocain, opium, etc. Caffein citrate is the preparation generally used because it is more soluble than caffein. Strong black coffee is also used.

The drug is a constituent of compound acetanilid powder, N.F. Its action overcomes the depressant effect of acetanilid upon the heart. It may also be combined with phenacetin or a bromid and used with excellent results in *migraine* and *nervous headache*.

Digitized by Google

DIGITALIS—U.S.P.

(Foxglove.)

Digitalis is the *dried leaves* of *Digitalis purpurea*, a biennial plant growing in Central and Southern Europe. It contains several principles, all of which are glucosidal in character, the most important being *digitalin*, *digitoxin*, *digitalein*, *digitonin*, and *digitin*. The first two represent more or less imperfectly the action of digitalis upon the heart, and since both are freely soluble in alcohol and practically insoluble in water, it will at once be observed that the most active principles of the drug are contained in the tincture and fluid extract, and the least active in the infusion; all of which preparations of digitalis are official:

Tinctura Digitalis, U.S.P. *Dose*, 5–20 min. (0.3–1.3 mils).
Fluidextractum Digitalis, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–2 min. (0.06–0.12 mils).
Infusum Digitalis, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–4 fl. dr. (4.0–15.0 mils).

Physiologic Action.—Digitalis is a powerful cardiac stimulant. It does not increase the rapidity of the heart's action; it rather slows the pulsations and raises the blood-pressure, but in spite of this the efficiency of the contraction is increased and the pulse improved in character. In therapeutic doses the drug has practically no effect except on the circulation. The slowing of the pulse results from a prolongation of the diastole, and this in turn is due to stimulation of the vagi. The increased blood-pressure is due to the twofold action of the drug, that of securing efficiency by the direct action upon the heart, and to the contraction of the arterioles, which results indirectly from the stimulation of the vasomotor center, and directly from the action on the vessel-walls. In cases of low arterial pressure, when the urine is scanty, digitalis acts as a diuretic.

A disadvantage of digitalis medication is the varying strength of the crude drug. Pharmaceutic chemists have attempted to remove this disadvantage by *standardizing* their preparations. The following methods of standardization are most extensively used:

1. The frog-lethal dose method.
2. The frog-systolic standstill method, of which there are several modifications.
3. The guinea-pig lethal dose method.
4. The intravenous cat method.

Poisoning and Treatment.—Digitalis is more rapidly absorbed than eliminated; because of this, *cumulative action* may follow the prolonged use of the drug even in therapeutic doses. Toxic symp-

Digitized by Google

toms may result from this source or from the ingestion of a single poisonous dose. Poisoning is characterized by gastrointestinal disturbances, abdominal pains, vomiting, and purging, with slow pulse, feeble respiration, dilated pupils, headache, delirium, and stupor. If a fatality results, it is generally from ten to forty-eight hours after the ingestion of the drug, as digitalis is a slow poison. In the *treatment of poisoning*, the stomach-pump should be employed. Tannic acid is a chemic antidote and may be given. Body temperature should be maintained by external heat, especially applied to the abdomen. Alcoholic stimulants are often indicated. The patient should be kept in the recumbent position, not being allowed even to raise his hand or head from the bed.

Therapeutics.—The chief use of the drug in dental therapeutics is as a cardiac stimulant. Hypodermic injections of the tincture of digitalis or of digitalin may be employed to increase the efficiency of the heart's action in *syncope*, *collapse*, and *poisoning* by cardiac depressants. It is best here to use the drug in conjunction with stimulants which act more quickly (alcoholic stimulants). The drug is contraindicated in cases of *aneurysm*.

AMYLIS NITRIS—U.S.P.

(Amyl Nitrite; $C_5H_{11}NO_2$.)

Amyl nitrite is prepared by the action of nitric acid upon amylic alcohol; the product, being a highly volatile liquid, is obtained by distillation. It has a strong ethereal odor.

Physiologic Action.—Following the inhalation of amyl nitrite there is a marked flushing of the face, due chiefly to the dilatation of the capillaries. The heart's action is increased, and the pulse is soft and compressible. There is a marked fall in blood-pressure because of the dilatation of the arterioles, which results from the paralyzant action of the drug upon the muscle fibers found in these structures. The nitrites cannot be regarded as powerful cardiac stimulants, but their action is equivalent to such, for by dilating the arterioles they largely remove the resistance against which the heart has to force the blood, thus making the work of this organ much easier to perform. These drugs, therefore, should be regarded as vasodilators, and not as true cardiac stimulants; but, on account of their action as vasodilators, they may be considered circulatory stimulants. The drug is largely eliminated through the kidneys.

Poisoning and Treatment.—In toxic doses amyl nitrite produces an exceedingly rapid and weak heart, cyanosis, slow and shallow

Digitized by Google

respiration, vertigo, headache, and disordered vision, death resulting from cardiac and respiratory failure. In the *treatment of poisoning* the heart's action must be sustained. Strychnin and digitalis will be found useful. Atropin may be administered, together with cold applications to the head, alcoholic stimulants, and, if necessary, artificial respiration. Adrenalin is claimed to be useful as it contracts the dilated arterioles.

Therapeutics.—Long[1] states that it is to be regretted that the nitrites have been considered direct heart stimulants; because of this they are extensively used in cases where the blood-pressure is already too low to permit efficiency of circulation, as in chloroform and other drug poisonings. Amyl nitrite is useful to relax *spasms* and to lower arterial tension. On account of the rapidity with which the drug is absorbed it is never necessary to give nitrites hypodermically. The effect of amyl nitrite may be obtained almost instantly by inhalation, and a dose of spirit of nitroglycerin (1–3 min.—0.06–0.2 mil) placed under the tongue will produce its full effect in less than five minutes. Amyl nitrite may be obtained in glass capsules or pearls, containing the requisite dose (2–5 min.—0.13–0.3 mil), which are easily crushed in a handkerchief, and should always be given by inhalation. In this manner it may be employed with benefit to relieve the *convulsions* of *epilepsy*, *tetanus*, *uremia*, and *strychnin* poisoning. The drug is used in *syncope* and *collapse* from other causes, but the diffusible stimulants are far preferable.

GLYCERYLIS NITRAS

(Nitroglycerin; Glonoin; Glyceryl Trinitrate; $C_3H_5(NO_3)_3$.)

Nitroglycerin is obtained by nitric acid or a mixture of nitric and sulphuric acid on dehydrated glycerin. It occurs as a clear, colorless liquid, with an odor and taste resembling that of alcohol. It explodes with great force, and should be kept in a cool place, away from lights and fire. It is official in the following form:

> Spiritus Glycerylis Nitratis, U.S.P. (Spirit of Nitroglycerin; an alcoholic solution containing 1 per cent. by weight of Glyceryl Trinitrate). *Dose*, 1–3 min. (0.06–0.2 mil.)

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Nitroglycerin is preferable to amyl nitrite, whose action it resembles, for internal administration. It is used in dentistry as a cardiac stimulant, and for this purpose it may be found as a constituent of local anesthetic solutions. It, however, is far inferior to strychnin or atropin as an agent to overcome the depressant effect of cocain upon the heart.

[1] Dental Materia Medica, Therapeutics and Prescription Writing.

Digitized by Google

Nitroglycerin is a valuable drug in those cases where it is desirable to relieve blood-pressure. For example, when it is deemed necessary to apply arsenic trioxid to a pulp which is in an inflammatory state, the engorged capillaries may be relieved and the pain mitigated by the administration of this drug (see page 327).

RESPIRATORY STIMULANTS

These are agents which *increase the functional activity of the respiratory centers or the efficiency* of the respiratory apparatus. The chief respiratory stimulants are:

Belladonna (Atropin).	Strychnin.*
Ammonia.*	Caffein.*

All of these drugs have been elsewhere discussed except the first-mentioned.

BELLADONNA

(Deadly Nightshade.)

Belladonna is a herbaceous perennial plant growing in the woods, chiefly in the mountainous districts of Central and Southern Europe. Both the *dried leaves* (*Belladonna Folia, U.S.P.*) and the *dried root* (*Belladonna Radix, U.S.P.*) of *Atropa Belladonna* are official. The drug contains an important alkaloid, *atropin*, to which its physiologic activity is due. The average dose of the powdered leaves and root is 1 gr. (0.06 Gm.). The following preparations are official:

Tinctura Belladonnæ Foliorum, U.S.P. *Dose*, 5–20 min. (0.3–1.3 mils).
Extractum Belladonnæ Foliorum, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1/8–1/4 gr. (0.008–0.016 Gm.).
Emplastrum Belladonnæ, U.S.P.
Unguentum Belladonnæ, U.S.P. (10 per cent. from Extract).
Fluidextractum Belladonnæ Radicis, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–3 min. (0.06–0.2 mil).
Linimentum Belladonnæ, U.S.P. (contains Camphor, 5 parts; fluid extract of Belladonna Root, 95 parts).

The action of belladonna is due entirely to atropin which it contains. This alkaloid is official.

ATROPINA—U.S.P.

Atropin occurs in the form of white, acicular crystals, or a crystalline powder, odorless, having a bitter, acrid taste; soluble in 455

Digitized by Google

parts of water, 2 parts of alcohol, 25 parts of ether, 1 part of chloroform, and about 27 parts of glycerin, at 25°C. One salt of atropin is official (Atropinæ Sulphas, U.S.P.), and in appearance resembles the alkaloid itself, except that it is more freely soluble in water. The average dose of atropin or of its salt is $\frac{1}{120}$ gr. (0.0005 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—The action of belladonna is dependent upon the amount of contained atropin. Applied locally in combination with absorbable substances—alcohol, camphor, animal fat, glycerin, etc.—atropin acts as a depressant to all highly organized tissues, exerting an analgesic and antisecretory influence. Medicinal doses of atropin, taken internally, produce dryness of the throat, dilatation of the pupils, quickening of the pulse, deepening of the respirations, and occasionally talkative delirium and erythematous rash. It is well to remember here that medicinal doses stimulate the respiratory center, while toxic doses paralyze it.

The salivary secretion is lessened through paralysis of the peripheral endings of the secretory fibers only of the chorda tympani nerve in the submaxillary gland (Butler). The drug also diminishes all of the secretions of the body, and its elimination is effected chiefly through the kidneys.

Poisoning and Treatment.—The characteristic symptoms of *atropin poisoning* are dryness of the throat, dilated pupils, rapid pulse, quick respiration, uneasiness, talkative delirium, erythematous rash, with, ultimately, stupor, collapse, and death from paralysis of the respiratory center. In the *treatment of poisoning* the stomach should be evacuated and then washed out with solutions of tannic acid—the chemic antidote. Cardiac and other respiratory stimulants (caffein) should be cautiously administered as the symptoms indicate.

Therapeutics.—Atropin is one of the best remedies at our command for controlling the secretions of the body. In cases where it is necessary to keep the *field of operation* dry, as in *treating and filling* teeth where the rubber dam cannot be successfully adjusted, atropin may be administered a few hours previous to operating with excellent results. In *salivation* from mercury the drug is likewise useful. In *hyperidrosis* of the hands and feet preparations of belladonna are used both externally and internally. Combined with camphor and other drugs, extract of belladonna is a useful remedy in *acute coryza*. Probably the greatest use atropin has in dental therapeutics is in the treatment of *shock* and *collapse* from local and general anesthetics, and also in the treatment of *poisoning from narcotic drugs*. In these cases atropin sulphate, hypodermically administered, stands next to strychnin and its salts.

Digitized by Google

Liniment of belladonna is a valuable remedy in the treatment of *neuralgia*.

GASTRIC STIMULANTS

Gastric stimulants, called also *stomachics*, are agents which sharpen the appetite and promote the functional activity of the stomach. The gastric stimulants are called "bitter tonics," and they include the following:

Gentian.	Cinchona.*
Wild Cherry.	Hydrastis.*
Nux Vomica.*	

GENTIANA—U.S.P.

(Gentian.)

Gentian is the *dried rhizome* and *roots* of *Gentiana lutea*, a small perennial plant indigenous to the mountainous districts of Central Europe. It contains a bitter glucosid, *gentiopicrin*, to which its stomachic property is due. The average dose is 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.). The official preparations are:

Tinctura Gentianæ Composita, U.S.P. (10 per cent. with Orange Peel and Cardamon Seed). *Dose*, 1–2 fl. dr. (4.0–8.0 mils).
Fluidextractum Gentianæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 15–30 min. (1.0–2.0 mils).
Extractum Gentianæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 2–10 gr. (0.13–0.6 Gm.).
Infusum Gentianæ Compositum (Nonofficial). *Dose*, ½ to 1 fl. oz. (15.0–30.0 mils).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—The action of gentian is due to the bitter glucosid which it contains, and like all bitter tonics its effect is immediate, due to the local action of the drug. It augments the secretions from the salivary and gastric glands, and thus aids digestion and improves nutrition. There is an intimate relationship between the stomach and the senses of taste and smell, and anything bitter in the mouth reflexly stimulates the gastric secretion.

Gentian is not much employed in dental practice. It may be considered one of the most reliable bitter tonics. In *pyorrhea alveolaris* associated with *neuralgia* due to a general atonic condition, the compound tincture of gentian may be advantageously combined with tincture of valerian (equal parts of the two) and given before meals in teaspoonful doses. Where the pyorrhea has caused indigestion an antacid, like sodium bicarbonate, may be combined with some preparation of gentian; because of the insolubility of sodium bicarbonate in alcohol, the compound infusion of gentian should be selected. A

Digitized by Google

useful combination is: Sodium bicarbonate, ½ dr. (2.0 Gm.); compound infusion of gentian, 3 fl. oz. (90.0 mils). This may be given in tablespoonful doses, before meals.

PRUNUS VIRGINIANA—U.S.P.

(Wild Cherry.)

Prunus virginiana is the *bark* of *Prunus serotina*, a large tree indigenous to North America. It contains tannic acid, a bitter principle, a ferment, *emulsin*, and a glucosid, *amygdalin*. In the presence of the ferment and water the glucosid is broken up into *hydrocyanic acid* and a *volatile oil*. The average dose of wild cherry bark is 30 gr. (2.0 Gm.). The following preparation is official:

> Syrupus Pruni Virginianæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–4 fl. dr. (4.0–15.0 mils).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Wild cherry is a bitter tonic. It might also be considered a sedative tonic. While it is peculiarly bitter, it is not unpleasant, and is well tolerated by the stomach. The syrup of wild cherry is a common ingredient in "cough-mixtures," and is supposed to quiet the cough and allay the irritability of the nervous system in *bronchial affections*. This effect is doubtless due to the hydrocyanic acid which it contains. The syrup has an agreeable taste and serves as an excellent vehicle for unpalatable drugs.

The other stomachics have been discussed under other headings.

RESTORATIVE STIMULANTS

These are agents which maintain or restore the bodily functions. The principal restorative stimulant is:

LIQUOR SODII CHLORIDI PHYSIOLOGICUS, U.S.P.

(Physiologic Salt Solution; Normal Salt Solution.)

This is a solution of 8.5 parts of sodium chlorid in 1,000 parts of sterile water, and closely corresponds in salinity to blood-serum. It is regarded as a valuable stimulant in cases of *shock* or *collapse*, especially from loss of blood by *hemorrhage*. It is injected intravenously by permitting the solution, quite hot, to run slowly through a large-sized, long hypodermic needle from a fountain syringe into the lumbar region or underneath the breast. From 2 fl. oz. (60.0 mils) to 10 fl. oz. or even 1 qt. (300.0–1,000 mils) may be used at frequent intervals. Sollmann[1] states that the action is only short, and the injection must

[1] A Text-Book of Pharmacology.

Digitized by Google

therefore be repeated. The restoration is brought about by the substitution of this fluid for the blood-serum. The solution is an excellent bland remedy to be used in establishing sinuses associated with alveolar abscesses, and also as a vehicle for local anesthetics and other agents (adrenalin, etc.). For making local anesthetic solutions, Ringer tablets are frequently added to sterile distilled water to make an *isotonic* solution. The Ringer tablet "B", which is generally employed, contains sodium chlorid $\frac{4}{5}$ gr. (0.05 Gm.), calcium chlorid $\frac{1}{15}$ gr. (0.004 Gm.), and potassium chlorid $\frac{1}{30}$ gr. (0.002 Gm.). One Ringer tablet "B" dissolved in $2\frac{1}{2}$ fl. dr. (10.0 mils) of water makes a 0.56 per cent. solution of the salts, which with the addition of the anesthetic agent approximates closely the specific gravity of the blood-serum, making the solution *isotonic*.

According to Dr. Alexis Carrel of the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research, and Dr. W. Crile, of Cleveland, Ohio, and others, the latest method of treating *infected wounds* consists in thoroughly irrigating the part with Dakin's *hyperchlorous acid solution*, and then exposing the wound to light from electric lamps placed in pasteboard cones on metal hoods suspended from an adjustable frame. The amount of light and the proximity of the lamps to the wound are governed by the comfort of the patient. When coagulated serum develops, Crile suggests a hot pack for half an hour with Wright's *hypertonic solution*. A hypertonic solution is one whose osmotic tension exceeds that of the blood-serum. The formulæ for Dakin's and Wright's solutions are here given:

Dakin's Solution.—

Dry sodium carbonate	200 Gm.
Chlorinated lime	140 Gm.
Tap water	10 L.

Mix and filter through cotton.
Add 40 gm. boric acid.

Wright's Solution.—

Sodium chlorid	3 parts.
Sodium citrate	1 parts.
Water	96 parts.

MISCELLANEOUS GROUP

There are several drugs which have a peculiar action upon the nervous system other than those thus far discussed under the various headings of general remedies. Some of these drugs stimulate, while others depress the nervous system. They will be considered here under this heading. Those of importance to dentists are:

Gelsemium. Valerian.

Digitized by Google

GELSEMIUM—U.S.P.

(Yellow Jasmine.)

Gelsemium is the *dried rhizome* and *roots* of *Gelsemium sempervirens*, a climbing plant growing in the moist woods of southern United States. It contains two alkaloids—*gelsemin* and *gelseminin*—the former stimulates, while the latter depresses the nervous system. The general effect of the drug is the result of a blending of the actions of the two alkaloids, although in man gelseminin appears to be more potent. The average dose of powdered gelsemium is ½ gr. (0.03 Gm.). The official preparations are:

Tinctura Gelsemii, U.S.P. *Dose*, 10 to 30 min. (0.6–2.0 mils).
Fluidextractum Gelsemii, U.S.P. *Dose*, 2–10 min. (0.13–0.6 mil).
Extractum Gelsemii, U.S.P. *Dose*, ⅙ gr. (0.01 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Gelsemium has a distinct action upon sensory nerves and is useful, therefore, in painful affections. In large doses it depresses the spinal cord, especially its motor neurons. The drug is used in *trifacial neuralgia*, and appears to be most serviceable when the neuralgia arises from diseased conditions of the teeth. The fluid extract is the preparation generally employed, although Marshall[1] prefers gelseminin sulphate, giving 1/30 gr. (0.002 gm.) every two hours until the constitutional effects are produced. This salt naturally would be more effective in neuralgic conditions than gelsemium preparations, as it is the alkaloid that depresses the nervous system; the other alkaloid (gelsemin) stimulates.

Poisoning and Treatment.—The toxic symptoms of gelsemium are drooping eyelids, disordered vision, frontal headache, falling of the jaw, muscular weakness, slow respiration, and, finally, collapse. In the *treatment of poisoning* the stomach should be evacuated, tannic acid administered as the chemic antidote, and collapse combated with such stimulants as strychnin, whisky, and ammonia.

VALERIANA—U.S.P.

(Valerian.)

Valerian is the *dried rhizome* and *roots* of *Valeriana officinalis*, a herbaceous, perennial plant, native of Europe. It contains *valerianic acid* and a *volatile oil*. The average dose is 30 gr. (2.0 Gm.). The following preparations are official:

Tinctura Valerianæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–2 fl. dr. (4.0–8.0 mils).
Tinctura Valerianæ Ammoniata, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–2 fl. dr. (4.0–8.0 mils).

[1] Injuries and Surgical Diseases of the Face, Mouth and Jaws.

Digitized by Google

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—The principal action of valerian is upon the nervous system, and it may be classed as a *nervine* in that it produces, in moderate dose, a sedative effect upon the brain and spinal cord. In *pyorrhea alveolaris* associated with more or less *neuralgia* due to a general atonic condition it may be combined with gentian with excellent results.

ALTERATIVES AND RESTORATIVES

Alteratives are agents which promote metabolic processes and thus counteract morbid conditions. They are closely related to **restoratives** in that both classes promote the processes of nutrition and aid metabolism. The latter class includes *foods*, *hematics*, and *tonics*.

Foods are substances which, when introduced into the body, supply material with which some structure is rebuilt or some vital process is maintained. They differ from medicines in that the latter modify vital processes, but furnish no material to renew the structures of the body.

Hematics or hematinics are agents which increase the hematin in the blood and restore or maintain bodily functions by enriching the red blood-corpuscles. The compounds of iron are the chief hematics.

Tonics are agents which improve the tone and impart strength and energy to the tissues. The main tonics are:

Iron and Compounds.	Hypophosphites.
Phosphorus.	Cod-liver Oil.
Calcium Phosphate.	Nux Vomica.*
Cinchona.*	

The principal alteratives are:

Potassium Iodid.	Sarsaparilla.
Mercury.	Echafolta.
Arsenic.*	Calx Sulphurata.
Gold and Sodium Chlorid.	

FERRUM—U.S.P.

(Iron; Fe.)

Metallic iron is official in the form of fine, bright wire.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Iron is an essential element of the body and may be regarded as a food as well as a medicine. It enters as an essential constituent (0.4 per cent.) into a peculiar proteid body—the hemoglobin of the blood. It is through the iron compounds of the body that the greater portion of the oxidizing functions of the various cells are carried on. In a healthy state of the

Digitized by Google

body, when the processes of mastication, digestion, assimilation, and nutrition are normal, there is a sufficient amount of iron furnished by the mixed diet to answer all physiologic requirements; but in many pathologic conditions there is a deficiency of iron, and the element must be furnished in the form of selected food or medicine. There is a difference of opinion as to whether metallic iron can be assimilated by the body; some authorities claiming that it is necessary first to have the iron organized by plant life into compounds containing it, while others claim that this is not necessarily essential to the assimilation of the metal. Bunge supposed that only "organic iron" could be absorbed and assimilated by the body, the reputed action of inorganic iron being altogether indirect and due to its local effect on the alimentary canal. This theory was modified by Abderhalden to the effect that inorganic iron, while it could not be converted into hemoglobin, nevertheless stimulated the conversion of "organic iron." Later work, however (Tartakowski), seems to prove conclusively that inorganic iron is assimilated and converted into hemoglobin and in so far is therapeutically fully equal to natural complex iron compounds. Many authors and practitioners, nevertheless, still adhere to the theories of Bunge and Abderhalden. There can be no question regarding the local and astringent action of most inorganic preparations, which is absent in most of the complex iron compounds. These local actions may be desirable in some cases and undesirable in others. This aids in determining the selection of the particular iron preparation most suitable for each individual patient. Metallic iron is not used as a therapeutic agent in dentistry. In medicine it is extensively employed in diseases which affect the circulation, as *anemia* and *chlorosis*. Many iron compounds are used in dentistry and will here be considered.

Iron Compounds.—Iron forms two series of compounds—*ferrous* and *ferric*. The former are white when freshly precipitated in the absence of oxygen, but when moist and exposed to air they readily absorb oxygen and gradually change into ferric compounds, which are usually reddish-brown in color. In this change there is an array of four distinct colors—white, green, black, and brown, respectively—and in the blending of these colors there may be produced every variety of shades seen in discolored teeth. As it is quite generally conceded that iron is the most important element to be considered in the many factors entering into the complicated problem of tooth discoloration from pulp decomposition, the above fact should be remembered.

With the exception of the carbonate, the hydroxid, and the hypo-

Digitized by Google

phosphite, all of the compounds of iron are freely soluble in water, but insoluble in alcohol. The so-called *scaled* salts are all ferric compounds of phosphoric acid, or the organic acids, citric and tartaric; they are rendered more soluble in combination with citrates, tartrates, and phosphates of the respective alkalies—ammonium, potassium, and sodium—and some are known as "soluble" salts. The scale salts are comparatively free from astringency, usually well borne by the stomach, and are used in medicine as mild and agreeable *hematinics*. The dose, with one exception (that containing strychnin), is 4 gr. (0.25 Gm.). The official Latin titles do not distinguish between the *ferrous* and *ferric* compounds, but they are so distinguished in the English titles. Iron is used in medicine: (1) in the form of metallic or elementary iron (Reduced Iron, U.S.P.); (2) in the ferrous or unoxidized form of combination—responding to tests for *ferrous ions* (ferrous carbonate in *mass* of ferrous carbonate and *pill* of ferrous carbonate, ferrous iodid in *syrup* of ferrous iodid, U.S.P.); (3) in trivalent or oxidized form, the ferric compounds—responding to tests for *ferric ions* (ferric chlorid in *tincture* of ferric chlorid, U.S.P.); and (4) complex compounds of iron. Complex (masked or nonionic) iron compounds are those compounds of iron wherein iron is part of a radical, and whose solutions do not respond to the ordinary tests for ferrous or ferric ions. Such compounds of iron do not have the astringent taste of simple iron solutions. As they are not decomposed by gastric digestion, they are also devoid of gastric effects; but, on the other hand, it has been claimed that certain hemoglobin-like compounds escape absorption altogether. It should be remembered that "masked" iron can often be administered in sufficient amounts and most economically by selecting a dietary rich in iron, such as red meat, egg-yolk, green vegetables, whole wheat, etc. The iron compounds used in dental therapeutics here follow.

FERRI SULPHAS—U.S.P.

(Ferrous Sulphate; Green Vitriol; $FeSO_4.7H_2O$.)

Ferrous sulphate occurs in the form of bluish-green, efflorescent prisms, odorless, having a saline, styptic taste. It is freely soluble in water, insoluble in alcohol. The average dose is 1½ gr. (0.1 gm.). The official preparations are:

Ferri Sulphas Exsiccatus, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–3 gr. (0.06–0.2 Gm.).

Ferri Sulphas Granulatus, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–3 gr. (0.06–0.2 Gm.).

Digitized by Google

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Iron sulphate is an active astringent. It may be applied to *canker sores*, but is inferior to copper sulphate. It is frequently used as a deodorant for privies and cesspools.

FERRI SUBSULPHAS (Nonofficial)

(Ferric Subsulphate; Basic Ferric Sulphate; Monsel's Salt; $Fe_4O(SO_4)_5$.)

Ferric subsulphate occurs as a yellow, hygroscopic, astringent powder, freely soluble in water. There is one official preparation:

Liquor Ferri Subsulphatis, U.S.P. (Monsel's Solution). *Dose*, 3–5 min. (0.2–0.3 mil).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Monsel's salt or the official solution (Monsel's solution) is a prompt and powerful styptic, and as such it has long been used in dentistry to control *hemorrhage* following the *extraction of teeth*. When the hemorrhage proceeds from a tooth-socket it is better to use the salt than the solution, for the reason that the hard black clots formed by the latter may conceal the deep-seated hemorrhage. The salt can be incorporated in moist cotton and, after washing the socket, the medicated cotton should be packed tightly into it. Sometimes it is necessary to hold the packing firmly for some time in order to control the hemorrhage.

FERRI CHLORIDUM—U.S.P.

(Ferric Chlorid; Iron Perchlorid; $Fe_2Cl_6.12H_2O$.)

Ferric chlorid occurs in orange-yellow, crystalline pieces, having an astringent taste. It is a highly deliquescent salt, and therefore freely soluble in water, also in alcohol. The official preparations are:

Liquor Ferri Chloridi, U.S.P. *Dose*, 3–10 min. (0.2–0.6 mil).
Tinctura Ferri Chloridi, U.S.P. *Dose*, 5–30 min. (0.3–2.0 mils).
Liquor Ferri et Ammonii Acetatis, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–4 fl. dr. (4.0–15.0 mils).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Ferric chlorid is an active astringent and styptic. It is employed in the control of *hemorrhage*, after the *extraction of teeth*, *removal of small growths*, etc.

As a styptic in dental therapeutics, it is inferior to Monsel's solution or salt. The tincture has a deleterious action upon the teeth, and should be used about the mouth with caution.

Digitized by Google

Ferrum Dialysatum (Dialysed Iron).—This is a nonofficial preparation of iron oxychlorid from which acidulous matter has been separated by dialysis, hence the name, *dialysed iron*. It is a dark red, neutral liquid, without odor or taste. It has been employed freely as a local antidote in *arsenical poisoning*. Dentists have been prone to rely upon this agent when other remedies would serve better (see p. 329).

FERRI CARBONAS (Nonofficial)

(Ferrous Carbonate; $FeCO_3$.)

Ferrous or **iron carbonate** is an unstable compound which is readily converted into ferric hydroxid (hydrate) when moist and exposed to air—a characteristic of most *ferrous* compounds. The salt may be protected from oxidation and enters into the following official preparations:

Ferri Carbonas Saccharatus, U.S.P. *Dose*, 5–15 gr. (0.3–1.0 Gm.).
Massa Ferri Carbonatis, U.S.P. (Vallet's Mass). *Dose*, 3–5 gr. (0.2–0.3 Gm.).
Pilulæ Ferri Carbonatis, U.S.P. (Blaud's Pills, each containing not less than 1 gr. (0.069 Gm.) of pure Ferrous Carbonate). *Dose*, 1–3 pills.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Ferrous carbonate acts as a tonic, and the preparations containing it, being free from astringency, may be used whenever iron is demanded by the tissues. The preparations are especially useful in *anemia*.

FERRUM REDUCTUM—U.S.P.

(Reduced Iron; Iron by Hydrogen.)

Reduced iron occurs as a fine, grayish-black, insoluble powder, without odor or taste. It should contain not less than 90 per cent. of metallic iron. It is a valuable *hematinic*, as it is free from astringency and has little tendency to cause constipation. The average dose is 1 gr. (0.06 Gm.) given in the form of pills, capsules, or lozenges.

FERRI HYDROXIDUM CUM MAGNESII OXIDO—U.S.P.

(Ferric Hydroxid with Magnesium Oxid.)

Ferric hydroxid with magnesium oxid is made by adding ammonia water to a solution of ferrous sulphate, collecting and washing the

Digitized by Google

precipitate, when magnesium oxid is added in excess. The preparation is used exclusively as an internal antidote in *arsenical poisoning*. It should be freshly made and given freely, while still moist, in tablespoonful doses or more every few minutes. The average dose is 4 fl. oz. (120.0 mils).

FERRI IODIDUM (Nonofficial)

(Iron Iodid; FeI_2.)

Ferrous iodid occurs in grayish-white, crystalline masses; soluble in water with partial decomposition. It enters as an essential constituent into the following official preparations:

Syrupus Ferri Iodidi, U.S.P. (5 per cent.). *Dose*, 5–60 min. (0.3–4.0 mils.).
Pilulæ Ferri Iodidi, U. S. P. (1 gr. 0.06 gm., each). *Dose*, 1–3 pills.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Iron iodid acts as an alterative, and as such is used in certain *syphilitic conditions*. The syrup is injurious to the tooth structure, and it should be taken through a tube, or given well diluted with instructions to thoroughly rinse the mouth after its administration.

FERRI HYPOPHOSPHIS (Nonofficial)

(Ferric Hypophosphite.)

This salt occurs as a white powder, odorless, and practically tasteless. It is but sparingly soluble in water. The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm). It is contained in the following preparation:

Syrupus Hypophosphitum Compositus, N. F. *Dose*, 1–4 fl. dr. (4.0–15.0 mils).

This preparation is adopted from the National Formulary, and is similar to a number of proprietary syrups of hypophosphites. The preparation is used as an alterative and hematinic.

PHOSPHORUS—U.S.P.

(P.)

Phosphorus occurs as a translucent, nearly colorless solid, of a waxy luster, and at ordinary temperatures having about the consistence of beeswax. When kept for some time the surface becomes red and occasionally black. When exposed to air it emits white fumes, visible in the dark, which have an odor somewhat like garlic.

Digitized by Google

Upon prolonged exposure to air it takes fire spontaneously. The drug should be carefully kept under water, in which it is practically insoluble, in strong, well-closed vessels. The average dose is 1/120 gr. (0.0005 Gm.). The following preparation is official:

> Pilulæ Phosphori, U.S.P. (each pill contains 1/100 gr.–0.0006 Gm.). *Dose*, 1–3 pills.

Physiologic Action.—Phosphorus stimulates the bone-forming tissues, when given in small doses, rendering the bones more dense, and diminishing the cancellous structure; if the administration of the drug is continued, the marrow-cavity becomes more or less obliterated. There has been a difference of opinion among investigators as to how this result was brought about. Some believed that an excess of phosphates was deposited, while others felt that it was due to a specific irritation of the bone-forming cells, causing stimulation. The latter theory is more nearly correct, for Wegner has shown by a series of experiments on growing animals fed with phosphorus, but deprived of phosphates, that the same hyperplasia in the bones resulted, but that the new tissue was soft and gelatinous instead of hard. The dominant action of phosphorus is upon the osseous system. Stevens claims, however, that there is considerable clinical testimony to show that the drug improves the nutrition of other tissues, especially of the nervous system. Phosphorus is extensively used in the manufacture of matches, and the fumes so common in these factories often produce the most serious results. Where dental caries is present extensive maxillary necrosis has been reported by Brophy and others, as well as great irritation of the conjunctivæ and the respiratory mucous membrane. In most match factories a strict rule is adopted requiring the employees to have their teeth examined at stated intervals and, if found necessary, put in order.

Poisoning and Treatment.—The effects of a toxic dose of phosphorus are not generally manifested for several hours after its ingestion. The earliest symptoms are intense abdominal pain, persistent vomiting, thirst, a garlicky taste in the mouth, restlessness, and prostration. At the end of twenty-four to thirty-six hours, these acute symptoms gradually subside, and the hope is raised that the patient will surely recover, but frequently after a lapse of a few hours, or even two or three days, the symptoms of the acute stage may recur. In these cases there is great weakness, the symptoms becoming more acute, mucus, bile, and occasionally disintegrated blood being contained in the ejected materials, which for a time retain the

Digitized by Google

odor and luminosity of phosphorus; jaundice develops; the liver becomes enlarged and painful, and the pulse grows very feeble. In fatal cases death generally occurs in from a few days to two weeks, and is often preceded by delirium, convulsions, stupor, and coma.

In the *treatment of phosphorus poisoning*, if the drug has recently been taken, emetics and purgatives are from the first necessary. Copper sulphate is considered the most efficient emetic as well as the best chemic antidote, since any excess forms with the phosphorus the insoluble copper phosphid. Since oily and fatty substances are active solvents for phosphorus, all such material should be withheld. Castor oil, then, as a cathartic, should not be used.

As prophylactic measures for the protection of workmen against phosphor-necrosis, masks covering the mouth and nose have been found serviceable, as well as the inhalation of the vapor of turpentine obtained by suspending a small vial of the fluid at the neck. As has been mentioned, the teeth should be examined, especially for caries, at stated intervals, since the presence of carious teeth favors the tendency to maxillary necrosis.

Therapeutics.—Phosphorus is employed as a tonic to the osseous tissues and in certain diseases of the nervous system that are dependent upon exhaustion rather than upon organic changes. In *neurasthenia* and *chronic nervous exhaustion* it is a useful therapeutic agent. Some cases of *neuralgia*, particularly of the fifth nerve and accompanied by great debility, may be relieved by full doses administered every four hours (Butler). The drug has proved efficacious in *caries*, *delayed union of fractures*, *osteomalacia*, and *rachitis* (rickets). In *functional impotence* from sexual excess, phosphorus is also a valuable remedy. The pill is considered the most stable, and therefore the best preparation in which to administer the drug.

ACIDUM PHOSPHORICUM—U.S.P.

(Phosphoric Acid; Orthophosphoric Acid; H_3PO_4.)

Under Phosphorus it was stated that when exposed to air the drug burns, emitting white fumes. Chemically considered, this means that phosphorus combines directly with oxygen to form phosphorus pentoxid (P_2O_5). This oxid is capable of combining chemically with one, two, or three molecules of water, forming thereby three different acids, as:

$P_2O_5 + H_2O = H_2P_2O_6 = 2HPO_3$,	Metaphosphoric Acid.
$P_2O_5 + 2H_2O = H_4P_2O_7$,	Pyrophosphoric Acid.
$P_2O_5 + 3H_2O = H_6P_2O_8 = 2H_3PO_4$,	Orthophosphoric Acid.

Digitized by Google

These three acids show different reactions, act differently upon the animal system, and form different salts. The acid of phosphorus recognized by the United States Pharmacopeia is a colorless liquid, composed of 85 per cent. by weight of absolute orthophosphoric acid and 15 per cent. of water. It has a strong acid taste. There is an official diluted phosphoric acid (Acidum Phosphoricum Dilutum, U.S.P., 10 per cent.) which is usually employed when phosphoric acid is indicated, the average dose of which is 30 min. (2.0 mils) in water.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—The action of phosphoric acid is somewhat like that of the dilute mineral acids, and has no relation to the action of phosphorus itself. In medicine the drug is used to allay *thirst in diabetes* and *febrile diseases*, and to *promote gastric digestion*. The acid has practically no use in dental therapeutics, but is discussed here because phosphoric acid (modified somewhat) is the liquid combined with *zinc oxid* (cement powder) to make the *zinc phosphate cement*, so extensively used in dental practice. Nearly all of the phoshates found in nature are orthophosphates.

CALCII PHOSPHAS PRÆCIPITATUS (Nonofficial)

(Precipitated Calcium Orthophosphate; Bone Phosphate; $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$.)

Precipitated calcium phosphate occurs as a white, odorless, tasteless, amorphous powder; insoluble in cold water and alcohol. The average dose is 10 gr. (0.6 gm.). There is one official preparation:

> Syrupus Calcii Lactophosphatis, U.S.P. (contains about 3 per cent. of the double soluble salt). *Dose*, 1–4 fl. dr. (4.0–15.0 mils).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Calcium phosphate may be taken as the type of the insoluble salts of calcium, which are so frequently referred to in dental literature as "lime-salts." Lime is calcium oxid, and as there is no such thing in chemistry as a salt of an oxid, this term, *lime-salts*, should be discarded. When taken internally, calcium phosphate, for the most part, resists absorption and reappears in the stools; a small amount, however, is assimilated, and in case of a deficiency of phosphates in the food is appropriated by the tissues. Where the phosphates in the natural food-supply meet all physiologic requirements, any excess of the insoluble calcium salts is slowly excreted by the intestinal epithelium and kidneys. Food ordinarily contains more calcium phosphate than the body

Digitized by Google

requires; it is, therefore, difficult to explain how the insoluble salts of calcium (phosphate and hypophosphite), administered as a remedy, can be of any physiologic importance. Stevens[1] states that the difficulty, however, is no greater than that which is encountered in attempting to explain the undoubted efficacy of iron in chlorosis, a disease that is certainly not dependent upon a want of iron salts in the food. There is no convincing evidence to show that the insoluble calcium salts are of much value in themselves as therapeutic agents. On theoretical grounds they have been prescribed to prevent the *rapid decay of teeth* during *pregnancy* and the *nursing period*, in *osteomalacia*, and in *rachitis*. They seem to exert a favorable influence on general nutrition in such diseases as *chlorosis*, *anemia*, *scrofula*, *tuberculosis*, *tertiary syphilis*, and *neurasthenia*. Calcium phosphate may be given in powders or capsules; the lactophosphate, being soluble, may be administered in the form of the official syrup or in an emulsion of cod-liver oil.

As a vehicle for making pastes used in *capping pulps*, *bleaching teeth*, etc., the author recommends combining precipitated calcium phosphate with thymol (2 per cent.). This will be explained in Practical Therapeutics (see page 312).

CALCII HYPOPHOSPHIS—U.S.P.

(Calcium Hypophosphite; $Ca(PH_2O_2)_2$.)

Calcium hypophosphite occurs in colorless, transparent crystals, or small lustrous scales, having a bitter, nauseating taste. It is soluble in about 7 parts of water, insoluble in alcohol. The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.). It enters as an important constituent into the following official preparation:

> Syrupus Hypophosphitum, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–2 fl. dr. (4.0–8.0 mils).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—The action of hypophosphites, of which the calcium salt is a fair representative, is similar to that of calcium phosphate, and they may be employed as therapeutic agents in the same class of cases in which the latter has been recommended. Calcium hypophosphite, being more soluble in water, may be assimilated more readily, but the same remarks hold true of this agent as were made of calcium phosphate in regard to the power of the system to utilize the agent in the constructive processes of the body.

[1] Modern Materia Medica and Therapeutics.

Digitized by Google

OLEUM MORRHUÆ—U.S.P.

(Cod-liver Oil.)

Cod-liver oil is a fixed oil obtained from the *fresh livers* of *Gladus morrhua* and other species of *Gladus*. It occurs as a thin, pale yellow liquid, having a characteristic fishy odor and taste. It contains the glycerids of olein, palmitin, and stearin, traces of iodin, bromin, chlorin, phosphorus, sulphur, biliary salts, and several alkaloids (leucomains). The average dose is 2½ fl. dr. (10.0 mils). The official preparation is:

> Emulsum Olei Morrhuæ, U.S.P. (50 per cent.). *Dose*, 1–8 fl. dr. (4.0–30.0 mils).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—From the constituents of cod-liver oil it may readily be seen that it is a food rather than a medicine, and is a true *restorative*. In moderate doses it improves the general nutrition, increases the number of red blood-corpuscles, and favors the accumulation of fat—a normal and necessary constituent of the body. Fat is the fuel used to supply energy, and the most active tissues and organs require the most fuel. Consequently, nerves, muscles, and glands are more abundantly supplied with fat than cartilage; and, in cases of starvation, those structures demanding the greater supply must have it, at the expense of the less highly organized and active tissues. This is illustrated in certain diseases —tuberculosis, for example. Butler[1] states that the blood contains about one-half of 1 per cent. of fat; the muscles, 3 per cent.; the brain, 8 per cent.; and the nerves, 22 per cent. This equilibrium must be maintained in order that the various cells of the body may possess sufficient vitality to physiologically resist the encroachments of disease and the invasion of pathogenic bacteria. It is rather difficult to digest and assimilate ordinary fat; and this must be done before it can enter the various cells of the body and act as a food, and, consequently, be a source of energy. Cod-liver oil is more readily absorbed and oxidized than any other fat, due to the fact that it has already been prepared by the liver, and therefore partially elaborated; and also to the biliary salts which it contains, causing it to pass more readily through animal membranes.

Therapeutics.—Cod-liver oil is a valuable restorative in all *emaciating diseases* resulting in *anemia*. It is especially indicated as a nutritive tonic in *tuberculosis*. As a food it may be given in any case where fat is deficient, and therefore needed to supply energy to the tissues.

[1] Text-Book of Materia Medica, Therapeutics and Pharmacology.

Digitized by Google

POTASSII IODIDUM—U.S.P.

(Potassium Iodid; KI.)

Potassium iodid occurs as colorless, transparent or translucent crystals or as a white granular powder, having a pungent, saline taste; soluble in 0.75 part of water, 2.5 parts of glycerin, and 22 parts of alcohol. The average dose is 3–5 gr. (0.3 Gm.), given well diluted after meals; but in tertiary syphilis often 1 dr. (4.0 Gm.) may be given with advantage. The drug is a constituent of Lugol's solution (Liquor Iodi Compositus, U.S.P.)

Physiologic Action.—Potassium iodid is a true alterative and has a favorable action in a variety of morbid conditions. As is true with many drugs, potassium iodid, given in a single, moderate dose in health, produces no noticeable effects beyond a slight increase in the secretion of urine and some disturbance of the stomach, due solely to its local irritant property. The drug is rapidly absorbed from all parts of the digestive tract, and reappears in the secretions in less than fifteen minutes after its ingestion. By far the greater portion is eliminated through the kidneys, but small quantities escape in almost every secretion of the body, as in the saliva, milk, perspiration, and even the tears. There is little doubt that a small quantity of the drug is retained, for a time at least, by the cells of the body and that a *cumulative* action may result, for its continuous use is generally followed, sooner or later, by a group of symptoms known as *iodism*. This condition has previously been mentioned, and in this instance results from the local irritant effects of free iodin, into which a portion of the iodid appears to be converted. There is a remarkable variance in the susceptibility of individuals to the iodids, and idiosyncrasies are frequently encountered. The amount of the drug, therefore, required to induce iodism depends upon the subject. Daily doses of from ¼–½ oz. (7.5–15.0 Gm.) are sometimes well borne, and, on the other hand, doses of from 2–3 gr. (0.13–0.2 Gm.) a day may soon produce intense discomfort.

Therapeutics.—Potassium iodid is the one drug relied upon in nearly all cases where an alterative drug is indicated. Its best effects are observed in *tertiary syphilis*, in which stage of the disease its efficacy is equal to that of mercury in the *secondary stage*. The initial dose should be small, and the amount gradually increased until improvement follows or symptoms of iodism appear. It is necessary in syphilis to continue the treatment for six months or a year, and even longer, if permanent results are to be expected.

In *acute alveolar abscess* the author has secured excellent results

Digitized by Google

in many cases by the repeated internal administration of small doses of potassium iodid. The nauseating taste can be masked by dissolving 1 dr. (4.0 Gm.) of the drug in 3 fl. oz. (90.0 mils) of the compound syrup of sarsaparilla or syrup of wild cherry. One teaspoonful in water can be given every two hours until three or four doses have been taken.

Potassium iodid has been combined with expectorants, and used with advantage in *chronic bronchitis*, when the sputum is composed of thick, viscid mucus. In *morbid conditions* of the mucous membrane in *chronic catarrh* the drug is also useful. In *actinomycosis*, occurring in man, the drug has been used internally with complete success as a curative remedy in a number of cases (Stevens).

Potassium iodid is highly efficacious in *chronic metallic poisoning*, especially from lead and mercury, as it aids in the elimination of the metal by forming with it in the tissues a double soluble salt.

OTHER IODIDS

The iodids of several metals are used in medicine. **Sodium, ammonium,** and **strontium iodid** resemble potassium iodid in their action, and may be used for the same purposes; but they do not possess in the same degree the virtues ascribed to the potassium salt. Zinc iodid has different properties, due to the zinc *ion*, and has been elsewhere discussed.

HYDRARGYRUM—U.S.P.

(Mercury; Quicksilver; Hg.)

Mercury is a shining, silver-white, heavy metal, without odor or taste. It is a liquid at the ordinary temperature, and easily divided into spherical globules; but when cooled to — 40°C. it forms a ductile, malleable mass. The metal is insoluble in ordinary solvents, but miscible with saccharine substances and fats, through which, by tritutration, the globules may be so finely divided as not to be discernible by the naked eye, in which condition the drug is very active medicinally.

Mercury is largely used in therapeutics in the form of its compounds, but there are several official preparations in which metallic mercury is incorporated, after being reduced to the finely divided condition. They are:

Hydrargyrum cum Creta, U.S.P. (contains 38 per cent. of Mercury). *Dose*, ½–10 gr. (0.03–0.6 Gm.).
Unguentum Hydrargyri, U.S.P. (contains 50 per cent. of Mercury).

Digitized by Google

Unguentum Hydrargyri Dilutum, U.S.P. (Blue Ointment; contains 33 per cent. of Mercury; made by mixing Ointment of Mercury, 2; Petrolatum, 1 part).
Massa Hydrargyri, U.S.P. (pill mass of Mercury; contains 33 per cent. of Mercury).
Oleatum Hydrargyri, U.S.P. (contains 25 per cent. of Mercury).

Physiologic Action.—Mercury is an alterative and tonic. Every dentist should be thoroughly familiar with the action and effects of this metal. When small doses of an unirritating preparation of the drug are given continuously for a certain length of time, the first effects are observed in the mouth, for it has a selective influence upon the gums, jaws, and adjacent structures. There is produced an increased flow of saliva, fetor of the breath, redness of the gum margins, and pericementitis, causing soreness of the teeth when the jaws are forcibly brought together. If the drug is not withdrawn upon the appearance of these symptoms, the condition gradually grows worse; salivation becomes excessive (continual drooling), the gums become swollen and spongy, the teeth are loosened in their sockets and may be easily extracted with the fingers, the tongue and parotid glands enlarge—the former sometimes to the extent that it protrudes from the mouth, and, finally, the soft tissues slough away, necrosis of the bones sets in, and large sequestrum form. This group of symptoms is known as *ptyalism* or *salivation*. In these cases the general health is naturally affected, the patient becoming pale and losing flesh. Chronic mercurial poisoning occurs most frequently in workmen who handle the metal or who are exposed to its fumes, such as makers of thermometers, mirrors, scientific instruments, etc. It is too frequently induced, however, by the prolonged use of mercury as a medicine.

The drug is supposed to enter into the composition of the cell by combining with the nucleinic acid, forming mercury nucleinate. It is absorbed gradually, and although every secretion of the body contributes to its general expulsion from the system, traces of the drug have been detected in the urine months after its use had been discontinued. It is, therefore, one of the slowest drugs known to be eliminated, and its *cumulative* action is a well-established fact.

Treatment of Poisoning.—If the symptoms of ptyalism are not too pronounced, discontinuance of the mercury and mouth hygiene usually clear up the symptoms. In more severe cases, besides discontinuing the use of mercury and employing prophylactic measures, certain medicinal remedies are indicated. The *teeth should not be*

Digitized by Google

extracted, unless so loose that they virtually fall out. Potassium chlorate can be dissolved in cinnamon water (10 gr.—0.6 Gm. to the fl. oz.—30.0 mils) and used as a mouth-wash. Atropin, in medicinal doses, may be used twice daily to control the flow of saliva. The internal administration of potassium iodid is recommended, as it aids in the elimination of mercury by forming with it in the tissues the double soluble salt. Where necrosis of the bones is evident, Cook and Mawhinney recommend the local application of a 50 per cent. solution of phenolsulphonic acid. This agent acts as a stimulant and hastens the formation of the sequestra. When the pain is very severe, morphin may be given; and tonics are indicated to combat the exhaustion and anemia.

Therapeutics.—Mercury and its compounds are used in general therapeutics for a variety of purposes. They act as antisyphilitics, antiparasitics, disinfectants, cathartics, and diuretics, as well as alteratives and tonics. The early methods of administering mercury were by mouth and inunction. The oral method continues to be popular, but often causes troublesome gastrointestinal symptoms. The inunction method obviates the digestive disturbances, but the amount of the drug absorbed cannot be well controlled and it is practically impossible to introduce an amount sufficient for *syphilis*. In recent years the attempt to improve mercurial therapy has been mainly along two lines: The perfection of the hypodermic usage, and the introduction of the organic compounds. The organic compounds of mercury, such as mercurol (mercury with nucleinic acid from yeast, containing 20 per cent. of metallic mercury), are said to be less irritating to the gastrointestinal tract than the inorganic salts. The use of such agents, however, is rather experimental, and further investigation is needed to determine their real value.

In *syphilis*, mercurials and the iodids act as *specifics*. Sollmann[1] states that the use of the former, as yet, rests entirely upon an empirical basis. It is not even known whether the action of mercury here is due to specific toxicity for the germ of syphilis (Spirocheta pallida), or whether it is due simply to the general effects upon metabolism. The former seems to be the case. There is no reason to doubt that mercury is not only palliative, but curative, in the *secondary stage of syphilis*, congenital as well as acquired; while it is useless in the first and third stages. The first stage is best treated expectantly, or now with salvarsan, "606;" the third, with iodids Syphilographers have learned from sad experience that mercury can be pushed much further in the treatment of secondary syphilis with-

[1] A Text-Book of Pharmacology.

Digitized by Google

out producing ptyalism if the mouth has first been placed in a hygienic condition, *i.e.*, if all irritants (deposits, overhanging fillings, etc.) have been removed by thorough prophylactic treatment.

The preparations most frequently prescribed in syphilis are mercury with chalk and compounds, like the bichlorid, biniodid, and protiodid. As mentioned (page 195), the organic compounds of mercury are also used, and under observation. The ointments are used by inunction.

In *pediculosis pubis* (crab-lice) the parasites are quickly destroyed by rubbing into the affected parts a small amount of blue ointment.

It is the compounds of mercury that are most valuable in dental therapeutics. Mercury, however, is used extensively in the amalgamation of dental alloys in the preparation of dental amalgams, which occupy a prominent place in dental practice as filling material for teeth.

Many homeopathic practitioners object strenuously to the use of amalgams for filling the cavities in the teeth of their patients; some go so far as to order all amalgam fillings removed and fillings of other material substituted, in the belief that the amalgam filling is gradually worn away and enough mercury is thus carried into the stomach and absorbed to cause systemic disturbances. The idea is certainly far-fetched, for while metallic mercury can be separated from an amalgam by high compression or heat, it, nevertheless, is combined in the amalgam by a more or less definite chemic union. The author has no positive proof to show that mercury cannot be thus absorbed; but by close observation in a long clinical experience no constitutional disturbances from this source have been discovered. The same objections are offered to the wearing of a red-rubber denture, because mercury compounds are used as pigments for coloring the rubber. Surely, with the high heat necessary for vulcanization, the mercury would combine with the other elements to form such insoluble (nonabsorbable) compounds that there would be no danger of systemic disturbances from this source.

COMPOUNDS OF MERCURY

Mercury, like iron, forms two series of compounds which are not distinguished in their Latin titles as they are in their English titles: *mercurous* and *mercuric*. The former are sparingly soluble and less active, while the latter are more readily soluble in water and alcohol and so irritant as to be classed with the *poisons*. The two classes also differ somewhat in regard to their physiologic

Digitized by Google

activity. The mercurous compounds, of which the chlorid (calomel) is a type, powerfully stimulate the glandular system and are antiseptics, alteratives, and cathartics. The mercuric compounds, of which the chlorid (corrosive sublimate) is a type, are potent alteratives, and powerful antiseptics and disinfectants. It is easy to distinguish between the two classes by the different coloration produced with lime-water (liquor calcis). The former (ous) forms a black precipitate, the latter (ic), a yellow.

HYDRARGYRI CHLORIDUM MITE—U.S.P.

(Mild Mercurous Chlorid; Calomel; HgCl.)

Calomel occurs as a white, amorphous powder, without odor or taste. It is insoluble in all ordinary solvents. The average dose as a laxative is 2½ gr. (0.15 gm.); as an alterative, ¼ gr. (0.015 gm.). It is an important constituent of the following official pill:

> Pilulæ Catharticæ Compositæ, U.S.P. (each contains Calomel, 1 gr.—0.06 Gm., with Gamboge, Compound Extract of Colycinth, and Resin of Jalap). *Dose*, 1–3 pills.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Externally applied, calomel acts as a stimulant, antiseptic, and desiccant. Internally administered, it acts as a cathartic, diuretic, and antisyphilitic. Zinc ointment to which calomel, 10 gr. (0.6 Gm.) to the ounce (32.0 Gm.), has been added makes an excellent application in *subacute* and *chronic eczema*, and *indolent venereal ulcers* are desiccated and much improved by dusting them with calomel.

Calomel acts as a laxative or purgative, according to the way in which it is administered and the susceptibility of the patient. It is a rather peculiar cathartic in that its effect does not increase in direct ratio with the dose, as is true with most cathartic drugs. Small doses repeated every half-hour until 1 or 2 gr. (0.065–0.13 Gm.) have been taken generally operate more freely than a dose of 10 gr. (0.6 Gm.) taken at once. Calomel produces a thorough evacuation, the stools being large and loose, and usually charged with undecomposed bile. Whether the drug increases the quantity of bile formed in the liver or simply hastens the flow through the intestines and prevents its reabsorption is an unsettled question. Experimental and clinical evidence point more strongly to the latter assumption.

In cases of a *sluggish liver*, the drug has been used in small, oft-repeated doses (1/10 gr.–0.006 Gm.) to advantage. No remedy is so useful as calomel in the condition known as "*biliousness*," which is

Digitized by Google

characterized by a thickly coated tongue, fetid breath, heavy urine, headache, and depression of spirits. In these cases ⅙ gr. (0.01 Gm.) may be given every fifteen or twenty minutes until 1 gr. (0.06 Gm.) has been taken. If the bowels do not move freely, it is well to follow the mercurial with a saline cathartic (Epsom salts or a Seidlitz powder).

Incompatibles.—Calomel is incompatible with hydrochloric acid, chlorids, chlorates, iodids, bromids, and lime-water, as well as with alkalies, alkaline carbonates, iron, lead, and copper.

HYDRARGYRI CHLORIDUM CORROSIVUM—U.S.P.

(Mercuric Chlorid; Mercury Bichlorid; Corrosive Sublimate; $HgCl_2$.)

Mercuric chlorid might well have been discussed under the heading of Disinfectants, as it is for this purpose only that it is used in dental therapeutics; but it was left that it might be considered and discussed here with the other compounds of mercury. It occurs in the form of colorless, odorless crystals or a fine white powder, having an acrid, metallic taste. It is soluble in 13 parts of water and in 3 parts of alcohol. The average dose is $\frac{1}{20}$ gr. (0.003 Gm.). The U.S.P. IX for the first time recognizes an official tablet:

> Toxitabellæ Hydrargyri Chloridi Corrosivi, U.S.P. Externally (see p. 18).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Mercuric chlorid, called usually bichlorid or corrosive sublimate, acts as an antisyphilitic and tonic, as well as an energetic disinfectant. It is for the latter action that it is extensively employed in dental as well as in general therapeutics.

The drug is capable of destroying most bacteria in solutions as dilute as 1 : 20,000, and their spores in solutions of 1 : 10,000. Certain germs, however, like the anthrax bacillus, are more resistant to its action, and stronger solutions are necessary for their complete destruction. On the whole, it has been the most popular of the disinfectants, and took first rank with surgeons for use upon the *skin of the patient* and *the hands of the operator* and *for irrigating infected wounds and cavities*. For the patient's skin and the surgeon's hands, solutions of from 1 : 1,000 to 1 : 500 have been employed; for large wounds and cavities, 1 : 10,000 to 1 : 5,000; and for small wounds, 1 : 2,000. The drug is an irritant, and should not be used, even in dilute solutions, on serous membranes. It should be observed that solutions of mercury bichlorid are not used to-day for irrigating wounds to the extent that they were in times past.

Digitized by Google

Mercuric chlorid has three disadvantages as a disinfectant: it is extremely poisonous; it is readily converted into an inert compound (mercury albuminate) in the presence of albuminous matter, and it is destructive to metal instruments. This last drawback is a serious objection in dental therapeutics; for, were it not for this fact, the drug would be an ideal disinfectant for instruments. It is energetic, soluble, and cheap. Tartaric or citric acid may be advantageously combined with bichlorid solutions to prevent the mercuric salt from forming an insoluble albuminate with the albumin in the tissues. Compressed tablets of mercuric chlorid, each containing 7½ gr. (0.5 Gm.) with tartaric or citric acid are in common use. One of these tablets dissolved in a pint (480.0 mils) of water makes a 1 : 1,000 solution.

For *sterilizing infected dentin* a 1 : 500 solution is an excellent remedy. The author suggests keeping the pure drug in papers (chartulæ) each containing 1 gr. (0.06 Gm.). By so doing, an approximate 1 : 500 solution may be conveniently made at any time by dissolving the contents of one paper in one ounce (30.0 mils) of distilled water. Ordinary water, containing traces of calcium salts, partially precipitates the bichlorid in the form of mercuric oxid. In applying this solution to the tooth-structure with a pledget of cotton and pliers, the latter should be dried immediately after the application on a clean, aseptic doily, to prevent the action of the mercury upon the instrument.

As a parasiticide, mercury bichlorid is a valuable remedy in *pediculosis pubis* and *ring-worm*. In these affections, 2–4 gr. (0.13–0.26 Gm.) to the ounce (30.0 mils) of tincture of benzoin make an excellent application.

In *syphilis* the drug may be given in pill or in solution. One-twentieth of a grain (0.003 gm.), gradually increased to 1/12 gr. (0.005 Gm.), may be given after meals.

HYDRARGYRI IODIDUM RUBRUM—U.S.P.

(Red Mercuric Iodid; Mercury Biniodid; HgI_2.)

Mercury biniodid occurs as a bright red, amorphous powder, without odor or taste. It is practically insoluble in water, soluble in 116 parts of alcohol, and freely soluble in solutions of potassium iodid. The average dose is 1/20 gr. (0.003 Gm.). There is one official preparation:

> Liquor Arseni et Hydrargyri Iodidi, U.S.P. (Donovan's Solution; 1 per cent. of each Iodid). *Dose*, 1–5 min. (0.06–0.3 mil).

Digitized by Google

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Mercury biniodid resembles the bichlorid in its action and effects. In the *late secondary stage of syphilis* it may be combined to advantage with potassium iodid. Stevens[1] recommends the following formula: Mercury biniodid, 1 gr. (0.06 Gm.); potassium iodid, 3 dr. (12.0 gm.); water, 2 fl. oz. (60.0 mils); compound syrup of sarsaparilla, sufficient to make 4 fl. oz. (120.0 mils). The dose is a dessertspoonful in water after meals.

Donovan's solution is given with benefit in medicinal doses as an alterative in *chronic rheumatism, tuberculosis, adenitis, tertiary syphilis,* and during *convalescence* in many *exhaustive diseases.*

HYDRARGYRI IODIDUM FLAVUM—U.S.P.

(Yellow Mercurous Iodid; Mercury Protiodid; Green Mercury Iodid; HgI.)

Mercury protiodid occurs as a yellow, amorphous powder. It is insoluble and without odor or taste. The average dose is ⅙ gr. (0.01 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Mercury protiodid, being an *ous* compound is far less irritant than the bichlorid or biniodid. It is considered the best compound of mercury for use in *syphilis,* and should be given in pills or capsules to which a little opium may be added in case colic or diarrhea is induced by its ingestion.

Mercurol (Mercury Nucleinate) is an organic compound of mercury with nucleinic acid from yeast. It contains 20 per cent. of metallic mercury, and occurs as a brownish-white powder; soluble in water (warm water), insoluble in alcohol. The average dose is 1 gr. (0.06 Gm.).

The drug does not coagulate albumin; it has marked bactericidal power, and possesses the pharmacologic action of the soluble compounds of mercury. It is recommended as a local antiseptic and as an antisyphilitic remedy.

Sublamin (Mercuric Sulphate-ethylenediamin; $HgSO_4.2C_2H_4(NH_2)_2.2H_2O$).—This compound is composed of one molecule of mercuric sulphate and two molecules of ethylenediamin (a compound of ethylene and ammonia). It contains about 44 per cent. of metallic mercury, and occurs in white needles, odorless, but possessing a very disagreeable taste; readily soluble in water and in 10 parts of glycerin, sparingly soluble in alcohol. It is only used externally as a disinfectant, similar to mercuric chlorid, over which

[1] Modern Materia Medica and Therapeutics.

Digitized by Google

it has the advantage of being nonirritating, more penetrating, and readily soluble. A 1:200 solution is an excellent remedy for the immediate *sterilization of infected dentin*. The drug will attack steel instruments, and the same precautions must be observed here as with mercuric chlorid. It is used in 1:1,000 solution for hand disinfection, etc. By a carefully conducted series of experiments, Mawhinney has shown that the time required for a 1-200 solution to sterilize a broach was two minutes, and he recommends this strength solution for sterilizing steel instruments. The experience of the author with sublamin has proved it to be a good disinfectant, but that it attacks steel instruments immersed in its solution for any length of time.

Incompatibles.—Sublamin is incompatible with sodium chlorid and should not be exposed to air.

ARSENUM (Nonofficial)

(Arsenic; As.)

Metallic **arsenic** is not official, for as such it is not employed as a medicine. The chief compound used in therapeutics, especially dental therapeutics, is arsenic trioxid, which has been fully discussed as a devitalizing agent under Caustics. Certain salts of arsenous acid (arsenites) and arsenic acid (arsenates) are also used. The following compounds and preparations containing arsenic in combination are official:

Arseni Trioxidum, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1/60–1/20 gr. (0.001–0.003 Gm.).

Liquor Acidi Arsenosi, U.S.P. (contains 1 per cent. of Arsenic Trioxid and 5 per cent. of dilute Hydrochloric Acid). *Dose*, 1–5 min. (0.06–0.3 mil).

Liquor Potassii Arsenitis, U.S.P. (Fowler's Solution; contains the equivalent of 1 per cent. of Arsenic Trioxid and 3 per cent. of compound tincture of Lavender). *Dose*, 1–5 min. (0.06–0.3 mil).

Sodii Arsenas, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1/16–1/8 gr. (0.004–0.008 Gm.).

Sodii Arsenas Exsiccatus, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1/30–1/12 gr. (0.002–0.005 Gm.).

Liquor Sodii Arsenatis, U.S.P. (Pearson's Solution; contains 1 per cent. of Exsiccated Sodium Arsenate). *Dose*, 1–5 min. (0.06–0.3 mil).

Arseni Iodidum, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1/80–1/10 gr. (0.002–0.006 Gm.).

Liquor Arseni et Hydrargyri Iodidi, U.S.P. (Donovan's Solution). *Dose*, 1–5 min. (0.06–0.3 mil).

Digitized by Google

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—The action and uses of arsenic trioxid have been elsewhere considered. Arsenic in therapeutic doses acts as an alterative by favoring nutrition. Just how the action is brought about is not well understood.

The drug is used internally in a number of quite diverse pathologic conditions. Its use, however, is purely empirical. It stands next to iron in the treatment of anemia. Fowler's solution, although not curative, is the most efficient remedy in *pernicious anemia*. In *neuralgia* dependent upon anemia, arsenic is valuable. The dose should be gradually increased until symptoms of saturation appear. No general tonic, except cod-liver oil, is so efficacious as arsenic in *pulmonary tuberculosis*. The drug has long been used with reported good results in *diabetes mellitus*. It is an excellent alterative in *pyorrhea alveolaris* associated with chronic *rheumatism* or the *gouty diathesis*. The prolonged use of arsenic (1/100–1/50 gr.—0.0006–0.0012 Gm.) has been spoken of in the highest terms in *myocardial degeneration* and *angina pectoris*. In these cases it may be combined advantageously with strychnin, and sometimes also with digitalis (Stevens).

Individuals vary considerably in their susceptibility to the action of arsenic, therefore it is best to begin with small doses of the drug and gradually increase them as occasion demands. The indications of saturation are puffiness under the eyes, especially noticeable in the morning, and looseness of the bowels with colicky pains. For pills arsenic trioxid is generally selected, and for solutions the solution of potassium arsenite (Fowler's solution).

Incompatibles.—Arsenic is incompatible with salts of iron, silver, copper, and ammonium, magnesium, calcium, and tannic acid.

Salvarsan, "606."—This is a complex arsenic compound, the hydrochlorid of 3-diamino-4-dihydroxy-l-arsenobenzene, corresponding to 31.57 per cent. of arsenic. The average dose is 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.).

Salvarsan is useful as a specific remedy for *syphilis* in all stages. It is claimed that the drug is especially beneficial in those cases which respond slowly to mercury and iodids; and that it is useful in all *spirillum affections*, such as *malaria*. **Neosalvarsan** is a similar and later compound in which the arsenic content of three parts is approximately equal to 2 parts of salvarsan. It is merely a soluble compound of salvarsan and its action and uses are the same.

Contraindications.—Salvarsan preparations are contraindicated in severe disturbances of the circulatory organs, advanced degenerations of the central nervous system, fetid bronchitis, and cachexias,

Digitized by Google

unless these are a direct result of syphilis; also in patients who have a pronounced idiosyncrasy against arsenic.

SARSAPARILLA—U.S.P.

Sarsaparilla is the *root* of *Smilax officinalis* and other species of *Smilax*, climbing evergreens growing in swampy forests of Mexico and as far south as the northern portion of Brazil. It contains several glycosids—*parillin*, *saponin*, and *sarsa-saponin*. The average dose is 30 gr. (2.0 Gm.). The following preparations are official:

Fluidextractum Sarsaparillæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½–2 fl. dr. (2.0–8.0 mils).

Fluidextractum Sarsaparillæ Compositum, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½–2 fl. dr. (2.0–8.0 mils).

Syrupus Sarsaparillæ Compositus, U.S.P. (contains fluid extract Sarsaparilla, 20; fluid extract Glycyrrhiza, 1.5; fluid extract Senna, 1.5; Oil of Sassafras, Oil of Anise, Methyl Salicylate, of each, 0.02; Alcohol, 1.9; Syrup, to make 100). *Dose*, 1–4 fl. dr. (4.0–15.0 mils).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Sarsaparilla owes its pharmacologic activity entirely to the saponins which it contains. The drug has been empirically used as an alterative in *syphilis* and *tuberculosis* for centuries, but this view of its action is not accepted at the present time, and if it possesses any action at all it is simply that of a very mild nauseant (Sollmann). It is chiefly used in the form of the compound syrup as a pleasant vehicle for potassium iodid, potassium bromid, and certain salts of mercury.

ECHINACEA (Nonofficial)

(Cone Flower.)

Echinacea is the *dried root* of *Echinacea angustifolia*, a perennial herb growing in the central and western portions of the United States. A fluid extract may be obtained, the dose of which is from 15–30 min. (1.0–2.0 mils). The dose of specific echinacea (tincture) is from 5–30 min. (0.3–2.0 mils). *Echafolta* is a purified, assayed form of echinacea. The dose is the same. Externally or for surgical purposes, it is considered greatly superior to any other preparation of echinacea, and is prescribed for the same conditions.

Echinacea was known to the Indians as a cure for snake poison. The experiments with the drug have been confined almost entirely to the eclectic school of medicine, and remarkable properties, almost bordering on the miraculous, are ascribed to it.

Digitized by Google

Physiologic Action.—Applied to the mucous membrane, a warm and tingling sensation is at once experienced. It is similar to that of aconite, without the sedative effect. The sensation persists for some time, even though the throat is gargled, and the agent entirely removed. The drug actively promotes the flow of saliva, and if swallowed, the warmth and tingling extend down the esophagus to the stomach, but no further unpleasant influence is observed. In a short time diaphoresis is observed, and the continuation of the remedy stimulates the kidneys to increased action. All of the glandular organs seem to respond to its stimulating influence, and their functional activity is increased. The stomach is improved in its function, the appetite increases, the food is more perfectly digested, the bowels operate better, and absorption, assimilation, and general nutrition are materially improved. It encourages secretion and excretion, preventing further autointoxication, and quickly correcting the influence in the system of any that has occurred. It stimulates retrograde metabolism, or tissue waste, more markedly than any other single remedy known.

There are but few subjective symptoms from large doses of the drug. It is apparently nontoxic, and, to any unpleasant extent, nonirritant. It has a marked effect upon the nervous system, but its action here has not yet been determined (Ellingwood).

Therapeutics.—Hewitt, Cahill, and others have recommended the drug in dental therapeutics. Some enthusiasts go so far as to recommend the use of the drug in almost every disease to which the body is heir.

The drug has been used in *acute alveolar abscess* to prevent the formation of pus, or after pus-formation to hasten its evacuation. In *septicemia* (blood-poisoning), it is claimed to be almost a specific. In *ulcerative stomatitis, sore throat or mouth* of any character, the local application of echafolta is prompt and effectual.

CALCII SULPHIDUM CRUDUM—U.S.P.

(Sulphurated Calcium; Crude Calcium Sulphid.)

Sulphurated calcium is a mixture containing at least 60 per cent. of calcium sulphid, together with calcium sulphate and varying proportions of carbon. It occurs as a pale gray powder, having a nauseating, alkaline taste and a faint odor of hydrogen sulphid. It is but slightly soluble in water and insoluble in alcohol. Exposure to air causes gradual decomposition. The average dose is 1 gr. (0.06 Gm.), in pills, tablets, or capsules.

Digitized by Google

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—The action of calcium sulphid is not well understood. Its power of *preventing and arresting suppuration* was first mentioned by Ringer. It has been found especially useful in *boils* and *carbuncles*. Excellent results are obtained in *follicular tonsillitis* and *quinsy* by giving small doses (1/20 gr.–0.003 Gm.) at short intervals. Harlan recommended giving the drug in doses of 1/10 gr. (0.006 Gm.), at short intervals, in *acute alveolar abscess* and other *suppurative conditions*, claiming that it prevented the formation of pus, if given early enough, or, if too late for this, that the agent hastened the evacuation of the pus. Only fresh preparations should be employed on account of the liability of the drug to deteriorate.

AURI ET SODII CHLORIDUM—U.S.P.

(Gold and Sodium Chlorid; $AuCl_3 + NaCl$)

This preparation is a mixture of equal parts, by weight, of dry gold chlorid and sodium chlorid. It is an orange-yellow powder, deliquescent, and of a saline and metallic taste; freely soluble in water. The average dose is 1/12 gr. (0.005 Gm.), in pill.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Gold and sodium chlorid is supposed to act as an alterative, tonic, and stimulant to the digestive system. It has been recommended in a number of diseases where an alterative and tonic effect is desired, but it is of doubtful value. Solutions of gold chlorid have been recommended by Ames for cauterizing *exposed sensitive cementum*, and he claims that its effect is nearly equal to that of silver nitrate without the discoloration.

DIGESTANTS

The mouth and the stomach are intimately connected and closely related; so much so that pathologic conditions in one often predispose to disease in the other. It is therefore important that the dentist be familiar with the action and uses of certain agents which materially assist in the digestion of food. Those not discussed under other headings will here be considered. They are:

Pepsin.	Malt.
Pancreatin.	Papain.

PEPSINUM—U.S.P.

(Pepsin.)

Pepsin is a proteolytic ferment or enzyme obtained from the glandular layer of *fresh stomachs* from healthy pigs. It occurs as a

Digitized by Google

yellowish-white, amorphous powder, or in thin, pale yellow scales, having a faint odor and a slightly acidulous or saline taste. It is soluble in 50 parts of water, more so in water acidulated with hydrochloric acid, and insoluble in alcohol. The Pharmacopeia of the United States requires the drug to be capable of digesting not less than 3,000 times its weight of freshly coagulated and disintegrated egg albumin. The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.)

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Pepsin is an excellent digestive, being a normal constituent of the gastric juice, and in the presence of hydrochloric acid (a natural acid of the stomach) it digests the proteid elements of the food, converting these insoluble substances into albumoses, and finally into soluble peptones. The drug is given in cases where there is a lessened secretion of gastric juice, as in *atonic dyspepsia*, *cancer of the stomach*, and *gastric ulcer*. Many organic acids, alcohol, and alkalies impair the proteolytic action of pepsin.

PANCREATINUM—U.S.P.

(Pancreatin.)

Pancreatin is a mixture of enzymes naturally existing in the *pancreas* of warm-blooded animals, and is obtained from the fresh pancreas of the hog or the ox. It consists principally of *amylopsin*, *trypsin*, and *steapsin*. To be up to the official standard it should be capable of converting not less than 25 times its weight of starch into water-soluble substance (dextrose). It occurs as a cream-colored powder, slowly but not completely soluble in water, insoluble in alcohol. The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—The action of pancreatin is due to the active enzymes which it contains, of which trypsin digests proteids, amylopsin acts upon starches, and steapsin emulsifies fats and oils, resolving them into fatty acids and glycerin. The drug, like pepsin, is used as an artificial digestant in *certain disorders of the stomach* wherein digestion is impaired.

MALTUM—U.S.P.

(Malt.)

Malt is the *grain* of one or more varieties of *Hordeum sativum* (barley), partially germinated artificially, and then dried. The extract is official:

Digitized by Google

Extractum Malti, U.S.P. *Dose*, 4 fl. dr. (15.0 mils).
Fluidextractum Malti, N.F. (contains 25 per cent. vol. alcohol). *Dose*, 2 fl. dr. (8.0 mils).

If the extract of malt is prepared according to the process of the United States Pharmacopeia, the fresh preparation will contain *diastase*, an efficient ferment and capable of converting starch into dextrose. The diastatic power rapidly deteriorates on keeping. The extracts of malt are extensively used as digestants and as general tonics, but their value is more or less questionable, probably on account of the difficulty of obtaining the preparation fresh and properly prepared. Heat above 57°C. (135°F.) destroys the diastase.

DIASTASUM—U.S.P.

(Diastase.)

Diastase is a mixture containing amylolytic enzymes obtained from an infusion of malt. It occurs as a yellowish-white, amorphous powder, or in translucent scales; odorless and tasteless. It has the power of converting not less than 50 times its weight of potato starch into soluble carbohydrates (dextrin and maltose). It should be kept in well-closed containers, protected from light, heat and moisture. Diastase is soluble in water, the solutions being more or less turbid; almost insoluble in alcohol. The drug is used as a digestant and general tonic. The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.).

PAPAYOTIN (Nonofficial)

(Papain; Papoid; Caroid.)

Papain is a natural *albuminous ferment* obtained from *Carica papaya*, the papaw tree, growing in the tropics. It occurs as a grayish-white, amorphous powder, without odor or taste. It is soluble in water and glycerin, but insoluble in alcohol and ether. The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—It is claimed that papain will convert proteids into peptones, starch into maltose, and emulsify fats; and that although it will act in neutral or acid solutions, it is most active in solutions of an alkaline reaction (Stevens). Harlan introduced the drug in dental therapeutics for *digesting pulp tissue* after devitalization. He suggested making a paste with glycerin, acidulating with 1 or 2 min. of a 1:500 solution of hydrochloric acid. The pulp was devitalized in the usual way, and this paste sealed in contact with the dead tissue for one or two weeks, when

Digitized by Google

the tissue was supposed to be liquefied. Clinical experience with the drug in dental, as well as in general therapeutics, proves it of doubtful value.

CATHARTICS

Cathartics have been elsewhere defined as agents which produce evacuation of the bowels. The drugs having this property are classified according to the intensity of their action and the character of the stool thus produced. Those that are mild in action and produce a nearly normal stool are called *laxatives*. Those more powerful, usually producing more copious stools, are termed *purgatives*. Those which produce a watery evacuation of the bowels are called *hydragogues*. Those which gripe, having a violent action, and in overdoses produce symptoms of acute enteritis, are termed *drastics*.

The chief laxatives are:

Cascara Sagrada.	Figs.
Tamarind.	Prunes.
Manna.	Honey.

The chief purgatives are:

Aloes.	Calomel.*
Senna.	Blue Mass.*
Castor Oil.	Sulphur.
Rhubarb.	Phenolphthalein.

The principal hydragogues are:

Magnesium Sulphate.	Sodium Phosphate.
Sodium Sulphate.	Magnesium Citrate.

Potassium and Sodium Tartrate.

The main drastics are:

Croton Oil.	Gamboge.
Colocynth.	Jalap.

Podophyllum.

CASCARA SAGRADA—U.S.P.

(Rhamnus Purshiana, U.S.P. VIII; Chittem Bark.)

Cascara sagrada is the *dried bark* of *Rhamnus Purshiana*, a small tree growing along the Pacific coast of North America. It contains a crystalline glucosid, *purshianin*, that is several times as active as the crude drug. The average dose of cascara sagrada bark is 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.). The following preparations are official:

Digitized by Google

Fluidextractum Cascara Sagrada, U.S.P. *Dose*, 10–30 min. (0.6–2.0 mils).
Fluidextractum Cascara Sagrada Aromaticum, U.S.P. *Dose*, 10–30 min. (0.6–2.0 mils).
Extractum Cascara Sagrada, U.S.P. *Dose*, 2–8 gr. (0.13–0.5 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Cascara sagrada is a peculiarly efficient laxative. Its action is somewhat slow and is seldom accompanied with irritation or unpleasant symptoms. It is used exclusively as a tonic laxative, and in *habitual constipation* it is a reliable remedy. The drug possesses a distinct advantage over many cathartics in not readily losing its effect when frequently taken; in fact, in most cases the dose can be diminished gradually, and this is usually the most satisfactory way of administering the remedy. On account of the unpleasant bitter taste the aromatic fluid extract is the best preparation to use.

TAMARINDUS (Nonofficial)

(Tamarind.)

Tamarind is the *preserved pulp* of the *fruit* of *Tamarindus indica*, a large tree indigenous to Africa and cultivated in the West Indies. It is a gentle laxative about equal in power to the fig and prune. Its action is due chiefly to the potassium salts of tartaric, citric, malic, and acetic acids, of which it contains from 8–12 per cent. The average dose is 4 dr. (16.0 Gm.). It is a constituent of the formerly official confection of senna.

MANNA—U.S.P.

Manna is a *concrete saccharine exudation* from *Fraxinus Ornus*, a small native tree of Sicily and other Mediterranean islands. Its chief constituent is *mannite* (50–80 per cent.) a sweet crystalline principle, soluble in water. It acts as a mild laxative in doses of 1–2 oz. (32.0–64.0 Gm.). It is usually given in combination with other cathartics, and is a constituent of the official compound infusion of senna.

FICUS (Nonofficial)

(Fig.)

Fig is the *dried fruit* of *Ficus Carica*, a native tree of the shores of the Levant, but cultivated in tropical countries. It contains about 62 per cent. of grape-sugar, also gum, fat, etc. It acts as a demulcent

Digitized by Google

and laxative, and is a constituent of the formerly official confection of senna. Figs are chiefly used as an article of diet in *habitual constipation*.

PRUNUM (Nonofficial)

(Prune.)

Prune is the *dried fruit* of *Prunus Domestica*, the plum tree, indigenous to Western Asia, but cultivated in most temperate countries. It contains sugar, pectin, albumin, malic acid, and salts. Prunes are laxative and nutritious, and are freely used as food and sweetmeat. Stewed prunes are an excellent remedy for *constipation* in children. They are a constituent of the formerly official confection of senna.

MEL—U.S.P.

(Honey.)

Honey is a *saccharine secretion* deposited in the honey-comb by *Apis Mellifica*, the honey-bee. It is a strong aqueous solution of several sugars (cane- and grape-sugar, levulose) with wax pollen, coloring and odorous matters, etc. Honey is often adulterated with starch and glucose. The dose is indefinite. Clarified honey is official (mel depuratum, U.S.P.), and is an ingredient of confection of senna, U.S.P. VIII, and of the official honey of rose (mel rosæ, U.S.P.). Honey is a laxative, nutritive, and emollient. It is used chiefly as an emollient in *diseases of the throat* to relieve *dryness, pain, cough, and dysphagia*, and also as a pleasant vehicle for certain nauseous drugs. Honey of rose is slightly astringent, and is used in gargles, sprays, or washes for *inflammatory* and *ulcerating conditions* of the mucous membrane of the mouth, throat, and nasal passages. The wax obtained from the honey-comb is a useful material in dental practice.

ALOE—U.S.P.

(Aloes.)

Aloes is the inspissated *juice* obtained from the *leaves* of several species of genus *Aloe*, a familiar example of which is the American century plant. It grows abundantly in nearly all hot, dry countries. Two varieties were formerly recognized by the United States Pharmacopœia (1890): Barbadoes aloes (*Aloe barbadensis*), obtained from *Aloe vera*, and Socotrine aloes (*Aloe socotrina*), obtained from *Aloe*

Digitized by Google

perryi. The chief constituent is *aloin*, also official, a neutral crystalline principle, and from which is obtained *emodin*, a glucosid to which the purgative property of the drug is doubtless due. Emodin is also found in senna and rhubarb. The average dose of aloes is 4 gr. (0.25 Gm.). The following preparations are official:

Aloninum, U.S.P. *Dose*, ¼–2 gr. (0.016–0.13 Gm.).
Tinctura Aloes, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½–2 fl. dr. (2.0–8.0 mils).
Pilulæ Aloes, U.S.P. (contains about 2 gr.–0.13 Gm.). *Dose*, 1–5 pills.
Pilulæ Rhei Compositæ, U.S.P. (contains Aloes, 1½ gr.–0.1 Gm.; Rhubarb, 2 gr.–0.13 Gm.; Myrrh and Oil of Peppermint). *Dose*, 1–5 pills.

The drug enters into other official preparations, as compound extract of colocynth, compound tincture of benzoin, compound cathartic pills, and other vegetable cathartic pills.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Aloes is a rather slowly acting but effective purgative. It will be noticed from the list of preparations that aloes is rarely used singly as a cathartic. In *simple, persistent constipation*, it may be combined advantageously with other drugs, nux vomica, ipecac, rhubarb, or podophyllum. Pills of aloes and iron, formerly official, are often given with benefit in *chlorosis* with constipation. The liquid preparations have a disagreeable taste which is difficult to mask and are rarely given. The pill is the popular form of administering the drug.

SENNA—U.S.P.

Senna is the *leaflets* of *Cassia acutifolia* and *Cassia angustifolia*, small shrubs growing, respectively, in Africa and India. It contains chiefly an active acid glucosid, *cathartin* or *cathartinic acid*, also *emodin*. The average dose is 1 dr. (4.0 Gm.). The following preparations are official:

Fluidextractum Sennæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–2 fl. dr. (4.0–8.0 mils).
Syrupus Sennæ, U.S.P. (25 per cent.). *Dose*, 1–4 fl. dr. (4.0–15.0 mils.).
Infusum Sennæ Compositum, U.S.P. (Black Draft: Senna, 6; Fennel, 2; Manna, 12; Epsom Salts, 12). *Dose*, 1–4 fl. oz. (30.0–120.0 mils).
Confectio Sennæ, U.S.P., VIII (10 per cent., with Cassia Fistula, Tamarind, Prune, Fig, Sugar, and Coriander Oil). *Dose*, 1–2 dr. (4.0–8.0 Gm.).
Pulvis Glycyrrhizæ Compositus, U.S.P. (18 per cent. of

Digitized by Google

Senna, with Licorice, Sulphur, Sugar, and Fennel Oil). *Dose*, ½–2 dr. (2.0–8.0 Gm.).
Syrupus Sennæ, U.S.P. (from Fluidextract). *Dose*, 1 fl. dr. (4.0 mils).

Extract of senna (1.5 per cent.) is a constituent of compound syrup of sarsaparilla.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Senna acts energetically as a purgative. Its action is more irritating than that of rhubarb and more prompt and powerful than that of aloes. It is one of the best vegetable purgatives, and its effect is certain and reliable in *simple, acute constipation*. In *habitual costiveness*, compound licorice powder is a popular household remedy. It is given at bedtime in about a teaspoonful dose, governed by the age of the patient.

OLEUM RICINI—U.S.P.

(Castor Oil.)

Castor oil is a fixed oil expressed from the *seed* of *Ricinus communis*, a plant indigenous to India, but cultivated in many other temperate countries. It occurs as a pale yellow, viscid oil, having a faint odor and a slightly acrid, offensive taste. It is freely soluble in alcohol. It contains the glycerid of ricinoleic acid, called *ricinolein*, and to which the purgative property of the drug is due. The dose of castor oil is from 1 fl. dr.–1 fl. oz. (4.0–30.0 mils), governed by the age of the patient.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Castor oil is a mild, but thorough purgative. Stevens[1] states that while its fate in the body has not been definitely determined, it is probable that it escapes from the stomach unchanged, and that in the presence of the alkaline juices of the intestines saponification occurs with the liberation of ricinoleic acid, which is subsequently converted into ricinoleates. The latter induce catharsis by stimulating the muscular coat of the bowel, and are probably absorbed, since the oil is known to impart its purgative properties to the milk when given to nursing women.

Castor oil has long been a household remedy to remove irritant material from the bowel in the beginning of *acute inflammatory diarrhea*, especially in children. It is not a suitable remedy for habitual constipation, as is generally supposed by the laity. The drug is a desirable constituent of many lotions, used on the scalp for *dandruff*, etc., owing to its solubility in alcohol.

Patrick, Moyer, and other neurologists highly recommend large

[1] Modern Materia Medica and Therapeutics.

Digitized by Google

doses of castor oil in *tic douloureux*. Smaller doses are first administered, and gradually increased until large quantities may be taken daily without inducing catharsis.

The main objection to castor oil as a therapeutic agent is its disagreeable taste. Many substances have been suggested to overcome this objection, among which may be mentioned the oils of peppermint, gaultheria, and cinnamon. A pleasant combination follows:

> Castor Oil, 8 oz. (240.0 mils); Oil of Peppermint, 5 min. (0.3 mil); Saccharin, 2 gr. (0.13 Gm.); and Alcohol, 1 dr. (4.0 mils). The Oil of Peppermint and Saccharin should first be dissolved in Alcohol and then added to the Castor Oil. The usual dose may be given.

Castor Oil may also be given in flexible capsules.

RHEUM—U.S.P.

(Rhubarb.)

Rhubarb is the *root* of *Rheum officinale*, a perennial herb resembling garden rhubarb, but of larger growth, and a native of China, Thibet, and other Asiatic countries. It contains *chrysophanic acid*, *emodin*, *tannic acid*, and several resinous principles. It is to emodin and possibly some of the resinous principles that rhubarb owes its purgative properties, for chrysophanic acid has no purgative action and tannic acid is an astringent. The average dose of rhubarb is 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.). The following preparations are official:

> Tinctura Rhei, U.S.P. (10 per cent., with Cardamom). *Dose*, 1–2 fl. dr. (4.0–8.0 mils).
> Tinctura Rhei Aromatica, U.S.P. (20 per cent., with Aromatics). *Dose*, ½–1 fl. dr. (2.0–4.0 mils).
> Fluidextractum Rhei, U.S.P. *Dose*, 10–30 min. (0.6–2.0 mils).
> Extractum Rhei, U.S.P. *Dose*, 5–10 gr. (0.3–0.6 Gm.).
> Syrupus Rhei, U.S.P. (10 per cent. of the fluid extract). *Dose*, 1–6 fl. dr. (4.0–22.5 mils).
> Syrupus Rhei Aromaticus, U.S.P. (15 per cent. of aromatic tincture and spiced syrup of Rhubarb). *Dose*, 1–6 fl. dr. (4.0–22.5 mils).
> Pulvis Rhei Compositus, U.S.P. (Gregory's Powder; Rhubarb, 25; Magnesia, 65; Ginger, 10). *Dose*, 20–60 gr. (1.3–4.0 Gm.).
> Pilulæ Rhei Compositæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–5 pills.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Rhubarb acts, in appropriate doses, as a purgative and stomachic. As a secondary effect, however, it frequently causes constipation, due to the tannic acid it

Digitized by Google

contains. Doses of from 1–3 gr. (0.06–0.2 Gm.) often produce no cathartic action, but its effect upon the stomach is that of a mild astringent and tonic.

As an agent for removing irritant material from the bowel in the beginning of *acute inflammatory diarrhea*, especially in children, rhubarb is highly efficient. To check *diarrhea in cholera morbus* the following has been a popular remedy: tincture of rhubarb, tincture of capsicum, tincture of opium, spirit of camphor, and spirit of peppermint—an equal quantity of each. The dose is from 15–30 min. (1.0–2.0 mils), in water.

SULPHUR

(S.)

The element **sulphur** is recognized by the United States Pharmacopeia in three forms:

Sulphur Sublimatum.—U.S.P. (Sublimed Sulphur; Flowers of Sulphur).—This occurs as a fine yellow powder, having a slightly characteristic odor and a faintly acid taste. It is insoluble in water, partially soluble in absolute alcohol, ether, and chloroform. The average dose is 1 dr. (4.0 Gm.).

Sulphur Lotum—U.S.P. (Washed Sulphur).—This form of sulphur is prepared by digesting sublimed sulphur for three days in weak ammonia water, and then washing. It enters into two official preparations:

> Unguentum Sulphuris, U.S.P. (15 per cent.).
> Pulvis Glycyrrhizæ Compositus, U.S.P. (8 per cent.) Also,
> Unguentum Sulphuris Compositum, N.F.

Sulphur Præcipitatum—U.S.P. (Precipitated Sulphur; Milk of Sulphur).—This is a fine, almost white powder, without odor or taste. It is prepared by precipitation from calcium sulphid solutions with diluted hydrochloric acid. The average dose is 1 dr. (4.0 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Sulphur acts locally as a stimulant and parasiticide. Internally, it acts as a mild purgative. As a stimulating remedy it has been recommended in *pyorrhea alveolaris*, but its use is of doubtful value. It is a reliable remedy, however, in parasitic diseases, like *scabies* (itch) and *ring-worm*. The ointment may be employed. The drug may be given internally, mixed with honey or molasses, as a laxative. When sulphur is burned in the air, sulphur dioxid (SO_2) is formed. This acid-forming oxid (anhydrid) unites with water to form sulphurous acid (H_2SO_3), which latter product is a potent disinfectant and bleaching agent.

Digitized by Google

Kirk recommends a mixture of boric acid and sodium sulphite as a bleaching agent for tooth-structure. The mixture should be placed in the cavity dry, then moistened and hermetically sealed. A reaction is brought about whereby sulphurous acid is formed.

PHENOLPHTHALEINUM—U.S.P.

(Phenolphthalein; $C_{20}H_{14}O_4$.)

Phenolphthalein is a dibasic phenol derivative. It occurs as a white or faintly yellowish-white, crystalline powder; without odor or taste; permanent in the air. Almost insoluble in water; soluble in 13 parts of alcohol, and in 70 parts of ether at 25°C. It is dissolved by solutions of the alkali hydroxids and carbonates with a *red color*. The solutions are *decolorized* by the addition of acids in excess. Owing to this peculiar property the agent is used as an *indicator* in volumetric assaying and in quantitative analysis. The drug has been recommended as a purgative. The average dose is 2½ gr. (0.15 Gm.).

MAGNESII SULPHAS—U.S.P.

(Magnesium Sulphate; Epsom Salt; $MgSO_4.7H_2O$.)

Magnesium sulphate occurs in small, colorless, rhombic prisms or acicular crystals, without odor, and having a cooling, saline, unpleasant, and bitter taste; soluble in 1.5 parts of water, and insoluble in alcohol. The average dose is 4 dr. (16.0 Gm.). The drug enters into one official preparation:

> Infusum Sennæ Compositum, U.S.P. *Dose*, 4–6 fl. oz. 120.0–180.0 mils).
>
> Magnesii Sulphas Effervescens, U.S.P. VIII (contains Magnesium Sulphate, 500; Sodium Bicarbonate, 403; Tartaric Acid, 211; Citric Acid, 136). *Dose*, 1–8 dr. (4.0–32.0 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—Magnesium sulphate is a typical representative of the class of saline cathartics, all of which produce evacuation of the bowels chiefly by increasing the amount of fluid in the intestine. They differ in their action from vegetable cathartics in that they stimulate peristalsis but feebly. They not only hinder the absorption of fluid taken with the food, but they abstract more fluid directly from the tissues and blood. To understand thoroughly this so-called *salt action—i.e.*, the behavior of saline solutions of varying degrees of concentration in relation to the salinity of the blood serum, by which a flow of fluid to or from the blood is determined—it is necessary that we be familiar with certain physical processes, chief

Digitized by Google

among which is that of *osmosis*—the passage of salts through animal membranes, or the force by which fluids are impelled through organic membranes. If, for example, a 10 per cent. solution of common salt is placed in the bottom of a container and water placed in the top, the two liquids being separated by a more or less permeable animal membrane, in a few moments it will be observed that the specific gravity of the two fluids is the same. By the process of osmosis, then, the salt from the solution in the bottom has passed through the membrane, and a 5 per cent. solution of common salt on both sides of the separating medium is the result. A *semipermeable membrane* is one which allows the passage of one sort of molecules (usually the solvent), while impervious to another (usually the dissolved substance). The interposition of such a membrane between salt solutions of varying degrees of concentration introduces very important modifications in the osmotic process, and results in the development of what is termed *osmotic pressure.* The walls of the intestines are only partly semipermeable; *i.e.*, they are partly permeable to salts, though much less readily than to water. If two solutions having the same molecular concentration in dissolved substance (*i.e.*, *equimolecular*) are separated by a semipermeable membrane impermeable to the dissolved substance, it is evident that no change of liquid will occur. Such solutions, having the same specific gravity and, therefore, the same osmotic tension or pressure, are called *isotonic* to each other. In physiologic literature "isotonic" usually means solutions having the same concentration (specific gravity) as blood-serum, and it is in this sense that the term is used in these pages. If one solution has a greater concentration than the other and the separating medium be a partly semipermeable membrane, like the walls of the intestines, water principally will pass from the weaker into the stronger solution until both are of the same concentration. The stronger solution is then called *hyperisotonic;* the weaker, *hypoisotonic.* Neither being isotonic, they are called *anisotonic.*

With this knowledge of salt action we can readily understand how saline cathartics, in normal subjects, act as hydragogues, *i.e.*, produce a watery evacuation of the bowels, and why they are absorbed from the intestine very slowly and in but small quantities, the greater portion escaping from the body in the stools. The action of saline cathartics, therefore, is purely local, which fact is sustained by the further fact that they do not produce catharsis when intravenously injected. When saline cathartics are administered to an anhydremic patient (having a deficient amount of water in the blood) the process of their action is reversed; instead of the blood in the

Digitized by Google

adjacent tissues yielding its water to the intestine, the blood abstracts water from the bowel, the greater portion of the salt is absorbed, and purgation does not ensue. This means that a hypoisotonic solution of the salt must necessarily be administered, otherwise this result would not follow. An isotonic or perhaps a hyperisotonic solution with a normal subject might be hypoisotonic in cases of anhydremia.

Magnesium sulphate in concentrated solution (hyperisotonic), is an active hydragogue cathartic, producing in a few hours a copious watery evacuation of the bowel without much pain or systemic disturbance. Dilute solutions (hypoisotonic) do not produce purgation, but, the salt being absorbed in greater quantity, they act as diuretics, increasing the flow of urine.

Therapeutics.—Magnesium sulphate, being practically free from irritant properties, is an excellent cathartic for removing undigested material from the bowel in *acute enteritis* and *colitis* (colic). Stevens speaks favorably of saline cathartics in *chronic constipation*, giving a small dose before breakfast, claiming that they are sometimes more efficacious than vegetable cathartics. While vegetable cathartics are usually given at night on account of their rather slow action, generally causing no inconvenience until morning, saline cathartics act more promptly and powerfully when given before breakfast.

Saline cathartics are especially indicated in *acute alveolar abscess* as they deplete the engorged tissues, preventing stagnation of the blood in the affected part, thus aiding nature materially in preventing the infected tissues from being broken down into pus. A heaping teaspoonful of Epsom salt may be dissolved in a wineglass half full of warm water, having at hand, in another glass, some fresh water. By drinking the fresh water as soon as the concentrated solution is taken, the bitter taste of the drug will scarcely be noticed.

Epsom salt is also used in *phenol poisoning*, and in *acute lead poisoning*. With phenol, the innocuous phenol sulphonate is formed, and with the soluble salts of lead (acetate) an insoluble sulphate.

Incompatibles.—Magnesium sulphate is incompatible with lead acetate (sugar of lead), silver nitrate, alkaline carbonates, and lime-water.

SODII SULPHAS—U.S.P.

(Sodium Sulphate; Glauber's Salt; $Na_2SO_4.10H_2O$.)

Sodium sulphate occurs in large, colorless, transparent prisms or granular crystals, odorless, and having a bitter, saline taste. It

Digitized by Google

is soluble in 1.2 parts of water, and insoluble in alcohol. The average dose is 4 dr. (16.0 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Sodium sulphate acts as a powerful hydragogue cathartic, producing large watery stools. Its action is accompanied by considerable griping, because of which Epsom salt has largely superseded the drug. Sodium sulphate enters into the mixture known as artificial Carlsbad salt, which, given in doses of a teaspoonful in a glassful of hot water half an hour before breakfast, makes an efficient mild aperient. The formula follows: sodium sulphate, 5 oz. (160.0 Gm.); sodium bicarbonate, 2 oz. (64.0 Gm.); sodium chlorid, 1 oz. (32.0 Gm.). Both sodium and magnesium sulphates are active ingredients in certain natural mineral waters, like Hunyadi Janos, Carlsbad, etc. These waters may be given in cases of *pyorrhea alveolaris* associated with *rheumatism* or *gout*.

SODII PHOSPHAS—U.S.P.

(Sodium Phosphate; $Na_2HPO_4.12H_2O$.)

Sodium phosphate occurs in large, colorless, prismatic crystals, without odor, but having a cooling, saline taste. It is soluble in 2.7 parts of water, and insoluble in alcohol. The dose is from 1 gr.–4 dr. (0.06–16.0 Gm.), depending on the age of the patient. For a young child a small amount only is necessary. The following preparations are official:

Sodii Phosphas Effervescens, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–8 dr. (4.0–32.0 Gm.).

Sodii Phosphas Exsiccatus, U.S.P. *Dose*, 10–60 gr. (0.6–4.0 Gm.).

Liquor Sodii Phosphatis Compositus, U.S.P., VIII (each fl. dr. (4.0 mils) contains 1 dr. (4.0 Gm.) of Sodium Phosphate, with Sodium Nitrate and Citric Acid). *Dose*, 1–3 fl. dr. (4.0–12.0 mils.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—The manner of action of sodium phosphate depends upon the quantity administered. In small doses it acts as a laxative; in large doses, as a purgative. Its mild action and agreeable taste especially commend it for children, to whom the proper doses may be given in milk or other liquid food. Stevens speaks favorably of the drug, given in small doses in hot water before breakfast, in *chronic gastric catarrh with constipation*, also in *simple catarrhal jaundice*.

Digitized by Google

MAGNESII CITRAS (Nonofficial)

(Magnesium Citrate; $Mg_3(C_6H_5O_7)_2.14H_2O$.)

Magnesium citrate is obtained by dissolving magnesium carbonate in citric acid. It is a colorless substance, easily soluble in water. It is only official in the form of solution of magnesium citrate, which is compounded in a specially prepared 12 fl. oz. (360.0 mils) bottle.

> Liquor Magnesii Citratis, U.S.P. *Dose*, 6–12 fl. oz. (180.0–360.0 mils).

In cases of *acute alveolar abscess* where it is desired to administer a saline cathartic, this solution is highly efficacious. It is well tolerated by the stomach, and its action is effective. It is somewhat irritating, and should not be administered when there is any inflammation of the gastrointestinal tract. An effervescent salt of magnesium citrate may be obtained from the pharmacies.

POTASSII ET SODII TARTRAS—U.S.P.

(Potassium and Sodium Tartrate; Rochelle Salt; $KNaC_4H_4O_6.4H_2O$.)

Rochelle salt occurs in colorless, transparent, prismatic crystals, or as a white powder, without odor, but having a cooling, saline taste; soluble in about 1 part of water. The average dose is 2½ dr. (10.0 gm.). It is an essential constituent of the official compound effervescent powder.

> Pulvis Effervescens Compositus, U.S.P. (Seidlitz Powder). *Dose*, 1 powder.
> A dose of Seidlitz powder is contained in two different colored papers—one blue, the other white. The *blue paper* contains Potassium and Sodium Tartrate, 120 gr. (8.0 gm.); and Sodium Bicarbonate, 40 gr. (2.6 gm.). The *white paper* contains Tartaric Acid, 35 gr. (2.3 gm.). The contents of each paper should be dissolved separately, the two solutions mixed, and the whole taken while effervescence is taking place.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Rochelle salt may be given as a hydragogue cathartic in the same conditions for which magnesium sulphate was recommended. Its administration is more agreeable than the latter, but its action is less active. The carbonic acid evolved during the effervescence of a Seidlitz powder exerts a more or less sedative influence on the stomach, as well as making the solution more palatable. As a mild saline cathartic, especially during the summer season, a dose of Seidlitz powder is highly efficacious.

Digitized by Google

OLEUM TIGLII—U.S.P.

(Croton Oil.)

Croton oil is a fixed oil expressed from the *seeds* of *Croton Tiglium*, a small native tree of China, but extensively cultivated in India and the Philippine Islands. It occurs as a yellowish, viscid oil, having a faint odor and an acrid, burning taste. It contains *croton-oleic acid*, both free and as a glycerid, together with several other inactive fatty acids. The average dose of croton oil is 1 min. (0.05 mil).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Croton oil is a violent irritant. When applied, undiluted, to the skin it causes redness and burning, followed by a copious eruption of pustules. When internally administered it acts as a powerful drastic cathartic, causing in one or two hours several copious movements of the bowels, attended with considerable pain, and sometimes with nausea. Large doses produce all the symptoms of a severe gastroenteritis—burning sensation in the stomach, pain, etc. On account of the ease with which it may be administered (small quantities being so effectual) the drug is a convenient cathartic to give in cases where the patient can swallow only with difficulty. It may be taken in a small amount of olive oil or in a pill with bread-crumbs as an excipient. The prompt irritant action of croton oil on the bowel makes it a useful revulsant in cases of cerebral congestion; therefore, its effect is advantageous in *uremia*, *apoplexy*, and *acute mania*. In cases like *lead poisoning*, where *obstinate constipation* is a concomitant, the drug is especially useful.

Croton oil may be mixed with some indifferent oil (croton oil, 1 part; olive oil, 7 parts) and used as a dental counterirritant. It has no advantage here, however, over the more generally used counterirritants (iodin, mustard, capsicum, etc.). Stevens speaks favorably of a mixture of croton oil (1 part) and tincture of iodin (2 parts) to be used as a pigment in *neuritis*.

COLYCYNTHIS—U.S.P.

(Colycynth.)

Colycynth is the *fruit* of *Citrullus Colocynthis* deprived of its rind. The plant grows in arid places in Asia, Africa, and Southern Europe. It contains *colocynthin*, a bitter glucosid, to which its cathartic property is largely due. The average dose of colocynth is 1 gr. (0.06 Gm.). The following preparations are official:

Extractum Colocynthidis, U.S.P. *Dose*, 2–5 gr. (0.13–0.3 Gm.).

Extractum Colocynthidis Compositum, U.S.P. *Dose*, 5–20 gr. (0.3–1.3 Gm.).

Digitized by Google

Pilulæ Catharticæ Compositæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–3 pills.
Pilulæ Catharticæ Vegetabiles, U.S.P., VIII. *Dose*, 1–3 pills.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Colocynth is an energetic drastic cathartic, producing in full doses copious, watery stools, accompanied frequently by griping. In large doses the irritation excites inflammation of the whole alimentary tract, which may prove fatal. The drug is too irritant to be used alone, and is only given in combination with other drugs in cases of *obstinate chronic constipation*, which frequently accompanies old age.

CAMBOGIA—U.S.P.

(Gamboge.)

Gamboge is a *gum-resin* obtained from *Garcinia Hanburii*, a laurel-like tree growing in the East Indies. Its active principle is *cambogic acid*. The average dose of the drug is from 2 gr. (0.13 Gm.). It enters into the following official preparation:

Pilulæ Catharticæ Compositæ, U.S.P. Dose, 1–3 pills.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Gamboge is an active drastic cathartic. In large doses its irritant effect is capable of causing fatal gastroenteritis. It is never used alone, but may be combined with less powerful cathartics and used in *obstinate chronic constipation*.

JALAPA—U.S.P.

(Jalap.)

Jalap is the *tuberous root* of *Exogonium Purga*, a perennial herb growing in Mexico. It contains two resins, *jalapin* and *convolvulin*, both of which are active. The average dose of jalap is 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.).

Its official preparations follow:

Resina Jalapæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–5 gr. (0.06–0.3 Gm.).
Pulvis Jalapæ Compositus, U.S.P. (contains Jalap, 35; Potassium Bitartrate, 65). *Dose*, 15–60 gr. (1.0–4.0 Gm.).
Pilulæ Cathartæ Compositæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–3 pills.
Pilulæ Catharticæ Vegetabiles, U.S.P. VIII (each pill contains extract of Jalap, ½ gr.–0.03 Gm.; compound extract of Colocynth, about 1 gr.–0.06 Gm.; extract of Hyoscyamus, ½ gr.–0.03 Gm.; extract of Leptandra, ¼ gr.–0.015 Gm.; extract of Podophyllum, ¼ gr.–0.015 Gm.; and Oil of Peppermint). *Dose*, 1–3 pills.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—The action of jalap is more like that of the hydragogue cathartics than it is of the drastic.

Digitized by Google

It acts gently, producing, within three or four hours, copious, watery stools. Pharmacologists (Stadelmann, and others) claim that the drug has no action in the absence of bile, the latter serving in all probability as a solvent. For removing the water from the tissues in *dropsy* the drug is frequently combined with a saline, as in the official compound powder of jalap. It is not employed alone as a carhartic, but it is an ingredient of both the official compound cathartic pills and formerly official compound vegetable pills, which preparations are frequently given in *habitual constipation.*

PODOPHYLLUM—U.S.P.

(May Apple; Mandrake.)

Podophyllum is the *rhizome* and *rootlets* of *Podophyllum peltatum*, a perennial herb, growing in the moist woods of Canada and northern United States. It contains two isomeric glucosids, *podophyllotoxin* and *picropodophyllin*, and also a resin, *podophyllin*, which is official. The average dose of podophyllum is 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.). The official preparations are:

Resina Podophylli, U.S.P. *Dose*, ⅛–½ gr. (0.008–0.03 Gm.).
Fluidextractum Podophylli, U.S.P. *Dose*, 5–20 min. (0.3–1.3 mils).
Pilulæ Podophylli, Belladonnæ et Capsici, U.S.P. VIII (each pill contains Podophyllin, ¼ gr.–0.016 Gm.; extract of Belladonna, ⅛ gr.–0.008 Gm.; pulv. Capsicum, ½ gr.–0.03 Gm.; with Acacia and Sugar of Milk). *Dose*, 1–2 pills.

The resin is also a constituent of compound cathartic pills.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Podophyllum is an active drastic cathartic. Its action is rather slow, however, compared with most other drastics; it generally requires from ten to twelve hours to produce an evacuation of the bowel. The stools are copious and watery, and usually attended with more or less griping pain. The drug is used in *habitual constipation*, associated with so-called *biliousness*. When combined with other cathartic drugs, those should be selected which are also slow in action, like aloes, calomel, etc. The resin is the most reliable preparation and is generally given in the form of pills.

DIURETICS

Diuretics are agents that increase the flow of urine. They may act indirectly by forcing a greater volume of blood through the kidneys, or directly by stimulating the renal epithelium. A number

Digitized by Google

of them act in both ways. Certain circulatory stimulants also act as diuretics, among which may be mentioned digitalis and caffein; digitalis appears to have no special action on the secreting cells of the kidneys; its effect as a diuretic is almost entirely dependent upon the influence the drug has over the cardiovascular system. Caffein, on the other hand, is a powerful diuretic, acting directly on the renal epithelium, and, in a lesser degree, on the circulation.

The inorganic salts, urea, and other soluble proteids, normally present in the blood, may be regarded as the physiologic stimuli of the secreting cells of the kidneys. Many other substances, not natural components of the blood, increase the secretion of urine by exerting a direct and specific influence on the cells of the glomeruli and convoluted tubes (Stevens).

Diuretics are employed in dental practice principally for the purpose of removing from the blood certain excrementitious matters, which are supposed to be forerunners of pyorrhea alveolaris. The agents used are chiefly the vegetable salts of potassium and lithium, which not only increase the amount of urine excreted, but, being eliminated through the kidney in large part as carbonates, they tend to make the urine alkaline in reaction. Examples follow:

Potassium Bicarbonate.	Potassium Chlorate.
Potassium Carbonate.	Potassium Nitrate.
Potassium Citrate.	Lithium Carbonate.
Potassium Acetate.	Lithium Citrate.
Potassium Bitartrate.	Lithium Benzoate.

POTASSII BICARBONAS—U.S.P.

(Potassium Bicarbonate; $KHCO_3$.)

Potassium bicarbonate occurs in colorless prismatic crystals, without odor, but having an unpleasant, saline, alkaline taste; soluble in 3 parts of water, and practically insoluble in alcohol. The average dose is 15 gr. (1.0 gm.). Potassium bicarbonate, though not contained therein as such, is used in making the following official solutions:

Liquor Potassii Arsenitis, U.S.P. (Fowler's Solution).
Liquor Potassii Citratis, U.S.P.
Liquor Magnesii Citratis, U.S.P.

POTASSII CARBONAS—U.S.P.

(Potassium Carbonate; K_2CO_3.)

Potassium carbonate occurs in a white, granular, deliquescent powder; freely soluble in water, but insoluble in alcohol. The

Digitized by Google

average dose is 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.). The drug is very irritant and rarely used as such internally; from potassium carbonate, however, the following official preparations are made:

Mistura Ferri Composita, U.S.P. VIII.
Pilulæ Ferri Carbonatis, U.S.P. (Blaud's Pills).

POTASSII CITRAS—U.S.P.

(Potassium Citrate; $K_3C_6H_5O_7.H_2O$.)

Potassium citrate occurs in transparent, prismatic crystals or white, granular, deliquescent powder, without odor, but having a pleasant saline taste; soluble in 0.5 part of water, but sparingly soluble in alcohol. The average dose is 1 dr. (4.0 Gm.). There are two official preparations. They are:

Liquor Potassii Citratis, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½–1 fl. oz. (15.0–30.0 mils).
Potassii Citras Effervescens, U.S.P. *Dose*, 30–90 gr. (2.0–6.0 Gm).

POTASSII BITARTRAS—U.S.P.

(Potassium Bitartrate; Cream of Tartar; $KHC_4H_4O_6$.)

Cream of tartar occurs in colorless, or slightly opaque, rhombic crystals, or as a white powder, without odor, but having an acidulous taste; soluble in about 155 parts of water, and very sparingly soluble in alcohol. The average dose is 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.). It is a component of the following official preparation:

Pulvis Jalapæ Compositus, U.S.P. *Dose*, 15–60 gr. (1.0–4.0 Gm.).

POTASSII ACETAS—U.S.P.

(Potassium Acetate; $KC_2H_3O_2$.)

Potassium acetate occurs in the form of a white powder or crystalline masses, very deliquescent, odorless, and having a pleasant, saline taste; soluble in 0.4 part of water and in 2 parts of alcohol. The average dose is 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.).

Physiologic Action.—The vegetable salts of potassium act similarly and will, therefore, be discussed here conjointly. The potassium ion is much more physiologically active than is the sodium ion, and as a result the potassium salts, as a rule, are more irritant and depressant than are the corresponding sodium salts. With the vegetable salts of potassium, however, the action of the base is

Digitized by Google

entirely subordinate to that of the acid radical, and a depressant effect is never observed except when administered continuously or in enormous doses. The dominant action of any one of the vegetable salts of potassium is upon the secreting cells of the kidneys, increasing the amount of urine. The mineral salts of the urine, both of potassium and sodium, are increased, but the evidence is not convincing that the vegetable salts of potassium materially assist oxidation in the tissues, and in consequence augment nitrogenous elimination. In large doses they do, however, impart an alkaline reaction to the urine, and in hyperisotonic solution they act as saline cathartics, producing free watery discharges. Potassium bitartrate differs somewhat from the other vegetable salts of this metal in that it resists oxidation in the body, and, therefore, much of it is eliminated unchanged. It is also a more active cathartic.

Therapeutics.—Clinical experience has fully demonstrated that *acute rheumatism* is influenced favorably by the administration of the vegetable salts of potassium; and it is also true that *pyorrhea alveolaris* in rheumatic or gouty subjects is favorably influenced by these salts, but until we have a clearer understanding of the nature of these diseases, it is useless to speculate upon the mode of action of the remedies employed in their treatment. In these cases 10–30 gr. (0.6–2.0 Gm.) of the salt may be dissolved in water and administered. The dose should be repeated every three or four hours until the urine becomes neutral or slightly alkaline. Both the official solution of potassium citrate and the effervescent salt are agreeable preparations to take. Stevens[1] speaks favorably of combining an alkaline salt with a salicylic compound. Salophen may be selected for this purpose, for while it is practically insoluble in water, it is freely soluble in watery solutions of the alkaline salts.

The vegetable salts of potassium are efficient sedative expectorants in the beginning of *acute bronchitis*, especially when the secretion is viscid and scanty.

Incompatibles.—The vegetable salts of potassium are incompatible with acids, mineral salts, and alkaloidal salts.

POTASSII CHLORAS—U.S.P.

(Potassium Chlorate; $KClO_3$.)

Potassium chlorate occurs in colorless, crystalline plates, without odor, but having a cooling saline taste; soluble in 11.5 parts of

[1] Modern Materia Medica and Therapeutics.

Digitized by Google

water, sparingly soluble in alcohol. The average dose is 4 gr. (0.25 Gm.). There is one official preparation:

> Trochisci Potassii Chloratis, U.S.P. (each contains about 2½ gr.–0.15 Gm.). *Dose*, 1–5 troches.

Physiologic Action.—Potassium chlorate, when applied in dilute form to the mucous membrane, acts as a stimulating alterative; in concentrated form it is a decided irritant. The exact manner of its action is not fully understood. It was supposed formerly that the drug, when internally administered, yielded its oxygen to the blood, but recent investigation tends to prove that this theory is erroneous and that fully 90 per cent. passes out of the body unchanged in the urine, though small quantities have been detected in the saliva, tears, and milk of nursing women. In moderate doses, well diluted, its only noticeable effect is to increase the flow of urine.

Poisoning and Treatment.—In excessively large doses potassium chlorate produces toxic symptoms. Its basic radical or potassium ion depresses the circulation and nervous system, while its acid radical or chlorate ion irritates the stomach, intestines, and kidneys. In the *treatment of poisoning* the stomach should be evacuated by emetics or the stomach-pump, followed, as usual, with demulcents. In case of exhaustion, physiologic salt solution may be subcutaneously injected.

Therapeutics.—In all inflammatory conditions of the mouth and throat, potassium chlorate makes an excellent local application. Ten grains (0.6 Gm.) to the ounce (30.0 mils) may be used as a wash, gargle, or spray. In *mercurial stomatitis*, the salt is almost a specific, and may be employed internally as well as locally. It is quite generally believed by medical men that *salivation* is less likely to follow the continuous use of mercury in *secondary syphilis* when a solution of potassium chlorate is simultaneously used as a mouth-wash. Cushney[1] states that the drug may be given internally as a prophylactic to prevent stomatitis when mercury is being prescribed, but that it does not prevent the salivation. Oral prophylaxis and mouth hygiene are considered important factors in the treatment of syphilis to-day.

The drug is used as a constituent of dental pastes which have gained some prominence as a cure for many mouth diseases. The amount of potassium chlorate in these pastes ranges from 10 to 50 per cent., and in this strength they should not be applied to the mucous membrane of the mouth, as harm is likely to follow. Where

[1] Pharmacology and Therapeutics, or the Action of Drugs.

Digitized by Google

the drug is indicated, it is far better to confine its use to weak solutions.

Incompatibles.—Potassium chlorate, being rich in oxygen which it readily gives up, makes the drug incompatible with many easily oxidizable substances, like sulphur, phosphorus, pulverized charcoal, tannic acid, sugar, sulphids, hyposulphites, hypophosphites, and ammonium chlorid.

POTASSII NITRAS—U.S.P.

(Potassium Nitrate; Saltpeter; KNO_3.)

Potassium nitrate occurs in colorless, transparent, rhombic prisms or as a crystalline powder, odorless, and having a cooling saline taste; soluble in 3.6 parts of water, sparingly soluble in alcohol. The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.) in solution, well diluted.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Except that it is more irritating to the stomach, the action of potassium nitrate in moderate doses does not differ materially from the vegetable salts of potassium; it increases the secretion of urine through direct action on the renal epithelium. In large doses potassium nitrate is not only more irritating than the vegetable salts, but is markedly more depressant to the heart and nervous system; for here the action of the base (potassium) is not subordinate to that of the acid radical. Toxic doses produce the symptoms of gastroenteritis, muscular weakness, and collapse.

Potassium nitrate is not used in dental therapeutics. It has been employed in *general dropsy*, but it has no greater efficacy than the less irritating vegetable salts. Inhalations of the smoke of burning niter paper, formerly official, sometimes afford relief in *asthma*. Solutions of the drug, called "brine," are useful for preserving meats. A mixture of equal parts of potassium nitrate and borax makes a most excellent reducing agent for refining gold scrap. The latter should be placed on charcoal and fused, when the "oxidizing mixture" is added. The potassium nitrate will oxidize the base metals which oxids are dissolved by the borax and absorbed by the charcoal, leaving the gold practically pure.

LITHII CARBONAS—U.S.P.

(Lithium Carbonate; Li_2CO_3.)

Lithium carbonate occurs as a white powder, without odor, but having an alkaline taste; soluble in 75 parts of water and insoluble in alcohol. The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.).

Digitized by Google

LITHII CITRAS—U.S.P.

(Lithium Citrate; $Li_3C_6H_5O_7.4H_2O$.)

Lithium citrate occurs as a white, deliquescent powder, without odor, but having a cooling saline taste; soluble in 2 parts of water, insoluble in alcohol. The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—The action of the vegetable salts of lithium is very similar to that of the corresponding salts of potassium, because the action of the base in both groups is entirely subordinate to that of the acid radical. They increase the quantity of urine and lessen its acidity.

The salts of lithium have been recommended in the treatment of *gout* and the *uric acid diathesis* because it was found that outside of the body lithium united with uric acid to form a more soluble salt than did either potassium or sodium, but since it has been clearly demonstrated that alkaline medication is without influence on the uratic salts present in the blood or tissues, it is doubtful whether the salts of lithium are any more potent in these diseases than are the vegetable salts of potassium (Stevens). On the hypothesis that the concretions in *pyorrhea alveolaris* were precipitated and deposited on the roots of teeth as the blood, supercharged with suboxidized or excrementitious material, slowly passed through the pericemental membrane, lithium salts and the natural mineral waters have been extensively employed in the treatment of this condition. But, as above mentioned, since it is clearly proven that lithium salts are without influence on the urates in the blood or tissues, and since, too, it has never been clearly demonstrated that the deposits are formed from the source mentioned, it is indeed doubtful whether these salts play any rôle in the eradication of the disease, except to increase the amount of urine. In the case of the natural waters, the efficacy which they may possess in this disease is probably dependent upon the depurant (purifying) action of the water itself, and not upon the small amount of salt they contain. On this basis, the drinking of large quantities of pure, wholesome water in the treatment of this disease is recommended.

DIAPHORETICS

Diaphoretics are agents which promote the secretion of perspiration. When the action of the remedy is such that the sweat stands in beads upon the surface, it is called a *sudorific*.

The agents employed may act directly by stimulating the special

Digitized by Google

nerve fibers supplying the sweat glands, indirectly by stimulating the sweat centers of the central nervous system from which those fibers originate, or reflexly by irritating peripheral sensory nerves. The activity of the sweat glands is increased by dilatation of the peripheral vessels, external heat, muscular exercise, dyspnea, strong emotion, nausea, and various drugs (Stevens). Diaphoretics are chiefly used for their evacuant, revulsive, and alterative effects, and also to promote absorption. The drugs usually employed for promoting perspiration are:

Pilocarpus.	Liquor Ammonium Acetate.
Spirit of Nitrous Ether.	Opium.*

PILOCARPUS—U.S.P.

(Jaborandi.)

Pilocarpus is the *leaflets* of *Pilocarpus Jaborandi* and *Pilocarpus microphyllus*, shrubs growing in South America. It contains three alkaloids—*pilocarpin*, *pilocarpidin*, and *isopilocarpin*—all of which are physiologically active, but pilocarpin is the most active, is present in greater quantity, and yields with acids soluble crystalline salts, of which two are official: *Pilocarpinæ Nitras*, *U.S.P.*, and *Pilocarpinæ Hydrochloridum*, *U.S.P.* These salts are most commonly used; the average dose of either is by mouth, 1/6 gr. (0.01 Gm.); hypodermic, 1/12 gr. (0.005 Gm.). The average dose of pilocarpus is 30 gr. (2.0 Gm.). There is one official preparation of the drug.

Fluidextractum Pilocarpi, U.S.P. *Dose*, 10–60 min. (0.6–4.0 mils).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Probably no other single drug exerts the same influence on the secretory glands of the body as pilocarpin. When internally administered, even in small doses, the sweat and saliva are markedly increased. It also increases, but to a lesser degree, the lacrimal, nasal, bronchial, gastric, intestinal, and renal secretions. The fact that atropin completely suspends the effect of pilocarpin on the secretions has led pharmacologists to believe that the drug acts by stimulating the peripheral fibers of the nerves supplying the various glands.

Pilocarpin is not much used in dental therapeutics. In *acute uremia* large doses 1/6–1/3 gr. (0.01–0.02 Gm.) may be used in conjunction with external heat (hot air or hot vapor baths). The drug is sometimes used for its diaphoretic effect in *acute rheumatism* and *acute coryza*.

Digitized by Google

SPIRITUS ÆTHERIS NITROSI—U.S.P.

(Spirit of Nitrous Ether; Sweet Spirit of Niter.)

Spirit of nitrous ether, commonly called sweet spirit of niter, is an alcoholic solution of ethyl nitrite, containing not less than 4 per cent. of pure ethyl nitrite. It occurs as a clear, volatile, inflammable liquid, having a yellowish or greenish tint, a pleasant ethereal odor, and a sharp, burning taste. It should be kept in well-stoppered bottles away from light. The dose is from 10–120 min. (0.6–8.0 mils), depending upon the age of the patient.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Spirit of nitrous ether acts as a mild diaphoretic, diuretic, and antispasmodic. Its diaphoretic effect is more pronounced than its diuretic effect when the patient is kept well under cover after its administration; the action is reversed when the patient is lightly covered. It appears, therefore, that external heat augments its diaphoretic action.

Sweet spirit of niter is used extensively as an antispasmodic remedy in *convulsions* which frequently occur in children during the *eruptive period of the deciduous teeth.* It is best given in small doses, at frequent intervals, well diluted with water.

LIQUOR AMMONII ACETATIS—U.S.P.

(Solution of Ammonium Acetate; Spirit of Mindererus.)

This is a solution of diluted acetic acid nearly saturated with ammonium carbonate. It should be slightly acid in reaction, contain about 7 per cent. of ammonium acetate, and prepared as wanted. Somewhat like sweet spirit of niter, it acts as a feeble diaphoretic or diuretic according as the patient is kept warm or cool. It is largely used in *mild febrile affections of children* as a vehicle for spirit of nitrous ether or preparations of aconite. The average dose is 4 fl. dr. (15.0 mils).

EMETICS

Emetics are agents which produce vomiting (emesis). It is supposed that drugs act to produce emesis either by directly affecting the center in the medulla or by indirectly affecting it through irritation of the sensory nerve endings in the stomach. There is little doubt that the action of apomorphin is a direct one; ipecac and antimony undoubtedly act both directly and indirectly; and all evidence goes to show that zinc sulphate, copper sulphate, alum, mustard, and tepid water act, in the main at least, indirectly.

Digitized by Google

Emetics may be used for one of four purposes:

1. To expel poisons, or undigested food which is causing pain, headaches, etc., from the stomach. For this purpose the indirect or local emetics are the most reliable, especially in cases of poisoning.

2. To expel foreign bodies, false membranes, or excessive secretion from the respiratory tract; the effort of vomiting often being sufficient to dislodge and remove the membrane or foreign body. For this purpose the direct or systemic emetics should be used.

3. To expel foreign bodies from the esophagus. Direct or systemic emetics are here also indicated.

4. To expel mucus and bile from the gall-ducts in catarrhal jaundice. For this purpose the direct or systemic emetics are, perhaps, the most useful.

Emetics are principally used in dental therapeutics for the immediate expulsion of poisons that may have been swallowed accidentally or otherwise. It should be remembered that for this purpose the local emetics are employed.

The chief emetics are:

Apomorphin.	Copper Sulphate.*
Ipecac (emetin).	Alum.*
Tartar Emetic.	Mustard.*
Zinc Sulphate.*	Tepid Water, in quantity.

APOMORPHINÆ HYDROCHLORIDUM—U.S.P.

(Apomorphin Hydrochlorid.)

Apomorphin is an artificial alkaloid obtained from morphin by abstracting a molecule of water. It is official as the hydrochlorid, which occurs in minute, grayish-white, acicular crystals, odorless, and having a slightly bitter taste; soluble in about 50 parts of water or alcohol. The average dose as an emetic by mouth is $\frac{1}{6}$ gr. (0.01 Gm.); hypodermic, $\frac{1}{12}$ gr. (0.005 Gm.); as an expectorant, $\frac{1}{20}$ gr. (0.003 Gm.).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—From five to twenty minutes after ingestion, according to the dose and method of administration of apomorphin, vomiting ensues, being repeated three or four times at intervals of about fifteen minutes. The emesis is preceded and attended by slight nausea, but with moderate depression. The entire action of apomorphin is upon the medulla; it is, therefore, a direct or systemic emetic, being the most powerful and certain we possess; and is used whenever such an emetic is indicated.

Digitized by Google

IPECACUANHA—U.S.P.

(Ipecac.)

Ipecac is the *root* of *Cephaëlis Ipecacuanha*, or *Cephaëlis acuminata*, a perennial shrub growing in Brazil and other South American states. It contains two alkaloids, *emetin* and *cephaëlin;* and, according to some authorities, also *psychrotin*. The average dose of the powdered drug as an emetic is 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.); as an expectorant, ½ gr. (0.03 Gm.).

The following are its official preparations:

Fluidextractum Ipecacuanhæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, as an emetic, 15–30 min. (1.0–2.0 mils); as an expectorant, 2–5 min. (0.1–0.3 mil).

Syrupus Ipecacuanhæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, as an emetic, 2–4 fl. dr. (8.0–15.0 mils); as an expectorant, 10–60 min. (0.6–4.0 mils).

Pulvis Ipecacuanhæ et Opii, U.S.P. (Dover's Powder; Ipecac, 1 part; Opium, 1 part; Sugar of Milk, 8 parts). *Dose*, 5–10 gr. (0.3–0.6 Gm.).

The action of ipecac is dependent almost entirely on its emetin content. This alkaloid is now official as the hydrochlorid.

EMETINÆ HYDROCHLORIDUM—U.S.P.

This product is the hydrochlorid of the alkaloid emetin, obtained from ipecac. It contains various amounts of water of crystallization, and should be preserved in dark amber-colored vials, protected from light. The average hypodermic dose is ⅓ gr. (0.02 Gm.). Most pharmaceutical houses prepare the drug in solution in ampules, containing the average dose.

Alcresta Ipecac Tablets.—These are tablets containing an absorption product of ipecac alkaloids with hydrated aluminum silicate, each tablet representing 10 gr. (0.64 Gm.) of ipecac. The dose is 2 or 3 tablets three times a day for a period of four to six days, then discontinued for two or three days if the laxative effect is too pronounced. In the stomach where the content is acid, the tablets disintegrate but do not liberate the ipecac alkaloids. The latter are released in the intestines where the secretions are alkaline, and thus enter the circulation. Alcresta ipecac tablets afford a means of administering ipecac by way of the mouth without the nausea which is certain to follow the mouth administration of the drug in other forms.

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Ipecac is a powerful irritant to the mucous membranes of the respiratory tract when the

Digitized by Google

powdered drug is inhaled. Its prolonged application to the skin produces much irritation, and even vesication, pustulation, and ulceration often result. The drug is claimed to possess some antiseptic properties. Internally administered in small doses, ipecac acts as a stimulant to the salivary and gastric glands; its action here is not unlike that of the vegetable bitters. In large doses the drug is a powerful irritant and emetic, the emesis in all probability being due to both a local irritation of the peripheral sensory nerve endings in the stomach and some slight action on the medulla itself.

The drug also exerts a favorable influence on the bronchial mucous membrane, acting as a sedative expectorant, and is frequently employed as a component of cough mixtures. Ipecac, though not very prompt in its action, is a safe and reliable emetic. It is especially useful in children, with whom it is extensively used to *expel irritant material from the stomach.*

The drug has been empirically used for a variety of purposes other than that of an emetic and expectorant. It is used as an antiemetic, antidysenteric, diaphoretic, etc. Recently ipecac, or its alkaloid emetin, has gained a wide reputation in *amebic dysentery* and all other diseases due to *pathogenic amebas*. It has been claimed that *pyorrhea alveolaris* is caused by pathogenic amebas; and, on this basis, emetin is recommended in the treatment of this disease (which see, p. 436). The drug may be administered in the form of alcresta ipecac tablets.

ANTIMONII ET POTASSII TARTRAS—U.S.P.

(Antimony and Potassium Tartrate; Tartar Emetic; $2K(SbO)C_4H_4O_6.H_2O$.)

Tartar emetic occurs in the form of colorless, transparent crystals or as a white granular powder, odorless, and having a sweetish, metallic taste; soluble in 12 parts of water, and practically insoluble in alcohol. The average dose as an emetic is 1 gr. (0.06 Gm.); as an expectorant, 1/12 gr. (0.005 Gm.). The official preparations are:

Mistura Glycyrrhizæ Composa, U.S.P. (contains Extract of Glycyrrhiza, 3; Antimony and Potassium Tartrate, 0.024; Syrup, 5; Acacia, 3; Camphorated Tincture of Opium, 12; Spirit of Nitrous Ether, 3; Water to make 100). *Dose*, 2½ fl. dr. (10.0 mils).

Syrupus Scillæ Compositus, U.S.P. (contains Tartar Emetic, 2; Squill, Senega, Sugar, and Water to make 1,000). *Dose*, 5–60 min. (0.3–4.0 mils).

Digitized by Google

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Tartar emetic is an irritant and acts as an emetic and expectorant. The drug is fast falling into disuse in medical practice, having been displaced largely by other drugs which are more prompt in their action and less depressing. There is little need of the drug in dental therapeutics, but it has been considered here because of its past record as an emetic, sedative expectorant, diaphoretic, and counterirritant.

Tepid water in large quantities generally acts as an emetic.

EXPECTORANTS

Expectorants are drugs which modify the secretion of mucus from the mucous membrane of the air-passages, affect its quantity, and facilitate its expulsion. The exact mode of their action is not well understood. Those that promote secretion and render it less viscid in character, and, therefore, more easily removed, are generally called *sedative expectorants*. Examples of this class are:

Ipecac.*	Tartar Emetic.*
Apomorphin.*	Potassium Citrate.*

Those drugs which stimulate the mucous membrane of the respiratory tract and lessen the quantity of sputum are termed *stimulant expectorants*. The most important are:

Ammonium Chlorid.	Squill.
Eucalyptus (Eucalyptol).*	Benzoic Acid.*
Oil of Myrtle.	

AMMONII CHLORIDUM—U.S.P.

(Ammonium Chlorid; Sal Ammoniac; NH_4Cl.)

Ammonium chlorid occurs as a white crystalline powder, odorless, and having a cooling, saline taste; soluble in 2.6 parts of water and in 100 parts of alcohol. The drug has the peculiar physical property of passing, when heated, directly from the solid to the gaseous state, and on cooling, from the gaseous directly to the solid state. In other words, it differs from most salts in that it cannot be liquefied by heat. The average dose is 5 gr. (0.3 Gm.). The following preparation is official:

> Trochisci Ammonii Chloridi, U.S.P. (each contains Ammonium Chlorid, 1½ gr. 0.1 Gm.; Extract of Licorice, 3 gr. 0.2 Gm.; with Tragacanth, Sugar, and Syrup of Tolu). *Dose*, 1–2 troches.

Digitized by Google

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—Administered in moderate doses by the mouth, ammonium chlorid acts chiefly as a stimulant to the mucous membrane of the respiratory tract and perhaps, also, of the stomach and bowel. It increases the quantity and renders less viscid the mucous secretion. The drug for the most part is eliminated in the urine unchanged.

Ammonium chlorid is extensively employed as a stimulant expectorant in *acute bronchial catarrh, subacute and chronic pharyngitis*, etc.

Incompatibles.—The drug is incompatible with alkalies, mineral acids, tartaric acid, and the soluble salts of silver and lead.

SCILLA—U.S.P.

(Squill.)

Squill is the *bulb* of *Urginea maritima*, a perennial herb, growing on the shores of the Mediterranean Sea. It is supposed to contain several active principles, no one of which, when isolated, fully represents the activity of the crude drug. The average dose is 1½ gr. (0.1 Gm.). The official preparations are:

Acetum Scillæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 10–30 min. (0.6–2.0 mils).
Tinctura Scillæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 5–20 min. (0.3–1.3 mils).
Fluidextractum Scillæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–3 min. (0.06–0.2 mil).
Syrupus Scillæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½–1 fl. dr. (2.0–4.0 mils).
Syrupus Scillæ Compositus, U.S.P. (contains fluid extract of Squill, 8 per cent.; fluid extract of Senega, 8 per cent.; Tartar Emetic, 2 per cent.). *Dose*, 10–60 min. (0.6–4.0 mils).

Physiologic Action and Therapeutics.—The action of squill somewhat resembles that of digitalis, though it is much less powerful. It also acts as a stimulant expectorant and a diuretic. The syrup of squill is a common component of cough mixtures.

OLEUM MYRTI (Nonofficial)

(Oil of Myrtle; Myrtol.)

Oil of myrtle is a greenish-yellow, volatile oil, distilled from the *leaves* and *flowers* of *Myrtus communis*, the common European myrtle. Its properties are almost identical with those of eucalyptol. The average dose is 5 min. (0.3 mil). It may be employed as a stimulant expectorant in cases of *cold in the head*. A few minims may be added to a basin of hot water and the fumes inhaled. It may also be

Digitized by Google

taken internally by placing 2–3 min. (0.13–0.2 mil) of the oil on a blank sugar tablet or a piece of loaf-sugar. Harlan recommends the drug for the treatment of *gangrenous pulps*, but it is of doubtful value, other remedies for this purpose having completely displaced the essential oils.

SIALOGOGUES

Sialogogues are drugs or remedies which stimulate the salivary and buccal mucous glands, increasing the secretion and flow of saliva and buccal mucus. There are many diseases and conditions which change the character and flow of the mouth secretions. Among the men who have experimented with mouth secretions in relation to health and disease may be mentioned Black, Miller, Williams, Michaels, Kirk, Acre, Hinkins, Cook, Bunting, and Howe. Michaels claims that the saliva is pathognomonic of certain diseases, the diagnosis being made by physical and chemic examinations of the saliva. Cook has shown that astringent mouth-washes interfere for hours with the action of ptyalin upon starchy food. The mixed saliva is normally alkaline in reaction. The author, collaborating with Hinkins and Cook, spent considerable time investigating the cause of erosion. One point established beyond doubt, which has also been mentioned by other investigators, was that the saliva in typical cases of erosion is *always acid*. Hinkins has repeatedly called attention to the fact that simply holding the mouth open for any length of time, as in dental operations where the rubber dam is used, materially affects the character and flow of saliva. Chewing a piece of clean wood, rubber, and even gum or tobacco, augments the flow of saliva, as does also the smell of victuals. Many drugs also produce a sialogogue effect, the most important of which have been discussed under other headings. They are:

Pilocarpus (Jaborandi).*	Potassium Chlorate.*
Mercurials.*	Echafolta.*
Iodin Compounds.*	Tobacco.*
Acetic Acid.*	

To collect saliva for experimental purposes almost any clean substance may be chewed; the mere movements of the jaws stimulate the glands. Another means is to place the tongue on the roof of the mouth and inhale dilute acetic acid through the mouth. This stimulates the secretion especially from the sublingual gland.

The rôle played by the saliva in mouth diseases is by no means settled, and this field offers an excellent opportunity for further investigation to those scientifically inclined.

Digitized by Google

CARMINATIVES

Carminatives are drugs that aid in the expulsion of gas from the stomach or intestines. The gas found in the alimentary canal comes from various sources: it may have been swallowed with the food, formed by the action of acid upon the carbonates contained in the food and saliva, or it may be generated through fermentation or putrefaction of the stomach contents; fermentation being the most common cause of abnormal accumulation of gas. Although drugs of this class are chiefly valuable in the expulsion of gas already formed, they also prevent, in greater or less degree, the formation of flatus, for, by quickening the gastric circulation, they doubtless stimulate glandular activity, thus acting as stomachics by aiding digestion and lessening fermentation. Carminatives are frequently combined with purgative drugs; here they act as *correctives* by modifying or correcting the griping pain which purgatives are likely to induce when given alone.

Most of the drugs belonging to this class are aromatics containing essential oils as their chief active constituent. Alcohol, ether, and chloroform are the exceptions. The principal carminatives are:

Capsicum.*	Cardamom.	Caraway.
Pepper.	Cloves.*	Fennel.
Nutmeg.	Cinnamon.*	Coriander.
Ginger.	Anise.	Mustard.*
Peppermint.*	Allspice.	Alcohol.*
Spearmint.	Sassafras.	Ether.*
	Chloroform.*	

PIPER—U.S.P.

(Black Pepper.)

Black pepper is the *unripe fruit* of *Piper nigrum*, a climbing vine cultivated in the East Indies. It contains a crystalline neutral principle, *piperin*, a volatile oil, and a pungent resin. The average dose of ground pepper is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.).

The only official preparation follows:

Oleoresina Piperis, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½–2 min. (0.03–0.1 mil).

Pepper is a carminative and is largely used as a condiment.

MYRISTICA—U.S.P.

(Nutmeg.)

Nutmeg is the *seed* of *Myristica fragrans*, an evergreen tree growing in the Molucca Islands and other East India islands. It con-

Digitized by Google

tains a volatile oil, to which its aromatic properties are due, also a fixed oil. The average dose is 8 gr. (0.5 Gm.). The volatile oil is official.

Oleum Myristicæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–5 min. (0.06–0.3 mil).

Nutmeg is used as a condiment. It also enters as an aromatic into many of the official aromatic and compound preparations.

Mace is the ground fleshy covering (arillode) of nutmeg. It is used as a condiment.

ZINGIBER—U.S.P.

(Ginger.)

Ginger is the *ground rhizome* of *Zingiber officinale*, a perennial herb which grows in tropical countries. It contains a volatile oil, having the odor of ginger, and a viscid resinous principle, having a hot, pungent taste. The average dose is 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.).

The following preparations are official:

Tinctura Zingiberis, U.S.P. *Dose*, 20–60 min. (1.3–4.0 mils).
Fluidextractum Zingiberis, U.S.P. *Dose*, 10–30 min. (0.6–2.0 mils).
Syrupus Zingiberis, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½–4 fl. dr. (2.0–15.0 mils).
Oleoresina Zingiberis, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½–2 min. (0.03–0.13 mil).

Ginger is used as a carminative and as a flavoring agent. It is also a constituent of the official compound powder of rhubarb, aromatic powder, and aromatic fluid extract.

MENTHA VIRIDIS—U.S.P.

(Spearmint.)

Spearmint is the *leaves* and *tops* of *Mentha spicata*, a perennial herb growing wild in the woods and along the roadsides of Europe and North America. Its official preparations are:

Oleum Menthæ Viridis, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–5 min. (0.06–0.3 mil).
Spiritus Menthæ Viridis, U.S.P. *Dose*, 10–30 min. (0.6–2.0 mils).
Aqua Menthæ Viridis, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–4 fl. dr. (4.0–15.0 mils).

Therapeutically, spearmint is almost equivalent to peppermint, and is used for practically the same purpose.

CARDAMOMI SEMEN—U.S.P.

(Cardamom Seed.)

Cardamom seed is the *dried seed* of *Elettaria Cardamomum*, a perennial herb, cultivated in the mountainous portions of India.

Digitized by Google

Its active principle is a volatile oil, of which it contains about 5 per cent. The official preparations are:

Tinctura Cardamomi, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–2 fl. dr. (4.0–8.0 mils).
Tinctura Cardamomi Composita, U.S.P. (contains also Cinnamon, Caraway, Cochineal, and Glycerin). *Dose*, 1–2 fl. dr. (4.0–8.0 mils).
Pulvis Aromaticus, U.S.P. Aromatic Powder (contains Cardamom Seed, Ginger, Cinnamon, and Nutmeg). *Dose*, 10–30 gr. (0.6–2.0 Gm.).

Cardamom seed also enters into several of the official aromatic and compound preparations. It is used as a flavoring agent and carminative.

ANISUM—U.S.P.

(Anise.)

Anise is the *small fruit* of *Pimpinella Anisum*, a small plant cultivated in Southern Europe and North America. It contains a volatile oil, having the characteristic odor of the drug, and a sweetish, aromatic taste. Its preparations follow:

Oleum Anici, U.S.P. *Dose*, 2–5 min. (0.13–0.3 mil).
Spiritus Anici, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–2 fl. dr. (4.0–8.0 mils).
Aqua Anici, U.S.P. *Dose*, 2–8 fl. dr. (8.0–30.0 mils).

The drug also enters into many of the official aromatic and compound preparations. It is used chiefly as a flavoring agent.

PIMENTA (Nonofficial)

(Allspice.)

Allspice is the *nearly ripe fruit* of *Pimenta officinalis*, an evergreen tree growing in the West Indies and South America. It contains a volatile oil, the active constituent of which is *eugenol*. The oil only is official, and is a constituent of spirit myrica, or bay-rum.

Oleum Pimentæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–5 min. (0.06–0.3 mil).

SASSAFRAS—U.S.P.

Sassafras is the *bark* of the *root* of *Sassafras variifolium*, a shrubby tree growing in the eastern and central parts of North America. The pith was formerly official (*Sassafras medulla, U.S.P. VIII*). It contains an aromatic, fragrant, volatile oil and tannic acid.

The official preparation is:

Digitized by Google

Oleum Sassafras, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–5 min. (0.06–0.3 mil).
Mucilago Sassafras Medullæ, U.S.P. VIII (2 per cent.).
Dose, 1–8 fl. dr. (4.0–30.0 mils).

Sassafras oil also enters into the official compound fluid extract of sarsaparilla and compound syrup of sarsaparilla. The mucilage is an excellent demulcent in cases of *drug poisoning*, and a tea made by steeping the bark of the root is extensively used by the lay American as a "spring tonic."

CARUM—U.S.P.

(Caraway.)

Caraway is the *fruit* of *Carum Carvi*, a native herb of Asia, but cultivated in Europe and North America. Its active constituent is a volatile oil. Caraway is used as a flavoring agent, and as such it enters into the official compound tincture of cardamom and compound spirit of juniper. The oil is official:

Oleum Cari, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–5 min. (0.06–0.3 mil).

FŒNICULUM—U.S.P.

(Fennel.)

Fennel is the *fruit* of *Fœniculum vulgare*, a plant growing chiefly in Southern Europe. It contains an aromatic oil. The official preparations are:

Oleum Fœniculi, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–5 min. (0.06–0.3 mil).
Aqua Fœniculi, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–8 fl. dr. (4.0–30.0 mils).

As a flavoring agent fennel enters into compound licorice powder, compound spirit of juniper, and compound infusion of senna.

CORIANDRUM—U.S.P.

(Coriander.)

Coriander is the *fruit* of *Coriandrum sativum*, an herb grown in all parts of Europe and the United States. It contains a volatile oil, which is official.

Oleum Coriandri, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–5 min. (0.06–0.3 mil).

The oil is used as a flavoring agent, and as such it enters into the syrup of senna and compound spirit of orange.

FLAVORING AGENTS

Flavoring agents are used to mask the taste of nauseous drugs, to flavor foods, drinks, etc. The chief flavoring agents are:

Digitized by Google

Lemon.	Rose.
Orange.	Sugar and Sugar of Milk.
Vanilla.	Honey.*
Lavender.	Saccharin.
Sarsaparilla.*	Glucose.

Persio (Cudbear).

LIMON (Nonofficial)

(Lemon.)

Lemon is the *ripe fruit* of *Citrus medica Limonum*, a tree cultivated in most semitropical countries. The rind contains a volatile oil, and the juice, citric acid. The following preparations are official:

Limonis Cortex, U.S.P. (Fresh Rind).
Limonis Succus, U.S.P. VIII (Juice). *Dose*, 1–4 fl. oz. (30.0–120.0 mils).
Tinctura Limonis Corticis, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½–1 fl. dr. (2.0–4.0 mils).
Oleum Limonis, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–5 min. (0.06–0.3 mil).
Acidum Citricum, U.S.P. *Dose*, 5–20 gr. (0.3–1.3 Gm.).
Syrupus Acidi Citrici, U.S.P. (1 per cent.). *Dose*, 1–4 fl. dr. (4.0–15.0 mils).

The oil also enters into other official preparations as a flavoring agent. Lemon juice has been used in *scurvy*, both as a preventive and curative agent. In the form of cold lemonade it makes a pleasant refrigerant drink. Hot lemonade is a useful remedy for *colds*. Both the fresh rind and juice are used extensively as flavoring agents.

AURANTIUM (Nonofficial)

(Orange.)

There are two varieties of **orange**: Sweet orange, *Citrus aurantium*, and bitter orange, *Citrus vulgaris*. The following preparations are official:

Aurantii Amari Cortex, U.S.P. *Dose*, 15–30 gr. (1.0–2.0 Gm.).
Fluidextractum Aurantii Amari, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½–1 fl. dr. (2.0–4.0 mils).
Tinctura Aurantii Amari, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–2 fl. dr. (4.0–8.0 mils).
Aqua Aurantii Florum, U.S.P. *Dose*, indefinite.
Aqua Aurantii Florum Fortior, U.S.P.
Syrupus Aurantii Florum, U.S.P. *Dose*, indefinite.
Auranti Dulcis Cortex, U.S.P. *Dose*, 15–30 gr. (1.0–2.0 Gm.).
Tinctura Aurantii Dulcis, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–2 fl. dr. (4.0–8.0 mils).

Digitized by Google

Syrupus Aurantii, U.S.P. *Dose*, indefinite.
Oleum Aurantii Cortex, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–5 min. (0.06–0.3 mils).
Syrupus Aurantii Compositus, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–4 fl. dr. (4.0–15.0 mils).
Elixir Aromaticum, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–4 fl. dr. (4.0–15.0 mils).

Both varieties of orange are used almost exclusively as flavoring agents.

VANILLA (Nonofficial)

Vanilla is the *fruit* of *Vanilla planifolia*, a perennial climbing plant, native of the West Indies and tropical America. Its characteristic odorous principle is *vanillin*. The tincture was official:

Tinctura Vanillæ, U.S.P. VIII (10 per cent.). *Dose*, a few minims, according to the strength of flavor desired.

Vanilla is employed chiefly as a perfume and as a flavoring agent.

LAVANDULA (Nonofficial)

(Lavender.)

Lavender is the *flowers* of *Lavandula officinalis*, a native shrub of Southern Europe. It contains a fragrant volatile oil, tannic acid, and resin. The official preparations are:

Oleum Lavandulæ Florum, U.S.P. *Dose*, 1–5 min. (0.06–0.3 mil).
Spiritus Lavandulæ, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½–1 fl. dr. (2.0–4.0 mils).
Tinctura Lavandulæ Composita, U.S.P. *Dose*, ½–1 fl. dr. (2.0–4.0 mils).

The compound tincture is also an ingredient of Fowler's solution. The preparations of the drug are used only for their agreeable flavor.

ROSA GALLICA—U.S.P.

(Red Rose.)

Red rose is the *dried petals* of *Rosa gallica*, a species of red rose cultivated extensively in Western Asia and Southern Europe. It contains a volatile oil, tannic acid, sugar, and mucilage. The formerly official oil of rose is distilled from the fresh flowers of the Damascus rose (*Rosa damascena*.) The following are its official preparations:

Digitized by Google

Fluidextractum Rosæ, U.S.P.
Mel Rosæ, U.S.P. (12.5 per cent. of the fluid extract in clarified Honey).
Aqua Rosæ Fortior, U.S.P. (Water saturated with Oil of Rose).
Aqua Rosæ, U.S.P. (equal parts of Stronger Rose Water and Distilled Water).

Preparations of rose also enter into several official preparations as flavoring agents. The ointment of rose water (cold cream) makes an excellent application for the hands and face. A splendid lotion for the hands is: Phenol (95 per cent.) 6 min. (0.36 mil); borax, ½ dr (2.0 gm.); rose water and glycerin, of each 1½ fl. oz. (45.0 mils).

SACCHARUM—U.S.P. AND SACCHARUM LACTIS—U.S.P.

(Cane-sugar; Sugar and Sugar of Milk; Lactose.)

Cane-sugar is refined from *sugar-cane, Saccharum officinarum,* from various species of *broom-corn, Sorghum,* and from one or more varieties of *sugar-beet, Beta vulgaris.* A saturated solution is official as:

Syrupus, U.S.P. (Simple Syrup).

Sugar enters as a flavoring agent, preservative, vehicle, or excipient into many official compound preparations. Sugar of milk is the sugar obtained from the whey of cow's milk. It is harder, less soluble, and less sweet than ordinary sugar, and is largely used as a diluent for powders, as in Dover's powder.

BENZOSULPHINIDUM—U.S.P.

(Benzosulphinid; Saccharin)

Saccharin is obtained from the *coal-tar* derivative, *toluene.* It occurs in a light, white, crystalline powder, is odorless, and possesses 500 times the sweetening power of cane-sugar. It is soluble in 290 parts of water, more so in alcohol or glycerin, and readily soluble in alkaline solutions.

Saccharin is used as a flavoring agent for mouth-washes, tooth-pastes, tooth-powders, etc. Internally, in large doses, it retards digestion and, therefore, metabolism. The average dose is 3 gr. (0.2 Gm.).

Digitized by Google

GLUCOSUM—U.S.P.

(Glucose; Syrupy Glucose.)

Glucose is a product obtained by the incomplete hydrolysis of starch, and consists chiefly of *dextrose* and *dextrins*. It is a colorless or slightly colored, thick, syrupy liquid; odorless and has a sweet taste; freely soluble in water, and sparingly soluble in alcohol. Glucose is used as a flavoring agent; but should not enter as such into dentifrices, as it is a fermentable sugar and its fermentation in the mouth produces the acid (lactic) which causes *caries of the teeth*.

PERSIO (Nonofficial)

(Cudbear.)

Cudbear occurs as a purplish-red powder prepared from species of *Rocella* De Candolle, or other lichens. The drug is not used as a flavoring agent, but solutions of it are employed extensively for coloring purposes. An aqueous or alcoholic preparation of cudbear is of a deep red color which is rendered lighter in tint by the addition of acids and changed to purplish red on the addition of alkalies. There are no official preparations, but the National Formulary gives directions for the preparation of a *tincture* and *compound tincture of cudbear*. These are the preparations used for coloring solutions of various kinds (mouth-washes, etc.), as well as the powdered cudbear itself.

Digitized by Google

BIOLOGIC PRODUCTS

The advanced therapy of many *infectious diseases* includes the intelligent use of *biologic products*. Many of the systemic diseases of this character are known to have a direct relation to diseased mouth and throat conditions (teeth and tonsils). It is, therefore, important that the student and practitioner of dentistry understand the principles upon which this therapy is based; and be familiar with the nature and character, as well as the indications and uses of the products obtained from Biologic Laboratories.

An infectious disease is one caused by the invasion of micro-organisms into the tissues of an animal (or plant). The invading germ gains admission into the body and tissues in various ways; through the air into the respiratory passages (mouth, nose, throat and lungs); through food and water into the digestive tract (stomach and intestines); through cuts and abrasions of the skin and mucous membranes (inflamed and bleeding gums); through the canals of pulpless teeth; and through direct injection into the blood stream.

When these bacteria have thus gained entrance into the tissues, where they find the proper food, moisture and temperature necessary to their growth, they multiply and proliferate rapidly; and during this growth they produce substances known as **Toxins,** which are poisons to the tissues of the body. Sometimes these poisons remain largely within the cell body of the bacteria and are given off at the death of the germ. Such poisons are called *intracellular toxins*. An example is the *staphylococcus pyogenes aureus*, the germ which causes boils. In other instances the poisons are excreted by the bacteria into the tissues or blood stream and may be thus carried to various parts of the body, attacking those parts which are subnormal and have the least resistance. Poisons of this kind are called *extracellular toxins*. Examples of such germs are the *bacillus diphtheriæ* and *bacillus tetani*, which cause, respectively, diphtheria and tetanus (lock-jaw). The *streptococcus viridans* also belongs to this class of germs, and is of special interest to dentists for the reason that the poisons are elaborated in pyorrheal pockets about the teeth and in dental granulomas and dento-alveolar abscesses in the periapical region. The poisons being of the extracellular variety are continually formed and constantly charging the blood stream as long as the infec-

Digitized by Google

tion in these areas is present. Thus may follow diseases of the joints (arthritis), heart (endocarditis), kidneys (nephritis), etc. It will be observed then how absolutely essential it is for the dentist to eradicate all infections about the teeth.

Nature is constantly on the alert to protect the body against the invasion of these germs and their poisons. Stimulated by the bacterial toxins, the body tissues react and produce substances known as **Antitoxins** and **Antibodies.** The antitoxins are chemic substances which destroy the poisonous nature of the toxins. The antibodies are substances which antagonize the bacteria themselves, actually killing and destroying them, or preventing their growth and proliferation.

The manufacture and use of biologic products are based upon these principles; and, before considering the subject further, it is well that the student should understand what is meant by the term **Immunity.** This is recognized as the ability or power which enables certain individuals to resist disease. There are two kinds of immunity—*natural* and *acquired.* Natural immunity is that which exists in a normal, healthy animal or human body. In this case the tissues of such bodies contain or produce substances which are antagonistic to the pathologic bacteria. Hence these germs cannot grow in the body and no disease results. Acquired immunity is the resistance to a disease which exists either after an attack of that disease, or after inoculation with some specific culture, vaccine, antitoxin or serum. An example of the first is a person who has had smallpox; an example of the second is a person who has been vaccinated with smallpox virus—both are immune to smallpox, and the immunity has been acquired.

This brings us to a discussion of biologic products, which may be divided into at least three general classes—Antitoxins, Serums and Vaccines.

ANTITOXINS

Antitoxins are among the simplest and most useful of the antibodies. As the name implies, they antagonize toxins. Though toxins may be excreted by plants other than the bacteria and some animals, *e.g.*, in snake venoms, the typical toxins are the soluble poisons thrown off by diphtheria and tetanus bacilli.

Diphtheria and tetanus are dangerous diseases almost entirely because of the action of these toxins and, conversely, their prevention and cure, when the organisms have once gained entrance to the body, depends on the work of the particular antitoxin.

Digitized by Google

Though the presence of the toxin stimulates the body to produce antitoxin, this active immunity may not be enough to save life; and, at any rate, assistance by the injection of antitoxin, ready made in the blood-serum of another animal, hastens the cure or may prevent the disease.

The antitoxins for both diphtheria and tetanus are official: Serum Antidiphthericum, U.S.P. and Serum Antitetanicum, U.S.P. These antitoxins are obtained from the coagulated blood of the horse, or other large domestic animal which has been properly immunized against the toxin produced by the germ causing the disease. Diphtheria and tetanus are not dental diseases, nor have they any direct relation to diseased mouth conditions; therefore, the dentist will not be called upon to administer the commercial antitoxins prepared for these diseases.

SERUMS

Serums are more complex in action and much less satisfactory for therapeutic purposes than are the antitoxins. With these products the contained antibodies are expected to resist the bacteria themselves—not simply neutralize their toxins, as is the case with antitoxins. In the manufacture of serums proper, horses are immunized by inoculation first, with dead cultures, and, secondarily, with increasing doses of living culture of the specific bacteria, until their blood contains substances that directly or indirectly destroy either the life or the activity of these specific bacteria. The substances in the immune serum that destroy the life or the activity of the specific germ are collectively spoken of as *antibodies*. They have never been isolated as specific chemic substances, but their presence in the serum is assumed from their definite effects on bacteria. The names given to the more important of these antibodies are *bacteriolysins*, *bacteriotropins*, *opsonins* and *agglutinins*. Of these antibacterial substances, the bacteriolysins are those which both kill and dissolve the bacteria, and are considered to be the antibacterial bodies proper. For example, take a serum from an animal immunized against the streptococcus germ, and put into it some living streptococci; after a brief period of incubation, an examination will show that the streptococci are not only killed but have been dissolved as well. This phenomenon is called *bacteriolysis*.

Aside from the direct killing of the bacteria by the blood serum, the invaders may be taken up by the leukocytes—though not, as a rule, until they have been acted upon by other substances in the

Digitized by Google

serum, mentioned above as bacteriotropins and opsonins, according to whether they resist moderate heat or not.

The agglutinins are antibodies which act directly, causing the bacteria to gather in clumps. They are valuable in diagnosis on account of their specificity, but probably have no important action in protecting the human organism from an infection.

Among the more important antibacterial serums may be mentioned *antistreptococcus serum*, *antistaphylococcus serum*, and *antipneumococcus serum*.

VACCINES

Vaccines or bacterins are suspensions of killed bacteria in physiologic salt solution, usually with the addition of some preservative such as 0.4 per cent. of cresol (tricresol) or 0.5 per cent. of phenol. An *autogenous vaccine* is one made from the bacteria infecting the person immunized. A *stock vaccine* is one made from standard cultures of the germ. A *mixed vaccine* is one prepared from more than one species of bacteria.

The use of bacterial vaccines is associated with the development of the opsonic theory; but it is claimed by those in authority that the opsonic index as a measure of immunity is open to question. It may be said that bacterial vaccines are of particular value in localized affections, especially those due to infection by the staphylococcus and streptococcus germs. Dental literature to-day is replete with articles on the relation of focal infection to systemic disease. It has been definitely shown by Murphy, Billings, Rosenow, Rhein, Grieves, Hartzell, Price, and others that infections about the teeth, especially from dental granulomas and dentoalveolar abscesses, may result in systemic diseases involving the joints, heart, kidneys, stomach, and other tissues and organs. By a series of experiments, Gilmer, Moody, and others, have found that the predominating organism in conditions resulting from a gangrenous pulp, therefore the group active in bringing about the decomposition, is a streptococcus. The use of antistreptococcus vaccines in the treatment of *chronic arthritis* and *other affections* resulting from a streptococcus infection about the teeth or tonsils has been reported by various authorities as affording much relief and in many cases effecting a permanent cure. It is understood that eradication of the foci of infection is of the first and prime importance.

Among the more important bacterial vaccines may be mentioned *streptococcus vaccine*, *typhoid vaccine*, and *smallpox vaccine*.

Digitized by Google

In the discussion of biologic products and their uses, the author has made no attempt here to go into the subject in detail. He has endeavored to give only the principles underlying the therapy, which as yet is more or less speculative.

REMEDIES OTHER THAN DRUGS

The object sought in all therapeutics is simply to assist Nature in her efforts to ward off disease and to restore an abnormal to a normal condition. In dental therapeutics this gives to the resourceful dentist a wide range of activity. There are several means of combating disease other than by the use of drugs. Those deserving mention will briefly be discussed here. They are:

Heat.	Electricity.
Cold.	Massage.
Compressed Air.	Suction.
Light.	Suggestion.

HEAT

Heat is a useful therapeutic agent. It is largely employed locally in dentistry, and is utilized in both the dry and moist forms. Dry heat is applied by means of hot cloths, bran-bags, water-bags or water-bottles, or superheated dry air. Moist heat may be applied by means of fomentations, poultices, or the hot-water syringe. Hot-water baths are also applicable to certain limited portions of the body, as the feet, and are used for counterirritant purposes. Locally applied, heat allays irritation of the peripheral sensory nerves, dilates the cutaneous vessels, increases perspiration, and, like cold and counterirritation, doubtless exerts a favorable influence on the subjacent structures.

The general application of heat may be obtained by means of the hot-water bath, hot pack, hot-vapor bath, or hot blankets. In the Russian bath steam replaces the hot-dry air of the Turkish bath. The first effect of the general application of heat is free perspiration from dilatation of the cutaneous vessels.

Moist external heat is used for a variety of diseases, especially *subacute* and *chronic rheumatism*. Dry external heat may be employed in many cases of *drug poisoning*, one symptom of which is the characteristic cold, clammy sweat.

Moist heat is used locally in *pericementitis*, *in acute alveolar abscesses* accompanied by pain and swelling, and many other dental conditions. Dry heat is chiefly used in dentistry for *drying tooth-structure* and *obtunding sensitive dentin*. For this purpose many

Digitized by Google

apparatuses have been devised for heating dry air. For root-canal work properly-shaped wire may be heated and used.

Heat is also employed to the extent of actual destruction of tissue in *vesication* and *cauterization*. The thermocautery and galvanocautery are exceedingly valuable as counterirritant, revulsive, and hemostatic measures.

Thermometric Scale.—For determining the temperature, the Fahrenheit scale is in ordinary use in America and England; the Centigrade is used on the European Continent; the latter scale is also largely used in the sciences. The freezing-point of water with the Fahrenheit scale is 32° above zero; with the Centigrade scale it is at zero. The boiling point of water with the Fahrenheit scale is 212°. This minus the 32° equals 180° above zero. The boiling-point of water with the Centigrade scale is 100°. Therefore, stated in terms of proportion: 100°C.:180°F.::5:9, hence the following simple rules for converting the degrees of one scale into the other.

To Convert Degrees of the Fahrenheit Scale into those of Centigrade: If the temperature be above the freezing-point (32°), subtract 32; if it be below the freezing-point, subtract the number from 32, algebraically; then multiply the remainder by 5 and divide by 9.

To Convert Degrees of the Centigrade Scale into those of Fahrenheit: Multiply the number of the former by 9 and divide by 5; if the temperature be above the freezing-point (0°), add 32; if it be below the freezing-point, subtract the result from 32, algebraically.

COLD

Cold, like heat, may be used either locally or generally as a therapeutic agent. It is the local application of the remedy with which dentists are mostly concerned. It may be locally applied by means of cloths wrung out of iced water, an ice-bag, an ice-poultice, etc. As cold is but a lesser degree of heat, the latter may be abstracted and cold produced by spraying the part with a highly volatile liquid, like ethyl chlorid, ether, etc.

Local applications of cold abstract heat from the part, lessen the sensibility of the peripheral nerve-endings, cause constriction of the blood-vessels traversing the tissues exposed to the cold, and affect, reflexly, the vascularity of the structures subjacent to the site of application.

The general application of cold to the body may be accomplished in several ways: By a cold-water bath, cold sponge-bath, cold pack, or the cold douche. When followed by vigorous rubbing with a Turkish towel, cold bathing exerts a powerful tonic effect. It sharpens the

Digitized by Google

appetite, aids digestion, promotes metabolism, and greatly favors the elimination of waste products.

Cold is employed for a variety of purposes in the treatment of disease. In dentistry it is used as a counterirritant in *acute alveolar abscess*, in *pericementitis*, *neuralgia*, and other conditions. As a refrigerant local anesthetic, the effect of cold may be obtained by using ether, combinations containing it, or ethyl chlorid, as a spray. In this manner cold is used in *lancing abscesses*, *obtunding sensitive dentin*, *extracting loose teeth*, *etc.*

COMPRESSED AIR

Compressed air is one of the most convenient agents in the modern dental office. While in itself it may not be considered a therapeutic agent, except as a vehicle for applying heat or cold, it is, nevertheless, a valuable adjunct to the use of many such agents. For *drying a sensitive cavity*, *clearing away the "chips,"* and *lessening the pain of drilling*, it has no equal (see p. 286). In *treating pyorrhea alveolaris* it serves a useful purpose. By its employment the pocket may be kept dry sufficiently long for the operator to see in many cases whether or not the deposits have been thoroughly removed. It may be used as the force for spraying solutions all through the operation; and when the teeth are scaled and polished the field may be kept dry by the use of compressed air while the astringent remedy is applied. The resourceful dentist will find many uses for this agent.

LIGHT

Light is a form of energy which has recently been brought forth as having a peculiarly favorable effect upon diseased tissues of the body, and is employed to-day for a variety of purposes in therapeutics, both general and dental. The blue light, lucodescent light, and other forms are used. The mode of action is not well understood. Extravagant claims are being made for the lucodescent light, but it is thought by many that its real virtue lies in the soft penetrating heat produced. It may prove to be a practical means of applying heat, which has long been recognized as a therapeutic agent. Reliable evidence has thus far been lacking to prove that light has an action upon the tissues other than through the heat generated. The blue light has been suggested for *obtunding sensitive dentin*, and is obtained in one way by passing the ray through blue glass. A blue bulb (16 or 32 c. p.) is used on an ordinary electric socket. The room is darkened and the patient requested to look at the light which is held from

Digitized by Google

6 in. to 1 ft. from the eyes. Whether the light acts locally or affects the vision and thus the general nervous system has yet to be determined. The author's experience with light thus far has not been encouraging. It is true, however, that light differs in effect from heat, though both come from the same heated body. This phenomenon is observed in the action of light on certain chemicals; for example, the silver salts undergo a chemic change when exposed to sunlight or luminously hot bodies. For this reason Black and others have suggested that the tooth-surface treated with silver nitrate be exposed to the sunlight, if possible. The author finds a more practical way of accomplishing the change in the decomposition of the salt by using the small electric mouth-lamp. Light from a small electric mouth-lamp serves almost as a positive means of diagnosing a *dead pulp* in a tooth where the color is practically normal; it also aids materially in confirming the diagnosis of *obscure antrum involvement.*

Carrel, Crile, and others, advocated the use of light or heat from an electric lamp in the treatment of *infected wounds.* It is to be hoped that further investigation may be made with light as a therapeutic agent that its action may be better understood, for it seems to possess sufficient merit to justify such investigation.

Röntgen or X-ray.—The Röntgen or X-ray has been employed extensively in both general and dental therapeutics; in dentistry it is largely used for diagnostic purposes. By means of the *radiograph* (an X-ray picture) the diagnosis of the following conditions may be confirmed:

1. *Fracture of the jaw* and the relation of the fragments.
2. *Fracture and dislocation of the teeth* in the jaw.
3. *Alveolar abscess:* involving more roots than one; in relation to the nasal cavity; in relation to the maxillary antrum (antrum of Highmore).
4. *Impacted and nonerupted teeth;* the cause of neuralgic conditions, and in point of treatment, extraction, etc.
5. *Pulp-nodules, pulp-calcification, and secondary dentin.*
6. *Cementosis.*
7. *Foreign bodies in the maxillary antrum.*
8. *Broken broach in tooth-root.*

There are other conditions in dental practice wherein the X-ray aids materially in arriving at a correct diagnosis. Much credit is due to Kells, Price, Shamburg, Lewis, Raper, and others for developing radiography in dentistry.

The X-ray treatment has been found extremely valuable in *super-*

Digitized by Google

ficial cancer, lupus vulgaris, and *acne*. It has also been employed in the treatment of *pyorrhea alveolaris* with varying results. The powerful actinic properties of this modified form of light are illustrated by the fact that several deaths and many injuries, such as burns, necessitating amputation in some cases, have been traced to long-continued exposure to the X-ray.

The method devised by Finsen of concentrating rays of either sunlight or electric arc-light has met with more or less success in the treatment of *lupus vulgaris* and other skin diseases, but it has not been utilized in dentistry to any extent.

Radium.—The salts of radium (bromid and chlorid) give out three kinds of rays, known as *alpha, beta*, and *gamma* rays. The therapeutic uses of radium rays have been shown to follow practically the same lines as those of the X-ray, but they are generally considered less useful. At the present time the use of radium rays is only in the experimental stage and no positive evidence is at hand to prove their superior value. They require the same careful handling as the X-ray, as they are capable of producing severe burns and even deep-seated ulcers.

ELECTRICITY

Electricity is used as a therapeutic agent in itself, as well as a carrying medium for drugs (cataphoresis), and for purposes of diagnosis and prognosis. Two currents are employed, the *primary*, or *galvanic*, and the *induced*, or *faradic*, the battery furnishing the current being supplied with a *positive* pole, or *anode*, and a *negative* pole, or *cathode*. When the electric current is passed through a muscle it causes contraction of the latter. As a muscle degenerates it gradually loses its electrocontractility, the response to the faradic current disappearing first, while the galvanic current produces contraction for some time longer, until finally no current will produce any effect.

Electricity is used as a muscle and nerve stimulant for a variety of conditions, such as the so-called idiopathic forms of *neuralgia*, in *neurasthenia, hysteria*, etc. In *poisoning by opium and other narcotics* a strong faradic current often affords a means of arousing the patient without increasing the exhaustion or causing any ill effects. Electricity affords almost a positive means of diagnosing a *dead pulp* in a tooth. The suspected tooth is tested by using a dry-cell vibrating coil, which will be explained in Practical Therapeutics (see p. 338). In dental therapeutics, perhaps, the greatest use of electricity has been in connection with a method of treatment called *cataphoresis*.

Digitized by Google

Cataphoresis.—This is a term applied to the process of carrying medicinal agents in solution into the various tissues and organs of the body by means of the electric current. It is used chiefly for *obtunding sensitive dentin* and for the purpose of *anesthetizing the pulp* to facilitate its painless removal (see p. 324).

MASSAGE

Massage is a term used to designate methodical kneading, rubbing, and percussion of the body. The person practising massage is known as a *masseur* (male) or *masseuse* (female). The efficacy of proper massage in many pathologic conditions can no longer be doubted. It acts as a stimulant to both nerve and muscle and to many of the bodily functions, assisting circulation and favoring the elimination of waste-products. Massage is employed in dentistry for both its local and systemic effects in *neuralgia*, *pyorrhea alveolaris*, and *edema resulting from alveolar abscess* and other conditions; in medicine it is used in *rheumatism*, *paralysis*, *synovitis*, *sprains*, and *fractures*. In the "rest cure" of Mitchell it is combined with isolation, rest, forced feeding, and faradism. It is also used for its general effect in *neurasthenia*, *nervous prostration*, and *hysteria*.

SUCTION

The method of producing hyperemia in a part by means of **suction** for the purpose of combating disease is fast gaining recognition in medicine, and it has been employed also, to some extent, in dentistry.

When some noxious influence acts on a more or less limited area of the body, local resistance is manifested by the production of granulation tissue and of hyperemia. Under favorable circumstances the granulation tissue repairs defects resulting from the noxa, or more or less completely encapsulates the irritating agent. Under less favorable circumstances, the irritation being continuous, *e.g.*, in tuberculous infection, granulomata are formed, these granulomata being evidence of defense. If the resisting power is sufficient, the embryonic tissue overcomes the irritant and incloses it in fully developed scar tissue. Stimulation of the production of granulation in and around a tuberculous focus seems to be the therapeutic action of injections of emulsions containing iodoform, bismuth, finely divided carbon, etc., and of sclerogenic injections.

The second method by which Nature resists a noxa (or infection) is by hyperemia. When an irritant, *e.g.*, the staphylococcus, gains

Digitized by Google

access to the tissues, the flow of blood to the part becomes increased, there is exudation of fluids and leucocytes from the vessels into the tissues. The blood serum contains *antibodies* or *antitoxins* which neutralize the chemic products of bacterial activity; bacterial agents which attack the bacteria themselves; opsonins which prepare the bacteria for absorption and destruction by phagocytes, or perhaps act as a sort of appetizer to the phagocytes, and lastly there are the leucocytes which act as phagocytes, directly killing bacteria or, as scavengers, removing the débris of the fight. Thus, while the granulation tissue acts as a sort of passive rôle besieging the invading irritant, the hyperemia directly and actively combats it (Binnie).[1]

The suction method of producing hyperemia cannot but prove efficacious in the treatment of certain forms of *alveolar abscess* and *pyorrhea alveolaris*. It now remains for some ingenious dentist to devise a practical appliance by which dental applications can be made, and much good will surely result from this method of assisting nature in her efforts to restore an abnormal to a normal condition. Keefe has applied suction in the treatment of *pyorrhea alveolaris* with good results by taking an impression in wax, removing and cutting the wax from around the imprints of the teeth, thus creating a space from which, after reinserting the impression, the air can be withdrawn by means of a large bulb or syringe attached to a tube leading through the impression tray and into the space. Other apparatuses for the purpose have also been suggested.

The former application of the *leech*, called *leeching*, was somewhat on this same principle, but the practice, especially in dental therapeutics, is gradually becoming obsolete.

SUGGESTION

Suggestion, as used in therapeutics, is the method of employing *faith* or *confidence* in the treatment of disease. There is no doubt that faith is one of the oldest therapeutic agents known. Guerini[2] refers to the confidence placed in ancient times in the power of the priests to cure the sick, and relates how, to maintain this confidence, the latter gradually resorted to the administration of infusions and decoctions made from fresh herbs, etc. With all peoples, from the earliest centuries to the present day, suggestion has ever been active. Where the disease is purely functional, and not organic, the influence which the mind can be made to exert over the body is a potent factor

[1] Journal of the American Medical Association.
[2] History of Dentistry.

Digitized by Google

in the treatment of the condition, whether this influence be called *psychotherapy, mental-healing, Christian Science,* or by some other name.

Hypnotism is practised by many dentists as a means of preventing pain and controlling patients. Confidence is an important factor in dental practice. The dentist should ever strive to win the confidence of his patients, be they young or old, and when obtained he should constantly guard against abusing it by careless and indifferent methods of operating.

Digitized by Google

METROLOGY

Metrology is the science that treats of the gravitating force of a body, called *weight;* its extension, bulk, or volume, called *measure,* and the relation of these to each other, called *specific gravity.*

In pharmacy, liquids, as a rule, are measured, while solids are weighed; however, certain liquids are required to be weighed. The difference between measuring and weighing some liquids is not great, while with others it is considerable, and if this difference is not considered, varying results frequently follow. This, of course, is due to the different specific gravity of the liquids (*e.g.*, chloroform is heavy while alcohol is light).

The systems of weight in the United States are Avoirdupois and Apothecaries', or Troy.

The United States Pharmacopeia, in all of its editions previous to 1880, adopted the apothecaries' weight as the official standard. In 1880 the *parts-by-weight system* was adopted. During the ten years of its official life this system never became popular, owing to the difficulty of having to weigh all liquids, regardless of their specific gravity. However, its adoption at this time paved the way for the adoption of the *Metric System* in 1890, and again in the eighth and ninth decennial revisions of the U.S.P., in 1900 and 1910. The metric system, therefore, is now the official standard. Nevertheless, although not officially sanctioned, the apothecaries' weight still remains in common use in prescribing medicines, owing to the ease with which it can be subdivided into simple fractions. Throughout this work the apothecaries' weight has been given the preference, the metric equivalent being enclosed in parentheses. One troy ounce, equal to 480 grains, is easily divided by any even number—2, 4, 8, etc. This quality is of great practical value to the dispenser and prescriber alike. For the latter it simplifies prescription-writing because of its easy division; the quantity of a remedy required for administration may be computed with the measure of the solvent very quickly in simple fractions.

The fluid measure used in pharmacy can always be reduced to drams—the equivalent of a teaspoonful. This being the measure ordinarily used in administering medicines, the quantity of a dose is

Digitized by Google

readily ascertained. When, for example, 30 grains of potassium iodid in one fluidounce of compound syrup of sarsaparilla is prescribed, with directions "one teaspoonful at a dose," it is readily computed that the quantity of potassium iodid in each dose must be 3¾ gr., since one fluidounce contains eight fluidrams, or teaspoonfuls. The tables for the various systems of weights and measures are here given:

Troy, or Apothecaries' Weight

20 grains (gr.)	= 1 scruple	(℈)	=	20 grains.
3 scruples	= 1 dram	(ʒ)	=	60 grains.
8 drams	= 1 ounce	(℥)	=	480 grains.
12 ounces	= 1 pound	(lb.)	=	5,760 grains.

Wine, or Apothecaries' Measure

60 minims (♏)	= 1 fluidram	(f ʒ).
8 fluidrams	= 1 fluidounce	(f ℥).
16 fluidounces	= 1 pint	(O).
2 pints	= 1 quart	(qt.).
4 quarts	= 1 gallon (Cong., C.)	= 231 cubic inches.

A fluidounce of water at its maximum density (4°C.) weighs 456.37 grains.

Avoirdupois Weight

1 ounce (av. oz.)	= 437.5 grains.
16 ounces	= 1 av. lb.
1 pound	= 7,000 grains.

The odd number of grains in the avoirdupois ounce, as compared with the round, easily divided number of grains of the apothecaries' ounce, is due to the fact that in the latter system the *unit* is the ounce, and from this the pound was formed. In the former the pound is the *unit*, which divided by 16 gives an ounce containing only 437.5 grains, as against 480 grains in the apothecaries' ounce.

The troy or apothecaries' weight is used in the compounding of prescriptions; the wine or apothecaries' measure is used for measuring liquids in pharmaceutic work, and the avoirdupois weight is in common use generally. The troy and avoirdupois *pounds* are abbreviated in the same manner, lb., but differ in the number of grains contained (5,760, 7,000). The troy pound is rarely used, and the use of the scruple (℈) is practically obsolete; it is just as convenient to write for 20 grains, and there is less likelihood of a mistake, for the abbreviation for scruple may be taken for a carelessly written dram mark.

Digitized by Google

Approximate Fluid Measures

Teaspoonful	= f℥j
Dessertspoonful	= f℥ij
Tablespoonful	= f℥iv
Wineglassful	= f℥ij
Teacupful	= f℥iv

One cubic inch of distilled water, at its maximum density, a temperature of 4°C. *in vacuo*, weighs 252.892 gr., and 231 cubic inches is a measure equivalent to the U. S. gallon. The *gallon* is divided into 8 pints; 1 *pint* into 16 fluidounces; 1 *fluidounce* into 8 fluidrams, and 1 *fluidram* into 60 *minims*. The measure of volume may, therefore, always be compared with the weight of water as above, the standard for comparison, thus:

One cubic inch = 252.892; 252.892 × 231 = 58,418 gr. = 1 gallon.
58,418 ÷ 8 = 7,302 grains = 1 pint.
7,302 ÷ 16 = 456.37 grains = 1 fluidounce.
456.37 ÷ 480 = 0.95 grains = 1 minim.

For all practical purposes a minim may be considered the equivalent of a grain (1 min. = 0.95 gr.). A *drop* is not a minim, although generally considered its equivalent, and the measurement of liquids by drops does not give uniform and accurate results. The size of drops varies greatly with different liquids; also with the same liquids, according to the conditions governing the process of dropping. Among these conditions may be mentioned:

1. The quantity of the liquid contained in the vessel.
2. The size and shape of the lip of the vessel.
3. The rapidity of the dropping.
4. The temperature and character of the liquid.

THE METRIC SYSTEM

The metric system of weights and measures was first introduced in France at the close of the eighteenth century; hence it is often called the French system. Owing to its decimal parts, it is frequently termed also the *decimal* system. This system has gradually displaced all the various systems of weights and measures throughout the European continent, and is the only recognized system in all countries except Russia, Great Britain and her colonies, and the United States of America. For this reason the metric equivalent has been given for quantities throughout this work.

Digitized by Google

Hallberg states that because of its simplicity in construction, regularity and convenience in exact calculations, it has become the only system for scientific work, and is no doubt destined to soon displace the older systems in art and commerce throughout the civilized world. Through our system of decimal numbering—ones, tens, hundreds, thousands, etc.—the *monetary* systems of all civilized nations, except Great Britain, have also become decimal and brought with them the metric system.

The functions of money and weights and measures are so intimately related and interdependent that a decimal system in one practically demands a decimal system in the other. The decimal system of money was one of the privileges accorded the people of the United States by early adoption, but while adopting this great improvement over the old English pound, shilling, and pence, the old English weights and measures, based on the penny-system, were unfortunately retained.

Although the U. S. Government, in 1867, made the metric system obligatory in the three branches of its medical service—the Army, Navy, and Marine Hospital—and also legally permissible throughout the Union, all efforts to make it obligatory in the various States have so far failed. It is difficult to change a long-established custom, but it does seem that there is little excuse for not adopting the metric system generally in the United States with our decimal proportions of the *dollar*, the *dime*, and the *cent*, based upon exactly the same principle.

The metric system is based upon the *meter*, which is the standard *unit* of *linear measure*, being the ten-millionth part of one-fourth of the circumference of the earth (the quadrant). It is, therefore, the one forty-millionth part of the entire circumference of the earth taken around the poles, measured by a *meridian* and not by the *equator*.

One *meter* is equal to 39.37 inches.

The *liter* is the *unit* of *liquid measure*, and is the cube of one-tenth of the meter, or cubic decimeter, and one-thousandth part of it, or the cube of one-hundredth of the meter, is *one cubic centimeter*. The term "cubic centimeter" has been replaced in the U.S.P. IX by the word "mil." The United States Bureau of Standards declared that the term cubic centimeter was a misnomer, there being a slight difference between the thousandth part of a liter and the cubic centimeter, as 1 liter was determined to be equivalent to 1.000027 cubic decimeters. The Committee of Revision decided that the time had come to adopt the word mil, the first three letters of the whole word "milliliter." In this work, therefore, the abbreviation "mil" is used instead of the abbreviation "c.c."

The *unit* of *weight* is the *gramme* or *gram*, the weight of 1 milli-

Digitized by Google

liter of pure water *in vacuo* at its maximum density, and is equivalent to 15.432 grains.

The *unit gram* (written with a period immediately following, thus, 1.) is divided or multiplied to express smaller or larger denominational quantities, respectively, by simply moving the decimal point to the left or to the right. This illustrates the simplicity of the entire system.

To designate the quantities thus obtained, *Latin* prefixes are used to describe those less than one gram, and *Greek* those larger than one gram—the former being written with a small letter, the latter with a capital letter.

Metric Weights

1 myriagram	(Mg.)	= 10,000 grams.
1 kilogram	(Kg.)	= 1,000 grams.
1 hectogram	(Hg.)	= 100 grams.
1 decagram	(Dg.)	= 10 grams.
1 gram	(Gm.)	= weight of 1 mil of water at 4°C. (unit).
1 decigram	(dg.)	= 0.1 gram.
1 centigram	(cg.)	= 0.01 gram.
1 milligram.	(mg.)	= 0.001 gram.

Metric Measures of Capacity.

1 myrialiter	(Ml.)	= 10,000,000 milliliters.
1 kiloliter	(Kl.)	= 1,000,000 milliliters.
1 hectoliter	(Hl.)	= 100,000 milliliters.
1 decaliter	(Dl.)	= 10,000 milliliters.
1 liter	(L.)	= 1,000 milliliters (unit).
1 deciliter	(dl.)	= 100 milliliters.
1 centiliter	(cl.)	= 10 milliliters.
1 milliliter	(ml.)	= 1 milliliter.

Equivalents to the English Weights and Measures.—Various methods have been proposed for adapting the metric weights to our apothecaries' weights used in prescription-writing without entailing calculations in fractions, as the exact equivalent would necessarily do. The method of accepting 32 grams as equivalent to one troy ounce and 30 mils as equal to one fluidounce seems to be the least objectionable.

To convert avoirdupois or troy into metric weights, the equivalent of the gram in grains—15.432—should be remembered, as it serves the purpose of a basis for obtaining the equivalent of all the higher denominations. It will be observed that this number is composed of the first five numerals in reversed order, except the figure 1. For

Digitized by Google

all practical purposes the fraction may be dropped, and 1 Gm. may be said to equal 15 gr.

The *Liter* is equivalent to 34 fluidounces (approximately 1 quart); half a Liter, therefore, approximates 1 pt., and is sometimes called a *metric pint* (17 fl. oz.).

The *Meter* is equivalent to nearly 40 inches, from which the divisions may easily be rendered as follows: 1 decimeter, 4 in.; 1 centimeter, cm., 0.4 in.; 1 millimeter, mm., 0.04 ($\frac{1}{25}$) inch.

Hallberg sums up the advantages of the metric system as follows:

1. Simplicity of construction, abolishing complex tables.
2. Uniformity, through its adoption in all scientific work.
3. Permanency and stability of its standard unit derived from the earth itself.
4. Facility of its multiplication and division by decimal points.
5. Commensurability of all its units and denominations in *weight*, *volume*, *linear* measures, and our system of *money*.

Equivalents of Apothecaries' in Metric Weights

Grain.		*Gram.*	*Grain.*		*Gram.*
$\frac{1}{200}$	=	.000324	$\frac{1}{2}$	=	.0324
$\frac{1}{150}$	=	.00043	1	=	.0648
$\frac{1}{100}$	=	.00064	2	=	.1296
$\frac{1}{75}$	=	.00086	5	=	.3240
$\frac{1}{50}$	=	.00129	8	=	.5184
$\frac{1}{40}$	=	.00162	10	=	.6480
$\frac{1}{20}$	=	.00324	15	=	.9720 (approx. 1.0 Gm.)
$\frac{1}{10}$	=	.00648	20	=	1.2960
$\frac{1}{6}$	=	.0108	30	=	1.9440 (approx. 2.0 Gm.)
$\frac{1}{4}$	=	.0162	40	=	2.5920
$\frac{1}{3}$	=	.0216	60	=	3.888 (approx. 4.0 Gm.)

Equivalents of Apothecaries' in Metric Measures of Capacity

Minims.		*Milliliters.*	*Fluidounces.*		*Milliliters.*
1	=	0.061	1	=	29.57 (approx. 30.0 mils)
2	=	0.123	2	=	59.14
3	=	0.185	3	=	89.00
5	=	0.308	4	=	118.29
7	=	0.431	6	=	177.42
10	=	0.616	10	=	295.73
15	=	0.924 (approx. 1.0 mil)	12	=	355.00
20	=	1.23	16	=	473.17 (approx. ½ L.)
30	=	1.84 (approx. 2.0 mils)	20	=	591.50
40	=	2.46	24	=	710.00
60	=	3.7 (approx. 4.0 mils)	32	=	946.35 (approx. 1 L.)

Digitized by Google

PERCENTAGE IN SOLUTIONS

To estimate the quantity of a drug required to make a certain volume of a solution of a given percentage, *divide* the weight of the volume of the liquid to be used as the solvent by 100, and *multiply* by the percentage. Thus, in an ounce of a 10 per cent. *aqueous* solution of silver nitrate there are 45.6 grains of the salt.

100 per cent. = 456.37 gr. (weight of a fl. oz. of water).
1 per cent. = $\frac{1}{100}$ of 456.37, or 4.56 gr.
10 per cent. = 10 × 4.56, or 45.6 gr.

Therefore, it is well to remember that 4.56 gr. or, approximately, 4.5 gr. of any drug added to a fluidounce of water makes a 1 per cent. solution of the drug. The amount of a drug necessary for any quantity of any per cent. solution may be ascertained by *multiplying* the quantity by the percentage, and the product by 4.5. Thus, to ascertain the amount of cocain hydrochlorid required to make two ounces of a 1.5 per cent. solution, we would *multiply* 2 × 1.5 × 4.5 = 13.5 gr. Where there is a fraction of a grain in the ultimate result it is best to drop it if less than one-half, or raise it to one if over one-half.

To determine the weight of a fluidounce of a liquid other than water, *multiply* 456.37 by the specific gravity of the liquid, and the product will be the weight desired.

Digitized by Google

PRESCRIPTION-WRITING

The literal interpretation of the word *prescription* is *a written order for something*—from *præ*, for, and *scribo*, I write. The popular use of the term, however, relates to medicines, usually meaning a written order for medicines, although it is frequently employed to designate the remedy or mixture itself.

The art of prescription-writing is one that requires practice for its perfection, as well as a broad knowledge of drugs, their actions and their doses, and their indications for certain diseases. It is also essential to know the physical and chemic properties of drugs as related to the form of administration and possible combination with other substances. Through the development of the sciences of pathology and pharmacology we have learned that it is unnecessary to exhaust our materia medica in prescribing for any one disease, and with this more definite knowledge of the action and effects of drugs upon the diseased tissues, organs, and functions of the body, we find that only a few agents can be employed with actual benefit in our endeavor to assist Nature in her efforts to restore an abnormal to a normal condition. To-day simplicity in prescriptions is evidence of a broad knowledge of the conditions to be met by the application of drugs or remedies to the treatment of disease. In former days many drugs were combined in one prescription, and the remedy was given with the hope and expectancy that at least one ingredient might, perchance, hit the spot. To such formulas the term "shot-gun" prescriptions is now applied.

The most important considerations in *writing* prescriptions as well as in *reading* them are:

1. The language and abbreviations.
2. The signs and terms.

The *language* of prescription-writing is primarily Latin, because pharmacopeial titles are chiefly used in designating remedies. Medical Latin will be referred to later. *Abbreviations* in prescription-writing are perfectly proper, provided they are not carried so far as to cause confusion in compounding the prescription. The *signs* and *terms* used will be considered conjointly with the analysis of a prescription.

Digitized by Google

A prescription may be divided into five parts, as follows:

1. The superscription, or heading.
2. The inscription, or names and quantities of ingredients.
3. The subscription, or directions to the compounder.
4. The signa, or directions to the patient.
5. The name of the prescriber, his degree, and the date.

The *superscription*, or heading, consists of the abbreviation ℞, for the imperative of the verb recipio—*recipe*, with a terminal stroke on the R, forming the sign of Jupiter, ♃, which survives as a relic of ancient times when all medical formulæ were preceded by this sign as an invocation to Jupiter, the chief God. Literally translated "take thou" or "take," it tells the pharmacist to compound the ingredients which follow. The name of the patient is generally, though not necessarily, included in this part. A perfect prescription should always bear the name of the person for whom the medicine is intended, and if for a child it should be so designated.

The *inscription*, containing as it does the names and quantities of the ingredients, is the most important part of the prescription, and the ingredients are invariably written in Latin with the *genitive* ending, the quantities following on each line, indicated by the customary abbreviation. Thus: gr. for granum, plural grana—grain or grains; ʒ for dram (drachma); ℥ for ounce (unica); and O for pint (octarius). The abbreviations ℔. for pound (libra) and Cong. or C. for gallon (congius) are rarely employed. ♏ stands for minim (minimum); and the fluidrams and ounces are indicated by the prefex f, thus fʒj, f℥j. *Semissis*, abbreviated *ss*, is used to indicate a half. A prescription written with the troy system of weights always contains *Roman* numerals: gr. iv, gr. xx, etc.; when written with the metric weights and measures they are expressed in decimals in *Arabic* numerals, followed by Gm. or mil, signifying weight or measure: 5.65 Gm., 30.0 mils.

Signs for designating the measure or weight of the mixture are sometimes affixed to the last ingredient. The most commonly used are:

Ad, the preposition "to;" ad f℥iij = to (measure) three fluid-ounces. *Quantum sufficiat*, abbreviated q. s.—as much as is sufficient. Of these signs q. s. is preferable, since *ad* may be confused with the abbreviation of the verb *adde*, meaning to add. *Ana*, abbreviated *āā*, meaning "of each," is appended when the same quantities are required of two or more ingredients; it follows the last of these, just preceding the quantity.

Digitized by Google

While it is the rule that every word in the inscription must terminate in the genitive or accusative (the names of the ingredients in the genitive, the quantities in the accusative), they are rarely written out in full, but nearly always abbreviated. Where the first, or the first and second, syllables of words are the same, *e.g.*, hydrargyrum and hydrastis, the abbreviation must not be carried so far as to involve doubt as to which drug is really meant. To further illustrate, the drugs just mentioned are often abbreviated hydr., which may mean either of them, or when followed with chlor., would doubtless mean hydrated chloral, but might also be mistaken for hydrargyrum chloridum; both calomel and mercuric chlorid being sometimes erroneously, though not infrequently, so written. The author's experience behind the prescription-counter leads him to emphasize the importance of correctly writing the inscription.

The complete inscription is made up of the *basis*, or active constituent; the *adjuvant*, or aid to the basis; the *corrective*, or agent to counteract, modify, or correct some unpleasant property of the basis; and the *forming substance*. The forming substance is variously termed according to the form or consistence of the mixture. For liquids and ointments it is called *vehicle;* for powders, *diluent;* and when in a mass, as in pills or troches, *excipient*. This is according to the maxim of Asklepiades, which reads *curare* (basis), *cito* (adjuvant), *tuto* (corrective) *et jucunde* (vehicle, diluent, or excipient), to cure quickly, safely, and pleasantly. Most prescriptions do not contain all of these ingredients; many call for but one.

The *subscription* consists of certain signs and terms conveying directions as to the compounding and dispensing. Generally it is better to leave the detail of compounding to the pharmacist who is trained in the art of pharmacy; therefore, the abbreviation, M., which stands for the Latin imperative of the verb *misce*, meaning mix, is usually all that is necessary. This sign may follow a dash, thus —M., just to the right of the last ingredient in the inscription, or it may be placed to the left under the sign of the superscription. When special directions are necessary, as in directing the number of powder, capsules, or pills, into which the mixture is to be divided, they may be written in either Latin or English—the former is preferable, provided they are correctly written.

Special directions abbreviated are:

M. ft. pulv. chart, div. No.—, mix and make a powder, divide in papers No.—. M. ft. cap. No.—, mix and make capsules No.—. M. ft. mass. pil. div. No.—, mix and make a mass, divide in pills No. —.

Digitized by Google

The *Signa*, abbreviated Sig. or S., includes the directions to be written on the label and affixed to the package or container. These should be written in English in a plain, bold hand-writing. Sometimes it is better for the patient not to know what drug is taken; for this reason the inscription and subscription are written in Latin, but no secrecy is necessary here; in fact, to write the directions in plain English and to read them to the patient or attendant may serve as a check on any possible error in copying the directions on the label. The stereotyped expression, "Use as directed," should be avoided as far as possible, especially where the prescription is intended for internal administration. Many serious consequences might have been averted if specific directions had been given.

The *name* of the subscriber, his *degree*, and the *date* are added below the signa. Generally it is not in good taste to flourish the degree after one's signature every time it is written; but in the case of a prescription it is essential for authenticity. The pharmacist desires to know whether the prescriber has the right to prescribe, and this can only be known by the degree. When prescription blanks are used, having the prescriber's name, degree, and address printed above or below the space reserved for the prescription proper, all that is necessary is to write the initials and the date. The date is valuable for reference.

It may be questioned by some whether dentists have the right to prescribe internal remedies. A large part of the work of the dentist is to treat the diseases of the mouth and adjacent tissues, thus alleviating human suffering, and surely he has the right to use any drug which he knows from his experience will aid Nature in overcoming the pathologic condition. The author entered upon the practice of dentistry through the gateway of pharmacy, and it has been his experience, both as a pharmacist and as a dentist, that the right to prescribe will never be questioned if intelligence is shown in the writing of the prescription.

The *order* usually adopted in prescription-writing is as follows: First, after the ℞, the names of the ingredients are written, in the order of their importance; then the number of doses is decided upon; the individual dose of each drug *multiplied* by the number of doses gives the quantities to be affixed to the names of the ingredients. In selecting the proper quantity for liquid mixtures, the regular sizes of vials alone are considered. These are 1, 2, and 4 dram, and 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 8, and 16 ounce capacity, and it should be remembered that in all cases a bottle should be filled. A partially filled bottle immediately arouses suspicion on the part of the patient as to the possibility of mistake in compounding the prescription.

Digitized by Google

MEDICAL LATIN

The language used in prescription-writing is primarily Latin, because pharmacopeial titles are chiefly employed in designating remedies. It is never necessary to tell the patient what drug is being used, and frequently it is far better that they should not know, because of certain idiosyncrasies, prejudices, and other reasons. Therefore, it is wise always to write the inscription and sometimes the subscription of a prescription in Latin. The rule is to have the name of every ingredient end in the genitive and the quantities in the accusative. It is true that much ignorance of the Latin language can be covered up in prescription-writing by using abbreviations, and while it is also true that to abbreviate is perfectly proper, provided it is not carried so far as to involve doubt as to what drug is wanted, nevertheless, a working knowledge at least of this dead language will be of inestimable value. Therefore, a few rules of *Latin grammar* applicable to prescription-writing are here given: The quantities of the ingredients appear in the *accusative* case, governed by the imperative of the verb "Recipe;" the quantities, however, are seldom written out in full. The *names* of the ingredients appear in the *genitive* case, the construction reading "Recipe drachmam unam phenolis," take one dram of phenol, ℞ phenolis, ℥j. The directions to the pharmacist are very simple, unless special instructions are necessary: M. for "misce," is generally all that is required. The directions to the patient should always be written in English. All nouns ending in *a* in the nominative, end in *æ* in the genitive, and are of the first declension; the accusative ends in *am* and the nominative plural in *æ;* there are a few exceptions of Greek derivation, such as enema, gramma, theobroma—the genitive ending for these is *atis.* Nouns terminating in *us* in the nominative, end in *i* in the genitive, and are of the second declension, *um* for the accusative singular, and *i* for the nominative plural; there are a few exceptions to this rule with nouns of the fourth declension, as fructus and spiritus (these do not change in the genitive). The nouns ending in *um* in the nominative singular are neuter in gender and of the second declension; they change to *i* in the genitive, *um* in the accusative, and *a* in the nominative plural.

Digitized by Google

All other pharmacopeial nouns belong to the third declension and change variously in the different cases, and for the most part must be studied individually. For example: *as* becomes *atis; is* may remain *is* or change to *idis*, *itis*, or *eris* in the genitive; the accusative of *as* becomes *am*, the nominative plural *atea*. Some nouns do not change at all, *e.g.*, sassafras. Adjectives agree with their nouns in number, gender, and case; those ending in *us*, terminate with *a* for the feminine and *um* in the neuter gender, and are declined according to the first and second declensions. Adjectives ending in *is* and *ens* are declined according to the third declension; the first ends in *e* in the neuter gender. A few nouns of Greek origin end in *ë*, and form a genitive of *ës*, and an accusative of *ën;* aloe, aloës, is an example.

When special directions are necessary for the dispensing of *powders*, *capsules*, and *pills*, they may be given as follows: *Fiat pulvis et divide in chartulas No.* x.—make a powder and divide into 10 papers. *Dispensa in capsulis No. xij*—dispense in 12 capsules. *Fiant pilulæ No.* xx—make 20 pills.

An *official formula* may be specified in a prescription as follows: ℞ Pulveris opii et ipecacuanhæ, gr. xx. Fiat chartulas No. iv. Sig. —Take one or two powders on retiring and keep well covered. In this prescription the nominative pulv*is* changes to pulv*eris* in the genitive; opi*um* changes to op*ii;* and ipecacuanh*a* changes to ipecacuanh*æ*. Thus the value of the above rules of Latin grammar is seen. To abbreviate the names of the ingredients in the above, we could use pulv. for pulveris, ipecac. for ipecacuanhæ, but we could not intelligently abbreviate opii—it would be necessary to write it in full in the Latin nominative or the English (which is the same in this instance—opium). To write it in the Latin nominative in the inscription is wrong, and to write it in English with the other words abbreviated in Latin is also wrong. So, while much ignorance of the Latin language may be covered up by abbreviation in prescription-writing, occasionally this lack of knowledge will manifest itself; therefore, it is the wiser plan to become familar with these simple rules. As has been elsewhere stated, the art of prescription-writing is one that requires a great deal of practice for its perfection.

In conclusion the author desires to state that if any part of the inscription or subscription cannot be properly written in Latin, by all means write the entire prescription in English. This is by no means meant to discourage the use of Latin in prescription-writing.[1]

[1] Those desiring to study this subject further will find St. Clair's "Medical Latin" and Robinson's "Latin Grammar of Pharmacy and Medicine" excellent books for the purpose.

Digitized by Google

EXAMPLES OF PRACTICAL PRESCRIPTIONS

Powders.

For Mrs.————.

℞—Pulveris Acetanilidi Compositæ, gr. xv (1.0 Gm.)
Fiat chartulæ No. ij.
Sig.—Take one (1) powder at once and the other in two (2) hours, if not relieved.
(Date) ————, D. D. S.

For Baby ————.

℞—Hydrargyri chloridi mitis, gr. j (0.06 Gm.)
Sodii bicarbonatis, gr. xx (1.3 Gm.)—M.
Fiat chartulæ No. x.
Sig.—Take one (1) powder every hour until three (3) or four (4) are taken.
(Date) ————, D. D. S.

For Mr. ————.

℞—Acetphenetidini,
Salophen, āā gr. x (0.6 Gm.)
Codeinæ Sulphatis, gr. j (0.06 Gm.)—M.
Fiat chartulæ No. iv.
Sig.—Take one (1) powder every three (3) hours.
(Date) ————, D. D. S.

Tooth Powders.

No. 1.

For General Use.

℞—Calcii carbonatis ppt., ℥xiv (448.0 Gm.)
Saponis pulveris (U.S.P.),
Sacchari pulveris, āā ℥ij (64.0 Gm.)
Sodii benzoatis, ℥ss (16.0 Gm.)
Eucalyptolis, ♏x (0.6 mil)
Thymolis, gr. x (0.6 Gm.)
Cinnaldehydi, ♏xv (1.0 mil)—M.
Fiat pulvis.
Sig.—Use as a general tooth powder.
(Date) ————, D. D. S.

No. 2.

For General Use.

℞—Calcii carbonatis ppt., ℥xx (640.0 Gm.)
Orris radices pulv., ℥iv (128.0 Gm.)
Saponis pulv. (U.S.P.), ℥ij (64.0 Gm.)
Sacchari,
Sodii boratis, āā ℥j (32.0 Gm.)
Thymolis, gr. xv (1.0 Gm.)

Digitized by Google

Eucalyptolis, ♏x (0.6 mil)
Olei gaultheriæ,
Olei menthæ piperitæ, āā ♏xx (1.3 mils)—M.
Fiat Pulvis.
Sig.—Use as a general tooth powder.
(Date) ————, D. D. S.

Capsules.

For Mr. ————.

℞—Quininæ bisulphatis, gr. xxiv (1.5 Gm.)
Dispensa in capsulis No. viij.
Sig.—Take one (1) capsule before meals and on retiring.
(Date) ————, D. D. S.

Pills.

For Mrs. ————.

℞—Quininæ valerianatis, gr. xviij (1.2 Gm.)
Extracti hyoscyami, gr. iv (0.26 Gm.)
Extracti cinchonæ, gr. viij (0.5 Gm.)—M.
Fiat massa et divide in pilulæ No. xij.
Sig.—Take one (1) pill before meals and on retiring
(Date) ————, D. D. S.
(*Cosmos.*)

Solutions (Dobell's Solution).

For Mr. ————.

℞—Sodii bicarbonatis,
Sodii boratis, āā ʒj (4.0 Gm.)
Phenolis (crys.), ʒss (2.0 Gm.)
Glycerini, fʒj (30.0 mils)
Aquæ, Oij (1.0 L.)—M.
Sig.—Use as a spray, mouth-wash, or gargle.
(Date) ————, D. D. S.

(Antiseptic Solution N.F.)

For Mrs. ————.

℞—Liquoris Antiseptici, fʒviij (240.0 mils)
Sig.—Dilute with one-half warm water and use as a mouth-wash.
(Date) ————, D. D. S.

For Miss ————.

℞—Antipyrini, ʒss (2.0 Gm.)
Sodii bromidi, ʒj (4.0 Gm.)
Glycerini, fʒij (8.0 mils)
Aquæ cinnamomi, q. s. ad. fʒj (30.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Take a teaspoonful three times a day, after meals.
(Date) ————, D. D. S.

Digitized by Google

For Mrs. ————.

℞—Potassii iodidi, ℥jss (6.0 Gm.).
Syrupi sarsaparillæ comp., f℥iij (90.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Take a teaspoonful in water three times a day, after meals.
(Date) ————, D. D. S.

For Mr. ————.

℞—Acetanilidi, gr. viij (0.5 Gm.)
Syrupi simplex, f℥ss (15.0 mils)
Spiritus frumenti, q. s. ad. f℥iij (90.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Take one-half at once and the remainder in two (2) hours, if not relieved.
(Date) ————, D. D. S.

Collyrium (Eye-water).

For Mr. ————.

℞—Sodii boratis, gr. x (0.6 Gm.)
Acidi borici, sat. sol., f℥j (30.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Warm to body temperature and drop into the eye with a drop applicator.
(Date) ————, D. D. S.

Gargle (Mercurial Stomatitis or Sore Throat).

For Miss ————.

℞—Potassii chloratis, ℥jss (6.0 Gm.)
Tincturæ myrrhæ, f℥ij (8.0 mils)
Alcoholis, f℥ss (15.0 mils)
Aquæ cinnamomi, f℥vi (180.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Thoroughly gargle the throat three times daily. If too strong, dilute with warm water.
(Date) ————, D. D. S.

Liniments.

For Dentists' Use.

℞—Mentholis,
Iodi (crys.) āā gr. x (0.6 Gm.)
Chloroformi, f℥jss (6.0 mils)
Tincturæ Aconiti, q. s. ad. f℥j (30.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Use as a refrigerant counterirritant.
(Date) ————, D. D. S.

For Dentists' Use.

℞—Mentholis, gr. xx (1.3 Gm.)
Chloroformi, f℥jss (6.0 mils)
Tincturæ aconiti, q. s. ad. f℥j (30.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Apply freely to gums in cases of nonseptic pericementitis.
(Date) ————, D. D. S.

Digitized by Google

For Mr. ————.

℞—Camphoræ (gum), ℥ij (8.0 Gm.)
Tincturæ aconiti, f℥j (30.0 mils)
Linimenti saponis, q. s. ad. f℥iij (90.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Apply locally with massage in case of neuralgia.
(Date) ————, D. D. S.

Digitized by Google

INCOMPATIBILITY IN PRESCRIPTIONS

When two or more different substances are brought together in a mixture, be it liquid or solid, with the result of undergoing a more or less complete change, not intended, they are said to be *incompatible.*

Incompatibility, so far as it applies to the combination (not the action) of drugs, may be of two kinds—*physical* and *chemic.* The only truly scientific method of determining the incompatibility, or the contrary, of the ingredients of a mixture is a correct knowledge of physical and chemic laws and their practical application in pharmacy and therapeutics.

Physical incompatibility is largely a question of the solubility of drugs. It results when precipitates are formed without the precipitated substance losing its former identity; *i.e.*, without chemic change. It also occurs when an effort is made to mix nonmiscible substances, as oil and water.

Gums and other mucilaginous substances are soluble in water, but insoluble in alcohol. Therefore, the addition of alcohol to an aqueous solution of a gum results in the precipitation of the gum without chemic change.

Example: Mucilage of tragacanth with any alcoholic tincture (tincture of aconite) will precipitate the tragacanth.

Resinous substances are soluble in alcohol, but insoluble in water. The addition of water, therefore, to an alcoholic solution of a resin results in the physical precipitation of the resin.

Example: Water added to tincture of podophyllum will precipitate the resinous active constituent, *podophyllin.*

Any mouth-wash or solution containing a considerable amount of the essential oils, held in solution by alcohol, will become turbid upon the addition of water, owing to the physical incompatibility of the oil and water.

Chemic incompatibility involves a chemic change when substances are mixed, whereby their former identity is lost. To be able to predict chemic incompatibility requires a knowledge of chemic laws and their practical application. It is well to remember a few of the more common of these laws. For example:

1. It is a principle in chemistry that when solutions of soluble salts are brought together there is generally an exchange of radicals

Digitized by Google

with the formation of a precipitate, if either of the newly formed salts is insoluble. To illustrate: When solutions of silver nitrate and sodium chlorid are brought together a white precipitate of silver chlorid is formed. Here there is an exchange of radicals, and the silver chlorid, being insoluble in the water, is precipitated, while the sodium nitrate, being soluble, dissolves as soon as it is formed. Advantage is taken of chemic incompatibility when silver nitrate is used about the mouth; any excess can be neutralized at once by having the patient rinse the mouth with a solution of common salt.

2. Strong mineral acids decompose salts of the weaker mineral or vegetable acids, and also form ethers with alcoholic preparations. To illustrate: Sodium bicarbonate is chemically incompatible with hydrochloric acid. Here the chlorin of the hydrochloric acid has a greater affinity for sodium than has the weaker carbonic radical, hence it displaces the latter, forming sodium chlorid and liberating carbonic acid, which immediately breaks up into water and carbon dioxid. The carbon dioxid, being a gas, causes the effervescence. An illustration of the formation of ethers by adding a strong mineral acid to alcoholic solutions is found in making ether, where sulphuric acid is added to alcohol. In this case, of course, sulphuric acid and alcohol are not considered incompatible because ether is the product desired; but if it were not, then they would be chemically incompatible.

As a matter of fact, all *drugs* are incompatible with their *chemic tests* or *antidotes*, a knowledge of which means a knowledge of the science of chemistry, and to mention all would be inappropriate in a work of this kind. A few common examples are here given:

Alkalies and *alkaline carbonates* are incompatible with *acid solutions*, *acid salts*, and *alkaloidal salts*. *Arsenic trioxid* with *tannic acid* and *salts of iron*. *Alkaloids* and *alkaloidal salts* with *tannic acid*. *Phenol* with *collodion*. *Powerful oxidizing agents* with *easily oxidizable substances*, causing combustion, and even explosion. Oxidizing agents are: potassium chlorate, potassium permanganate, chromic, nitric, and nitrohydrochloric acids. Easily oxidizable agents are: sugar, glycerin, alcohol, fats, sulphur, carbon, and phosphorus.

The following drugs, so far as possible, had better be prescribed alone:

Strong mineral acids.	Potassium Chlorate.
Alkalies.	Potassium Permanganate.
Arsenic Trioxid.	Silver Nitrate.
Iron salts.	Tannic Acid.

Mercuric Chlorid (incompatible with almost everything).

Digitized by Google

ANTAGONISM OF DRUGS

As has been observed in the study of physiologic action, certain drugs produce opposite effects. This is known as *antagonism of drugs*, called also *physiologic* or *therapeutic incompatibility*. The antagonistic effects of drugs are recognized in therapeutics as a means of guarding against *drug poisoning* and as an aid in the *treatment of poisoning* when toxic symptoms are manifested. In this connection the term *physiologic antidote* is used.

The antagonistic action of drugs, however, is never as positive as is the case with chemic incompatibility, for there are few drugs, indeed, whose action is directly opposite, and whose effects will neutralize completely the effects of other drugs. The antagonism of drugs or physiologic antidotes is well illustrated in the *treatment of cocain poisoning* (see p. 132).

Digitized by Google

DENTAL STERILIZATION

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Throughout Part II of this work on Practical Dental Therapeutics the author will endeavor to emphasize the importance of *dental sterilization.*

The term Sterilization as used in medical and dental practice, means a process by which the destruction or removal of all microscopic living organisms and their spores is accomplished. Some bacteria, under certain conditions, undergo a transformation into a resting stage when they are called spores. In the spore state they are able to resist influences which would kill the bacteria. Most disease-producing germs do not form spores and, therefore, are easily killed. The anthrax and tetanus bacilli are exceptions to this, as their spores are quite resistant. An object which is free from living microorganisms is spoken of as being "sterile," but it should be remembered that this condition can be maintained only so long as the necessary precautions are taken to prevent contact with the atmosphere or other media or instrument which may carry microorganisms.

The methods and means of sterilizing tooth-structure and the field of operation will be fully discussed in the description of the various operations which are performed in and about the mouth; and while the importance of having the instruments and material used, as well as the operator's hands, in a sterile condition will be repeatedly mentioned, in all operations which involve in any way the soft tissues of the mouth where an infection may follow, the means of sterilizing the same should now be discussed. The importance of personal cleanliness on the part of the dentist and of his armamentarium is, of course, understood and need not be considered here.

A principle in modern surgery is to prevent the presence of germs. This means that the instruments and materials used must be sterile, as well as the field of operation and the operator's hands. The same principle holds true in dental as well as general surgery.

METHODS OF DENTAL STERILIZATION

Direct Flame.—In dental practice it is often possible to sterilize small objects by the direct application of heat from the flame of

Digitized by Google

the Bunsen burner or lamp, provided the object will not be injured. Such instruments as burnishers, root-canal pluggers, platinum needles, the points of pliers used for handling sterilized cotton, gutta-percha points, etc., may be rapidly sterilized in this manner by holding them in the flame, or playing the latter over them a few times.

Moist Heat.—The use of live steam for sterilization, usually in a covered kettle or boiler, electrically or otherwise heated, is generally applicable for sterilizing dental instruments, such as broaches, burs, pyorrhea scalers, etc. There are many practical devices on the market for this purpose. By practical here we take into consideration the convenience and expense. Such an apparatus must be convenient to use, and no reasonable amount of expense should deter dentists from accomplishing this end. Live steam has great penetrating power, and a temperature of 100°C. (the boiling point of water) for from three to five minutes generally is sufficient for the sterilization of such dental instruments as may be thus sterilized, and which are used and so sterilized several times daily. The instruments should be brushed with a stiff brush to remove whatever débris may be present before they are placed in the sterilizer, and the latter should be rinsed and fresh water added every morning. In cases of questionable specific infection, the instruments should be boiled for at least fifteen minutes. Sodium carbonate or borax should be added to the water to prevent tarnishing and probable rusting of the instruments.

Dry Heat.—This method requires the object to be heated in an oven or suitable apparatus at a temperature of from 160° to 170°C., continued for at least two hours. Up to the present, apparatus for the practical sterilization of the material used in dental surgery, such as cotton, gauze, etc., have not been obtainable; and, therefore, dentists have relied largely upon obtaining this material in sterile condition from the manufacturers. Even if this be possible, which is open to question, the material, with the best of ordinary care, becomes contaminated in the office. It is important, therefore, that all such material as may be sterilized by dry heat should be so sterilized just previous to use; and the better way to be assured of sterilization is to prepare this material in advance and keep it in a dry heat sterilizer ready for use. Such sterilizers are now on the market, and improved ones are being constructed. They should be a part of the equipment of every practising dentist. Where the material is kept constantly ready for use in such sterilizers, a much lower heat than 160° to 170°C. is sufficient.

Chemic Agents.—For the purpose of assisting in sterilization or

Digitized by Google

of protecting substances from subsequent contamination, chemic agents are frequently employed. It is to be regretted that many of our most potent disinfectants, such as formaldehyd, mercuric chlorid, etc., while excellent for the sterilization of the hands and the site of operation, cannot be used for the sterilization of metal instruments, on account of the agents acting deleteriously upon the metal. These agents, therefore, should be used only as adjuncts, and generally in quantities insufficient to insure sterility in themselves.

This method is used in dentistry for the following purposes:

1. For the disinfection of the hands and the site of operation.

2. For the disinfection of tooth-structure, such as carious dentin, gangrenous canals, etc. Here stronger solutions of the drug may be safely employed—thus approaching more nearly complete sterilization than should be expected from the general use of chemic agents for this purpose.

3. For the disinfection of glass containers, etc., alcohol being chiefly used for the purpose; but sterilization by heat is better.

4. To maintain in a sterile condition various remedies, such as local anesthetic solutions, antitoxins, serums, vaccines, etc.

If done with aseptic precautions, it is best for the dentist to prepare local anesthetic solutions at the time they are intended to be used. However, stock solutions may be safely employed and can be kept sterile indefinitely by the addition of 0.5 per cent. of phenol or 0.4 per cent. of cresol. The latter is from two and a half to three times as strong a disinfectant as phenol and scarcely more poisonous.

It is impossible to set definite limits which will fit all cases for the amounts of the chemicals which may be employed, because the composition of the substance and its degree of contamination are important factors in sterilization.

Gutta-percha points may be positively sterilized by immersion in a 10 per cent. solution of formaldehyd or in a 70 per cent. solution of alcohol, to which latter solution should be added one grain of thymol to the fluid ounce. This solution will be known throughout the text here as *modified alcohol*. It is an excellent solution for the chemic sterilization of the teeth included in the rubber dam, and for the immediate sterilization of carious dentin. It may not completely sterilize in the latter instance, but it aids greatly in establishing asepsis. Of the organic bodies, alcohol stands first in dental practice as a disinfectant. It is an efficient antiseptic when present by volume in from 20 to 40 per cent. Solutions containing from 40 to 70 per cent. are actively disinfectant, the latter strength being most effectual. Above 70 per cent. its efficiency tends to diminish.

Digitized by Google

Iodin is one of the most effective disinfectants, and preparations containing free iodin in material proportions become sterile of themselves. For this reason solutions of iodin are valuable and largely used for sterilizing the mucous membrane previous to making submucous injections of local anesthetics, and before operating upon the part.

The responsibility of having all instruments and material used in dental surgery sterile, *where it is possible to cause an infection through an open wound or otherwise*, is rightfully thrown upon the dentist; and in assuming this responsibility he should study carefully the various methods of sterilization, and exercise judgment in his application of the principles involved.

Digitized by Google

PART II

PRACTICAL DENTAL THERAPEUTICS

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Therapeutics is the application of drugs or remedies to the treatment of disease. Dental therapeutics differs in no way from general therapeutics, except that it includes only the treatment of diseases of the mouth and adjacent structures or such general diseases as are manifested in the mouth. In the latter instance it is the duty of the dentist to collaborate with the family physician in the treatment of the case. In this day when so many systemic diseases are known to be directly traceable to foci of infection in the mouth, it is more essential than ever that the physician and dentist work together in harmony for the relief of suffering humanity.

In considering the practical therapeutics of the more common diseases which the dentist is called upon to treat, the author will draw largely upon his own experience gained from actual practice and from extensive reading of current dental and medical literature.

It should be understood at the outset that there are three essential factors upon which all successful therapeutics rests. *First*, to be able to recognize a pathologic condition and make a correct diagnosis. This means that the successful therapeutist must possess a broad knowledge of general pathology and a special knowledge of dental or oral pathology; *secondly*, to know what drug, or remedy, if properly applied or administered, will reach the recognized pathologic condition and act the most favorably. This means that successful therapy depends upon a broad knowledge of pharmacology —a science which treats of the action of drugs and remedies upon the tissues, organs, and functions of the body; and *thirdly*, to have at hand, in a convenient and practical form, that drug or remedy which experience has taught will assist Nature in her efforts to restore an abnormal to a normal condition.

The tendency in dental as well as in general therapeutics to-day is to place the treatment of disease upon a rational basis. The progressive dentist, therefore, is no longer satisfied to know that results may be obtained by the use of certain remedies in the treatment of certain diseases, but he has a strong desire to know also *why* those

Digitized by Google

results are brought about. In the following pages only such pathologic data will be given as are deemed essential to the therapeutics of the condition under consideration, but every effort will be made to tell, as far as is known, why the remedies suggested are indicated and what may be expected from their judicious employment. This means that it will be necessary to practically discard all obsolete or untried remedies. In other words, only such remedies will be considered in detail here as have been found to be of real practical value.

Digitized by Google

DISEASES OF THE HARD TISSUES OF THE MOUTH AND ASSOCIATED STRUCTURES

HYPERSENSITIVE DENTIN

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

In the early history of civilization, we find that the possession of the cardinal virtue of fortitude was considered a mark of courage, strength and character, because it enabled the individual to willingly undergo the necessary pain, peril or danger incident to life. But the discovery of anesthesia by humanity's greatest benefactor, Horace Wells, the dentist, together with the humanitarian tendencies of the years, have so changed human nature that we find few people to-day who possess in any marked degree the spirit of fortitude as manifested in ancient times. Among other things in life, this condition of affairs demands more painless methods of practising dentistry. The one dental operation which has caused more pain in the past than all others combined is that of the preparation of cavities in vital teeth.

Ever since the art of filling teeth was first begun both the dentist and patient have cherished the ardent hope that some day it would be possible to perform this operation without pain. Especially is this true in these modern times when, to carry out the basic principles of cavity preparation, as understood to-day, it is necessary that the cavity have a flat seat with practically parallel walls; that it should possess powers of resistance and retention, and be of convenient form, and that the outline be carried to areas of immunity—all of which requires drilling into sound and usually extremely sensitive dentin.

Authorities differ in regard to the sensitivity of dentin. According to Barrett, dentin in the normal condition should be without sensation; the source of sensitive dentin, or of impressionable pulps, lies in their continued subjection to irritation by which responsiveness is developed. Burchard-Inglis states that all vital dentin is sensitive; that the degree of sensitivity differs markedly in individuals; and it is only when hypersensitiveness is observed that the condition becomes pathologic. It might also be mentioned that the sensitivity differs in the same individual at different times. Black differentiates between hypersensitiveness and thermal sensitiveness of dentin, claiming that the sharp pain caused by sudden

Digitized by Google

changes of temperature is normal, though no other tissue or organ of the body shows a like resistance to thermal changes. Under certain conditions hypersensitiveness to thermal changes may develop, when the condition becomes pathologic. Thermal sensitiveness as well as hypersensitiveness of dentin is often developed during the progress of decay; therefore, in the preparation of cavities for fillings we find few teeth the dentin of which is without sensation. This fact is not surprising, nor can it be construed as being contrary to the statement that normal dentin is not sensitive when we remember that there are few teeth in the mouths of patients demanding the services of the dentist, the dentinal fibrillæ and pulps of which have not been subjected to continued irritation.

Previous Attempts at Controlling Pain.—For years men of all classes, from the conscientious practitioner to the charlatan and quack, have endeavored to invent means or discover remedies for the elimination of pain caused by operations upon vital teeth. In 1836 Dr. Spooner, of Montreal, thought he had made the discovery when he introduced arsenic trioxid as a remedy for desensitizing dentin. In more recent years cataphoresis, high pressure injection of cocain, interosseous and conductive anesthesia have had their advocates. All kinds of local remedies have been suggested. General analgesia by chloroform and nitrous oxid has long been used by a limited number. Later, analgesia by somnoform or nitrous oxid and oxygen has been revived. Many are using these various agents to-day with more or less success—not because they are in full sympathy with the methods or means, but because they seem to be forced to use something; and their patients are willing to submit to almost any process if pain can be avoided.

Any method or remedy for the elimination of pain in filling teeth, which necessitates placing the tooth or patient in such condition that the dentin can be painlessly drilled to any depth, is a dangerous one to place in the hands of the profession in general. Pain is Nature's indicator, and pain should be our guide. The author has been of the opinion for years that the ideal method of desensitizing dentin would be the application of a remedy within the cavity which would affect the dentin only to a given depth, and thereby not reach nor affect the pulp.

In the discussion of means and methods by which the sensitiveness of the dentin can be allayed, I shall not attempt to enter into the details of the many histologic and pathologic phenomena which are certain to arise in the consideration of the *therapeutics* of this subject, but shall confine myself largely to the drug aspect.

Digitized by Google

The sensitiveness of the dentin can be obtunded in no small degree by the use of various therapeutic agents; and I might state that there are few operations which we are called upon to perform wherein the patient will appreciate our efforts more than in this of applying drugs and remedies for the mitigation of pain. But in order to apply intelligently and successfully any remedy, whether it be a drug or an agent, to the dentin and thereby obtund the sensitivity of the dentinal fibrillæ without endangering the vitality of the pulp itself, we must be familiar with several factors or conditions, which I cannot with propriety here discuss, in detail at least. For instance, a thorough knowledge of the anatomic and histologic structure of the tooth is of the highest importance, as is also a knowledge of the pathology, not only of the fibrillæ, but of the pulp tissue as well—the changes which these structures are capable of undergoing if unduly irritated by the application of the remedy employed. Still another factor, of equal importance and one which more directly relates to the phase of the subject under consideration, is a knowledge of the pharmacologic action and the therapeutic application of the drugs and remedies used for this purpose. Before using a drug or an agent for allaying the sensitiveness of dentin, or for any other purpose, we should know what *action* to anticipate from its employment. This is not too much to expect from the trained dental practitioner of to-day.

THERAPEUTICS

The remedies suggested in the past for obtunding sensitive dentin have been many and varied. I shall discuss only those which, from clinical experience, have proved of sufficient value to merit consideration; and, for convenience of study, will divide them into four general classes.

I. PHYSICAL AGENTS

There are some physical agents by the proper use of which the sensitiveness of dentin can, in a measure, be obtunded. The most common are:

Heat.	Light.
Cold.	Electricity.

Heat.—The application of dry heat to a sensitive cavity, especially in conjunction with a dehydrating agent, such as absolute alcohol, is always an aid; and this is accomplished by means of heating dry air, and gently directing a current of air thus heated into the cavity which has been isolated by the rubber dam and mois-

Digitized by Google

tened with the dehydrating agent used. Care must be taken not to primarily cause pain, otherwise the object of using the agent would be defeated.

Several apparatuses have been devised for heating the air. Dr. Rudolph Beck perfected a convenient electrical device by means of which compressed air can be heated as it passes through. Other such devices are on the market. In the absence of these, however, the chip-blower can be employed, but with less satisfaction. Inasmuch as heat is used in conjunction with another and more important class of remedies, I shall refer to this agent later.

Cold.—This is another physical agent sometimes employed for the purpose of desensitizing the dentin. Heat may be abstracted from the tooth-structure by spraying the cavity with a highly volatile liquid, like ether, rhigolene, or ethyl chlorid. In the use of these agents, advantage is taken of the physical law that *a solid in changing its form to a liquid, or a liquid in changing its form to a vapor or gas, must abstract from the thing to which it is applied a certain amount of heat in order to effect the change.* Ether, or combinations containing ether, and ethyl chlorid, both used as sprays, have proved valuable in some instances, especially in shallow cavities near the gum the dentin of which is difficult to obtund by the usual methods employed heretofore, and to which reference will be made later.

A precaution to be taken to prevent primary pain in applying this remedy is to fill the cavity temporarily with stopping and direct the spray first on this and surrounding parts, after which the stopping can be removed and the spray directed into the cavity without any appreciable pain. The degree of refrigeration must not be carried to the point of having subsequently a possible deleterious effect upon the pulp or gum tissue.

A practical method of combining dryness and cold as a means of obtunding sensitive dentin has been suggested by Dr. W. T. Reeves. It consists in directing a small jet of compressed air directly into the cavity a few moments before operating, and keeping it up during the drilling process. To prevent primary pain, cotton saturated with an analgesic and antiseptic remedy may be placed in the cavity first. The air serves a threefold purpose; it keeps the cavity dry; clears the field from chips; and, what is important here, it lessens the heat of drilling which is responsible for most of the pain in cavity preparation. Those inexperienced with the method must be careful at first, as the absence of pain and the clear field may lead one to think that the bur is not cutting; as a result one is liable to drill deeper than is absolutely necessary.

Digitized by Google

Light.—This agent has been brought forth at different times as having a peculiarly favorable effect upon hypersensitive patients. In one method the rays of light are colored by passing through a blue glass. This is accomplished by darkening the room and employing a blue bulb (16 or 32 c. p.) on an ordinary electric socket. Whether the light acts locally or affects the vision and thus the general nervous system has yet to be demonstrated. In the author's experience with this agent the result thus far has not been encouraging.

Electricity.—The electric current has been employed as a means of carrying certain drugs into the dentin and pulp tissue for obtundent purposes. The method is called *cataphoresis;* but because of the expensive and complicated apparatus, the length of time required to obtund, as well as the often unsatisfactory, and, in not a few instances, disastrous results, the method has generally been discarded.

II. ESCHAROTICS OR CAUSTICS

Any drug or agent which will cauterize the dentinal fibrillæ, will obtund sensitive dentin. There are many drugs, however, belonging to this class that cannot be used for this purpose because of their deleterious effect upon both the tooth structure and the pulp tissue. For instance, the strong mineral acids will disorganize the protoplasmic dentinal fibrillæ; but they will also disintegrate the inorganic structure of the tooth. Arsenic trioxid has a specific poisonous action upon the fibrillæ, but there is no known means of preventing the same deleterious effect upon the cells of the pulp tissue.

The most valuable escharotics for desensitizing the dentin are:

Phenol.	Trichloracetic Acid.
Zinc Chlorid.	Silver Nitrate.
Trioxymethylen.	

It must be noted that, while these agents will obtund, the ultimate result is too often produced, with the possible exception of phenol, at the expense of quite as much suffering as they save.

Phenol.—This drug has local analgesic properties besides those of a cauterant, and will, therefore, be discussed under another and more important class of agents.

Zinc Chlorid.—Solutions of this drug of various strengths can be used to advantage in a class of cavities where the decay or softened dentin does not extend too close to the pulp. Zinc chlorid coagulates albumin, and in the process hydrochloric acid is liberated. For this reason the application of strong solutions is painful and should not

Digitized by Google

be resorted to in deep cavities unless the irritating action of the agent is modified. This can be done to a marked degree by selecting alcohol and chloroform as the vehicle in which to make the solution.

A useful formula is here given:

℞—Zinci Chloridi, gr. xx (1.3 Gm.)
Alcoholis, f℥iv (15.0 mils)
Chloroformi, q. s. ad. f℥j (30.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Apply to the cavity on a small pledget of cotton and gently evaporate to dryness.
Note.—If the zinc salt in alcohol does not make a clear solution, it indicates that some of the salt has been oxidized; the solution can be cleared by adding one drop of dilute hydrochloric acid.

This is an excellent remedy to apply to the cavity immediately before using compressed air.

Trichloracetic Acid.—In concentrated solution trichloracetic acid causes considerable pain when first applied to a sensitive cavity, therefore defeating the object of its use; but in a 10 or 15 per cent. solution it produces but little pain or inflammatory reaction. In this strength it may be employed, but not always with satisfactory results.

Silver Nitrate.—This agent is perhaps the only known prophylactic drug for decay of tooth-structure. In the posterior part of the mouth where the cementum is exposed to external influences and thus is sensitive, or in shallow cavities, especially in children's teeth, the use of this drug, in the solid pencil form or in solutions of varying strength, will be found valuable, both as a means of reducing the sensitiveness and preventing further ingress of caries. As an agent for obtunding the sensitivity of the dentin in an ordinary cavity it should not be considered, for various reasons. When the agent is employed for the purposes above mentioned, the cavity, after the application, should be kept free from saliva for a few minutes, and, if possible, exposed to sunlight, thus decomposing the silver salt as referred to under the subject of *Light* (see p. 252). A solution of sodium chlorid should always be at hand when using silver nitrate, and in case any of the latter agent should accidentally get on the mucous membrane of the patient's mouth its action can be checked at once by rinsing the mouth with this antidotal solution.

Trioxymethylen.—The use of this drug for desensitizing purposes will be mentioned later under **Desensitizing Paste.**

Digitized by Google

III. LOCAL ANODYNES OR LOCAL ANESTHETICS

In the judicious use of agents belonging to this class the author firmly believes will ultimately be found the surest and safest road to success. This statement stands as it first appeared in this book (1909). Subsequent investigation by the author, which will be referred to later under *Desensitizing Paste*, has proven the correctness of the statement. The following agents, or a combination of two or more, will be found to be of the utmost value:

Cocain.	Eugenol.
Novocain.	Phenol.
Neothesin.	Ethyl Chlorid.
Menthol.	Ether.
Oil of Cloves.	Chloroform.

Cocain.—Both the alkaloid, cocain, and the alkaloidal salt, cocain hydrochlorid, are used in various ways for obtunding sensitive dentin. An important physiologic property of cocain to be remembered here is its power, when applied directly to the mucous membrane or when injected or forced into the pulp tissue, of inducing a condition of analgesia in the part by paralyzing the sensory nerve filaments. In addition to this, it causes a blanching of the part which is subsequently followed by congestion. It should also be remembered that pharmacologists have proved beyond a doubt that cocain is a *general protoplasmic poison;* that muscles as well as nerves and nerve-ends cease to contract or to conduct stimuli when they are exposed to even dilute solutions of the drug. The only reason why the deleterious effect is more noticeable upon nerve than upon other kinds of tissue is that here we are dealing with the medium of sensation and expression.

The author deems it wise to call attention to these well-established physiologic, pharmacologic and pathologic facts, for many instruments have been devised for forcing solutions of cocain hydrochlorid of various strengths, not only into the dentinal tubuli, thereby paralyzing the fibrillæ, but into the pulp proper, anesthetizing this organ as well. In view of these facts, it would appear that we are *seldom justified in completely anesthetizing the pulp of a tooth for the purpose of painlessly preparing a cavity therein.* Therefore, under the subject of *Cataphoresis* previously referred to, little was written; and, for the same reasons, the method of anesthetizing the pulp by *high-pressure*, *interosseous*, or *conductive anesthesia* for obtundent purposes only will not be considered. These methods will be discussed subsequently under Pulp Removal.

Digitized by Google

Cocain and the alkaloidal salt, cocain hydrochlorid, are safe and reliable agents for obtunding sensitive dentin, if confined to the dentinal structure of the tooth. Frequently, in deep-seated cavities, especially in children's teeth, the sensitiveness can be completely overcome by sealing in the cavity for a day or two a creamy paste made by mixing the alkaloid with liquid petroleum. The *oleate of cocain* (N.F.) can also be used for this purpose. The paste or oleate should cover the entire surface of dentin which we subsequently expect to excavate. Good results can also be immediately obtained by the use of the following remedy:

℞—Cocainæ, gr. xx (1.3 Gm.)
Chloroformi, f℥ij (8.0 mils)
Etheris, q. s. ad. f℥j (30.0 mils).—M.
Sig.—After the rubber dam has been adjusted, apply to the cavity on a small pledget of cotton and evaporate to dryness.

In the use of this remedy, advantage is taken of the physical law previously referred to in connection with *Cold*. As the volatile liquids, ether and chloroform, evaporate, a certain amount of heat is abstracted from the tooth-structure, and a coating of the alkaloid, driven to an extent into the dentin, is left in the cavity. This remedy will not completely obtund all sensitive dentin, but its use will be a material aid.

There can be no objection in favorable cases, provided the dentin has been previously sterilized, to using aqueous solutions of cocain hydrochlorid with uniform pressure over the entire area of the cavity, thus forcing the anesthetizing solution an equal distance into the dentin. This is an extremely difficult thing to do without forcing the solution at some more favorable point in the cavity through the tubuli and into the pulp. However, there are cavities where good results can be accomplished by the careful use of this method. In some cases of gingival cavities good results can be obtained by hypodermically injecting a 1 to 1.5 per cent. solution of cocain hydrochlorid into the pericemental membrane somewhere near the apex of the root. This practice should not be generally recommended.

Novocain.—This drug may be substituted for cocain and used as above described. Its action is much slower; and, for the purposes mentioned, it possesses no advantages. Sterile, isotonic solutions are recommended to be used hypodermically for ***hypersensitive dentin.*** The drug is injected by the infiltration, inter-

Digitized by Google

osseous, and conductive anesthesia methods (see pp. 130 and 138, and works on Local Anesthesia.)

Neothesin.—The use of this agent in combination with other drugs for desensitizing dentin will be considered later.

Menthol.—This drug can be substituted for the cocain in the above prescription with ether and chloroform, and used in exactly the same manner. An oily liquid (mentho-chloral) can be formed by heating together over a water-bath, or rubbing in a mortar, an equal amount of menthol and chloral. This remedy will be found efficacious by sealing in the cavity for a few days.

Oil of Cloves.—A profound analgesic effect can be produced upon sensitive dentin, especially in deep-seated cavities, by using oil of cloves and heat in the following manner, as suggested by Dr. C. N. Johnson: After carefully desiccating the dentin by means of warm alcohol and gentle heat, a pledget of cotton saturated with oil of cloves should be placed in the cavity and a current of heated dry air directed thereon until the cotton is nearly dry. This should be repeated as often as the case demands.

Eugenol.—Eugenol is the chief constituent of oil of cloves and can be used in the same manner as the latter drug, as above described.

Phenol.—This drug can be substituted, with equally good results, for the oil of cloves or eugenol, as described in the foregoing method. Care should be taken here, however, in directing the heated air, that the fumes of phenol do not escape in the patient's face. Oil of cloves, eugenol, and phenol are three true *local anodynes*, any one of which, if hermetically sealed in a cavity for a few weeks, will check the continued irritation of the fibrillæ and pulp, and thus aid Nature to restore these structures to their normal condition when they should not be responsive. The author's phenol compound (see p. 311) is an excellent remedy for this latter purpose. By this means, then, the sensitiveness of the dentin can also be allayed.

Ethyl Chlorid, Ether, and Chloroform.—These agents, by their extreme volatility, produce a condition of analgesia, thereby obtunding sensitive dentin, as previously explained under *Cold*.

IV. GENERAL ANODYNES OR ANALGESICS

Before the introduction of Desensitizing Paste and the modern and improved methods of using local anesthetics, it was sometimes necessary in order to do permanent work for certain highly nervous

Digitized by Google

patients to resort to the administration of this class of drugs. The agents largely used for this purpose are:

Opium.	Nitrous oxid.
The bromids.	Chloroform.

Opium.—This drug is a most powerful analgesic, and while there are some dental conditions where it or its chief alkaloid, morphin, is truly indicated, the drug ought not, in the author's judgment, to be given for the treatment of sensitive dentin.

The Bromids.—The bromids of potassium, sodium, and ammonium are valuable drugs in certain cases. Perhaps there is no drug which will quiet a nervous patient more readily, when the nervousness comes purely from fear or dread, than potassium bromid, which is the representative of this class. In such cases, where it is deemed necessary, the following prescription will prove helpful:

℞—Potassii bromidi, ℥jss (6.0 Gm.)
Syrupi sarsaparillæ comp., f℥iij (90.0 mils.)—M.
Sig.—Take a tablespoonful in water after meals the day before coming to the office.

Nitrous Oxid.—There are varying apparatus on the market by which nitrous oxid gas can be administered through the nose. It is possible with such an apparatus to carry the patient just to the analgesic stage, and hold him under its influence until a sensitive cavity has been painlessly prepared. Oxygen, in proper proportions, is generally mixed with the anesthetic agent for this purpose, as it overcomes the cyanosis which frequently follows the prolonged use of nitrous oxid alone. In cases where the operator feels that it is necessary to resort to this method, good results can be accomplished.

Chloroform.—With the patient in the upright position, chloroform can be carried to the analgesic stage and sensitive cavities prepared. Most authorities agree, however, that chloroform should not be administered unless the patient is in the recumbent position, and that the analgesic stage is the most dangerous. Death has been known to occur suddenly after a few inhalations in cases of marked idiosyncrasy against the drug.

Hewitt, De Ford, and others report excellent results from the use of chloroform in the manner described above. In selected cases the author has used the method with uniformly good results; but the general use of the drug in this manner is not advised.

Digitized by Google

DESENSITIZING PASTE

Desensitizing Paste is a preparation introduced by the author to the profession as an absolute *specific* for *hypersensitive dentin*. The formula contains neothesin, thymol and trioxymethylen, in the proportion of 11, 12 and 77 parts, respectively; all combined with a petroleum base, and incorporated in a fibrous vehicle and colored with an insoluble pigment. One grain of the preparation is sufficient for about fifteen applications. On this basis the amount necessary for one application contains neothesin $\frac{1}{300}$ gr., thymol $\frac{1}{270}$ gr., and trioxymethylen $\frac{1}{43}$ gr. The use of the remedy in the hands of careful operators is safe and absolutely reliable. In the hands of careless operators no effective remedy or method of desensitizing dentin is safe. The dental pulp is a delicate and highly susceptible organ, and it must, therefore, be handled with intelligence and care. Most patients who repose *confidence* in the operator are sensible, and are willing to endure some pain in the preparation of cavities in their teeth. With confidence, a true running engine, a sharp bur, a dry cavity, a steady hand, and a knowledge of what ought to be done in a given case, it is not necessary to use Desensitizing Paste or any other absolute and positive means of desensitizing the dentin in every case which presents. Yet, it must not be forgotten that the preparation of cavities in vital teeth without some means of obtunding the dentin more positively than has been done in the past, is generally a painful operation which is dreaded by most patients.

In his work on "Operative Dentistry," published in 1908, on page 149, Dr. G. V. Black says: "The treatment of sensitive dentin for the purpose of relieving or limiting the pain in the excavation of cavities has been prominently before the dental profession since the first discovery of anesthesia, and, perhaps, for many years before that time. Personally, I have watched the progress of this effort through many years of what has been fairly close, careful observation in clinical practice, and always with an earnest desire to relieve patients of suffering in the necessary cutting in the preparation of cavities. In all of this time, and up to the present, the results have been so poor, or so uncertain, that, as compared with skillful use of well-selected cutting instruments, well-tempered and always sharp, they have not been a success." The author concludes by saying: "But the relief of suffering is an ever-present duty, and the search for this very desirable thing should continue."

Physiologic Action.—It is highly essential that we understand how desensitization is brought about when Desensitizing Paste

Digitized by Google

is applied to the dentin. The neothesin applied directly to the exposed sensitive dentinal fibrillæ acts quickly thereon and temporarily paralyzes the ends thus exposed. The thymol volatilizes and permeates the softened dentin. The heat of the body gradually liberates formaldehyd from the trioxymethylen, which gas diffuses through the decayed dentin, combining chemically with the amine group of the protein constituent of the dentinal fibrillæ. The formaldehyd also acts upon certain intermediate and end-products that may be present in the carious tooth-structure as a result of albuminous decomposition, and this agent, together with the thymol, brings about *complete sterilization*. Thus the dentin affected by the remedy is not only *desensitized*, but *sterilized* as well, which is an all-important factor. The vitality of the fibrillæ is destroyed in the area affected, but the remedy will not affect sound dentin to any dangerous depth. In the preparation of the cavity, in the average case, the dentin affected by the remedy is practically all removed. If it is not, I know from my experience with the preparation that the vitality of the fibers is subsequently restored, for after a few weeks sensation returns. While this regeneration is being brought about, the tooth may develop slight *thermal sensitiveness* which lasts for about a week. This occurs only in a small percentage of cases. It is mentioned here simply that the operator may know the cause, and that should such sensitiveness develop, it will be of short duration.

Indications.—Desensitizing Paste may be used with perfect safety in all cases of hypersensitive dentin where the pulp of the tooth is not diseased to the extent of necessitating the removal of the organ because of its pathology. As has previously been mentioned, it is not necessary to employ the remedy in every case of cavity preparation. Where the pain is not great, and where the patient is willing to endure the small amount, no therapeutic remedy is needed; but every dentist has cases in which it is impossible to do satisfactory work because of the hypersensitiveness of the dentin. In all such cases the use of Desensitizing Paste will prove a blessing to humanity and a godsend to those earnest practitioners who have grown gray and nervous standing at their chairs trying to properly prepare cavities in the teeth of hypersensitive patients.

Making the Application.—In employing Desensitizing Paste, it is not necessary to remove any of the carious dentin that is at all sensitive. To attempt this often causes pain, and the remedy, if used at all, is intended to, and will, *absolutely eliminate all pain in cavity preparation*. The cavity and immediate tooth-surface should

Digitized by Google

be dried with alcohol and a small amount of the paste sealed therein with a good cement. Better results will be obtained if the remedy is spread over the cavity surface. This can be accomplished with a ball of cotton held in the pliers. In gingival cavities, such as is illustrated in Fig. 3, it is often necessary to flow the cement over the enamel surface, depending entirely on its adhesiveness to hold the paste on the softened tooth-structure.

Twenty-four to forty-eight hours is sufficiently long to bring about complete desensitization, and this is the proper length of time to leave the remedy sealed in a tooth. However, no harm will follow if the paste should remain in the tooth for a longer period. The small amount employed will soon exert its full influence, after

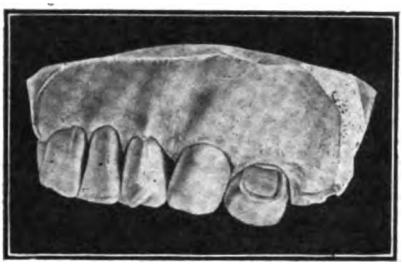


FIG. 3.—Prepared cavity.

which no further action follows. An effort should be made to hermetically seal all the margins of the cavity—thus confining the action of the remedy to the dentin. This is sometimes difficult to do with gingival cavities. If it is not accomplished, a certain amount of the formaldehyd gas may escape as it is liberated, in which case the dentin would not be profoundly affected.

When it becomes necessary to prepare a cavity in practically sound dentin, as is frequently the case for bridgework and in superficial cavities, it may be necessary to make a second application of the paste in order to prevent any pain. In all cases where there is considerable decay, one application will be sufficient to desensitize the entire cavity. The depth to which the dentin is affected by the remedy will depend upon the condition of the dentin. In using Desensitizing Paste it will be found that in about 5 to 10 per cent. of all cases the teeth to which it has been applied will grumble or have a tendency to ache. If the remedy has been used where indicated, no alarm need be felt because of this, for it will subside in a few hours.

Precautions.—There are no special precautions to be observed in using Desensitizing Paste, so far as the remedy itself is concerned.

Digitized by Google

It will not even destroy normal gum tissue to any appreciable extent, at least, if sealed in contact with it. It will be necessary, however, for the dentist who desires to use this remedy intelligently to so school himself in pulp pathology that the remedy may not be used in those cases where the reading of the clinical symptoms would clearly indicate the removal of the pulp.

In deep-seated cavities which approximate the pulp, yet where the organ is not diseased to the extent of necessitating its removal, the paste need not be applied to the entire cavity. In these cases very small doses may be placed over such areas only as will need to be drilled subsequently in the cavity preparation, and some anodyne remedy like phenol compound placed immediately over the pulp. The danger in using this preparation does not lie in the possibility of affecting deleteriously a healthy pulp, provided there is sound dentin between the bottom of the cavity and the pulp proper, but rather in the probability of diseased pulps being left in teeth to die and putrefy, because of the absence of sensation in the dentin after the remedy has been used. The decision, therefore, as to whether or not the pulp is diseased and removal necessary should be made before employing Desensitizing Paste.

In my clinical experiments I have, at times, purposely used the paste in cavities of extensive decay, where I suspected the pulp was affected. At the subsequent sitting I was able to painlessly remove all of the carious dentin which extended very nearly, and in some cases quite to the pulp. In cases where the pulp was exposed it was found to be sensitive and would bleed freely, indicating, to my mind, that it had not been affected by the remedy. However, it is our plain duty in such cases as these to remove the pulp, for I do not believe that decay can extend to or nearly to the pulpal organ without the latter being affected by the carious process, if not infected by the germs present in the cavity.

Caution in Relation to Diseased Pulps.—In detailing the use of this valuable remedy I wish specifically to call attention to the fact that every dentist has had cases in his practice where vital teeth have ached after permanent fillings have been inserted, and that pulps occasionally die following these operations. Unless the dentist is well posted on pulp pathology and is cautious in his diagnosis similar experiences will follow the use of Desensitizing Paste. If such should be the case, however, it will be through no fault of the remedy—it will be the fault of mistaken diagnosis. I can understand how much harm may follow the use of any remedy or method by which cavities can be painlessly prepared. In the hands of the

Digitized by Google

careless operator pulps may be left in which should have been removed. In the hands of that great army of conscientious practitioners, who constitute the vast majority, Desensitizing Paste will lighten their burdens and prove its worth (Fig. 4).

FIG. 4.

FIG. 4.—This radiograph was taken of one of the first cases in which the author used Desensitizing Paste in his practice. The patient was a girl about fourteen years of age whose teeth were extremely hypersensitive and decayed rapidly. On account of the nervousness of the little patient and the hypersensitiveness of the dentin, only temporary work could be done. This first lower bicuspid erupted when the child was seven years old, and began to decay at once. As will be noticed it is a malformed tooth. A small mesial cavity had been filled with amalgam. The larger distal cavity was filled several times with cement.

Desensitizing Paste was applied on April 3, 1914. The following day the cavity was prepared absolutely without pain in the presence of several dentists during the "Office Clinics" held in connection with the Fiftieth Anniversary of the Illinois State Dental Society.

The cavity was subsequently filled with porcelain. On account of lack of proper anchorage (over one-half of crown was gone) this filling came out the following January. I decided to fill the cavity with synthetic porcelain. Upon drilling for anchorage, the dentin was as sensitive as though it had never been completely desensitized. The radiograph was taken April 3, 1916, two years after desensitization; and the tooth has been tested for vitality every few months with the electric current. The case is one of hundreds in the author's practice which prove that, properly used, Desensitizing Paste will not kill the dental pulp.

In closing, I want to say that the dread of the dental chair, the severe nervous strain upon dentists, the failure of operative procedures upon vital teeth and the ruthless destruction of the dental pulp, with its frequent evil sequelæ, have been more largely due to hypersensitive dentin than to all other causes combined. It is a great pleasure and satisfaction, therefore, for the author to here discuss the uses of Desensitizing Paste in connection with the therapeutics of this condition.

Digitized by Google

DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT OF DISEASES OF THE DENTAL PULP; INCLUDING THE DESTRUCTION AND REMOVAL OF THE ORGAN

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

In the treatment of the dental pulp, as in all other therapy, it is highly essential that we differentiate between the various kinds of diseases of this organ, and by means of reasoning, using common sense and judgment, and the process of exclusion, arrive at a correct diagnosis before applying our therapeutics. Any other method of procedure is little short of guesswork; and we must admit that there has been too much guessing at results, on the part of many, in the dental therapeutics of the past. In order to correct this evil we should delve more deeply into the science of pathology, and then, learning to properly interpret the clinical manifestations of these various diseases, we can select and apply our remedies along more rational lines.

The Normal Dental Pulp.—To know a tissue or organ in disease one must first know it in health. Therefore, let us briefly review the anatomy and physiology of the dental pulp (Fig. 5). Our histologists inform us that this organ is the remains of the original dental papilla, changed somewhat to meet its present environment, and is composed of soft embryonal connective tissue, with an outer layer of odontoblastic cells, the whole being well supplied with blood-vessel and nerves. The blood-vessels of the pulp are supposed to communicate with the general circulation through the apical foramen or foramina of the tooth. One or more small arterial trunks enter the pulp cavity at the apex, and, coursing occlusally through the center of the tissue, give off many branches. Near the occlusal end of the pulp they further divide into capillaries, and form a fine plexus around the peripheral portion of the pulp. The blood-vessels are generously distributed through the tissue. The veins form a similar plexus, and a central vein, analogous to the artery, receives the blood from these many venules and conducts it through the apical foramen. The nerves of the pulp are transmitted through the apical foramina together with the blood-vessels. Several bundles of medullated nerve fibers enter the foramen and break up into a plexus of nerves, which are widely distributed through the pulp tissue (Turner).

Digitized by Google

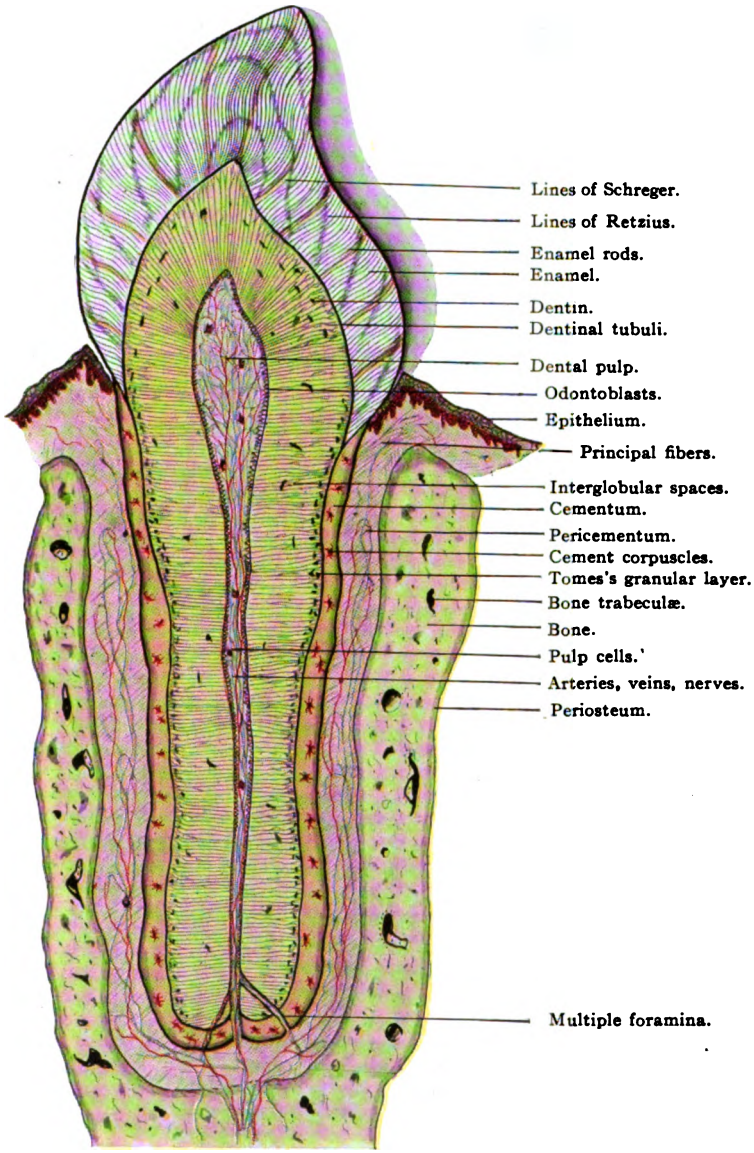


FIG. 5.—Showing histology of the normal tooth and supporting structures.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Character of Blood-vessels.—The walls of the pulpal blood-vessel are unusually thin. The arteries are found to be almost devoid of the external fibrous coat; and, according to Noyes, the muscular layer is represented by a single involuntary fiber, while the walls of the veins are formed by a single layer of endothelial cells. It has long been known that the pulp tissue, like the brain, contains no lymphatics, and when we recall the thinness of the walls of the blood-vessels and that the organ is confined within a cavity having unyielding walls, the absence of lymphatics becomes of the greatest pathologic significance.

Common Sources of Irritation.—Before taking up the pathology of the pulp, let us consider for a moment some of the more common sources of irritation of this organ and pericemental membrane, due to ignorance or carelessness, or both, on the part of dentists. So far as drugs are concerned, I am of the opinion that alcohol causes more irritation to these structures than any other one remedy. Ethyl alcohol, 95 per cent., is a most excellent agent, but a much abused one in dental practice. For removing the gelatinous coating and sterilizing the crowns of teeth included in the rubber dam, it is invaluable, but it is never necessary to use alcohol in this strength to desiccate or sterilize the dentin of a cavity in a vital tooth which we desire to fill, or for desiccating a canal previous to the insertion of a root-filling. That these results can be accomplished by using this agent, no one will deny; but, if we will only stop to consider, we must also know that the results are too frequently obtained at the expense of irritation of the pulp and tissue in the periapical region. I know that the use of 95 per cent. alcohol for such purposes has long been an established practice, and how startling and, to some perhaps, unfounded these statements may appear; but, nevertheless, I know too that these indictments against the indiscriminate use of alcohol in the treatment of teeth are justifiable, when we are considering the etiology of these diseases. What then shall we use as a substitute? My answer is to use either *alcohol modified*, which is 70 per cent. alcohol and 30 per cent. water, to which solution 1 gr. of thymol is added to each fluidounce; or a 10 per cent. alcoholic solution of phenol compound, or some other remedy having similar properties—those of desiccant, anodyne and disinfectant. The popular belief is that phenol is like an oil and that it is necessary to follow its use in a cavity, for example, with ethyl alcohol in order to have the cement adhere. This is an erroneous idea. Phenol, though oleaginous in its physical appearance, is not an oil, any more than is sulphuric acid which is also oleaginous in character.

Digitized by Google

Phenol is an alcohol and can be evaporated with warm air almost as readily as ethyl alcohol, and absolutely without irritation (pain) of the tissues involved.

Still another common and fruitful source of pulp irritation is the lack of protection to the organ in our extreme methods of cavity preparation in filling vital teeth, frequently resulting in the metallic inlay or filling being placed in too close proximity to the pulp. It is not my intention to decry the principles involved in Operative Dentistry; but my experience has taught me that in filling proximo-occlusial cavities in molar and bicuspid teeth, especially with inlays, with the opportunity afforded for occlusal anchorage, it is not necessary to approximate the pulp as closely as is advocated by some teachers on the ground of principle. This word "principle" is a broad term, and we should remember that there are principles involved in the treatment and protection of the dental pulp as well as in the retaining of a filling or inlay in the tooth. I have long since stopped trying to make myself and my patients believe that teeth, the pulps of which are thus continuously irritated by thermal changes, will soon be cared for by Nature, when no further trouble will be experienced. On the contrary, I know that while Nature is a kind mother, sometimes I think so kind that we are inclined to take undue advantage of her, yet in the majority of cases, both constructive and destructive diseases result which subsequently necessitate the removal of the pulp.

Many pulps have been irritated and frequently passive hyperemia or inflammation has been produced by the injudicious use of gutta-percha for sealing-in dressings or for separating purposes when proximal cavities existed. Unless due care is taken in the use of this material, even when the cavities are not deep and when no active hyperemia is present, infectious material or the medicine is liable to be forced through the dentin and into the pulp, causing the diseases above mentioned and jeopardizing the life of the organ. Cement had better be used for temporary sealing purposes, and before separating carious teeth with gutta-percha the cavities should be cleansed of débris, and the dentin sterilized. The cause of pulp trouble following the filling of a vital tooth can often be traced to the lack of sterilization of the dentin before the filling was inserted. Let it be remembered that *preventive therapeutics* is the watch-word of the hour.

It should be understood, then, that the dental pulp is a delicate and susceptible organ, responding to the slightest irritation, it matters not whether the irritant be of a thermal, mechanical,

Digitized by Google

chemical, or electrical nature. Inasmuch as any one of these various classes of irritants may cause hyperemia of the pulp, and this disease, if continuous and progressive, may result in more serious pathologic conditions, I will now direct your attention to the pathology of this organ, considering the etiology, diagnosis and treatment of (1) such Constructive and (2) Destructive Diseases as are commonly found in the general practice of dentistry.

Digitized by Google

CONSTRUCTIVE DISEASES

SECONDARY DENTIN

The deposition of what is known as *secondary dentin* frequently occurs in the pulp-chambers of teeth as the result of slight but continued irritation of the pulpal organ, after it has enjoyed a physiologic period of rest from dentin formation. This particular calcific deposit is always attached to the dentin, immediately under the site of irritation; and, if produced in a limited amount only, affords a natural protection to the pulp. The causes of secondary dentin are many and varied. The stimulus may result from such external irritation as follows:

1. *Exposed Cementum.*
2. *Abraded or Eroded Surfaces.*
3. *Cavities of Decay.*
4. *Metallic Fillings.*
5. *Gold or Porcelain Jacket Crowns upon ground-down vital teeth, etc.*

It is possible and oftentimes advantageous to so treat, stimulate and yet protect the pulp in cases of deep-seated cavities that a layer of secondary dentin will be deposited. I shall refer to this again in connection with the treatment of active hyperemia of the pulp.

In those cases where the stimulus continues over a period of years, we are quite likely to find the pulp-chamber and root-canals filled with secondary dentin. The diagnosis and treatment of this condition is unimportant unless untoward symptoms arise indicating an acute apical pericemental involvement or neuralgia, in which case the pulp should be removed. The radiograph here is an invaluable aid in arriving at a correct diagnosis. The removal of the pulp in these cases is often a difficult problem, for neither cocain hydrochlorid nor arsenic trioxid will affect pulps thus diseased in the usual way. It is frequently necessary to resort to conductive or interosseous anesthesia or to the administration of nitrous oxid and oxygen in order to remove these pulps without pain. Many an obscure case of neuralgia has this condition as its greatest etiological factor. This will be referred to again in detail under the

Digitized by Google

Diagnosis and Treatment of Neuralgia. The author has had many cases in his practice where the canals were nearly and in some instances completely obliterated without any untoward symptoms being manifested. Such a case is illustrated in Fig. 6. In this case I desired to insert a bridge. On opening into the third molar and second bicuspid, which teeth were to be used for the abutments, we were unable to find any canals in the bicuspid and only a small lingual canal in the molar. The radiograph confirmed

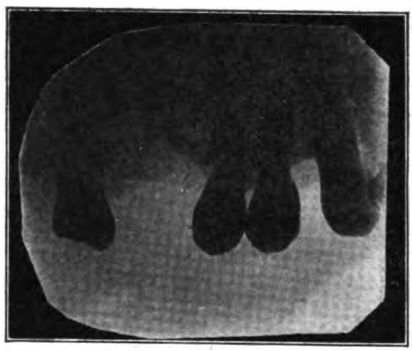


FIG. 6.

the clinical findings. The patient gave a history of having had an operation for abscess of the frontal sinus and both antrums about ten years previous. The bridge was inserted in January 1909, and has given no trouble since.

PULP NODULES

Pulp nodules are calcific bodies of varying shapes and sizes, supposedly the result of secretion, and occurring within the pulp, rarely, if ever, being attached to the dentin. They are found more generally in middle-aged or elderly patients whose teeth have been subjected to that continued irritation the source of which was mentioned as an etiologic factor in the formation of secondary dentin. Black, however, observes that pulp nodules may, and frequently do, form in other teeth of the same denture which are not directly involved in the irritation; and that irritation of the pulp of one tooth very frequently causes a general hyperesthesia of the pulps of all the teeth in that mouth; especially is this true of that type of individual classed as neuralgic.

The diagnosis of pulp nodules is not always a simple matter. The symptoms are of the subjective variety, and the radiograph does not always confirm the suspicion. Moorehead, Raper, and others have reported cases where pulp nodules are distinctly shown

Digitized by Google

in the picture. The author has recently observed several such cases. On opening into the tooth the nodule was found to be present.

In Fig. 7 is shown the best specimen of a pulp nodule that I have ever seen. The tooth is a lower third molar and was extracted because it was causing more or less trouble. There is but slight mechanical abrasion and no other known cause for the pathologic

FIG. 7.

condition. Fig. 8 shows a pulp nodule nearly one-quarter of an inch long which fits the canal as perfectly as a pea fits the pod. The tooth for years had carried an ill-adjusted gold shell crown, which had been placed without devitalization and the proper trimming of the root. In the illustration also are shown several nodules of varying shapes and sizes, such as are commonly found in practice. The

FIG. 8.

following five illustrations are from Dr. Howard R. Raper, of Indianapolis, a dental radiographer, whose opinion I value highly. His description follows:

"Fig. 9. The upper arrow points to a pulp nodule in a lower first molar. The radiograph is by Pfahler, of Philadelphia, and I have no reliable history of the case. The radiograph would lead me to believe that the pulp-chamber has been opened up and much of the dentin cut away from about the nodule; hence the latter can

Digitized by Google

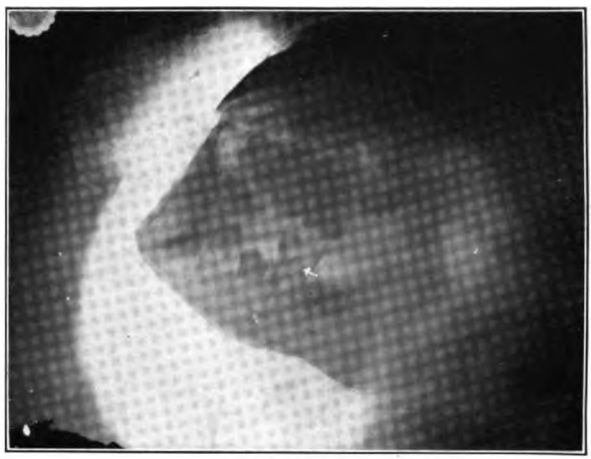


FIG. 9.

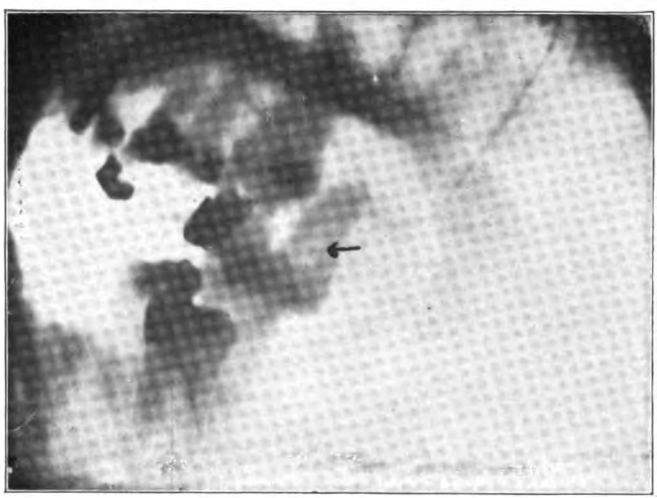


FIG. 10.

Digitized by Google

FIG. 11.

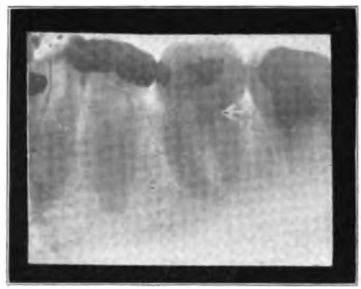


FIG. 12.

FIG. 13.

Digitized by Google

be seen much more clearly than any other I have ever seen in a radiograph.

"Fig. 10. In this case the upper third molar is missing. A pulp nodule is seen in the pulp-chamber of the upper second molar. This molar has not been opened as yet, nor will I advise the operator to open the tooth until I have made another radiograph to verify the findings in the first one. The case is one of neuralgia with an obscure etiology and a history of pulp nodules having been found in other teeth. I am, therefore, strongly of the opinion that the shadow seen in the radiograph is a pulp nodule. The radiograph shows also a faulty canal filling in the lower molar—a condition capable of causing pain. The treatment of the lower molar, however, has failed to give relief, which leads me to believe that the neuralgia is due to the pulp nodule.

"Fig. 11. This is a case from the practice of Dr. M. L. Rhein, of New York, and shows a pulp nodule in an upper lateral incisor with an abscess at the end of the incompletely formed root. The diagnosis was verified by removing the nodule.

"Fig. 12 shows a shadow in the lower first molar which might be mistaken for a pulp nodule. The shadow is a small amalgam filling on the buccal near the gingival line.

"Fig. 13. These negatives show nodules in all four lower incisors. The nodules in the central incisors extend practically from chamber to apex. The teeth have been extracted and dissected and the diagnosis verified. Though these nodules can be seen in the negatives it is improbable that lantern slide cuts made from the negatives would show them.

"There is no longer any doubt as to whether or not pulp nodules can be radiographed. They can be, but it is difficult. I would never make a diagnosis from one radiograph. I would make at least two."

The treatment of teeth containing pulp nodules which are causing neuralgia or other disturbances is practically the same as that of secondary dentin, which involves the removal of the pulp, and will be considered later.

Digitized by Google

DESTRUCTIVE DISEASES

It is often a difficult problem for the conscientious operator to decide upon a method of procedure that will best conserve the interest of the patient. Especially is this true when we are trying to determine whether a diseased pulp should be saved or whether it would be best for all concerned to destroy and remove it. It is so easy in most cases to anesthetize or devitalize the pulp that many dentists resort to this method of treatment in nearly all diseases of the organ. When we consider the fine and tortuous canals which we so frequently encounter and the difficulty, both of removing the dead tissue from such canals and of thoroughly filling them subsequently, it is a question whether or not the best interest of the patient is conserved by adopting this method as the general practice.

While it is true, generally speaking, that pulps which are diseased beyond the condition of active hyperemia should be removed, it is also true that this organ has been destroyed far too ruthlessly in the past. The work of Rosenow, the observations of Hunter, Murphy, Billings, the Mayos, Crile, and others of the medical profession, and the investigations of Grieves, Rhein, Gilmer, Price, Logan, Moorehead, Hartzell, and others of our own profession, along the line of periapical infections and the systemic results, should teach us to conserve the dental pulp in every case where it is practicable and consistent with good dentistry. Thousands upon thousands of normal pulps have been sacrificed for no other reason than that the dentin of the tooth was hypersensitive. When we think of the difficulty—not to mention the carelessness—under which these pulps are often removed, and of the frequent periapical infections resulting therefrom, we behold a sad spectacle, indeed!

I have never heretofore, nor do I intend now, to plead for the life of the pulp when the reading of the clinical symptoms clearly indicates its removal; but I do mean to say that in all cases an effort should be made to determine as nearly as possible the exact pathologic condition, and our decision should be based upon these findings. From the viewpoint of the diagnostician there are few subjects of greater importance than those of hyperemia and inflammation of the dental pulp.

Digitized by Google

Diagnosis of Active and Passive Hyperemia, and True Pulpitis.—In the pulp tissue, as in all living tissues of the body, we may have two kinds of hyperemia—active, or arterial, and passive, or venous. The former is defined as an excessive amount of blood in the arteries and the latter as an excessive amount of blood in the veins. Active hyperemia is due to a determination of blood to a given part as the result of reaction to an irritant, and as long as it remains without an excessive immigration of the white blood corpuscles, it is active, or arterial hyperemia. The cause of passive hyperemia is different. Here the blood may be held back by some obstruction in the veins which prevents the return of blood to the heart. Inglis says: "The backing up of the blood following venous obstruction produces tension upon the vessels, followed by diapedesis of red corpuscles and exudation of watery fluid—the condition of edema. In inflammation arterial hyperemia appears as the first stage, followed by a collection of leucocytes along the walls of the small veins, and the immigration of some into the perivascular tissue. As this eventually leads to stoppage of the blood current, and even to stasis, the condition is essentially a venous hyperemia. Accompanying the immigration of leucocytes is an exudation of lymph, highly coagulable in character, which distends the lymph spaces in the tissue and produces the characteristic swelling."

The thing of special interest here is that in inflammation or even in venous hyperemia certain blood elements escape through the temporarily dilated vessels into the perivascular tissue, which becomes coagulated, and when the tissue involved is the dental pulp, which, as we have learned, is without lymphatics, this coagulation of the fluid elements of the blood means death. The procedure of many practitioners when an aching tooth presents involving the pulp is simply to find out whether the latter is dead or alive. If alive, cocain hydrochlorid or arsenic trioxid is generally applied, or else the tooth is treated tentatively by placing cotton dipped in oil of cloves or some other soothing remedy in the cavity, and the patient is dismissed without making any effort to ascertain the condition of the pulp—whether it is in the stage of active hyperemia or passive hyperemia or true inflammation. If, on the other hand, the pulp is found to be dead, the tooth is too frequently treated by opening up the pulp chamber and placing therein a pledget of cotton dipped into the most convenient remedy at hand, leaving the cavity unsealed for fear of causing septic pericementitis or an acute alveolar abscess, and making no further effort to ascertain whether the pulp has been infected by pyogenic microorganisms, producing pus on

Digitized by Google

the exposed surface or, as sometimes occurs, within the substance of the tissue, or whether the germs inaugurating the changes are of the saprophitic variety causing pulp decomposition with gaseous end-products. It is highly essential, therefore, when a patient presents with an aching tooth, that we take the time and trouble to determine not only whether we have a live or a dead pulp with which to contend, but, if the pulp is alive, whether the condition is one of active hyperemia only or passive hyperemia or inflammation; or, if the pulp is dead, whether the condition is a so-called septic pulp with pus formation (pulpal abscess) or one of true gangrene with gaseous end-products. To confirm our diagnosis the tooth should be isolated and kept dry, preferably with the rubber dam, and a careful examination made. On no other basis can rational therapeutics be practised.

Differential Diagnosis.—It is generally a simple matter, by asking a few questions and observing conditions, to differentiate between the pathologic conditions of a vital pulp sufficiently to determine whether the pulp had better be saved or destroyed. In acute active hyperemia the pain occurs only when the irritant is applied, and subsides almost momentarily without treatment. Logan states that "active hyperemia exists in a pulp when the pain begins with a known irritation, lasting only a few moments, or minutes at the most, and subsiding without treatment and not starting again until the application of another known irritant is made."

Treatment of Active Hyperemia.—The treatment of this condition consists in protecting the tooth from the irritant which caused the disease. If a cavity exists which is causing the trouble an anodyne remedy is indicated. One treatment with phenol compound, or other remedies possessing similar properties, should cure a case of active hyperemia due to caries of the tooth. At the second sitting, if the case has a favorable history, the rubber dam should be adjusted and the dressing and carious dentin removed, after which a base of cement may be inserted, the cavity prepared, and the tooth filled. In those cases where the cavity is deep and encroaches upon the pulp, and where the removal of the softened dentin practically or actually exposes the organ, it is necessary, in order to save the pulp, to cap and protect it. This brings us to a consideration of pulp capping.

Factors to be Considered in Pulp Capping.—There are several important factors to be considered, and upon these will largely depend the success or failure following an attempt to save the pulp after it has actually been exposed. In an accidental exposure in the

Digitized by Google

preparation of a cavity, the chances of saving the pulp, provided the injury has not been too great, are far more favorable than if the pulp had been exposed by the necessary removal of the carious dentin. Our success will also depend in no small degree upon the condition of the pulp as well as upon the general condition of the mouth of the patient in which the exposure occurs. In cases of hyperemia of the pulp an effort should be made to determine whether it is active or passive hyperemia, and where pulpitis is present our prognosis will be governed largely by ascertaining whether the pulpitis is partial or complete, or of the nonseptic or septic variety. If there is congestion or any evidence of degeneration of the structural components of the pulpal organ itself, it would be futile to attempt to cap it. Logan is of the opinion that most pulps, the exposure of which has been brought about by caries, have undergone sufficient inflammatory changes to cause their ultimate death, even when carefully capped. Any attempt to permanently save an exposed pulp in the mouth of a patient who is suffering from some systemic derangements interfering with the general circulation, thus lessening vital resistance, would doubtless result in failure also, for in such cases the pulp would fail to receive from the blood supply the necessary elements for the restoration of its functional activity. The general condition of the mouth itself and the care it receives daily from the patient, are essential factors to be taken into consideration before proceeding to cap a pulp; for Hopkins, of Boston, in a carefully conducted series of experiments to ascertain the difference in virulency of certain pathogenic bacteria in different mouths, and in the same mouth under differing conditions, proved that not only did the germs proliferate more rapidly in neglected and uncared-for mouths, but their pathogenic properties were greatly increased.

Exceptional Cases of Exposure.—There is one class of cases of pulp exposure which frequently present in a busy practice and in which it is our plain duty to make the attempt to restore the organ to its normal function, even though the conditions for doing so are not altogether favorable. I mean here those cases in the mouths of young patients where the pulp is exposed from decay and the roots of the tooth have not been fully developed. Every effort should be made to cap such a pulp, provided the clinical symptoms are at all favorable, and thereby save it, if for only a year or two; for experience has demonstrated that to remove the pulp and properly close the large openings in the ends of the roots is, at best, a difficult procedure; that a tooth in this condition, thus treated, is usually a source of infection and its usefulness generally of short duration.

Digitized by Google

In another class of cases the author also believes that we are justified in capping the pulp. For instance, in those cases of exposure where for certain reasons it is desirable to save the tooth, and on which it would be difficult to adjust the rubber dam, aseptically remove the pulp, and thoroughly fill the canals. I wish to state here, however, that I do not mean to infer that a pulp should be capped in an anterior tooth, because of the liability of the tooth-structure discoloring after the pulp has been removed. This phase of the subject will be referred to in detail subsequently under the Preservation of the Color of the Tooth in Pulp Removal.

From the foregoing, then, it should readily be understood that no set of rules can be given, the application of which will surely lead to success. Every case must be studied and treated according to the pathologic conditions found and the operator's best judgment, after having taken into consideration all these various factors.

Therapeutics of Pulp Capping.—There are several methods of capping the pulp, each differing in minor details, such as the use of various cements, gutta-percha, concave metallic disks, etc., etc. The reader's attention will first be directed to the general precautions to be taken in following the different methods of capping; after which one method will be described in detail which has proved successful in the author's practice. By this I do not mean to convey the idea that all pulps which I have attempted to save have been rehabilitated to their functional activity—many have not; however, a sufficient number of those thus treated have remained quiet, and proved years later to be vital, to justify making the attempt where the case demands it.

Precautions.—The precautions to be observed in following any method are:

1. By the use of an anodyne, the hyperemic pulp, if in this condition, *must be restored to normal* before the final capping.

2. The dentin overlying the pulp *must be thoroughly sterilized.* It should be noted here that the usual perfunctory method of sterilizing the dentin by simply applying a germicidal solution to the cavity for a few moments does not sterilize to the degree necessary for successful results. The lack of thorough sterilization has, without doubt, been the chief cause of failure in many instances. The accuracy of this statement will be seen when we remember that our greatest success has followed the capping of pulps which have been accidentally exposed with a bur or instrument in preparing a cavity, although, in most cases, greater mechanical injury had been caused than when the exposure was due to caries or the removal of carious dentin.

Digitized by Google

3. Pressure in applying the material for capping, or the cement which covers the capping, *must be avoided.*

Technic.—After breaking down all overhanging edges of enamel and removing as much of the débris and softened dentin as can be done without pain or injury to the pulp, the cavity should be flooded with a mild, nonirritating, antiseptic solution, previously heated to the temperature of the body. For this purpose the author suggests the use of one of the following remedies:

℞—Phenolis, fʒss (2.0 mils)
Aquæ menthæ piperitæ, fʒvj (180.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Use wherever a mild, nonirritating antiseptic solution is indicated.

℞—Alcoholis, ʒj (4.0 mils)
Aquæ cinnamomi, fʒvj (180.0 mil)—M.
Sig.—Use as a spray.

These solutions can be used as a spray or with a water syringe before applying the rubber dam, thus adding comfort and cleanliness to the operation. The excess can now be absorbed from the cavity with cotton and the dam adjusted. By using some obtunding remedy and a sharp spoon excavator, or oftentimes a large round bur in the engine, the carious dentin can be removed. If, however, the thorough removal of all the discolored dentin would make a large exposure, it is best to leave the layer overlying the pulp and depend upon the sterilizing agent, rather than to jeopardize the life of this organ by the injury thus produced. The delicate pulp tissue will not tolerate much abuse and remain quiet, therefore, if it is injured to any great extent it had better be removed at once. The dentin can now be sterilized by sealing in the cavity, for a few days, the following remedy which is not only germicidal in action, but possesses marked anodyne properties as well:

℞—Mentholis, gr. xx (1.3 Gm.)
Camphoræ gr. xl (2.69 Gm.)
Phenolis, (U.S.P.) fʒiij (12.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Use as directed.

For convenience this remedy has been called *phenol compound.*

It is best to seal with a veneer of quick-setting cement, previously filling most of the cavity with cotton, thereby avoiding pressure and facilitating the subsequent removal of the dressing. By this means the dentin can be thoroughly sterilized, and the pulp, if at all hyperemic, as it is likely to be, will return to its normal condition.

Thymol has a peculiar but favorable action on animal tissue, and for this reason it was formerly incorporated in the above pre-

Digitized by Google

scription. The later formula for phenol compound contains camphor instead of thymol, which enhances the anodyne property of the remedy. At the next sitting, the case giving a favorable history for the interim, the dam should always be applied, the teeth included sterilized, and the previous dressing carefully removed, when the exposure and dentin immediately over the pulp can be gently covered with a thin paste made by mixing *thymolized calcium phosphate* with oil of cloves or eugenol. A prescription for the thymolized calcium phosphate follows:

℞—Thymolis, gr. x (0.6 Gm.)
Calcii Phosp. ppt. (purificata), ℥j (32.0 Gm.)—M.
Sig.—Use as the powder for making paste.

The paste should be placed on one side of the cavity and gently coaxed over the exposure in such a manner as to exclude the air. I desire to emphasize the importance of covering the entire dentin immediately over the pulp, as well as the exposure, with this antiseptic and non-irritating paste. By this means we prevent the phosphoric acid of the cement, used to cover the paste and to temporarily fill the cavity, from irritating the pulp. It should be understood that this paste is only intended as a nonirritating, antiseptic covering for the pulp. *It does not set.* To bring about "setting," it would be necessary to use a substance for the powder and an acid for the liquid which react upon each other. This would cause irritation, thus defeating our object. It is best, as intimated here, to fill the entire cavity with cement and wait for a few months or perhaps a year before inserting the permanent filling or inlay; and even then we should be certain that the vitality of the pulp has been retained, for frequently exposed pulps, under the most careful treatment, gradually die without any objective symptoms. The fact that the tooth has given no trouble should not be taken as evidence that the pulp is alive, for the reverse is too often true—the drugs in the capping material keeping the tissue, though dead, from undergoing decomposition for months and sometimes for years.

Every advantage should be taken to prevent all possible means of subsequent irritation to the pulp. For this reason the author uses precipitated calcium phosphate instead of calcined zinc oxid, which latter substance is recommended by many writers. The powder (largely zinc oxid) which comes with a package of cement is supposed to be chemically pure. Those who are familiar with the science of chemistry, however, know that arsenic is found associated in Nature with many of the metals, among which is zinc; and, while it can be

Digitized by Google

done, it is difficult to obtain these metals or their oxids free from arsenic. It is well in those cases where the pulp is not quite exposed, to add a small amount of either *aristol* or *europhen* to the paste. These are iodin compounds and are used as substitutes for iodoform. They act as a mild stimulant to the pulp, thus causing secondary dentin to be deposited, when we have Nature's protection. Both are tasteless, practically without odor, and insoluble in water, but soluble in the *oil* used as the vehicle for the paste; therefore, only a small amount should be added, for it is possible to overstimulate the pulp, with the result of bringing about a *pathologic* rather than a *physiologic* condition.

I desire to emphasize the importance of studying carefully the conditions as found in each case; and to say that the opportunity here for exercising good judgment is very great, and that there is a satisfaction in realizing, whether we succeed or fail in our effort to save the pulp, that we did our duty as we saw it.

Treatment of Passive Hyperemia and True Inflammation.—As far as therapeutics is concerned, it is of little importance to know whether the pathologic condition of the pulp is passive hyperemia or true inflammation. In either case we have transudation of the fluid elements of the blood and diapedesis of the red corpuscles occurring, and this means death ultimately. In passive hyperemia the pain is more constant than in active hyperemia, and may start without the application of a known irritant. In inflammation the pain is continuous and of a boring character, or it may be lancinating, and is frequently described by the patient as a "jumping toothache." When the reading of the symptoms indicates either of these conditions, our therapeutics differs from that prescribed for active hyperemia, for here, as has been previously stated, the pulp must be destroyed.

Digitized by Google

THE REMOVAL OF VITAL PULPS AND SUBSEQUENT TREATMENT

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Embryologists claim that when the roots of a tooth are fully developed, the pulp has no further function to perform. If this theory can be accepted as correct, and I think that it is quite well established, it would appear from the large percentage of failures following the most careful methods of pulp capping that the safest and, therefore, the best practice would be *to destroy the vitality and remove the pulp* in all cases where this delicate and susceptible tissue has been previously irritated for any great length of time, unless, as explained under Exceptional Cases of Exposure (p. 309), there is some special reason for attempting to restore the organ to its functional activity. From sad past experience the author has been led to adopt this general practice. By this I do not wish to convey the idea that it is advisable or necessary to injudiciously or ruthlessly destroy pulps, for this is not the case. As has been previously emphasized, it is the plain duty of every dental practitioner to save the pulps of teeth, if it can be done with any reasonable degree of success. There are many conditions, some of which are pathologic and others are not, which necessitate the removal of the pulp, such as:

1. *Dental Caries.*—In those cases where dental caries has encroached upon the pulp to the extent of producing passive hyperemia or true inflammation, especially the latter disease. The pulp here oftentimes has been invaded by pathologic bacteria, and frequently the tissue has absorbed poisonous ptomains or toxins. This is, perhaps, the most prolific source of pulp irritation.

2. *Mechanical Irritation.*—This is due to such cases as abrasion, thermal changes, close proximity of metallic fillings, injudicious regulating, excessive grinding, etc.

3. *Calcific Deposits.*—This includes pulp nodules, partially calcified pulps, and secondary dentin. These calcific deposits result from slight but continued irritation of the pulpal organ.

4. *Crowning Teeth and Filling Large Cavities.*—It is usually difficult to grind a vital tooth sufficiently to adjust properly the band for a crown without irritating the pulp and thus endangering its life. Sometimes in filling teeth it is advisable to remove the pulp in order to properly anchor a large filling or inlay.

Digitized by Google

5. *Pyorrhea Alveolaris.*—Frequently in treating this disease, where the teeth are acutely sensitive or where the pockets are deep and the infection in the apical area has left the pulp in a low state of vitality, the best results can be accomplished by removing the organ, and surgically eradicating the pocket.

General Factors to be Observed in Removal of Pulp.—Having considered all of the conditions and decided that the removal of the pulp is indicated, the method by which this can be accomplished with the least inconvenience to the patient and to the operator is the most important consideration. Whatever method is employed in the removal of pulps from teeth and the subsequent treatment, there are at least three factors to be observed, viz.:

1. Establish and maintain asepsis in performing the operation.
2. Preserve the color of the tooth.
3. Thoroughly fill the root.

There are two general methods employed in the removal of pulps —*anesthetization* and *devitalization*.

I. ANESTHETIZATION

In the author's opinion a method of removing pulps from teeth, which is satisfactory to both patient and operator, all things considered and conditions being favorable, is to anesthetize the tissue by the use of local anesthetics in solutions of various strengths. The solutions are forced or carried through the dentin and into the pulp by means of pressure or the electric current. In exceptional cases conductive or interosseous anesthesia may be employed.

1. PRESSURE ANESTHESIA.—By pressure anesthesia is meant the process of anesthetizing the pulp by forcing solutions of local anesthetics, usually cocain hydrochlorid, into the tissue by means of pressure. The pressure is applied either by using unvulcanized rubber or gutta-percha and a blunt instrument, or by specially devised instruments for this purpose. There are many such instruments on the market; and while they are often an aid in accomplishing the ultimate result, they are not an absolute necessity.

Sterilization.—The rubber dam should be employed in every case where it is possible to adjust it, and the teeth included sterilized. In cases where the dam cannot be adjusted, it would doubtless be best to remove the pulp by the devitalization method, to which reference will be made later, for in using the method under consideration care must be taken to prevent pericementitis following the

Digitized by Google

operation; and one of the precautions to be observed in preventing this result is to *thoroughly sterilize* the cavity before applying the pressure. It should be remembered that the majority of canals which contain live pulps are sterile, generally speaking, and if they become septic at any time before the root is filled, it is the fault of the operator; hence the importance of always adjusting the rubber dam, using sterile instruments, and having in a convenient and conspicuous place an antiseptic doily on which to wipe the blood and dry the instruments used.

Attention is again directed to the fact that the usual custom of applying coagulating agents, such as phenol, cresol, etc., to the cavity for a few seconds does not sterilize the dentin to the degree desired. The best results are accomplished by employing germicidal agents which are soluble in water. In cavities where the decay is not too deep, the dentin can be sterilized by the use of a 10 per cent. solution of formaldehyd to which 5 per cent. of sodium borate (borax) or sodium carbonate has been added. Where the decay is near the pulp this solution is liable to cause pain, in which case the same result can be accomplished by the use of a 1:500 solution of mercury bichlorid or a 1:200 solution of sublamin. In using the latter solutions the pliers on which the remedy is applied should be wiped immediately on an antiseptic doily to prevent the mercury from acting upon the instrument. One of the best solutions with which to chemically sterilize the dentin, especially in those cases where the cavity has previously been filled, the tubuli are closed, and, perhaps, there is secondary dentin, is a 25 per cent. solution of sulphuric acid. Cook recommends using pure sulphuric acid for this purpose. The solution can be applied to the floor of the cavity, being careful not to get the agent on the crown of the tooth. After a few minutes the excess can be neutralized with a solution of sodium bicarbonate. After the dentin is sterilized the cavity should be desiccated with warm alcohol and gentle heat, when we are ready to use the anesthetizing solution. Before taking up the technic of this method, however, I desire to again emphasize the importance and necessity of cavity sterilization. In our discussion later of the devitalization method, it will be pointed out that the carious and infected dentin can be completely and painlessly removed after the devitalizing agent has been applied, thus *mechanically* sterilizing the cavity; but in the anesthetization method the infected dentin is sensitive and cannot be removed without unnecessarily producing pain. The dentin in this case must, then, be sterilized by *chemic* means, for to force the anesthetizing solution through the dentin without previously

Digitized by Google

sterilizing it, means the forcing of microorganisms and, perhaps, poisonous ptomains or toxins, into the pulp tissue and many times into the tissue surrounding the apical end of the root, for it is difficult to force the solution to, and only to, the apex; thus too much pressure and the lack of thorough sterilization constitute a prolific source of pericementitis following the removal of pulps by this method. For the same reason, a pulp which is exposed by caries, and, therefore, undoubtedly infected, had better not be removed by pressure anesthesia.

The Solution.—With the cavity thoroughly sterilized we are now ready to use the anesthetizing solution, which should be made at the time. For this purpose the crystals, previously powdered, or flaked cocain hydrochlorid should be used as the base, and freshly distilled or boiled water as the vehicle. In my own practice I use "cocain points," which are compressed points or cylinders of pure cocain hydrochlorid containing 1/12 grain (.005 Gm.) each, as the base and my regular local anesthetic solution as the vehicle for making the stronger solution. A prescription for the regular local anesthetic solution here follows:

℞—Cocainæ hydrochloridi, gr. v (0.3 Gm.)
Sodii chloridi, gr. j (0.06 Gm.)
Phenolis, m. ij (0.13 mil)
Aquæ menthæ piperitæ, f℥j (30 mils)—M.
Sig.—Use as a local anesthetic for hypodermic injections.

There are many advantages in using the anesthetic agent in cylinder form. The exact amount of the drug used is known, the points are readily soluble and, in many cases, they can be conveniently placed in the sterile cavity and dissolved therein, either in the serum of the blood, if an exposure exists, or in the vehicle used for this purpose. There is no advantage in using the above solution rather than distilled or boiled water or freshly prepared peppermint water, except that the solution is always at hand in a convenient container and is sterile. Sterile physiologic salt solution is an excellent vehicle for making the anesthetic solution.

The thumb and forefinger with which cotton is to be wrapped around the broach should be sterilized by dipping a large pledget of cotton in 10 per cent. formaldehyd, or 1:500 mercury bichlorid, or 1:200 sublamin solution, and rolling this between the thumb and finger. A cocain point or a small amount of the flaked cocain hydrochlorid is now placed on a clean glass slab and a pledget of cotton, dipped in the vehicle selected, a few drops of which have previously been placed on one end of the glass slab or in a clean glass watch-

Digitized by Google

crystal or other container, is gently placed in contact with the alkaloidal salt, when the latter readily dissolves, making a strong solution. It is never necessary to make a saturated solution, for oftentimes better results will be obtained, especially if the solution is to be forced through the dentin, if the strength of the solution approximates only 4 or 5 per cent. If an exposure exists, as stated above, the point can be placed directly in contact with the pulp and be dissolved in the blood-serum.

Pressure.—The cotton thus saturated is placed in the cavity as nearly over the pulp as possible. A piece of unvulcanized rubber which will approximately fill the cavity is selected and passed through the flame. There are two objects in doing this: It sterilizes the rubber and also makes it more pliable, in which form it conforms readily to the cavity of the tooth. The rubber is now placed in the cavity, and by means of gentle but firm pressure with a suitable blunt instrument the solution is forced through the dentin and into the pulp. If there is any evidence of pain as the pressure is applied, it should be stopped for a moment, but never released. The slight pain is only momentary and is an indication that the solution is being confined under the pressure, which is essential for the success of this method.

It may be necessary in those cases where there is considerable dentin between the cavity and the pulp to make two or three applications before the pulp is reached without pain, after which one application should complete the thorough anesthetization of the organ. After the first application a small depression can be drilled into the dentin toward the pulp, in which the solution can subsequently be placed, thereby aiding materially in confining the solution under the pressure. When an exposure exists, it requires but little pressure to anesthetize the pulp. In these cases the cocain point can be placed in the cavity near or over the exposure and the pulp gently pricked with a sharp explorer, causing it to bleed; this, if done carefully, will produce very little pain. The blood-serum will dissolve the cocain hydrochlorid, when pressure can be applied and the pulp anesthetized. In doing this, however, there is greater danger of forcing the blood into the tubuli of the dentin of the crown of the tooth, thereby making it more difficult to remove the blood. Care should also be taken not to force the solution any further than is necessary for the painless removal of the pulp, and it should here be again noted that cocain is a general protoplasmic poison, and if even weak and sterile solutions are forced past the apices of the roots pericementitis is almost sure to follow.

Digitized by Google

Confining the Solution Under Pressure.—In removing pulps by pressure anesthesia without employing instruments devised for this purpose, the best results are obtained in cases where there are four walls to the cavity, for in this condition the solution is easily confined under the pressure. In proximo-occlusal cavities, the missing wall can be built temporarily with gutta-percha or cement. This is seldom necessary, however, if, in packing the rubber in the cavity, care be taken to cover the gingival wall first and thus seal at this point, then working the rubber over the occlusal and gradually creating the pressure. Whatever means are adopted for the purpose of confining the solution, we must avoid having the solution escape at the gingival margin of the cavity and thereby be forced into the gum tissue and pericemental membrane. The cause of much pericementitis following this method of removing pulps can be traced to carelessness or ignorance in this regard.

As stated elsewhere, there are many ingeniously devised instruments on the market, the use of which is often a material aid in confining the solution under pressure and forcing it through the dentin. The same precautions should be observed in using any of these instruments as have been emphasized in the application of pressure by other means.

Opening the Pulp Chamber to Expose Canals.—When the pulp is anesthetized, the pulp chamber should be opened into in such a manner as to expose the canals. This is best accomplished with a

FIG. 14.—This radiograph shows that the dentist, in opening into the lower first molar, drilled through the floor of the pulp chamber and exposed the tissue between the bifurcated roots; and, as a result, an abscess subsequently developed. The case was treated by sterilizing and stimulating the necrotic area between the roots with phenol-sulphonic acid, subsequently flowing eucapercha compound over the puncture and packing firmly with warm base-plate gutta-percha.

large round or inlay bur by means of which the entire roof of the chamber can be obliterated. A bur suggested by the author for this purpose is simply a large inlay bur with the end rounded. In opening into the pulp chamber of the molar teeth care should be taken not to disturb the floor or walls of the chamber; for by so doing we are liable

Digitized by Google

to drill through the bifurcation or the mesial or distal surface of the roots. Even if such disastrous results do not follow the destruction of the floor or walls of the chamber, it at least adds to the difficulty of entering the canals with a broach. (See Fig. 14.) While we are never justified in drilling unnecessarily for the purpose of freely exposing the canals, it is, if necessary, far better to weaken the crown of the tooth somewhat by this means rather than leave a portion of the pulp in an inaccessible canal which may decompose and subsequently cause an infection in the periapical area.

Selecting and Testing Broaches.—The selection of a proper broach is an important matter. Every broach should be tested before entering the canal. This can be done by bending it in various directions. If the broach is weak in any particular place it can be detected by this means; thus we avoid breaking the broach in the canal, the removal of which is often a difficult procedure. Many good operators claim to be able to remove all pulps by using a smooth, three-cornered broach on which a few threads of cotton are wound. Others use twist or spiral broaches. In all large canals the author has had the most satisfaction from the use of a barbed broach. The broach should be gently worked along the side of the canal as far as it will go without using too much force, twisted once or twice to entangle the pulp, and then withdrawn. By this means the pulp can be removed from large canals in its entirety. In inserting the broach into the canal, care should be exercised to avoid pushing the tissue before the broach and thus pack it into the apical area, where it is difficult of removal. Many root-canals have been imperfectly filled and abscesses subsequently developed, because of the failure to remove all of the pulp tissue at the time it was anesthetized or devitalized.

Control of Ordinary Hemorrhage and Removal of Blood.—In the removal of live pulps by the anesthetization method, there necessarily will be more hemorrhage than in those cases where the pulp is devitalized before attempting to remove it. However, the control of hemorrhage is not as difficult a procedure as many writers have led us to believe. In most cases the hemorrhage, if undisturbed, will be checked by Nature's method in a few minutes, after which the blood in the cavity and canal should be *thoroughly removed*. I desire here to emphasize the importance of *removing the blood*. One of the factors to be observed in extirpating pulps from teeth and the subsequent treatment, is to *preserve the color of the teeth*. The cause of many teeth darkening after the pulp has been removed can be traced directly to the failure to remove the blood from the dentin of the

Digitized by Google

crown of the tooth. The far too prevalent practice of wiping out the bloody canal with a solution of hydrogen dioxid, blindly thinking the blood can be removed by this means, cannot be too strongly condemned. The hydrogen dioxid simply decomposes the blood within the tooth-structure, oxidizing the iron of the hemoglobin; and the gases evolved in the decomposition force this pigment into the tubuli, which, if left (and it is difficult to remove it), will cause the tooth to darken in almost every instance. Therefore, we should avoid forming within the tooth-structure a pigment which we know will discolor teeth. *The color of a tooth does not depend upon the life and vitality of the pulp, but upon the array of colors in the dentin which are reflected through the nearly colorless and transparent enamel.* If, then, these colors are not changed by our failure to remove the blood or by the use of staining remedial agents in the treatment subsequent pulp removal, the tooth will not discolor.

To remove the blood from the canal, alcohol can be used, or even better than this agent is Nature's greatest solvent, water. The water should, of course, be sterile, and the same specimen can be employed here as was used in making the anesthetizing solution, *i.e.*, freshly distilled or boiled water, or peppermint water to which two minims (0.12 mil) of phenol have been added to the fluidounce (30.0 mils). Sterile physiologic salt solution is perhaps the best solution to use for this purpose. By this means the blood can be completely *removed*, not decomposed in the canal and forced into the structure of the tooth.

Small Canals.—There are many canals so small and tortuous that even a fine broach will not readily enter, to any depth at least. In these cases, after the hemorrhage from the larger canals has been checked and the blood removed it is well to stop the mouth of each with cotton or temporary stopping, when the pulp tissue in the small canals can be disorganized by the use of strong solutions of mineral acids or alkalies. The author formerly used a paste of sodium dioxid and dehydrated (absolute) alcohol, placing the paste in the pulp chamber over the small canals, and working it down as far as possible with a smooth broach. The alcohol gradually evaporates, when the sodium dioxid can be decomposed into oxygen and caustic soda by placing a pledget of cotton in the cavity moistened with distilled water. After the reaction has taken place, the alkali can be neutralized with a weak solution of sulphuric acid (2 per cent.). This process can be repeated until the desired end is attained. A more convenient preparation to use here is a saturated solution of potassium or sodium hydroxid. There are other means by which the

Digitized by Google

same results can be accomplished, such as the use of phenolsulphonic acid, a 30 per cent. solution of chemically pure sulphuric acid, strong solutions of potassium or sodium hydroxid, or a mixture of metallic potassium and sodium (Schreier's paste). For reasons mentioned later under the Treatment of Pulpless Teeth, the author now uses phenolsulphonic acid. These same agents can be used to advantage for the purpose of disposing of a remnant of a pulp in larger canals. It is not safe to anesthetize this remnant by means of pressure. The only cases on record, to my knowledge, where toxic symptoms have resulted from the removal of a pulp by pressure anesthesia, followed an attempt to anesthetize a remnant of a pulp or to make a second application of the anesthetizing solution.

After-treatment.—After the pulp has been removed and the canals dehydrated with modified alcohol and heat, an *anodyne* treatment is indicated. For this purpose such drugs as phenol, oil of cloves, or eugenol can be employed. The author suggests here eucalyptol compound. In using any of these remedies, especially the last-named, it is best to insert dry cotton in the canal and then place a pledget dipped in the remedy in the pulp chamber and seal with temporary stopping and cement. The dry cotton in the canal will absorb the moisture from the apical end of the root and the anodyne remedy from the pulp chamber. There is an advantage in using the dry cotton, for it is almost impossible to completely dehydrate the canal at this sitting. If asepsis has been maintained in removing the pulp, all that is necessary is to keep the canal in this condition until the root can be filled; therefore, only a very small amount of the remedy should be used. The tendency here is to use too much with the frequent result of a mild active hyperemia in the pericementum. This condition, of course, soon subsides, but it is always best to prevent it when possible. The purpose of sealing the cavity with both temporary stopping and cement is to insure hermetic sealing of the canal. Eucalyptol compound has no advantage here over other remedies suggested for the purpose except that, besides being an antiseptic, it also aids in the hermetic sealing. The heated stopping (good grade) is placed immediately over the eucalyptol compound dressing and it adheres firmly to the walls of the cavity; the excess is removed and the remaining portion of the cavity is filled with cement.

When to Fill Canals.—The canals should not be filled at the sitting at which the pulp has been removed by pressure anesthesia, unless there be some exceptional reason for doing so. There are many good reasons why the canal should not be filled at this sitting:

1. While it is our object to force the solution just sufficiently to

Digitized by Google

anesthetize the pulp, our main object is to remove the pulp *absolutely without pain;* and it is very difficult to force the solution to the end of the root without forcing it through the apex to some extent and anesthetizing the tissue in the periapical area. With the tissue anesthetized, we would have no guide as to when the root was thoroughly filled.

2. The tearing away of the pulp from its connection at the apex causes more or less irritation, and a few days should elapse to give Nature a chance to readjust the condition. The root-filling would only serve at this time to further irritate the tissues.

3. Sometimes with the utmost care in removing the pulp, secondary hemorrhage ensues with the formation of a clot in the periapical area, causing soreness, in which case greater comfort can be given the patient by the proper treatment through the root-canal than simply by counterirritation or external treatment only.

At the second sitting, the case giving a favorable history, the canal should be filled, after having used phenolsulphonic acid as explained on p. 344 under Technic of Using Acid-Method.

Excessive Hemorrhage.—There are cases occasionally where Nature does not stop the hemorrhage as readily as we desire. In these exceptional cases the hemorrhage must be stopped by artificial means, even at the possible expense of producing pericementitis. Cauterizing agents are useful here. For this purpose 95 per cent. phenol or, what is still better, phenolsulphonic acid can be worked down into the canal against the injured and bleeding tissue, after which the acid should be neutralized with a solution of sodium bicarbonate (10 per cent.) and an anodyne treatment employed as usual. Where the above treatment does not produce the desired result, cotton saturated with a fresh 1:1,000 solution of adrenalin chlorid can be placed in the canal and with unvulcanized rubber forced into the tissue beyond the end of the root. This agent should only be used in extreme cases because of the soreness and injurious effect it is liable to produce upon the tissues involved.

Objections to the Use of Adrenalin Chlorid.—In this connection I desire to discuss the use of solutions of adrenalin chlorid as the vehicle for making the anesthetizing solution, or the use of adrenalin chlorid and cocain hydrochlorid tablets for anesthetizing the pulp. The adrenalin chlorid has been suggested as a means of *preventing* hemorrhage. Now, it ought to be evident to anyone who has studied this subject that, to prevent hemorrhage by the use of any styptic or hemostatic agent, it is necessary to force the agent into the tissue from which the hemorrhage comes. Therefore, to get the effect of

Digitized by Google

the adrenalin chlorid in removing pulps by pressure anesthesia, it is absolutely essential that the anesthetizing solution, which also contains the hemostatic agent, be forced through the apex and into the periapical area—the very thing we have been taught, from sad experience, not to do. When we remember that the majority of pulps we are called upon to remove are those in which there is, or has been, more or less pulpitis, and when we remember also that pathology teaches that this condition is frequently associated with pericementitis, it is questionable whether or not we ought to prevent hemorrhage in removing pulps from teeth. For to permit the escape of blood from the hyperemic tissue at the end of the root is one of the best means of aiding Nature to readjust the abnormal to the normal condition. In case the primary hemorrhage has been prevented by the use of hemostatic agents, such as adrenalin chlorid, secondary hemorrhage is almost certain to follow with the formation of a clot, the absorption of which in the periapical area is an extremely slow and tedious process.

2. CATAPHORESIS.—Cataphoresis, as has been elsewhere explained, is a term applied to the process of carrying medicinal agents in solution into the various tissues and organs of the body by means of the electric current. Formerly there was a variety of cataphoric outfits on the market. To anesthetize a pulp by this means the tooth should be insulated by the rubber dam, care being taken that no moisture escapes from the gum. A small pledget of cotton saturated with the anesthetizing solution is now placed in the cavity, the positive pole, or anode, applied to the solution, and the negative pole, or cathode, moistened with water, applied to some part of the patient's body, usually the hand, thus completing the circuit. A steady and continuous current is desired, and the perfected instruments are so devised that the amount of current can be measured. The time required to anesthetize the pulp by this means depends largely upon the density of the dentin and the perfection of the instruments used. With the pulp anesthetized, the same method of removal and of subsequent treatment is followed as in pressure anesthesia. Cataphoresis, while successful in the hands of those who mastered the technic, never became popular, largely because of the time required to accomplish the result and because of the complicated and expensive apparatus necessary.

If the method of anesthetizing the pulp be followed and the precautions observed, as detailed here, it will be found that there are few pulps which will not yield to the influence of cocain hydrochlorid applied directly by means of pressure. It takes time, however, to

Digitized by Google

adjust the rubber dam, sterilize the cavity, remove the pulp and blood from the canal and seal in the anodyne remedy. Many times the operator is not able at this sitting to give the necessary time to complete this operation. There are cases also where the condition or the location of the tooth in the mouth is such as to favor the removal of the pulp by another method, which will now be considered.

II. DEVITALIZATION

In discussing Sensitive Dentin under the subject of escharotics or caustics, reference was made to the fact that there are many drugs belonging to this class of agents that cannot be employed in the treatment of sensitive dentin, for the reason that they are penetrating and have the same deleterious effect upon the cells of the pulp tissue as upon the dentinal fibrillæ. Some of the agents which cannot be used for allaying the sensitiveness of dentin are exceedingly valuable and are employed for the purpose of destroying the vitality of the pulp, thus aiding in its painless removal. The most prominent of these agents is *arsenic trioxid* (As_2O_3), formerly called arsenious acid. The use of this agent in the treatment of sensitive dentin was first advocated by Dr. Spooner, of Montreal, who discovered that by sealing the drug in a cavity for a few days the most sensitive dentin yielded to its influence. The fact, however, that nearly all teeth thus treated subsequently gave trouble because of the death of the pulp and the usual sequelæ, led the profession to abandon this agent for the purpose for which it was introduced; but it has ever since been used as a means of destroying the vitality of the pulp. In fact, for years it was the only agent employed with any satisfaction.

At the present time there is considerable discussion in dental literature as to whether or not the effects of arsenic trioxid when applied to a dental pulp are self-limiting. Some men of high standing in the profession are of the opinion that the drug is too destructive an agent to be used for the purpose of pulp devitalization. It seems to the author that these opinions are not well founded when we consider the long clinical record of the drug as a devitalizing agent. It has been used since 1836. There can be no question regarding the harmful effects of the drug when injudiciously employed. Its action is not self-limiting. Its effects are produced only after the drug is absorbed by the tissue elements, altering or destroying their vital processes in an obscure manner. The reason why the drug may be safely employed in devitalizing the pulp of a fully erupted tooth lies in the fact that here the effects are confined to the pulp tissue, since the organ

Digitized by Google

dies by strangulation at the apex due to the congestion caused by the drug when so used. Thrombosis and death of the pulp take place; and, owing to the small foramina of the tooth-root, absorption of the drug by continuity of tissue is prevented. In those cases where the apices of the roots are not fully formed the drug, if used at all, should be left sealed in the tooth only a short time. Fig. 15 shows the

FIG. 15.—Tooth and alveolar process exfoliated as a result of arsenical poisoning.

results of arsenic trioxid having been left in such a tooth for too long a period of time. Fig. 16 proves that the drug may be safely used if the proper precautions are observed.

FIG. 16.—The pulp in the second bicuspid was devitalized, canal treated, and filled by the author in September, 1902. The molar had been treated by an unknown dentist previous to this time. The radiograph was taken March 28, 1916, fourteen and one-half years after root-canal operation on bicuspid. Tooth has always been comfortable.

The Preparation.—Much difficulty has been experienced in the use of arsenic trioxid, largely because of the uncertainty of the preparations employed. Many arsenical preparations are on the market. The white powder can be used by moistening a small pledget of cotton with some liquid, such as phenol, cresol, creosote, or oil of cloves; then by touching the cotton to the powdered arsenic trioxid, a sufficient amount will adhere which should be transferred to the cavity and sealed, preferably with cement. It is well for each operator to select an arsenical preparation with which he can obtain

Digitized by Google

good results, and then this should be used to the exclusion of all others. By this means only can we become thoroughly familiar with the action of the preparation employed. The following formula is here given for those who prefer a paste:

℞—Arseni trioxidi,	ʒj (4.0 Gm.)
Cocainæ,	gr. x (0.6 Gm.)
Thymolis,	gr. v (0.3 Gm.)
Petrolati,	gr. x (0.6 Gm.)—M.
Fiat Unguenta.	

Sig.—Apply a small amount to the dentin immediately over the pulp.

I wish to state here something about the pharmacy of this prescription, for, if the preparation does not work satisfactorily, it has not been properly compounded. Arsenic trioxid is the base; cocain is a local anesthetic, and when applied to the pulp produces a condition of analgesia by which the irritating action of the arsenic trioxid is without effect, and thus prevents the tooth from aching while the pulp is being devitalized. With the alkaloidal cocain and thymol, together with this amount of petroleum, a nice paste can be made with the arsenic trioxid. The author prefers a fiber which is made from the same formula as above by thoroughly incorporating it in some fibrous vehicle. The fiber may be stained so that it will be of a different color from the ordinary cement, which is used to seal the preparation in the cavity.

Technic of Application.—In those cases of pulpitis where the tooth has ached before the patient tresents for treatment, it is always the best practice to allay the pain for at least twenty-four hours before attempting to devitalize the pulp. If for any reason this cannot be done conveniently and it is deemed best to make the arsenical application at this sitting, the engorged capillaries may be relieved by administering two or three doses of nitroglycerin, letting about one hour intervene between the doses. This will also tend to mitigate the pain which sometimes accompanies the devitalization of the pulp. The pain in these cases of pulp congestion can be absolutely controlled by carefully excavating until the pulp is exposed; then apply one-half of a "cocain point" to the exposure, permitting the serum to dissolve the drug, after which the arsenical application may be made in the usual manner. In any case, whether the tooth has ached or not, before applying the arsenical preparation or before adjusting the rubber dam, it is best to break down all overhanging edges of enamel and carefully remove or wash out with a nonirritating antiseptic solution any food-stuffs or débris which may be in the cavity. Food-

Digitized by Google

stuffs contain albumin, and if this is in the cavity of the tooth when the arsenical preparation is applied, the arsenic trioxid will act upon the albumin, forming arsenic albuminate, and thereby a certain amount of the agent is neutralized or becomes inert. As much of the carious dentin should also be removed as can be done without producing pain, for the application should be made *to a sensitive spot in the cavity*. It is never necessary to have an exposure of the pulp; and in case an exposure exists, it is just as well to apply the preparation to the dentin immediately over the pulp, rather than to the organ itself, though in using the fiber suggested here there is no logical reason why it should not be applied directly to the exposed pulp. In any event the preparation should be covered with cotton or a small metallic or paper disk to prevent pressure and also to prevent the phosphoric acid of the cement from coming in contact with the ingredients of the preparation.

Length of Time Application Should Remain.—There are at least four factors which govern the length of time an arsenical application should remain sealed within a tooth, viz.:

1. The age and general condition of the patient.
2. The general condition of the pulp itself.
3. The amount and condition of the dentin intervening between the pulp proper and the application of the preparation.
4. The climate or season of the year, strange as it may seem, influences the action of arsenic trioxid.

Taking into consideration these various factors, the arsenical preparation should remain in the cavity from one to four days. At the second sitting the rubber dam should be adjusted, the teeth included sterilized, and the cement and preparation removed, after which every surface of the cavity should be freshened with a large round bur. This not only insures the thorough removal of the arsenical preparation, which, should a portion remain, is liable to produce pericemental inflammation, but it also *mechanically* sterilizes the cavity by removing the carious and infected dentin. This is important and is an aid in *maintaining asepsis* in the removal of the pulp. In the author's judgment, this is much better practice than to depend upon a solution of dialysed iron to neutralize the arsenic trioxid.

Opening Pulp Chamber and Exposing Canals.—The pulp chamber can now be opened, observing practically the same details as were explained under the anesthetization method. Oftentimes, in the initial opening into the pulp chamber, and sometimes on entering the canal, after the application of arsenic trioxid, the patient will expe-

Digitized by Google

rience some pain. This condition should be anticipated; for the safest method of devitalizing pulps with arsenic trioxid is to leave the drug sealed in the tooth only sufficiently long to *poison the tissue*—not completely devitalize it; and depend upon the subsequent application of some remedy containing formaldehyd to complete the devitalization. For this purpose the author uses formocresol. This remedy should be left in contact with the tissue for about three days. The formaldehyd generated from formocresol not only completes the devitalization of the tissue; but it also desiccates and toughens it, which facilitates its subsequent removal. Strange as it may seem, in those cases of arsenical soreness where the arsenic trioxid had been left in the tooth for too long a period, formocresol will absolutely correct the soreness. The clinical experience of the author leads him to believe that formaldehyd acts here as a chemic antidote for arsenic trioxid. At the subsequent sitting the tissue may be removed, and phenolsulphonic acid employed to enlarge the canals and remove therefrom every vestige of organic matter, when the canals should be filled.

Objections to the Use of Dialysed Iron and Tannic Acid.—In connection with the *preservation of the color of the tooth*, under the anesthetization method the author stated his objection to the use of hydrogen dioxid for removing the blood from the cavity and canal. It is necessary here, also, to refer briefly to a well-established practice of treating teeth after the pulps have been devitalized. It is the practice of many dentists, after removing the arsenical dressing, to flood the cavity with a solution of dialysed iron, after which the pulp chamber is opened, which usually produces some hemorrhage; then, without any especial effort being made to remove the dialysed iron or blood, tannic acid in some form is sealed in contact with the pulp for a week or ten days, it being deemed advantageous to constringe and toughen the tissue by this means before attempting its removal. Let us consider the rationalism of such treatment. The pulp tissue in all large canals is sufficiently tough to be removed in its entirety, and it must be disorganized or removed piecemeal in small canals, whether it has been previously constringed or not. Hence, there is no advantage in using tannic acid, and there is a serious objection. If those who follow this practice are observing, they will notice that after removing the tannic acid dressing the pulp tissue is dark in appearance. They will also observe that many teeth thus treated subsequently discolor. The cause for this is found in the fact that tannic acid and iron, in any form, are chemically incompatible, the resulting compound being *iron tannate*, one of the most insoluble sub-

Digitized by Google

stances known to chemistry. In the presence of moisture a form of ink is produced which is a great staining agent for dentin, and one that it is almost impossible to remove by any known process of bleaching.

As has been stated elsewhere, there are cases where, for want of time or other reasons, the pulp can be removed to advantage by devitalization; however, when this method is followed tannic acid should *not* be used, and every trace of dialysed iron (if used at all, and it is unnecessary to use it) and blood should be removed with alcohol or water.

COMPLICATIONS.—In our discussion thus far of the methods of removing pulps from teeth, we have considered only favorable cases, selecting the method best adapted to the case at hand. There are many instances, however, where it is difficult to remove the pulp by either the anesthetization or devitalization method, at least until the tooth is placed in a more favorable condition.

Hypertrophied Gum Tissue.—Oftentimes in approximating cavities the decay in one or both teeth has extended far beneath the gum, the rough gingival margin of the cavity acting as a slight irritant by which the gum tissue is stimulated, causing it to proliferate until it fills a portion of, and in some instances the entire, cavity. In such cases the first consideration is to dispose of the hypertrophied tissue. Where the gum fills only a portion of the cavity and the pulp of the tooth is not causing trouble, the cavity should first be enlarged and washed with a warm antiseptic solution, after which it should be dried as well as possible and packed with warm gutta-percha. But in those cases where the gum tissue occupies the entire cavity, and especially where the tooth is aching, it should be removed at once. The electric cautery is doubtless the best means to use for disposing of this tissue. It is practically painless and no hemorrhage follows its use, which is an advantage. In the absence of this, other means may be employed. Hypertrophied gum tissue is quite tough and fibrous, and if it is elevated or pushed back by means of a flat instrument, it will usually be found that the attachment at the gingival margin is small and can easily be severed by employing gum scissors or a lancet, previously dipped in phenol. It is best not to tell the patient what you are going to do, for scarcely any pain will be experienced. The hemorrhage in these cases is usually profuse, but can readily be stopped by cauterization with 95 per cent. phenol or a 50 per cent. solution of phenolsulphonic acid. The blood should now be thoroughly removed, the cavity dried, moistened with eucalyptol, and packed with gutta-percha, letting it extend buccally and lingually

Digitized by Google

to fill the interproximal space. The gutta-percha can be removed from the interior of the cavity with a heated flat instrument. Quite often the most practical way of adjusting the rubber dam in these cases is to place the clamp on the tooth posterior to the one thus packed, letting a single hole in the dam include both teeth. The packing, if properly placed, will prevent leakage. The pulp can now be removed by the method which the operator deems the most feasible.

It might be mentioned in this connection that hypertrophied gum tissue may and frequently does occur from irritants other than roughened cavity margins near the gingivæ. The condition results from chronic inflammation of the gums and from such mechanical irritants as salivary and serumal deposits, ill-fitting crowns, bridges and partial dentures. Certain constitutional conditions may also produce hypertrophy of the gums. Among these may be mentioned scurvy, mercurial poisoning and malnutrition, especially in children and particularly among the poor in large cities. Marshall[1] classifies hypertrophy of the gums as a precancerous lesion and says, "Mechanical irritation is dangerous and should, therefore, be removed at once."

Importance of a Correct Diagnosis as to the Kind of Tissue in a Cavity.—There is one instance in the removal of pulps from teeth where students, particularly, are liable to make a serious mistake if they are not extremely careful. This is in cases where, in large occlusal cavities, especially in lower first molars of children, the pulp has died and the decay has extended through the bifurcation of the roots, leaving rough edges which continually irritate the tissue, causing it to proliferate and ultimately fill the cavity. To carelessly force the anesthetizing solution into such a cavity, where the pulp in the canals is gangrenous, would be the means of causing an acute alveolar abscess. The application of arsenic trioxid would mean the loss of at least one tooth, perhaps one or two on either side of the one to which the application is made, with a portion of the alveolar process.

Before applying either the anesthetizing or devitalizing agent, a correct diagnosis should be made; we should ascertain definitely the kind of tissue in the cavity. With a little experience this is usually a simple matter. The history of the case as related by the patient will often serve as a guide. Pulp tissue is generally more sensitive than gum tissue, and when slightly pricked with a sharp instrument bleeds more profusely. If the tissue proves to be hypertrophied gum tissue it can be disposed of in the usual manner, the puncture

[1] Pacific Dental Gazette, November, 1916.

Digitized by Google

closed temporarily with cement or gutta-percha and the tooth treated as the condition necessitates (see Fig. 14). When this cannot be accomplished, and the tooth kept free from infection, it should be extracted.

Hypertrophied Pulp Tissue.—In cases where the tissue is hypertrophied pulp tissue, it will generally be found unusually resistant to both cocain hydrochlorid and arsenic trioxid, and it is sometimes necessary to resort to interosseous or conductive anesthesia, or to the administration of such general anesthetics as nitrous oxid and oxygen, in order to painlessly remove the tissue.

Secondary Dentin, Pulp Nodules, and Pulp Calcification.—Quite frequently we find cases where it seems almost impossible to force the anesthetizing solution through the dentin and into the pulp, and when arsenic trioxid is applied it has little or no effect. In these cases we can suspect that the pulp has receded because of some slight but continued external irritation, the space being filled in with secondary dentin, the tubuli of which are irregular and do not run at right angles to the base upon which they rest, as in the normal dentin. Occasionally cases will present where the entire canal has been obliterated (see Fig. 6 and p. 303). This condition is more often found in elderly patients. As a result also of external irritation, pulp nodules and pulp calcification are sometimes encountered. In removing the pulp in these cases, often the most painless and best results are obtained only by a combination of both the anesthetization and devitalization methods; for the removal of these pulp nodules and calcified pulps is often a difficult procedure. After we have used cocain hydrochlorid and pressure or previously applied arsenic trioxid and anesthetized or devitalized a portion of the pulp, we may be able to reach the pulp nodule or nodules without producing pain. But frequently these calcific bodies are agglutinated, and close the mouth of the canal; especially is this condition found in the molar teeth. The pulp tissue immediately under the nodule is extremely sensitive. In such a case the anesthetizing solution could not be forced into the canal without first removing the obstruction, and arsenic trioxid, if applied, would have no effect. These are cases which require much perseverance and patience on the part of both patient and operator. The nodule can sometimes be loosened by gently working around it with an exploring or other suitable instrument. The author has met with success by taking a small round bur and drilling past the nodule, care being taken not to puncture the root, then with the engine running rapidly the nodule is tapped and dislodged. When the obstruction in the pulp chamber and canals is removed the remaining tissue

Digitized by Google

can be anesthetized or devitalized in the usual manner. If the devitalization method is employed, the arsenical preparation can be placed over the mouth of the canal with safety; but it is never advisable to place the preparation down in the canal. In extreme cases it may be necessary to inject local anesthetics by the conductive or interosseous methods, and thus anesthetize the pulps, or nitrous oxid and oxygen may be administered.

REMOVAL OF PULPS FROM DECIDUOUS TEETH

There is, perhaps, no dentist who has been in practice for any length of time but has been called upon to remove an exposed pulp from a deciduous tooth. With the so-called "horrors of the dental chair" magnified in the child's mind, as is too generally the case, this is not often the most pleasant thing the dentist is called upon to do. The question resolves itself largely into the proper handling of the child. Any expedient may be employed to gain the confidence of the little patient, after which either anesthetization or devitalization may be used as is deemed best under the conditions. Generally the latter method is preferable; and it will be found that the pulps are peculiarly susceptible to the action of arsenic trioxid. The preparation should not be left in the tooth longer than from ten

FIG. 17.—This skiagraph, taken by Ream, shows the resorption of the deciduous molar roots, due to the eruption of the permanent bicuspids. In this case the pulps of the deciduous molars were vital.

to sixteen hours and then only a small amount should be employed. When the pulp is thus poisoned, formocresol should be used to complete the devitalization. After the pulp is removed, all that is necessary to fill the root is to flood with chloroform and eucapercha compound, and fill the entire cavity with gutta-percha. It is supposed by some dentists that resorption of the roots does not take place when the pulp is destroyed. This supposition is wrong. The root may not be destroyed as readily as though the pulps were alive, but that resorption does take place has been clinically demonstrated in the author's practice. Hunt, of Indianapolis, was of the opinion that

Digitized by Google

the process here involved is one of absorption rather than resorption, and that the loss of tooth-root is usually due to the advances of the permanent teeth (see Fig. 17).

ARSENICAL POISONING

It may be well to re-consider here the treatment of *local poisoning by arsenic trioxid.* However, when such treatment is necessary, it is due to carelessness on the part of the dentist or the patient, or both. It is never necessary to tell the patient what drug or remedy has been used in the treatment of teeth, many times it is advisable not to do so; but whenever an agent as destructive as arsenic trioxid is sealed within a tooth, the patient should be thoroughly impressed with the importance of keeping an appointment, and of returning before the appointed time should any untoward symptoms develop. The patient should also be informed that the teeth thus treated might ache for a few hours, as they sometimes do, even when cocain is a constituent of the arsenical preparation; but that the aching will be of short duration. In case, however, the tooth or gum becomes sore, they should be instructed to return at once.

In those cases where the arsenical preparation is not hermetically sealed within the tooth and some of it gets on the gum tissue, remaining only long enough to cause devitalization, all that is necessary is to first wash the part with an antiseptic solution, and then mechanically pick off the dead or sloughed tissue with sterile pliers until bleeding is produced, if this is possible, after which the part should be *disinfected* and the tissue *stimulated.* To disinfect the part, any good disinfectant can be used. Nothing is better here than the official 3 per cent. solution of hydrogen dioxid. As a means of stimulating the cells, iodin compounds are useful. The official compound solution of iodin (5 per cent.) can be applied by first drying the part. After removing the dead tissue and disinfecting, the author prefers applying the euroform paste on cotton or gauze. A prescription should also be written for an antiseptic mouth-wash with which the patient should keep the mouth as clean as possible. The treatment can be repeated as often as the case necessitates; usually one or two treatments will suffice.

In those severe cases where the arsenic trioxid has penetrated to, and devitalized the process as well as the gum, the first treatment is surgical. After washing with an antiseptic solution, the affected process should be removed with a suitable bur in the engine. It may be necessary in extensive cases to extract the tooth, after which the treatment is practically the same as has been outlined above (see

Digitized by Google

Fig. 15, p. 326). Sometimes there is pain following the surgical removal of the affected process. In this case the euroform paste is especially indicated; the orthoform controls the pain, the europhen disinfects and stimulates, and the liquid petroleum keeps the saliva, laden with bacteria, out of the wound. The case should be watched closely and the stimulating treatment kept up until the part has healed. The tissue in the interproximal space will never be fully reproduced, and will always be a source of more or less annoyance.

It will be noted that in discussing the treatment of local arsenical poisoning, no mention has been made of dialysed iron. The practice of applying this agent to the affected part is both useless and wrong.

In conclusion, the author desires to emphasize, what was stated in the beginning, that it is the plain duty of every practitioner to save the pulps of teeth in all cases where it can be done with any reasonable degree of success; yet experience and observation will soon show the folly of attempting to save a pulp that is in a state of passive hyperemia or true inflammation, and will prove also that in these cases the safest practice is to remove the pulp and subsequently fill the canals, notwithstanding the difficulty often attending the performace of this operation. It behooves us, therefore, to study carefully the pathology of the dental pulp, that we may be able to diagnose the condition correctly and apply our therapeutics accordingly.

Digitized by Google

DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT OF PULPLESS TEETH AND THEIR SEQUELÆ; INCLUDING THE PREPARATION OF THE CANALS FOR FILLING

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The treatment of pulpless teeth with gangrenous pulps and their sequelæ has in the past, to a great extent, been purely empirical. The reason for this can be found in the apparent lack of interest which generally has been shown in the chemistry of pulp decomposition. A knowledge of the changes wrought in the splitting up of the complex bodies of the dental pulp by microorganisms is of vital interest to every practising dentist; and every student should, therefore, familiarize himself with this important subject. The only method by which drugs and remedies can be scientifically applied to the treatment of the condition under consideration is to have a definite knowledge of the intermediate and end-products resulting from the putrefactive process.

Every practitioner of dentistry knows from sad past experience that in the process of pulp decomposition some kinds of mephitic gases are evolved which, if confined, would produce severe pathologic disturbances; but just what the gases were and how the unfavorable conditions were brought about we were left to conjecture. From our study of the chemistry of pulp decomposition we have every reason for believing that the main gases produced are *ammonia* and *hydrogen sulphid*. When these gases are generated and cannot readily escape through a cavity, pressure is produced, thereby forcing the infectious material through the apices of the roots into the surrounding tissue, from which infection, septic pericementitis and, in many instances, an alveolar abscess result.

Coagulating Drugs.—There has been much discussion in the dental literature of the past in regard to the penetrating or non-penetrating power of coagulating agents in gangrenous root-canals. It is true, as claimed by some authorities, that such drugs as phenol, creosote, solutions of zinc chlorid, etc., are contraindicated in the treatment of gangrenous pulps, but not because they possess the coagulating property; for when the dental pulp is undergoing or has undergone the process of decomposition, the proteid constituents, or coagulable substances, have lost their former identity, and new com-

Digitized by Google

pounds, with entirely different properties, have been formed. In selecting drugs to be used in the treatment of this condition, the author will therefore eliminate the question of coagulation, and will select drugs which, if properly used, will unite chemically with the intermediate and end-products of decomposition, converting them into odorless and non-infectious compounds, as well as destroy germ life.

Important Products of Pulp Decomposition.—In this connection it should be remembered that the gangrenous condition has been brought about through the agency of microorganisms by a gradual analytic process, and among the products formed which must be considered in the treatment are *hydrogen sulphid, poisonous ptomains* or *toxins*, and *ammonia* or derivatives, the latter gas being evolved from the further putrefaction of the intermediate compounds (ptomains and amido acids). It is well to remember also that *fats* or fatty acids are a class of end-products resulting from the putrefaction of proteid substances.

The main gases formed, then, are ammonia and hydrogen sulphid. Now it will be necessary to dispose of these gases by our initial treatment in order to hermetically seal the cavity, an object the accomplishment of which is much desired in the treatment of these cases; for by so doing we prevent the oral fluids from contaminating the medicine within the tooth, the medicine from escaping into the patient's mouth, and the tooth from changing color during the time of treatment.

Drugs Indicated.—It has been shown by Cassidy and others that *formaldehyd* (CH_2O) is a valuable therapeutic agent if properly used. This gas occurs in commerce in a 37 per cent. aqueous solution, which solution is recognized by the United States Pharmacopeia under the name of liquor formaldehyd, or formalin. The gas will unite with ammonia, producing urotropin, a solid, as $6CH_2O + 4NH_3 = (CH_2)_6N_4 + 6H_2O$.

Formaldehyd unites also with hydrogen sulphid, forming, in the author's opinion, methyl alcohol, a liquid, and sulphur, a solid, as $2CH_2O + 2H_2S = 2CH_3OH + S_2$.

It is stated on good authority that this same gas, formaldehyd, unites with basic ptomains, forming inodorous compounds. By the use of formaldehyd, then, in our initial treatment for a gangrenous pulp, the *irritating gases* and *poisonous liquids* (largely ptomains) can be changed chemically into *nonirritating* and *nonpoisonous liquids* and *solids*. The official solution of formaldehyd, however, is too irritating for general use; therefore, inasmuch as fats result from pulp

Digitized by Google

decomposition and are present as such in a gangrenous root-canal, the author, several years ago, selected *cresol* as an agent with which to dilute the official solution and thereby modify the irritating action of formaldehyd. Cresol is also recognized by the United States Pharmacopeia under this name. Formerly the product was commercially called *tricresol*. This agent has a tendency to darken when exposed to light. It is recommended that a clear solution be obtained and then kept in an amber-colored bottle.

Liquor formaldehyd can be diluted with such other agents as phenol, or creosote, if, in the latter instance, a small amount of alcohol is added to clear the solution. Cresol, however, is recommended for four principal reasons:

1. It is miscible with the liquor formaldehyd in all proportions, thus making, without the addition of alcohol, a good pharmacal product from which formaldehyd gas is constantly generated.

2. It is a good disinfectant—much more powerful than phenol.

3. It possesses an anodyne property which modifies the irritating action of formaldehyd.

4. It acts chemically upon fatty compounds, thereby disposing to advantage of these substances.

Factors to be Considered.—In the successful treatment of the conditions under consideration, there are three important purposes to be accomplished:

1. Establish asepsis.
2. Prevent recurring sepsis.
3. Preserve or restore the color of the tooth.

In calling the attention of the reader to a method of treating this condition, which has proved very successful in the author's practice, I desire to emphasize the necessity of observing the details of the method. The successful management of pulpless teeth is largely a matter of chemistry, and the treatment involves the use of certain chemical agents. In view of our present knowledge of focal infection and its relation to systemic disease, the author considers the treatment of pulpless teeth one of the most important subjects before our profession to-day.

Diagnosis of Dead Pulps.—It is not a difficult matter, as a rule, to differentiate between teeth containing living or dead pulps. The clinical history, the color of the tooth, its response or nonresponse to thermal or electrical stimuli, will lead us to suspect that the pulp is dead or alive. Now we are ready to confirm our diagnosis. One of the best means of confirming the diagnosis of a dead pulp is the use of electricity by an instrument known as the "vibrating coil." This

Digitized by Google

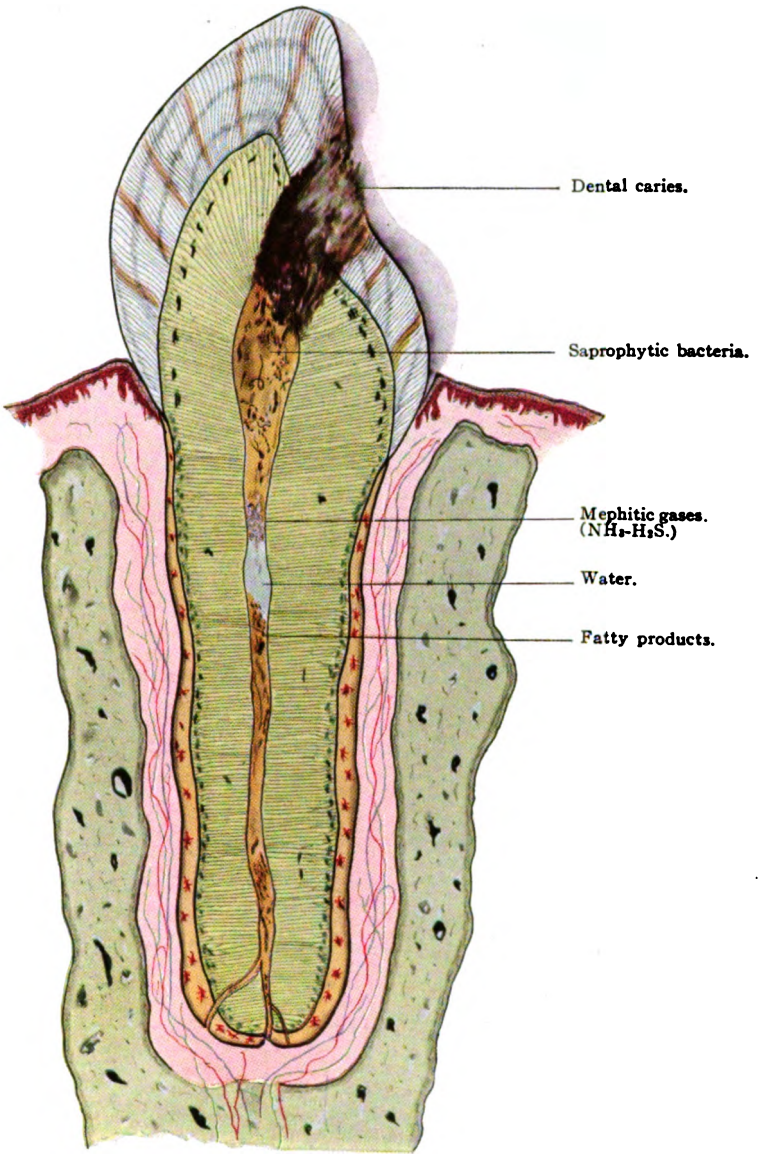


FIG. 18.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

consists of a single dry cell and a vibrating coil with a switch to control the current. The cord leading from the positive pole is arranged with a holder so that a broach may be attached; cotton is wrapped around the broach and moistened when it is applied to the suspected tooth. The cord from the negative pole is attached to a metal holder, which is held by the hand of the patient; thus the circuit is completed. A stronger current may be had by moving the positive pole to the right on the instrument or by gradually withdrawing the cylinder which runs through the coil. One should always start with a weak current, gradually increasing the strength if no response is obtained. It is best to apply the current first to a tooth known to be vital, and use this as a control or guide. When two approximating teeth contain metal fillings, the current should be applied to the tooth so as not to come in contact with the filling; otherwise the current may be conducted to the filling of the adjoining tooth, which, if vital, would respond, leading one to believe that the tooth to which the current is applied is vital, when, as a matter of fact, it may be pulpless.

After the diagnosis of a dead pulp has been confirmed, the pulp chamber is freely opened with a suitable round bur. It is not enough here to simply determine whether the pulp is dead or alive; but, if dead, an effort should be made to determine whether the condition is one of true gangrene with its characteristic odoriferous and gaseous end-products or whether, as sometimes occurs, the active pyogenic microorganisms have liquefied a part or all of the bulbous portion of the pulp, forming drops of pus in the pulp chamber with practically no odor, and with the tissue in the canals still vital.

Treatment of Pulpless Teeth.—When a patient presents with a pulpless tooth, the original pulp tissue is generally either in a moist gangrenous condition, as a result of the action of bacteria (Fig. 18) or a previous attempt has been made to remove the pulp and fill the canals. (See History of Cases, p. 351.) In either case, the first treatment here, in my opinion, should be a dressing of *formocresol*.

℞—Cresolis,
Liquoris formaldehydi, āā f℥j (4.0 mils).—M.
Sig.—Use as directed.

Other preparations may be just as effective; but this is the one I have used for years and about which I can speak with assurance. Under aseptic precautions, this remedy should be placed in the pulp chamber only, and the dressing retained with cement. This dressing

Digitized by Google

should remain at least twenty-four hours, and in the interim a radiograph of the tooth and periapical area should be obtained.

The chemical action of formocresol on a gangrenous pulp has been published so often and is now so well known that I need not repeat it here.[1] I know that many good men to-day advocate the immediate cleansing of a gangrenous canal; but I am firmly of the belief that the safest and best practice is to first supply at least one dressing of formocresol. Gilmer, Moody, and others, have found that the predominating organism in the conditions resulting from a gangrenous pulp, therefore the group active in bringing about the decomposition, is a streptococcus, "with graded variations from a hemolytic streptococcus with a wide zone of hemolysis in the acute abscess to a *streptococcus viridans* in the chronic." One initial treatment of formocresol in these cases, while it may not kill all of the organisms present, will certainly lessen the number and lower the virulency of those remaining. Surely no one will deny the favorable and valuable effect of formaldehyd gas on the intermediate and end-products of pulp decomposition. With these poisonous and irritating products chemically neutralized; with the bacteria, inaugurating the process, killed or their virulency lowered, we may the more safely, I believe, work to the root-end, and clean and enlarge the canal by a *chemico-mechanical* process. By this I mean the use of chemicals in connection with broaches, reamers, files, and other necessary instruments.

At the present time, so far as I know, there are three chemical agents in general use for this purpose—*metallic potassium* and *sodium*, as advocated by Rhein; *sulphuric acid* by Callahan; and *phenolsulphonic acid* by the author. We will now consider the chemistry and pharmacology of these agents.

Potassium and Sodium (K and Na).—This is an alloy composed of a mixture of the two metals. It occurs as a semi-solid, silvery-white preparation. Like the metals of which it is composed, it must be kept under a hydrocarbon oil or paraffin to protect it from the air and moisture. It was first introduced in the United States by Schreier, of Vienna, in 1893, at the World's Columbian Dental Congress in Chicago. So far as I am able to learn, Schreier has never published the proportion of the metals in his product. The metals will produce an alloy in varying proportions; and, in my opinion, the more sodium in the mixture the better the preparation will be as long as there is enough potassium to make an alloy when the two metals are properly mixed. No attempt should ever be made to mix the

[1] The chemistry of pulp decomposition has been discussed by the author in Johnson's "Text-book of Operative Dentistry," p. 341, and in various dental journals.

Digitized by Google

metals unless they are constantly kept under a hydrocarbon oil, such as kerosene, gasoline or benzene; and, even then, it is best to leave the compounding to an experienced chemist or pharmacist.

Technic of Using Schreier's Alloy.—Schreier's preparation comes in a small glass tube, one end of which is open so that the alloy may be covered with paraffin, which prevents undue exposure to air or moisture. It is to the advocacy of Rhein that the preparation owes its popularity in this country. He has developed a technic which, if followed carefully, insures success. With the rubber dam adjusted and everything in readiness, a barbed broach may be pushed through the paraffin cover and into the metallic mass; on gently withdrawing it small particles adhere to the broach. It is best to have these particles as near the end of the broach as possible, in which manner the alloy is transferred to the canal. It is presumed that the canal is moist, which is generally the case. A violent reaction at once takes place, the metals attack the water molecule and hydroxids are formed, liberating hydrogen gas. If potassium predominates in the alloy, or even if it is present in equal proportion with the sodium, a sufficient amount of heat is generated by the reaction to cause the liberated hydrogen to burn. To set the hydrogen off actively and start it burning requires a temperature of from 500° to 600°C. This burning of the hydrogen is an objection, in my opinion, and it was for this reason that I suggested (above) the employment of an alloy with sodium predominating. After the initial reaction and the hydroxids are formed, they in turn act upon the fatty end-products, in case of a gangrenous pulp, forming a soluble soap. Where the organic tissue has not been decomposed by bacteria the action of the hydroxids differs somewhat in that the hydroxyl ion unites with the protein constituent of the tissue, forming a soluble alkaline albuminate. In either case, it will be observed, the product formed is *soluble*, and may be washed out of the canal, leaving it clean and sterile.

The action of potassium and sodium hydroxid on the contents of a canal of a tooth, whether or not the tissue is decomposed, is the same. When the salts and compounds of these metals are internally administered their action differs only in that the potassium ion is more depressant than the sodium ion in its influence upon the cardiac, muscular and nervous systems. But in the canal of a tooth we do not have this pharmacologic effect of the metal ion; here we get only that which is desired—the chemical action of the hydroxyl ion.

Rationale of Rhein's Method.—With this information before us, let us examine the rationale of Rhein's method of using metallic potassium and sodium in the treatment and preparation of canals

Digitized by Google

for filling. The chemistry is correct; a description of the method reads well. The question is whether the preparation is safe and practical. My reply is that it is safe in the hands of those who will master the technic and use it with intelligence and care; but that it is not as practical as other chemicals which may be used with equally good results. It must be remembered that each particle of alloy that is introduced into a canal is decomposed just as soon as it comes in contact with moisture. This practically means that the initial reaction between the metals and water takes place at the mouth of the canal; for it is difficult to keep the canal free from moisture down to the place at which we stop each succeeding time we enter it with the broach or other instrument. The mere withdrawal of the latter would necessarily moisten the canal, more or less, which had been affected by the remedy. Then, too, if we are using an alloy, like Schreier's, in which there is enough potassium to cause the liberated hydrogen to burn, as a result of the intense heat from the violent reaction between the metals and water, *we are constantly moistening the canal;* for when hydrogen burns it does so by virtue of the oxygen in the air supporting the combustion, and water (H_2O) is chemically formed. Therefore, it is impossible to keep the canal free from moisture when we use an alloy which reacts on water with such violence that the heat generated causes the hydrogen to burn. Even Rhein himself, with all his experience, technic and care, wisely cautions against the possibility of destroying, or affecting deleteriously, the tooth structure at the mouth of the canal by this "burning" process. Does this not mean, then, that unless extreme care is taken to prevent the initial reaction until the alloy is down in the canal to the point desired, the chemicals which actually do the work down in the canal proper are the hydroxids of the metals? If this be true, why should we not introduce into the canal and use one of these hydroxids (there is absolutely no advantage in using both) from the beginning? When I want the action of these alkalies in a canal, I generally use, after the method of Pruyn, of Chicago, a saturated solution of sodium hydroxid (NaOH). This is a rather thick, syrupy solution, which may be applied like any solution of its kind.

There is another objection to the use of metallic potassium and sodium, especially a mixture of the metals in which potassium predominates or is present in equal proportion. Granting that with proper care one could keep moisture from the canal as he gradually approached the end in the use of the alloy, I am one of those who firmly believe that we should not *burn* our way through the live,

Digitized by Google

healthy cementum at the end of the root from which a live pulp has been removed. One of the first things a student learns in studying chemistry is "that hydrogen burns with the hottest known flame." With a dental granuloma or alveolar abscess in the periapical region, it is a different proposition; but, even here, we may accomplish our purpose with far less destructive chemicals.

This brings us to a discussion of the use of "acids" instead of "alkalies" for the purpose under consideration. The acids which I shall discuss are sulphuric acid (30 per cent.) and phenolsulphonic acid (80 per cent.).

Advantages of Phenolsulphonic Acid.—The chemical action of sulphuric and phenolsulphonic acids for the use under consideration is practically the same; and they will be discussed here conjointly. Personally, I prefer phenolsulphonic acid. Its consistency is thick and syrupy in the 80 per cent. strength which is recommended; thus a drop will adhere to the end of a broach or other applicator, permitting it to be carried even into the canals of upper teeth without difficulty. The acid does not materially affect a broach, and if any of it accidentally gets on the enamel of the crown of the tooth and is not noticed for a time, it does not decalcify and whiten the spot to the extent that sulphuric acid would do. When the acid is worked through the end of the root, as is desirable for cauterization in cases of a dental granuloma or alveolar abscess, it is sufficiently cauterant for the purposes desired, yet not as destructive as sulphuric acid would be; and, owing to its analgesic tendencies, causes less pericementitis. In this connection, however, I want to say that we should not expect to do this work as it must be done, without more or less soreness following the treatment. There is a wide variance in patients regarding the reaction of the periapical tissues to these agents; and in these chronic conditions it is generally best to invite and create inflammatory reaction that the sluggish cells in the area may take on new life and activity. This should not be done, however, at the expense of unnecessary destruction of tissue.

It might be supposed by those who have not used phenolsulphonic acid that, possessing the above-mentioned advantages over plain sulphuric acid, it would be less effective in the canal. I have not found this to be the case. The agent has one possible disadvantage. In using either of these acids, after they have been introduced into the canal for a time and the walls thereof filled with a suitable broach, they should be neutralized with a solution of sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$). In the case of sulphuric acid the

Digitized by Google

salt formed as a result of the reaction is sodium sulphate (Na_2SO_4), a freely soluble salt. With phenolsulphonic acid the salt formed is sodium phenolsulphonate ($NaSO_3.C_6H_4.OH + 2H_2O$), which is not as soluble as sodium sulphate. I can conceive how it might be possible in a very fine canal to temporarily block it with the salt formed. An excess of water would readily dissolve the salt or by using a solution of sodium bicarbonate of not more than 10 per cent. strength the salt would be dissolved as soon as formed by the reaction. This is a thing which probably would never occur in practice; but I mention it as a possible disadvantage.

Caution in Using Callahan's Method.—In using sulphuric acid Callahan advises that it be a 30 per cent. solution. In this strength there is not the danger of charring or carbonizing the pulp tissue which may be in the canal undecomposed, that there would be if a more concentrated solution were used. Sulphuric acid is one of the most corrosive acids. When applied to the skin, accidently or otherwise, in concentrated form, it causes an intense, burning pain, and results in a rapid destruction of tissue. The eschar is at first white, gradually becoming brown, and causes a coal-black slough. The corrosive effect upon mucous membranes or the tissue in the periapical area of teeth is still more marked than upon the skin. The acid rapidly abstracts water from the tissue, the alkalies are neutralized and the proteins precipitated, which results in complete destruction of the tissue. This carbonizing of the undecomposed tissue in the canal should be avoided, as it forms a mechanical obstruction difficult to remove; and it is for this reason that the 30 per cent. solution is recommended by Callahan.

Technic of Using Acid Method.—We will now consider the technic of treating pulpless teeth and preparing the canals for filling by the "acid method." I take it to be thoroughly understood that good root-canal work means the use of the rubber dam in all cases, and the strict observance of asepsis. With me at this time, as heretofore, it means asepsis fortified by antiseptic precautions. I make this statement because it is so difficult to observe strict asepsis in our dental offices.

In a large percentage of cases of gangrenous pulps or imperfectly filled canals, the radiograph will disclose a dark and suspicious area at the end of the root. With this evidence, and under the conditions, we may properly diagnose the case as a *dental granuloma* or *alveolar abscess*. This growth may be nonpurulent or of the pus-discharging variety. It is only recently that these nonpurulent growths—true dental granulomas—have been recognized as such;

Digitized by Google

and the treatment of such conditions in the past has not been as specifically emphasized as their significance merits.

Nonpurulent Variety.—It makes no difference with me whether this growth is associated with a tooth, the canal of which contains a gangrenous pulp, *per se*, or an imperfect root-canal filling—the treatment is practically the same. At the first sitting, when the diagnosis is made by the aid of a radiograph, or even before the latter is obtained, under aseptic precautions, the pulp chamber is opened into freely and a dressing of formocresol is hermetically sealed in for two or three days. Cement should always be used here to retain the dressing. This treatment is for the purpose of neutralizing the gangrenous contents of the canal, or, in a measure, sterilizing the old root filling, as the case may be. In making an attempt to work one's way by chemico-mechanical means to and through the root-end without the previous application of some strong disinfectant, like formocresol, I have found that acute symptoms too frequently develop. This initial formocresol treatment prevents many of the acute symptoms which follow the immediate attempt to reach the root-end, however careful one may be. At the second sitting, I want the radiograph; then with the rubber dam always in place and all necessary instruments sterilized, I carefully work to the apex with phenolsulphonic acid, using in connection therewith fine, smooth, twist and file broaches. This is what I call the chemico-mechanical process. The acid is frequently neutralized with a solution of sodium bicarbonate; and since phenolsulphonic acid is the chemical I am using, for reasons previously mentioned I prefer not to have the alkaline solution more than 10 per cent. in strength. If sulphuric acid is the agent used, this point is not so essential. The sodium bicarbonate solution not only chemically neutralizes the acid, but the effervescence caused by the reaction aids materially in removing the "mushy" and disintegrated material from the canal. After I am satisfied that I am at the end of the root, that the acid is neutralized and the canal perfectly clean and sufficiently enlarged, then, if the radiograph has indicated a periapical involvement, with the acid and a small stiff broach, I work my way through into the affected area. Some of the acid is purposely worked through the end for the express purpose of destroying the growth by cauterization. In the first edition of this book (1909), I spoke of phenolsulphonic acid as a stimulating cauterant and called it a "bone cell stimulant;" and after seven years of further use of the agent in these conditions, I am still of this opinion. Personally, I have obtained better results by using phenolsulphonic acid than any other cauterant at my com-

Digitized by Google

absolutely erroneous. There are many chemic agents which act as cauterants and which may be relied upon to eradicate "this pathologic growth at the end of the root." Much, of course, will depend upon the extent of the destruction of the pericemental membrane and the consequent amount of denuded root-end as a result of the granulomatous growth. As stated above, for years I have advocated and used phenolsulphonic acid for both the nonpurulent and pus-discharging varieties; and I desire to state that I have been curing these conditions. I do not wish to imply that phenolsulphonic acid is the only agent that will accomplish favorable results; but it is the one I have successfully used. What a dismal old world this would be if there were only one royal road to success in any line of human endeavor! I do not object to anyone using so-called ionization. I know results may be obtained by the proper use of the method; but I do object strenuously to the opinion which is prevalent in some quarters that those who are not using this method are failing to cure their cases.

Ionic Theory.—Now let us discuss the ionic theory from the chemic and pharmacologic viewpoint. Ionization in chemistry means the act of dissociating the ions of a salt or compound by passing it in solution or by means of the electric current. The men who have been attempting to cure, and I want to say that in many instances they do cure, dental granulomas or alveolar abscesses by dissociating the ions of certain salts—notably zinc chlorid, with the electric current—have been taught by Rhein, the most ardent advocate of the method in the United States, that results are obtained by virtue of the *infected tissues in the area being sterilized by the so-called ionization.* Price, of Cleveland, takes issue with Rhein on this point; and states that he had aspirated in many cases after using the current by Rhein's method and that he was able in nearly every instance to make a culture from the germs thus obtained from the area supposed to have been sterilized. The aspiration was done immediately after the current and salt solution were employed. This does not prove that we cannot cure these conditions by this method of treatment. Rhein and others have proved conclusively that such conditions can be so cured; but it does prove that the results are not obtained by complete sterilization as claimed. Price further makes the statement that ionization as such cannot be accomplished in the manner explained by Rhein; and Price is of the opinion that what is really done by the current in these cases is *cauterization of the affected area.* The point I wish to make is this: If cauterization of the tissues involved will effect a cure in dental granulomas or alveolar

Digitized by Google

abscesses, as I and many others know it will, the proposition resolves itself into the question: What is the most practical and effectual means of bringing about this result? It is simply a question which each one must decide for himself; and each should use those agents and methods which in his hands offer the greatest opportunity for success. It is wrong for any man, especially one who is looked upon as an authority, to claim that there is only one method or means of accomplishing definite results, and that that method is the one which he champions, and perhaps has originated. It is wrong because it is not true; and, not being true, it is discouraging to the thousands of men in the profession who are anxious to do honest, conscientious root-canal work, but who are absolutely at a loss at this time as to just how good work may be done. We need here, as in all lines of dental practice, a standard on which we may all agree.

In recent years much has been written about the health-value of removing focal infection. This is all important, but I wish to state, with all the emphasis at my command, that the majority by far of teeth thus involved may be therapeutically or surgically treated so that they will not be a menace to the health of the individual. Physicians and dentists should work together and in harmony on this proposition. The former should not advise the extraction of teeth without first consulting the latter. When focal infection is found or suspected in the mouth by the medical practitioner, his plain duty lies in referring the patient back to the family dentist with such suggestions as he may deem advisable in the case; and the dentist's duty lies in *removing the focus of infection* by treatment or extraction. The members of the two professions should work together harmoniously for the benefit of the patient's health, which is being done to-day.

COMPLICATIONS.—Occasionally we encounter complications in the treatment of pulpless teeth. These will now be considered.

Badly Decayed Root.—Formocresol is very destructive to the soft tissues of the mouth, therefore the importance of always adjusting the rubber dam. If this cannot be done on account of a badly decayed root, it is suggested that care be taken in sealing the remedy in the cavity at the first sitting, and, in placing the cement, the original outline of the root can be approximated. After the cement has set, a band or matrix of gold or German silver can be fitted to, and cemented to the root. In doing this it is best to use a cement of different color from that employed for treatment purposes; and in treating the case where there is a tooth posterior, it is best to place a clamp on this tooth, gently stretch the rubber over the band and

Digitized by Google

thereby avoid loosening it. With the complication thus removed, the treatment is the same as previously given.

Pulp Partially Alive.—In those cases where the pulp tissue is gangrenous in one or more canals of a multirooted tooth and alive in the other one or two canals, as the case may be, we will find much satisfaction in using the formocresol remedy (Fig. 19). These are exceptional cases and it is difficult to know whether this condition exists until the second sitting. If there be much vitality in the live pulp tissue, the formaldehyd in the remedy will doubtless make the tooth ache, but after we know the conditions our method of procedure is simple, and the results will be certain. A small pledget of cotton dipped in the remedy can gently be placed over the mouths of the canals which contain putrescent material, and a thin quick-setting cement flowed over the cotton. After the cement has set, the live pulp tissue in the remaining canals can be anesthetized or devitalized, as the operator deems best at the time. These remnants of pulps may generally be desensitized and removed with very little pain by gently working phenolsulphonic acid up or down the canal with a fine broach. Formerly these were difficult cases to treat, but with a remedy which can be hermetically sealed in a gangrenous root-canal, the procedure is materially simplified.

Pulpal Abscess.—It was previously mentioned that one may occasionally open into a suspected tooth, having all the symptoms of a dead pulp, and find a drop of pus in the bulbous portion of the pulp with the remaining portion still alive. Some writers call this condition a *septic pulp* or *pulpal abscess* in contradistinction to *gangrene* or *true putrescence* (presence of gases). In such a case, any remedy containing formaldehyd may cause the tooth to ache; therefore, this must be taken into consideration, and in the treatment of so-called septic pulps, the pus should be washed out of the cavity with a warm antiseptic solution, the cavity dried, and asepsis established by hermetically sealing in a much smaller amount of formocresol than that generally used in cases of true *gangrene*. If this precaution is taken the tooth will not ache long, even in cases where no odor is present and the vital tissue is still quite sensitive. This remedy will sterilize the tissue, after which, at the second sitting, the pulp can be anesthetized or devitalized as usual.

Dry Gangrene.—Sometimes on opening into a pulpless tooth we find the canal dry and odorless. This condition is called *dry gangrene* of the pulp. It is not really a complication if we recognize that microorganisms may be present and seal a disinfectant in the canal for at least twenty-four hours. One treatment of formocresol

Digitized by Google

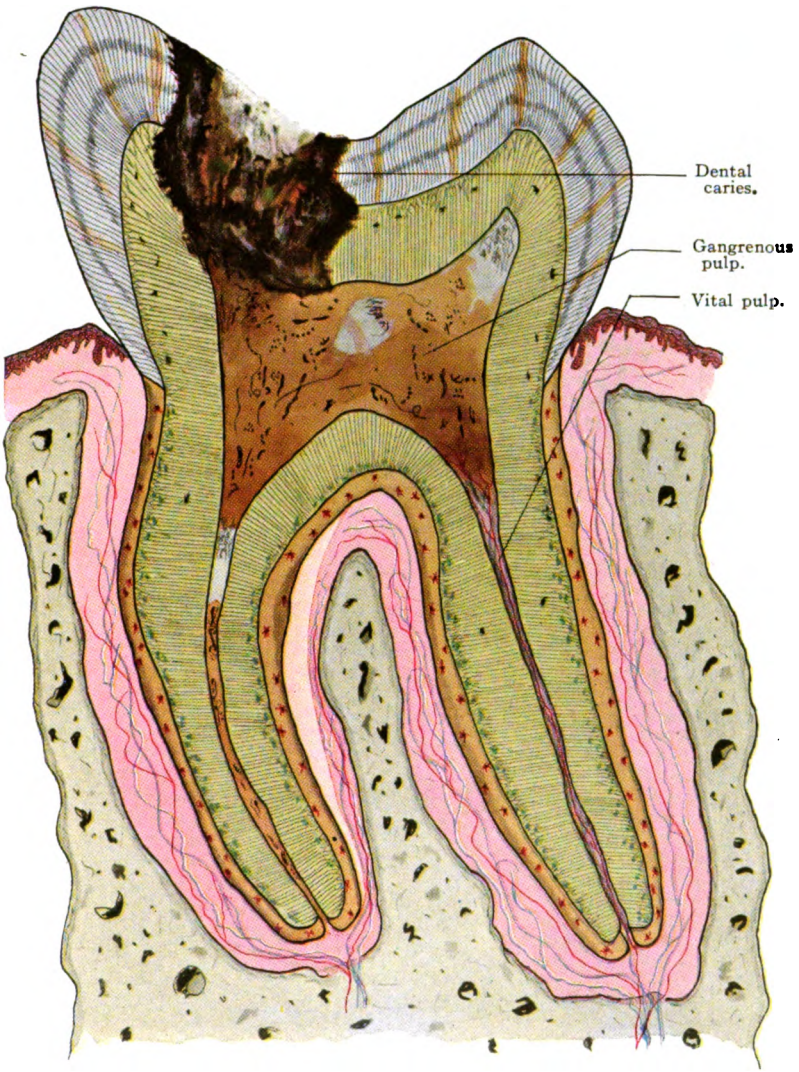


FIG. 19.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

or phenol compound will correct any possible trouble, when we are ready to use phenolsulphonic acid, after which the canal can be filled.

The author realizes that the method of treating pulpless teeth, here given, is a radical departure from those generally used in the past. With the knowledge we have to-day of the dire results of focal infection; and with the X-ray showing that the root-ends of pulpless teeth in so many instances are foci of infection, it becomes necessary to either improve our treatment or extract these teeth. The following cases from the author's practice, treated after the methods here advocated, speak for themselves.

HISTORY AND TREATMENT OF PRACTICAL CASES

Series No. 1.

Patient.—Female. Age, about 33 years; of a nervous temperament, and not in good physical condition. Had suffered more or less from neuralgia. All teeth extremely hypersensitive. Picture for Fig. 20 was taken February 2, 1916.

Treatment.—The excementosed second bicuspid was extracted February 21. (Fig. 21.) The porcelain crown was removed from the first bicuspid on February 28th, and formocresol sealed in canals. On March 1st the canals were cleansed and opened with xylol and phenolsulphonic acid, when diagnostic wires were placed in canals and picture for Fig. 22 taken. The canals were filled on March 6th, when pictures for Fig. 23 and Fig. 24, showing two views of root-filling, were taken.

Series No. 2 (*a* and *b*).

Patient.—Female. Age, about 32 years. Presented in March, 1916, suffering with intermittent, radiating pains in the back of her head and both sides of her neck. The general condition of the patient was good, except that she was rather depressed from overwork. She had had several radiographs taken the preceding September. A nonpurulent dental granuloma was disclosed on the lower second bicuspid on either side. Fig. 25 of this series shows the granuloma on the lower right bicuspid.

Treatment.—(*a*) Removed porcelain crown on March 1st and sealed formocresol in the canal. On March 3, the canal was cleaned and opened with xylol and phenolsulphonic acid and eucalyptol compound sealed in. The canal was filled on March 8, when picture for Fig. 26 was taken. The tooth was giving no local

Digitized by Google

trouble, apparently, when treatment was begun; nor was any soreness manifested throughout the treatment. Picture for Fig. 27 was taken July 11, about 4 months after the canal was filled. Picture for Fig. 28 was taken September 25, about 6½ months after root-filling operation. (*b*) Picture for Fig. 29 of this series shows the granuloma on the lower left bicuspid. As was mentioned of the tooth on the opposite side of the mouth, this tooth also was giving no apparent local trouble when treatment was begun. The gold crown was removed on March 4 and I immediately worked to the end of the root with xylol and phenolsulphonic acid. Sealed eucalyptol compound in the canal. Patient returned March 8, giving history of acute apical pericementitis, which was still in evidence. Placed diagnostic wire in the canal with formocresol dressing, when picture for Fig. 30 was taken. On March 14 the soreness had entirely subsided, when canal was filled. This case illustrates the value of the initial formocresol dressing, which you will notice was not used here. Picture for Fig. 31 was taken July 11, about 4 months after root-filling operation. In the meantime the lower left first molar, carrying a gold inlay which restored nearly the occlusal third of the crown, became uncomfortable, though the radiating pains in the back of head and neck had completely disappeared. Fig. 31 shows the diagnostic wires after devitalizing and removing, by the aid of phenolsulphonic acid, an almost completely calcified pulp. Picture for Fig. 32 was taken September 25, about 6½ months after root-filling operation on bicuspid, and 2 months after that on the molar.

Series No. 3.

Patient.—Male. Age, about 40 years. Nervous, not in good physical condition. An upper right first molar had been treated and filled about 3 months previous to the time patient was referred. Complained that his tooth "had never felt right since it had been treated." Picture for Fig. 33 was taken May 26, 1916, before I saw the patient.

Treatment.—On June 10, the amalgam filling was removed, as was also the old root-filling, using xylol and phenolsulphonic acid. The lingual canal seemed blocked and a false pocket had been made. The canal proper appeared to be blocked with undecomposed pulp tissue. I used a saturated solution of sodium hydroxid and in 5 minutes' time, with a small twist broach, the end of the root was reached. The alkali was then neutralized with phenolsulphonic acid. Time consumed for entire operation at this sitting—one hour. I mention this here simply to show that if we go at these

Digitized by Google

FIG. 20.

FIG. 21.

FIG. 22.

FIG. 23.

FIG. 24.

Digitized by Google

Series No. 2. (*a*)

Fig. 25.

Fig. 26.

Fig. 27.

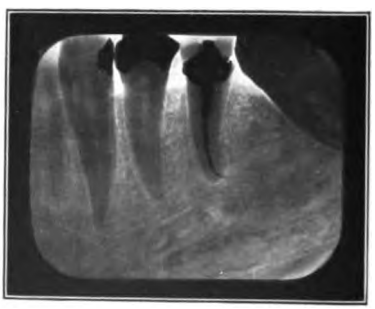


Fig. 28.

Digitized by Google

Series No. 2. (*b*)

Fig. 29.

Fig. 30.

Fig. 31.

Fig. 32.

Digitized by Google

Series No. 3.

Fig. 33.

Fig. 34.

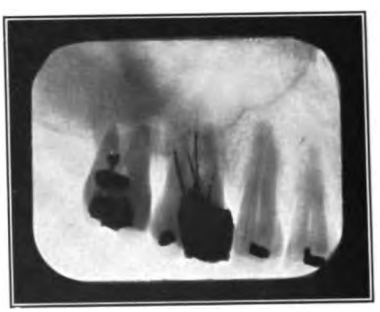


Fig. 35.

Digitized by Google

Series No. 4.

Fig. 36.

Fig. 37.

Fig. 38.

Digitized by Google

Series No. 5.

Fig. 39.

Fig. 40.

Fig. 41.

Digitized by Google

Series No. 6.

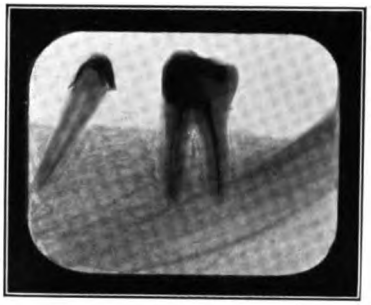


Fig. 42.

Fig. 43.

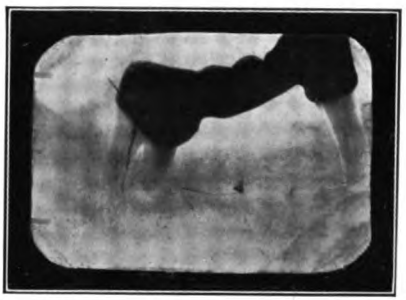


Fig. 44.

Digitized by Google

Series No. 7.

Fig. 45.

Fig. 46.

Digitized by Google

cases in an intelligent manner, it does not require as much time as some operators have led us to believe. The diagnostic wires were also put in at this sitting with a dressing of eucalyptol compound, when picture for Fig. 34 was taken. This picture shows that the wire in the mesio-lingual canal was not in as far as the canal had been explored, or else, as proved to be the case, the canal was not properly opened. Patient returned June 16. Thinking undecomposed pulp tissue also blocked the mesio-lingual canal, the saturated solution of sodium hydroxid was used. In 3 minutes' time the end of the root was reached. The alkali was neutralized with phenolsulphonic acid, canals desiccated and filled. Ordered radiograph for Fig. 35. The patient called when he was in the city, late in September, and reported tooth entirely comfortable.

Series No. 4.

Patient.—Female. Age, about 45 years. Physical condition very good. Presented May 5, 1916. No pain or discomfort of any kind; but she had noticed a discharging sinus in the region of the apex of the upper left second bicuspid. So far as patient knew, the abscess had been standing for about 2 years. Ordered radiograph for Fig. 36.

Treatment.—Opened into the pulp chamber on the above date (May 5) and cleaned canal with phenolsulphonic acid, working the same through end of root and sinus, after using physiologic salt solution. As there was a bad odor, formocresol was sealed in the canal. On May 8 the canals were filled and picture for Fig. 37 was taken. Picture for Fig. 38 was taken January 4, 1917.

Series No. 5.

Patient.—Male. Age, about 55 years. Blood-pressure abnormally high, and occasionally had spells of dizziness. Two involved teeth were extracted and upper lateral treatment was given as follows for gangrenous pulp.

Treatment.—On May 31, 1916, the canal was exposed and a dressing of formocresol sealed in. The patient could not return until June 29, when the canal was cleaned and enlarged with phenolsulphonic acid, and unexpectedly an abscess sac was ruptured and pus, thick and yellow, with streaks of blood, flowed freely from the canal. The discharge was checked, the acid worked through the end and formocresol sealed in the canal. On this date (June 29) picture for Fig. 39 was taken. Patient did not return, owing to absence from city, until July 20, when the root-filling was inserted.

Digitized by Google

Picture for Fig. 40 was taken September 9, about 7 weeks after root-filling operation and about 9 weeks after the pus was noticed. Picture for Fig. 41 was taken December 30, 1916. This case illustrates the advantage of the radiograph in the treatment of all cases of pulpless teeth. Notice how the fluid gutta-percha escapes through the multiple foramina.

Series No. 6

Patient.—Male. Age, about 38 years. The vital teeth in picture for Fig. 42 had carried an inlay bridge for several years. Decay had progressed under the molar inlay, and when patient presented the pulp of this tooth was highly congested and aching severely.

Treatment.—On Sept. 5, 1916, when I first saw the patient, the pulp was caused to bleed and phenol compound sealed in the cavity. On Sept. 7 the patient returned giving history of the tooth being comfortable. At this time the bridge was removed and devitalizing fiber applied. On account of my leaving the city and the patient being a dentist, the arsenical dressing was left for one week, with instructions to remove the same in case the tooth manifested soreness. This was not necessary and the patient returned on Sept. 14. Contrary to my usual custom of using formocresol after a pulp has been poisoned with arsenic trioxid, I removed the pulp at this sitting and cleaned the canals with phenolsulphonic acid. Eucalyptol compound was then sealed in, and on Sept. 18 the canals were filled. Picture for Fig. 43 was taken Oct. 5.

In Fig. 44 we find a good illustration of the care that should be taken in the interpretation of dental radiographs. There is shown a dental granuloma on the mesial root of the lower molar, as was subsequently verified by treatment; but the point to which I desire to call especial attention is the dark line parallel with the distal root. This might be mistaken for a gutta-percha point passing through a punctured root. Closer examination will show that something on the film, having no relation to the tooth, produced the shadow, for the line curves upward and may be noticed distal to the gold crown. Radiographs are a great aid in dental diagnosis, but they are by no means positive.

Series No. 7

Patient.—Female. Age, 11 years. While playing at school, an accident occurred on Oct. 20, 1916, in which both upper central incisors were broken off—one exposing the pulp, the other being nearly exposed.

Digitized by Google

Treatment.—The pulp in the left central, which was exposed, was carefully anesthetized by pressure anesthesia and removed by the family dentist. The pulp in the right central (not quite exposed) was removed under nitrous oxid-oxygen anesthesia. As the roots were not fully formed and the apices were large, the patient was referred for the root-filling operation. Picture for Fig. 45 was taken Oct. 21, after both pulps had been removed. On Oct. 24, both canals were cleaned with phenolsulphonic acid and eucalyptol compound was sealed in with double sealing. The root-filling operation in the left central was done on Oct. 26; in the right central on Oct. 30, when picture for Fig. 46 was taken. The root-filling was covered with zinc oxychlorid cement, as is my practice where it may be done, and the patient referred back to the family dentist with the suggestion that porcelain jacket crowns be made which would not disturb the root-fillings.

The following two cases are from the practice of Dr. J. F. Biddle, Pittsburgh, Pa.

Series No. 8

Patient.—Female. Age, 22. Presented with a badly swollen upper lip, nose and surrounding tissues. The tissues were so distorted that it was difficult to tell where the lip ended and the nose began. In the preceding 48 hours she had had chills and fever intermittently and her temperature at this sitting was 102½°.

Treatment.—On account of her extreme nervousness, it was impossible to make an oral examination at this time; hence, nitrous oxid and oxygen were administered and the soft tissues at the junction of the lip and gum were lanced, about 45 minims of a thick yellowish-green pus being removed, after which the cavity was irrigated with physiologic salt solution and injected with 10 minims of tincture of iodin. The patient was instructed to take a dose of Epsom salts and to keep an ice bag over the affected part. The following day her condition was much improved, temperature 99½°, and upon reopening the wound about 30 minims of pus and blood were removed.

Radiograph for Fig. 47 was taken which shows that, of the four teeth crowned, none of their roots had been filled and all were abscessed. The crowns were removed and a treatment of formocresol was sealed in the canals. On the third day, the canals were opened to the apex with reamers, aided by 50 per cent. sulphuric acid. Upon going through canals at apex of roots there was no sensation, hence wires were inserted, and a second radiograph (Fig. 48) taken, to

Digitized by Google

determine whether all canals had been properly opened. The worst condition was over the right lateral and central incisors, and as it was necessary to restore a healthy condition as quickly as possible on account of the patient's leaving the city, 50 per cent. sulphuric acid was forced through the canals of these two teeth and out through a sinus over the lateral incisor. This was followed by 4 ounces of physiologic salt solution using a 2-ounce syringe with a fine platinum point which was forced into the canal, while the sides were packed with unvulcanized rubber to prevent the return of the fluid.

A second treatment of formocresol was sealed in the four teeth, and allowed to remain for 48 hours. The canals were then enlarged and a third treatment of formocresol (modified) was sealed in for 24 hours, followed by a treatment of oil of cloves which remained for four days. The canals were then filled and a temporary plate which had been made when the crowns were removed did duty for six months, after which the third radiograph (Fig. 49) was taken. Fearing lest the shadow over the right lateral might be an abscess still existing over this tooth, the soft tissues were injected with novocain and a small bur used to enter the bone at the apex of the root, but it was found to be in normal condition and a specimen taken from this location was found to be negative. The fact that this area was not as dense as the remainder of the tract is evidently due to the amount of bone that was removed in enlarging the sinus and the area at the apex.

Four years ago new crowns were adjusted to these teeth, from which time they have given the patient no further discomfort.

Series No. 9.

Patient.—Male. Age, 50. Very active—at his desk greater part of the day—conferences, also outside interests—works from 14 to 16 hours daily, hearty eater, moderate drinker. Had great powers of concentration which appeared to be much impaired within the last year. Examination revealed a slight leaking of one of the valves of his heart, gastrointestinal disturbances, also trace of albumin in the urine. X-ray examination showed a number of unfilled roots, misfit crowns and pyorrhea alveolaris.

Treatment.—The crowns and three teeth were removed. All other partially filled or gangrenous canals were treated and filled and the gums restored to a healthy condition. One tooth, a radiograph of which I shall use to illustrate the regeneration of bone

Digitized by Google

Series No. 8.

Fig. 47.

Fig. 48.

Fig. 49.

Series No. 9.

Fig. 50.

Fig. 51.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

around the apex, was considered hopeless. This tooth was exceedingly loose and when the débris was removed a flow of pus filled the cavity. The pus was evacuated as thoroughly as possible and a specimen was sent to the laboratory. It was found to contain streptococcus fecalis, streptococcus salivarius and streptococcus viridans. A treatment of formocresol was sealed in the pulp chamber. After 48 hours the treatment was removed and the canal was enlarged. Next the canal was cleaned with 50 per cent. sulphuric acid, and a second treatment of formocresol was sealed in for another 48 hours, after which a treatment of oil of cloves was allowed to remain in the canal for a week. The canal was flooded with eucalyptol which displaced the air, this in turn being displaced by chloropercha, followed by a number of fine gutta-percha points, packed until the mass became solid. A crown with very little contour was inserted, which was used as an attachment for a clasp on a plate.

At the time of beginning of treatment of this case, radiograph for Fig. 50 was taken, and four months later for Fig. 51, which shows the rarefied area at the apex of the root to be filling in with bone in a very gratifying manner. I could cite many other cases with larger denuded areas, but this one I consider one of the most hopeless I ever attempted to treat.

Since the patient's teeth have received attention and his mouth has been placed in hygienic condition his health has greatly improved. Whether or not this improvement be due to the correction of diseased oral conditions, I think we will all agree that abscessed teeth should receive early attention, no matter how or where we may find them.

Digitized by Google

DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT OF NONSEPTIC PERICEMENTITIS

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

It is not the intention to introduce in these pages needless pathologic facts, yet in the treatment of pericementitis it is important to remember that the pericemental membrane is very vascular and well supplied with nerves; that it is enclosed within bony walls, and, therefore, when inflammation exists in the tissue the membrane becomes thickened, forcing the tooth from its socket. This elongation of the affected tooth is one of the chief symptoms of true pericementitis.

Before discussing the therapeutics of this condition, I desire to indelibly impress upon the mind of the reader the fact that this condition is too frequently produced by carelessness on the part of dentists. It is not always possible to successfully perform dental operations without irritating the susceptible pericemental membrane; however, much of the trouble can be avoided if judgment is exercised and proper precautions are taken in treating teeth.

It is essential that we differentiate between *nonseptic* and *septic* pericementitis. Both are inflammatory conditions of the pericemental membrane, the difference being due largely to the exciting agents causing the pathologic condition. Nonseptic pericementitis results largely from drug or mechanical irritants, while septic pericementitis is caused by pathogenic bacteria and other poisonous and irritating substances which have escaped from septic root-canals. Both conditions may result in suppuration; the former through cryptogenic or hematogenous infection from the circulation, the latter as the natural consequence of the progress of the disease. I shall discuss here the treatment of nonseptic pericementitis only. Those cases resulting in pus formation or alveolar abscess will be considered subsequently.

There are at least two classes of irritants by which nonseptic pericementitis is produced, viz.:

1. Drug irritants.
2. Mechanical irritants.

Drug Irritants.—There are many circumstances and conditions which influence the action of drugs upon different individuals and

Digitized by Google

upon the same individual under different conditions. We find cases occasionally where pulps have been removed by pressure anesthesia, and where, seemingly at least, every precaution was taken in sterilizing the dentin, selecting a sterile anesthetizing solution, and in applying the pressure, yet severe apical pericementitis follows. This may or may not be due to the drugs used in performing the operation. There are cases, too, where the pericemental membrane becomes highly inflamed and extremely responsive from the action of arsenic trioxid, even when the drug was properly sealed within the tooth only a short time. These are conditions over which the operator seems to have no control. I know that this is a dangerous doctrine to promulgate; for it is so easy to blame the patient for some idiosyncrasy, when the fault is ours. Drugs are often responsible for these conditions by having been injudiciously employed; yet it is only fair to state what every pharmacologist knows to be a fact that the action and effect of drugs are modified or influenced by such conditions as disease, temperament, sex, race, size, age, habit, idiosyncrasy and temperature, and the method, time of administration, preparation and dose of the drug. It has been stated elsewhere that anodyne treatment is indicated after the mechanical or surgical removal of the pulp. Therefore, care should be taken to select drugs for this purpose which produce a soothing and not an irritating effect. There are some instances in dental practice where we desire to irritate and thereby stimulate the pericemental membrane; but this should be avoided here. Judgment should also be exercised in sealing in anodyne remedies, such as phenol, oil of cloves, etc., in the canals, especially in bicuspid and molar teeth, for should the temporary filling be left too full and the remedy forced through the apex by the closing of the jaws, even these agents cease to be anodynes and become irritants. Whether phenol, oil of cloves, and similar drugs or remedies are anodynes or irritants, depends largely, then, on where and how they are used.

In filling root-canals it is the practice of many dentists to moisten the canals with *eucalyptol* before introducing chloropercha and the gutta-percha cone. Care must be taken here to use eucalyptol and not oil of eucalyptus, unless it be the refined product. Commercial oil of eucalyptus has been the cause of many cases of apical pericementitis following the most careful filling of root-canals. The eucalyptus tree produces a volatile oil which contains three constituents, each distilling over at different temperatures; the first product thus obtained is eucalyptol, hence the most volatile constituent of oil of eucalyptus and the one which is the solvent for gutta-percha.

Digitized by Google

While eucalyptol is a slight irritant, it is not nearly so irritating as oil of eucalyptus. The irritating property of eucalyptol can be modified and its antiseptic value increased by adding menthol and thymol in the following proportions:

℞—Mentholis,	gr. ij (0.13 Gm.)
Thymolis,	gr. iij (0.18 Gm.)
Eucalyptolis,	f℥j (4.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Use as directed.	

This remedy is equally as good a solvent for gutta-percha as is eucalyptol alone, and will be called *eucalyptol compound* in the following pages.

Some drugs when internally administered, notably mercury and its compounds, are capable of producing nonseptic pericementitis. This has been previously mentioned under Mercurial Stomatitis.

Mechanical Irritants.—The pericemental membrane is frequently, I might add too frequently, irritated by mechanical irritants, such as root-canal fillings. There is, perhaps, more pericementitis produced by root-canal fillings than by any other mechanical irritant. In filling root-canals we should be absolutely certain that the canal is *aseptic*. If there be any doubt as to this, the operation should be deferred. The technic of filling root-canals will be discussed later.

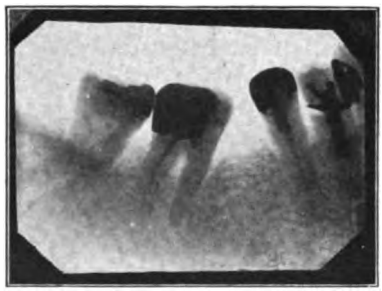


FIG. 52.

There are many other mechanical irritants which can be mentioned as causative factors in producing pericementitis; such as ill-fitting partial plates, crowns and bridges, malleting, regulating, faulty occlusion, calcific deposits on the roots of teeth, impaction of food between teeth with faulty or no contacts, etc. (Fig. 52.) This patient presented with a case of severe pericementitis. Not having treated the tooth myself, the picture was taken to ascertain the condition of the canals of the second molar. It shows that the mesial canals were small and tortuous and not filled to the end. This might have caused the pericemental trouble; but, at the time, I

Digitized by Google

questioned it very much. You will also notice that a pulp nodule shows distinctly in the third molar. This was verified by a second radiograph. As yet the nodule is causing no trouble. The occlusion on the inlay was a little too full and there was a slight tendency toward a pyorrheal pocket on the distal, due to the tooth tipping forward owing to the loss of the first molar and the occlusion—thus opening the contact slightly.• Here we had four possible causes for the pericementitis: The nodule in the third molar, the faulty contact and the resultant impaction of food between the molars, the occlusion, and the imperfectly filled root-canals of the second molar. The adjustment of the occlusion and the scaling and polishing of the exposed tooth-surface cured the case. This was done three years ago and there has been no recurrence of the trouble.

Treatment of Nonseptic Pericementitis.—The first step in the treatment of nonseptic pericementitis is to adopt the surgical principle of ascertaining the cause and removing or correcting it, if at all possible. In the earlier stages of pericemental inflammation, it is not always an easy matter to ascertain the *true cause* of the disturbance. For instance, in those cases following the removal of the pulp tissue, it is difficult to know whether the cause is the root-filling, the medicine used in the treatment, or whether we failed to establish and maintain asepsis in performing the operation. The author is inclined to believe that it is more frequently the latter than most operators are willing to admit; for certain it is that the more nearly we approach *absolute asepsis* in these operations, the less pericemental trouble we will have. The teeth thus affected are extremely sore, and any remedy can be used in the treatment that will give immediate relief. This is what the patient most desires, and, too often it appears, it is that which the dentist fails to give. Both local and general remedies can be employed. General remedies are more valuable in the treatment of septic pericementitis. If they are used at all in treating nonseptic pericementitis, they should be used only in cases where the patient is nervous and has lost considerable sleep, unless some drug, like nitroglycerin, is given to relieve the engorged capillaries. For immediate relief we must depend largely upon the local application of drugs and remedies. In those cases following the removal of the pulp by either the anesthetization or devitalization method, and where the canals have not been filled, the pain can be relieved almost instantly by the following method: Adjust the rubber dam. If it is necessary to use a clamp, it should be placed on the tooth posterior to the one affected. Sterilize the teeth included in the dam and remove the dressing from the canals.

Digitized by Google

Dehydrate the tooth-structure with modified alcohol. Then wrap cotton loosely around a smooth, sterile broach, dip in oil of cloves or eugenol, and carefully work in each canal. Remove the broach, leaving the cotton. Heat should now be applied to the remedy by means of a hot-air instrument or a chip-blower until the cotton becomes dry. Repeat this process several times, after which the same remedy should be carefully sealed within the canal. Under no condition should the cavity be left unsealed. In the above treatment, we not only get the benefit of the heat, which is valuable, but the eugenol, the constituent of cloves, is driven into the tooth-structure, producing a profound anodyne effect upon the sensitive membrane. The author has succeeded in giving immediate relief by this method of treatment when many others have failed. Grinding the cusps of the tooth where it can be done without injury is advisable; a counterirritant can be applied to the gum and the patient dismissed for several days. It is well also to prescribe two or three doses of nitroglycerin to facilitate the circulation of blood in the membrane. It is scarcely necessary to instruct the patient to favor the tooth.

In the treatment of pericementitis following the filling of the root, having every reason for believing the canals to be aseptic, one of the last things the author would suggest doing would be to attempt to remove the root-filling. Usually this only serves to further aggravate the condition. These cases can best be treated by counterirritation and general remedies. By counterirritation is meant the application of an irritant to some normal part of the body for the purpose of influencing favorably some other part, usually deep-seated, which is diseased. This irritant is generally applied to the gum over the affected tooth. Capiscum plasters, black mustard papers and cantharidal collodion are valuable; or the following liniments, which are more generally used, give much relief:

℞—Mentholis, gr. xx (1.3 Gm.)
Chloroformi, ℥jss (6.0 mils)
Tincturæ aconiti, q. s. ad. ℥j (30.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Dry the gum and apply freely over the affected tooth, keeping the field dry for a few seconds.

This preparation is known as *dental liniment.*

℞—Mentholis,
Iodi (crys.), āā gr. x (0.6 Gm.)
Chloroformi, ℥jss (6.0 mils)
Tincturæ aconiti, q. s. ad. ℥j (30.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Make one application to the dry gum as above.

This liniment is called *refrigerant counterirritant.*

Digitized by Google

℞—Liquoris iodi compositæ, f℥j (30.0 mils).
Sig.—Use as above.

This is the official compound solution of iodin, known also as Lugol's solution.

Inasmuch as tincture of aconite is an important ingredient in many liniments used in the local treatment of pericementitis and facial neuralgia, it is well to remember that the United States Pharmacopeia of 1900 reduced the strength of this preparation from 35 per cent. to 10 per cent. This is also the strength of the preparation in the U. S. P. IX. Therefore the new tincture can be employed more freely in these cases without danger of poisoning. However, care should be taken to see that, in applying remedies containing tincture of aconite to posterior teeth, the patient does not swallow the remedy; especially should this precaution be observed in using dental liniment.

As a remedy to be applied by the patient at home, a split raisin, soaked in hot water, and on which is dusted red pepper, can be held on the gum over the affected tooth. A very efficacious remedy is to direct hot water with some force on the part, beginning with warm water and increasing the heat gradually until it is nearly boiling. This must be kept up until we get the full benefit of the heat and resolution is promoted. Another good remedy that the patient may employ is the hot foot-bath. The value of this remedy, like the application of hot water to the gums, depends largely upon the manner in which it is applied. A deep foot-bath tub should be used and the temperature of the water gradually increased until it is as hot as can be borne. This should be continued from twenty to thirty minutes.

There are many other drugs and remedies which can be employed in the local treatment of this condition. Those which have been mentioned here the author has found valuable in his practice. It is far better to have a practical knowledge of a few remedies than a superficial knowledge of many. The general remedies to be administered in the treatment of nonseptic pericementitis, if found necessary, will be discussed subsequently under the treatment of septic pericementitis and incipient abscess, which conditions are closely related.

Digitized by Google

DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT OF SEPTIC PERICEMENTITIS AND ACUTE ALVEOLAR ABSCESS

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The treatment of septic pericementitis and acute alveolar abscess, as was intimated under Nonseptic Pericementitis, is so nearly identical that the therapeutics will be discussed here conjointly. Suppurative pericementitis which occurs in the periapical area means an alveolar abscess, for *suppuration* implies the presence of pus. In those cases of gangrenous pulps where the patient did not present for treatment until the confined gases had escaped into the periapical tissue, carrying therein the bacteria and toxins, we will find that a practical knowledge of pathology and therapeutics will serve us well. It is in these cases that good judgment must be exercised and extreme care taken. Frequently patients delay coming to the dentist until the infection has progressed to the point where all remedies will fail in preventing suppuration; but in many instances this result may be attained by the proper use of drugs. In this connection it is well to remember that Hopkins, of Boston, a few years ago conducted a series of experiments in which he proved that not only did bacteria proliferate more rapidly in uncared-for and neglected mouths, but that their virulency was greatly enhanced. Blair states that "certain pus-producing organisms, such as the Staphylococcus and Streptococcus pyogenes, will always tend to produce pus. Often, however, owing to the lack of virulence or lack of sufficient numbers in proportion to the tissue resistance, the inflammatory process may be cut short before it reaches the stage of suppuration. Thus there may be swelling of the gum and face around an infected tooth, but this may subside without the formation of pus." To this I may add that this is especially true if the tooth receives the proper treatment.

Local Treatment.—The local treatment here differs in no particular essential from that outlined for a case of gangrene of the pulp. The tooth should be located and the pulp-chamber opened into freely, under aseptic precautions, holding the tooth in some manner so that the chisel, bur or excavator will not further aggravate the condition. Then the cavity should be sprayed or washed with an antiseptic solution, dried, in this case with alcohol, and formocresol sealed in

Digitized by Google

the pulp-chamber with cement. I know, to my regret, that this is not the general method of procedure in the handling of these cases; but I am certain that the best results will be obtained when we follow the general rule that all remedies should be sealed with cement. This will force us to correctly diagnose the condition and employ the means and remedies indicated in the rational treatment of the case. Until we are willing to spend the necessary time to accomplish this end, we are not living up to the highest ideals of our calling. Let it be remembered that as yet there is no suppuration in these cases, and any dentist who deliberately leaves the canal and cavity open to external influences, or who uses temporary stopping because it is easily removed, and instructs his patient how to remove it should the tooth continue to ache, either does not understand the condition he is treating or else he lacks confidence in his remedy. Make a correct diagnosis, use the proper remedy in the proper way and the tooth will not ache long—it matters not what the pathologic condition may be.

General Treatment.—After applying the local remedies, our attention should be given to the treatment of the infection and inflammation in the periapical area, which consists in promoting or regulating the inflammatory process. Again quoting from Blair, he says: "After an infection has once gained a foot-hold in the living tissue, we must in our treatment regard not only the infection but the inflammatory process that it has excited. We are not certain that the inflammatory process itself ever needs treatment, and we know that there are very few, if any, infections that could ever be overcome without inflammation. Inflammation is Nature's way of fighting infections, and we must work with it, not against it; for otherwise our efforts will be in vain. * * * One of the first requisites is the regulation of the body functions, especially the excretory organs. In the presence of an infection, the parenchymatous cells of various organs may become sluggish in their action and may require stimulation." In such cases the skin may be stimulated by bathing, and saline cathartics are indicated. Owing to the facility with which it can be taken and its acceptability to the stomach, the official solution of magnesium citrate is an excellent remedy to prescribe.

℞—Liquoris magnesii citratis, f℥xij (360.0 mils).
Sig.—Take one-half at once and the other half in two (2) hours, if necessary.

Magnesium sulphate can also be given for the same purpose. With this drug the patient should be directed to take a teaspoonful

Digitized by Google

dissolved in a wineglassful of warm water, having a glass of cold drinking water at hand to drink at once after taking the strong hyperisotonic salt solution. The cold water instantly removes the bitter and unpleasant taste of the salt. Most of the large pharmaceutical houses to-day prepare "effervescent salt mixtures," of which the more important saline carthartics are constituents. These are kept by the pharmacies and come as a granulated powder which when dissolved in water makes an effervescent solution. Several that can be mentioned are: Effervescent Magnesium Citrate, Effervescent Magnesium Sulphate, Effervescent Laxative, Effervescent Seidlitz Mixture, Effervescent Sodium Phosphate—any one of which can be prescribed.

Potassium iodid in medicinal doses can frequently be administered, with beneficial results. The taste can be masked to a large degree by dissolving it in one of the official syrups. The official compound syrup of sarsaparilla and aromatic syrup of eriodictyon (yerba santa), N.F., are both good. A prescription is here given:

℞—Potassii iodidi, ℥ss (6.0 Gm.)
Syrupi sarsaparillæ comp., f℥iij (90.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Take a teaspoonful in water after meals.

Ordinarily, the directions would be as given, to have the patient take a teaspoonful three times a day after meals; but in these cases of septic pericementitis or incipient alveolar abscess it is best to direct the patient to take a teaspoonful every two hours until three or four doses are taken, and then follow the directions written on the label. A very good remedy to have the patient employ at home is the hot foot-bath; unless some condition exists which is a contraindication, it is always good practice to administer nitroglycerin to deplete the capillaries in the affected, and in these cases *infected* tissues. As stated on p. 203, echafolta is a purified, assayed form of echinacea—a drug which is used extensively by eclectic medical practitioners. The author is able at this time to report favorably on the use of echafolta in all cases of infection. The dose here is from 5–30 min. (0.3–2.0 mils) given in water every two hours, until the acute symptoms subside.

Heretofore I have prescribed and recommended, purely on an empirical basis, the salts of quinin in the treatment of infections in certain cases. I have since learned, however, that this drug interferes with the ameboid movement of the white blood corpuscles, preventing them from migrating through the capillary walls in

Digitized by Google

FIG. 53.—An acute alveolar abscess with extensive swelling, involving the entire side of the face, and completely closing the eye. If extraction of the offending tooth is necessary to effect a cure, the operation should be postponed until the inflammation and swelling have been reduced by proper treatment. In this case it was necessary to make an external incision. Generally this may be avoided by making a deep intra-oral incision, as recommended by Brophy.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

inflammation. The arrest of this movement lessens the phagocytic power of these scavengers; therefore, quinin is contraindicated in the treatment of periapical infections, unless we desire to lessen tissue resistance and hasten the formation of pus, when it might be given. The salt which the author prefers giving, if indicated in the conditions under consideration, is quinin bisulphate. Nearly all pharmacies have the salt of quinin bisulphate put up in the form of pills. While these pills may be given, it is much better to write a prescription for capsules. The gelatin capsule is soon dissolved in the stomach; thus we obtain the action of the drug more rapidly than when given in the dry, hard, pilular form. The following prescription can be written for the drug in two-grain doses:

℞—Quininæ bisulphatis, gr. xxiv (1.5 Gm.).
Ft. capsulæ No. xij.
Sig.—Take one capsule every hour until the effect becomes noticeable.

Quinin acts differently upon different individuals. Most adult patients know the effect of this drug upon their systems, and therefore will be able to aid the dentist in determining the amount to be taken in a given case.

One of the most prominent symptoms with which we have to contend here is pain. In most cases the pain will subside soon after the local treatment; however, it is necessary, occasionally, where the patient is nervous and has lost considerable sleep, to administer drugs which act upon the central nervous system, thereby controlling the pain. There are several drugs which, if properly given, will produce the desired effect. The official compound powder of acetanilid is here recommended and can be prescribed as follows:

℞—Pulveris acetanilidi comp., gr. xij (0.8 Gm.).
Ft. chartulæ No. ij.
Sig.—Take one powder at once and the other in two (2) hours, if not relieved.

Another very useful prescription for acetanilid is one suggested by Harlan. It follows:

℞—Acetanilidi, gr. viij (0.5 Gm.)
Syrupi simplex, f℥ss (15.0 mils).
Spiritus frumenti, q. s. ad. f℥iij (90.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Take one-half at once and the remainder in two (2) hours, if not relieved.

Digitized by Google

Keefe, of Chicago, suggests using dilute alcohol by which instantaneous and often permanent relief can be obtained in those cases where the tooth involved is one of the six upper anterior teeth. A prescription for the remedy is here given:

℞—Alcoholis,
Aquæ, āā f℥j (30.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Use as directed.

This remedy is best administered in the form of a spray, using a watch-case atomizer for liquids, forcing the spray well back into the nostril on whichever side the affected tooth is located. The application can be repeated as often as is necessary, without any ill effects. In case an atomizer of any kind is not at hand, about fifteen minims (1.0 mil) of the remedy can be placed far back in the nostril with a suitable syringe.

The author does not wish to be understood as suggesting these various internal remedies in all cases of acute abscess. No therapeutist can tell exactly what internal drugs he would suggest without seeing the case and knowing the history; for there are many circumstances and conditions which modify the effect of drugs. Every remedy here mentioned, however, will be found useful in certain cases.

The Question of Extraction.—The question of extraction in acute alveolar abscess is a disputed one. Many writers recommend extraction as a speedy means of affording relief (see Fig. 53).

FIG. 54.—This shows a sequestrum which was exfoliated from the lower jaw. This result followed extensive infection, endangering the life of the patient, and ultimate necrosis from the extraction of a lower second bicuspid root during the acute stage of an alveolar abscess. A mixed infection doubtless resulted from the laceration of tissues. It will be noticed that the sequestrum contains the mental foramen, which means, of course, that the inferior dental nerve, artery, and vein were severed. The lip on the affected side was partially paralyzed for a period of two or three years; and, in opening into the first bicuspid for the purpose of pulp removal for bridge-work, six months later, the pulp was dead and just beginning to undergo the process of decomposition. I rather suspected a specific history, but was unable to confirm the suspicion.

Unfortunately, however, this is not always the solution of the problem; for if there be much osteomyelitis and the roots of the offending tooth be firmly embedded, it is a rather dangerous procedure to extract during the developmental stage, on account of the liability of a mixed infection, resulting oftentimes in necrosis and

Digitized by Google

frequently even threatening the life of the patient (see Fig. 54). If the root be a worthless one and easily extracted, its removal would doubtless afford free drainage for the abscess. There is no set rule governing extraction in these cases. The operator must be guided largely by the conditions as found. When extraction is resorted to, antiseptic mouth-washes should be prescribed and the case watched closely for a few days until we are certain that no complication will follow.

Digitized by Google

CHRONIC ALVEOLAR ABSCESS

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

There are two varieties of chronic alveolar abscesses—those without an external opening except, perhaps, through a cavity in the offending tooth, and those which are discharging through a sinus. In these cases the decomposition of the pulp tissue is complete; the intermediate products (ptomains and amido-acids) have largely been broken up, and pus has been formed from the tissue and fluids surrounding the ends of the roots. Wherever it is possible, a radiograph of the affected tooth and periapical area should be obtained; for upon the radiographic findings to a large degree will our decision depend as to whether the case should be treated medicinally, surgically, or both. In the past many teeth with chronic alveolar abscess associated therewith have been retained in the mouth, in utter disregard of the possible deleterious effects they might have on the general health of the patient. This will not be the practice of dentists in the future; though it may safely be said that, at the present time, many teeth are being sacrificed which, under proper treatment, might be saved without menacing or jeopardizing the patient's health.

I. ABSCESS WITHOUT SINUS

In treating that variety of alveolar abscess which is without an external opening, our method of procedure is somewhat different from that of an acute abscess. The tooth should be located; the rubber dam adjusted, and the teeth sterilized as before; then the pulp chamber is opened with a suitable round bur.

Disposing of the Pus.—Usually the pus flows freely, in which case it is permitted to do so, pressure being made on the tissue immediately over the end of the root. It should be our effort to mechanically evacuate as much pus at each sitting as is possible; for it is far better to remove pus in this manner, when it can be done, than to depend upon some chemic agent to destroy it, or upon Nature to dispose of it.

THERAPEUTICS

The formocresol remedy will be useful here. The canals should be dried with alcohol as thoroughly as possible and the remedy on

Digitized by Google

cotton hermetically sealed in each canal. It is, however, at this sitting, impossible to get the canals dry, and it is unnecessary to have them so, for the remedy will penetrate where moisture is present. This is an advantage over most remedies suggested for this purpose. In those cases where there is pain and swelling, together with a copious flow of pus which seemingly cannot be checked at this time, it may be necessary to evacuate the pus as completely as possible, loosely place in the canal a few shreds of cotton saturated with an antiseptic remedy (phenol compound), and then place in the cavity a pledget of cotton dipped in liquid petroleum. In no case should the cavity be left entirely open ; and the author desires to emphasize that it is seldom necessary to resort to this temporary expedient, if the proper time is spent in opening into the tooth and evacuating the pus. The dressing, in any event, should be changed every day until it can be removed without the pus flowing from the canals. When pus is forming rapidly at the ends of the roots, the dressing soon becomes dissipated, the remedy loses its effect, and it is a loss of time to leave it in the canals more than twenty-four hours. Unless there be some complication, the pus formation should be checked in one or two treatments, at which time phenolsulphonic acid can be used in the same manner as in the treatment of gangrenous pulps, and eucalyptol compound sealed in the canal with the double sealing material as elsewhere explained. It is now possible to change the dressings too often, however. The formation of pus has been checked, and the tooth should not be disturbed for at least one week or ten days, in order to give Nature a chance to effect a cure. If, at the end of this time, there is no evidence of pus and the case gives a favorable history, the canals can be filled. Should there, however, be a slight odor, although the tooth has not caused any trouble, we are not justified in filling the root. In these cases we may suspect a root-end involvement, or some other complication, when the radiograph is invaluable. Formocresol may be used again as in the initial treatment; but it should be remembered that the value of formaldehyd in any remedy to be used in the treatment of these conditions depends upon the power this agent has of uniting chemically with hydrogen sulphid, ammonia and poisonous ptomains. When these substances are not present, formaldehyd should be used with care and judgment. This precaution is mentioned here because formaldehyd is an irritating gas, and the amount of any remedy containing it should be in accordance with the conditions as found.

Weeping of Serum.—Quite frequently in these alveolar abscess cases, after the formation of pus has been checked, we have a weep-

Digitized by Google

ing of serum from the canals. An excellent remedy to use in this case is eucalyptol to which thymol has been added in the following proportion:

℞—Thymolis, gr. x (0.6 Gm.)
Eucalyptolis, f℥j (4.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Dry the canal as thoroughly as possible and hermetically seal in the remedy.

If this remedy fails to check the secretion and the fluid is serum, not pus, no hesitancy need be felt as to filling the root, although the canals cannot be dried. The condition should not be confused with a cyst, which quite frequently occurs in the apical area of teeth. Brophy defines a cyst as a sac containing fluid, or a semi-fluid substance, which may be gelatinous or inspissated. A cyst may contain mucus, saliva, bile, urine, etc., depending upon the organ with which it is associated. It should not be difficult to differentiate *cystic fluid* from *normal serum* which also frequently fills a cavity formed by an abscess. In fact the serum contains the elements with which Nature rebuilds the lost tissue. If a cyst is suspected the diagnosis should be confirmed. The treatment of a cyst is surgical, for which the reader is referred to works on Oral Surgery.

Complications.—Occasionally we find a chronic alveolar abscess of this variety where it is almost impossible to check the formation of pus by applying drugs to the canals of the teeth. In those cases where the pus continues to flow freely when the dressing is removed at the third or fourth sitting, some complication can be expected. It is necessary then to force some stimulating agent through the apices of the roots, after the pus has been mechanically evacuated. The stimulating agent which the author uses almost invariably is phenolsulphonic acid. In resorting to this means of bringing about a more acute condition, I desire to emphasize the necessity of first evacuating the pus as completely as possible before using the remedy, after which the agent should be placed in the canal on cotton and gently forced through the apices, then neutralizing that which remains with a solution of sodium bicarbonate, desiccating the canal with alcohol and hermetically sealing therein an antiseptic like phenol compound or eucalyptol compound. It will be found that one or two treatments will usually check the formation of pus, after which the case can be treated as an ordinary abscess of this kind. In case this method fails to effect a cure, however, it will be necessary to establish surgically an opening through the overlying process and soft tissue and treat as for an ordinary discharging abscess—which treatment will be considered later.

Digitized by Google

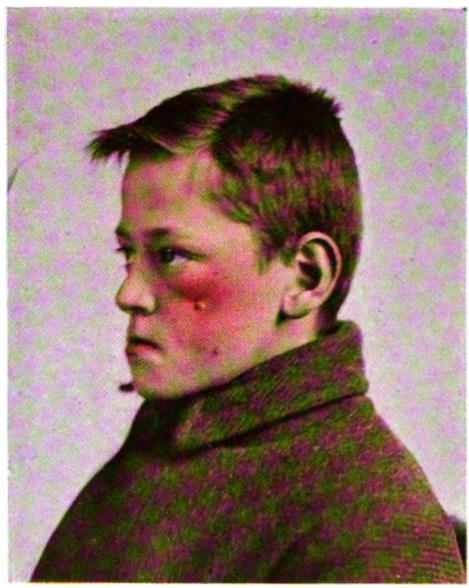


FIG. 55.—A chronic alveolar abscess from an upper first molar, where the pus in making its exit worked its way upward and outward, over the outer wall of the antrum and opened externally on the face. The tooth was badly decayed and was extracted May 12, 1912. The picture was taken two days later. The case yielded nicely to treatment, which consisted in washing the part with an antiseptic solution, leaving only a slight indentation on the cheek. This case is unusual. Generally these abscesses open within the mouth or occasionally into the antrum, rarely externally. Abscesses from lower teeth frequently discharge externally (see Fig. 83).

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Hypertrophied Alveolar Process.—This condition is quite frequently associated with abscesses without a sinus, or a low chronic inflammation of the alveolar process due to septic foci at the root-ends of pulpless teeth. It is the safest practice to extract teeth which have caused hypertrophy of the alveolar process. Even the aseptic treatment and filling of the canals of the affected teeth will not reduce, in many cases, the hypertrophied process, and to permit it to remain might lead to an osteoma or an osteosarcoma (Marshall).

2. ABSCESS WITH SINUS

In those cases where the pus is discharging into the mouth through a sinus, our first duty is to locate the offending tooth. This is generally a simple matter for the reason that the sinus usually opens immediately over the tooth from which it comes. The pus in making its exit, however, follows the line of least resistance, and in some cases the condition of the process is such that the pus burrows forward or backward, and opens through the gum at a point several teeth removed from the one which is causing the trouble. (Fig. 55.) These are the cases that are difficult to diagnose, especially when the abscess has been discharging for some time, when there is not much tenderness in any special tooth, and when there are several pulpless teeth on this side of the mouth. Sometimes two or more teeth containing gangrenous pulps have a common sinus (see Fig. 65 and Figs. 83 and 84). In this case it would be impossible to heal the tract by treating only one of the teeth. The use of a silver probe will be valuable in all such cases. By gently working the probe forward or backward the sinus can be explored and the offending tooth or teeth located without drilling into innocent teeth—a discouraging procedure to both patient and dentist. In all such cases the radiograph is an invaluable aid in diagnosis.

THERAPEUTICS

The tooth being located, all that is necessary to effect a cure—there being no complication—is to clean the canal with acids or alkalies, preferably the former, and then force some bland solution through the root-canal and sinus, thus being certain it is well established; cauterize the tract with phenolsulphonic acid, or other stimulating cauterant, hermetically seal in the canal or canals an antiseptic, like phenol compound or eucalyptol compound, and, at the subsequent sitting, the case giving a favorable history, fill the root.

Digitized by Google

Establishing Sinus and Disposing of Pus.—If the abscess is not discharging, and in those cases where it is discharging, it is well before adjusting the rubber dam to enlarge the mouth of the sinus with a lancet or bistoury. By dipping the lancet in phenol, this may be accomplished with very little pain to the patient. After this is done, the rubber dam should be adjusted and the canals freely exposed. Now that the infection is past the end of the root, we need not hesitate to clean the canal at this sitting by chemico-mechanical means. The canals being clean, we are ready to establish the sinus. To do this we need a bland solution and a good hypodermic syringe with a long straight needle for anterior and a long curved needle for posterior teeth. There is an advantage in having a long needle, for the nearer the point is to the apex of the root, the less packing and force are required to send the solution through the sinus. Any bland solution can be used for this purpose. The author suggests physiologic saline solution or peppermint water to which 2 min. (0.12 mil) of phenol have been added to the fluidounce (30.0 mils). A piece of unvulcanized rubber of the proper size should be selected, softened in the flame, and a hole made in the center through which the needle is placed and inserted into the canal. The rubber should now be tightly packed around the needle and held on either side with flat-nose pliers, when pressure can be made on the piston of the syringe and the solution forced through the sinus. This should be repeated several times, care being taken not to break the needle in the canal. If convenient, one corner of the dam can be raised, exposing the mouth of the sinus to view. There are two objects in forcing a bland solution through the sinus: one is to be certain that it is open, and the other is to mechanically wash out the pus. Whenever pus can be mechanically removed, it is always better to dispose of it by this means rather than to do so by the use of some chemic agent. It has been a common practice, after establishing the sinus, to use a solution of hydrogen dioxid. This is often a dangerous procedure and *always unnecessary* if the first solution has been used in sufficient quantity.

Cauterizing Sinus.—For cauterizing the sinus in simple cases 95 per cent. phenol has been largely employed. An excellent preparation to use for this purpose is the phenolsulphonic acid. With the sinus well established, it is never necessary to place either of these solutions in a hypodermic syringe. The author knows of several instances where this has been tried with disastrous results. The remedy can be applied to the canals on cotton, when, with unvulcanized rubber and a suitable instrument, it can be forced through

Digitized by Google

the sinus. Alcohol is a positive antidote for phenol; if this agent is used, the alcohol bottle should, therefore, be in a convenient place so that the remedy used in the canal can be neutralized at once when it appears at the mouth of the sinus. Phenolsulphonic acid may be neutralized in this case with alcohol followed with a solution of sodium bicarbonate. If this has been well done, it matters little what drug or remedy is sealed in the canal. The phenol compound or eucalyptol compound remedy will give excellent results if hermetically sealed in the canals for about one week, always using the double sealing process.

In cases of long standing when we can reasonably suspect a roughening of the end of the root or process through which the pus has been

FIG. 56.—This radiograph illustrates an interesting case, which was not treated by the author and the history is, therefore, negative. The radiograph shows that the canal is not properly filled, while the root carries a well-adjusted porcelain crown. It is futile to attempt to cure an abscess under such conditions by simply injecting such an agent as bismuth paste through the sinus into the affected area. The crown must be destroyed, the canal reopened, when one or two treatments of phenolsulphonic acid should effect a cure. Had the radiograph shown that the canal was properly filled, external curettement would have been the proper treatment. In fact, had the canal been properly filled, the abscess, in all probability, would not have developed.

discharging, it is best to depend upon phenolsulphonic acid as the cauterizing agent (see Fig. 56). This agent, as heretofore made, contained an excess (15 per cent.) of uncombined sulphuric acid, which rapidly disintegrated cotton; therefore, it was necessary to place it in the canal on threads of asbestos, wool fiber, or silk, and force it through the sinus in the usual manner, cauterizing the tract, and also stimulating the sluggish cells in the area to healthy activity. It is now possible to procure phenolsulphonic acid with less than 1 per cent. of free sulphuric acid (see p. 95). This product can be used with cotton.

It is sometimes difficult to establish the sinus, especially on molar teeth. In all such cases, if there is no complication, the

Digitized by Google

treatment can be that outlined under Treatment of Abscess Without Sinus.

The author does not believe in delaying the root-filling long after the sinus has been cauterized in uncomplicated cases; for by filling the root as soon as we are certain that the sinus is healing, we avoid a weeping condition, which usually exists and which is annoying when this part of the treatment is delayed for one month or six weeks as advocated by some writers. In these cases where the first treatment has been thorough, and the case gives a favorable history, the root should be filled at the second or, at latest, the third sitting. If the case does not yield to the above treatment, some complication may be suspected.

COMPLICATIONS

There are several complications of chronic alveolar abscess of both varieties, with and without a sinus, where it is necessary to

FIG. 57.

FIG. 58.

FIG. 57.—This radiograph shows an abscess with extensive resorption of alveolar process between the central and lateral roots, both of which had been previously filled and carried jacket crowns. The radiograph shows the lateral root perfectly filled and the abscess caused by the imperfectly filled central. These cases are often difficult to diagnose.

FIG. 58.—This radiograph shows a similar case to that illustrated in Fig. 57. It was difficult to determine whether the abscess came from the central or lateral root. The radiograph shows the lateral root over-filled, but the abscess coming from the central.

modify or change the general method of treatment to meet the conditions as they exist. For instance, in the case of an abscess without a sinus where we can reasonably suspect, and where the indications point to, a roughening of the end of the root, we ought not to expect to cure the case by simply sealing remedies within the canals of the tooth. If we do, we are expecting too much of drugs. Again, in a case of abscess with a sinus where the pus has been discharging for

Digitized by Google

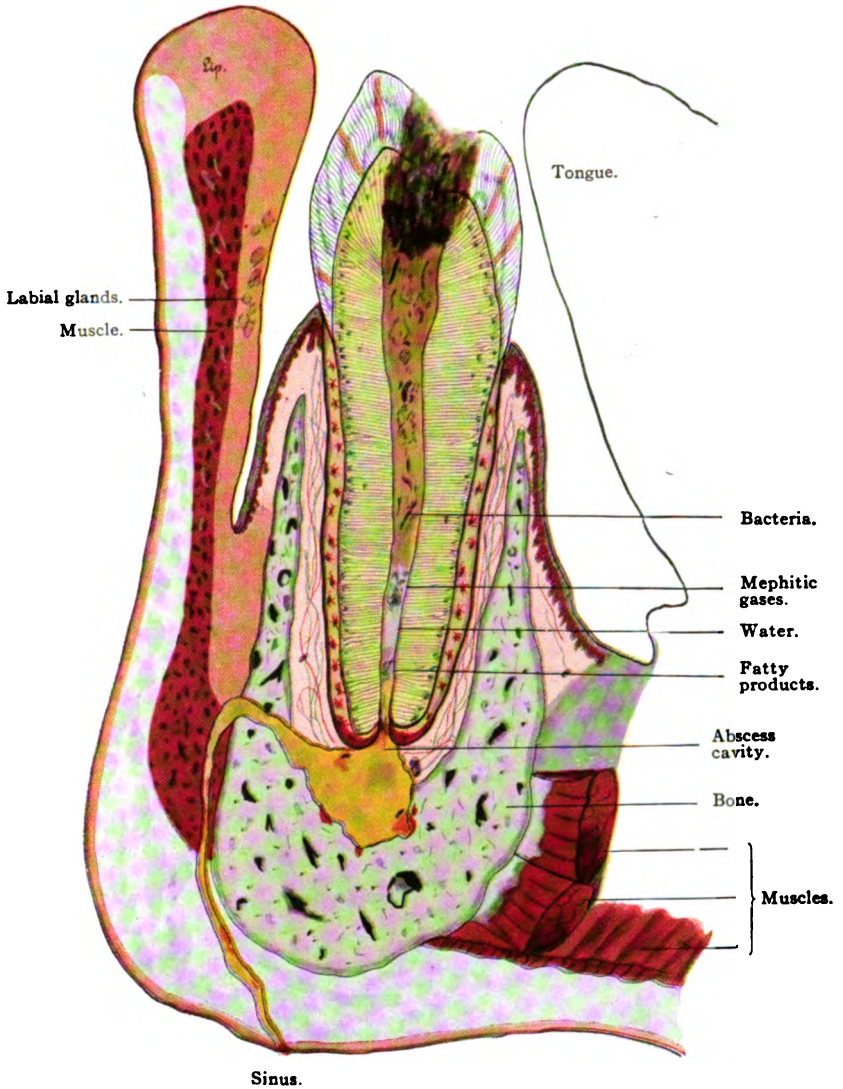


FIG. 59.—Chronic abscess discharging under the chin.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

several months, with the not unusual result that the end of the root or process through which the pus has discharged has become roughened, we should not expect to effect a cure by forcing phenol or the phenol compound through the sinus, because such agents as these have no action whatever on the bony structures. The author desires to emphasize again the value of the radiograph in determining the extent of involvement and the nature of the complication. It is not always a positive means of diagnosis, but it is a material aid (see Figs. 57 and 58, also Fig. 59).

1. Denuded End of Root.—One complication we may expect to find in abscesses of long standing, especially in the variety without a sinus, is where a large area of tissue in the periapical area has been resorbed or broken down, denuding the end of the root and the denuded

FIG. 60.—This radiograph shows a typical abscess without a sinus which developed from an imperfectly filled root of a lateral incisor.

portion projecting into the absorbed area (see Fig. 60). It is possible, in these cases, to make pressure over the end of the root and mechanically evacuate all of the pus above the apices; but we cannot expect by this means to evacuate the pus below and surrounding the end of the root projecting into the space. In this case we must do one of two things: Force some stimulating agent through the end of the root into the infected area, to create a more acute condition; or surgically establish a sinus through the overlying process and soft tissue, and treat as an ordinary discharging abscess. While the author does not hesitate to adopt the latter method if necessary to effect a cure, it will be found that the use of a stimulating agent will generally suffice in these cases. The agents recommended are phenolsulphonic acid or a 15 per cent. solution of trichloracetic acid. In using either of these solutions, the pus should first be evacuated as much as is possible; then the solution selected can be placed in the canal and gently

Digitized by Google

forced through the apices, and an antiseptic sealed in the canal. One or two treatments will usually be sufficient to check the pus formation, when the case can be treated in the ordinary manner. If, however, this does not effect a cure, it is a waste of time to prolong such treatment, and recourse should be made to surgical methods, which will be discussed later.

2. Resorbed or Roughened End of Root.—Another complication of both varieties of chronic alveolar abscess is where the pus has been in contact with the end of the root sufficiently long to cause resorption, leaving a roughened end which irritates the tissue

FIG. 61.—This shows an upper second bicuspid exfoliated by Nature with the entire surrounding alveolar process attached. This result followed a slight traumatic injury to the part, shortly after the pulp had been removed by pressure anesthesia. The first bicuspid ultimately became so loose that its removal was necessary. The author was able to elicit a previous history of syphilis, the disease having been cured a number of years before.

and prevents healing. Sometimes, also, the process through which the pus has burrowed is left with sharp edges. In all such complications, surgical treatment is especially indicated. These cases generally yield nicely to the removal of the denuded and roughened root-end, and the thorough curettement of the affected area.

3. Encystment of Root.—A difficult complication to treat is an abscess which forms on a root, the end of which has become encysted from deposits, excementosis or other causes. In order to effect a cure in these cases, it is necessary to establish a sinus and remove the deposits, excise the root-end, or extract the tooth. The method of excising the root-end will be discussed later.

4. Involving Bone.—Every acute and chronic alveolar abscess invites bone complication. During the progress of the abscess the bone-marrow (spongiosum) becomes infected by the pathogenic bacteria and is broken down into pus. If extraction is resorted to and laceration of the soft tissue and alveolar margins results, a mixed infection is liable to follow, as has been previously stated. The germs are highly virulent, and among them are frequently found the diplococcus pneumoniæ and the tubercular bacillus, as well as the streptococcus viridans.

Digitized by Google

In these cases it is necessary to see the patient frequently, washing the part with warm antiseptic solutions and covering the entire exposed process with the euroform paste or other stimulating remedies. The orthoform will control the pain and the iodin liberated from the europhen will stimulate and disinfect the part. If gauze is used in applying the paste, it should be changed frequently; for, if left long, it invites further infection, even when saturated at first with the oleaginous paste. After the pain subsides bismuth paste may be freely injected every few days. In employing the latter remedy, however, care should be taken to prevent the wound from healing over the paste. The author has observed several cases where the part had to be reopened after several months and the bismuth paste removed, since it is not absorbed, as was supposed at first.

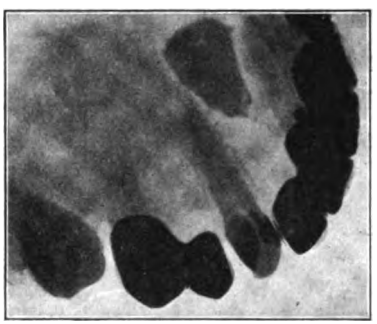


FIG. 62.—This radiograph shows bismuth paste which was injected into an abscess pocket. Extensive caries of bone resulted from a dead pulp in the cuspid tooth. An opening was made both labially and lingually, the part curetted and packed with euroform gauze. The second day after operation the bismuth paste was injected, and the radiograph taken.

5. Extensive Caries or Necrosis.—Bone infection from alveolar abscesses often results in either caries or necrosis of bone. Pus is formed from the breaking down of the tissues and fluids, and, in case of caries, escapes through several sinuses (see Fig. 62). The porous dead bone may be detected by a pointed steel probe. In necrosis the parts involved die *en masse*, and the sequestra are finally loosened and gradually work out as one large or several small pieces. In cases with a syphilitic history, even if the case has long been considered cured, there is a great tendency toward necrosis (see Fig. 61). The treatment here is largely surgical. The dead bone must be removed, after which the parts should be kept clean and stimulated until healed. It is generally best in cases of necrosis to wait for Nature to separate the dead from the living bone. A 50 per cent. solution

Digitized by Google

of phenolsulphonic acid hastens the formation of the sequestrum; after the dead bone is removed bismuth paste should be injected until the part heals.

6. Involving Vault.—Still another complication often difficult to cure is where the pus has worked its way through the lingual plate of bone and involves the vault of the mouth (see Figs. 63 and 64). The dense fibrous tissue covering the vault is very tough, and the pus often separates the periosteum from a considerable area of bone before ultimately discharging into the mouth. Generally a lancet

FIG. 63.

FIG. 64.

FIG. 63.—This radiograph shows a large abscess cavity under the floor of the nasal and antral cavities, the result of the death and decomposition of the pulp in the lateral incisor. The dark spot shows the outline of the cavity which had been injected with bismuth paste from a lingual opening. To cure the case it was necessary to open from the labial, excise the lateral root and thoroughly curette the affected bone. After the operation the case was first packed for 24 hours with euroform gauze to control the pain, followed with the injection of bismuth paste until granulation filled the cavity.

FIG. 64.—This radiograph shows the case, illustrated in Fig. 63, immediately after the surgical operation. In excising the root, the end dropped into the deep lingual pocket where it was difficult to find and remove (see *a*). The radiograph aided materially, as it verified the presence of the root-end and its location.

is required to evacuate the pus. In treating these conditions it is essential to explore the affected area, using a sharp steel instrument in order to determine whether there is caries or necrosis. Unless too much bone is involved, the case can be successfully treated by first making a liberal opening with a sharp bistoury and, if necessary, breaking down the sharp edges of bone, through which the pus has burrowed, with a round bur having a long shank, after which the sinus should be established in the usual manner, using a considerable quantity of the bland solution. Now dry the canal and force through the sinus full strength phenolsulphonic acid. Sometimes it is advisable to place a piece of blotting-paper soaked in liquid petroleum over the lingual opening when forcing the acid through.

Digitized by Google

This causes the agent to spread and come in contact with the entire area involved. Alcohol and the oils will neutralize any excess of the phenolsulphonic acid that may get on the other tissues of the mouth. This treatment should be repeated as often as the case demands. When there is no evidence of pus and the case has healed sufficiently so that there is only a watery discharge, the root can be filled.

7. Secondary Abscess Pocket.—Occasionally we find an abscess of the discharging variety which does not yield to our general treatment, yet we are reasonably certain that none of the complications so far mentioned are present. In these cases we can suspect a *secondary abscess pocket.* This is especially true where the sinus opened into the mouth several teeth removed from the affected tooth. This pocket can usually be discovered by the aid of a small silver probe. The treatment is simple—all that is necessary is to open the

FIG. 65.—This radiograph shows the involvement of the upper left central and lateral incisors, with a common sinus. Both teeth carried perfectly-adjusted porcelain crowns. The radiograph not only shows the involvement of both teeth, but also shows that the roots are properly filled. The treatment here is purely surgical and means the curettement of the affected area.

pocket, wash it out first with a bland solution, then inject phenolsulphonic acid. In using phenolsulphonic acid in such cases it cannot be injected through the tooth, therefore it is necessary to use a syringe—a glass syringe with an asbestos-packed plunger and a gold or a platinum needle.

8. Involving Two or More Teeth.—It is not an uncommon thing to find two or more teeth involved with a common sinus. Such a case is illustrated in Fig. 65. This figure also shows the importance of radiography in the diagnosis of these complicated abscess conditions. Here it would be impossible to cure the disease by simply treating either one of the affected teeth. In this particular

Digitized by Google

case, the root-canal of both teeth having been properly filled, external curettement is the treatment indicated.

9. Involving Antrum.—The pus in making its exit follows the line of least resistance, and sometimes it is easier to work its way through the floor of the antrum than through the labial or lingual plate of bone. The treatment of this complication is of sufficient importance to merit discussion by itself, and will be considered later; but in this connection it is well to remember that so good an authority as Kyle, viewing the question from the nasal side, finds that fully 50 per cent. of antral diseases are of dental origin.

Periapical Cysts.—Cysts are quite frequently associated with pulpless teeth in which are abscesses which have passed through the acute stage. Logan was, perhaps, one of the first to direct attention to the presence of cysts in connection with pulpless teeth. Surgery is the treatment indicated. The area involved must be thoroughly curetted and the part packed until granulation fills the space.

SURGICAL TREATMENT OF CHRONIC ALVEOLAR ABSCESSES AND THEIR SEQUELÆ

In all complicated abscesses which do not yield to medicinal treatment as outlined in the preceding pages, we can often save the affected tooth and make it healthy and useful by adopting surgical methods. Thorough curettement of the area involved and, if necessary, excision of the root-end will save many teeth, such as have been too frequently lost in the past by extraction. Many dentists have preferred to extract the tooth in these complicated cases rather than undertake to effect a cure by means of surgery. It is because of this fact, and with the hope of stimulating a greater interest in this phase of the subject, that the author includes herein a description of his method of treating these cases.

Indications for Surgery.—Surgical treatment is indicated in those cases where medicinal treatment has failed to effect a cure, or where the root-canal has been thoroughly filled and the abscess develops subsequently. Especially is surgery indicated in this latter class of cases, if the affected tooth-root is firm in the jaw and has a good natural crown or carries a well-adjusted artificial crown. It is always best, where practicable, to have a radiograph taken to aid in determining the area involved and whether or not the root-canal has been properly filled.

In those cases of failure to cure by treatment through the canal, and where surgery is to be undertaken, the author advises filling the

Digitized by Google

canal, using gutta-percha for the purpose, before operating, especially if the root-end is to be excised; for, while it can be done, it is rather difficult to close the generally large apical opening of the root after excision.

This operation should be done under the most aseptic conditions; the hands of the operator and assistant, the site of operation, as well as all instruments used should be sterilized; and, in the absence of a radiograph, a thorough exploration should be made before operating so that the amount of process and root involved may be noted. The instruments used here were selected for the purpose from the surgical supply houses, and some of them have been modified by the author to better meet our demands. They are all-metal instruments and can be sterilized by boiling.

The Anesthetic.—The success of the operation will depend entirely upon the thoroughness with which it is done. It is, therefore, highly essential that the patient be assured that the operation not only can but *will* be performed with *very little pain*. This will be interesting to the patient and will increase his confidence in the operator. It is unnecessary to administer a general anesthetic, as the area can be completely anesthetized by the proper use of local anesthetics. Either infiltration or conductive anesthesia may be employed, as the operator deems best. The author generally uses the infiltration method. With a strong all-metal syringe, the healthy tissue on either side of the abscess area is infiltrated with the solution, two injections being made on the labial or buccal and one on the lingual, if the abscess is discharging labially, and the reverse if discharging lingually. If pressure is made over the point of the needle with the forefinger of the left hand as the solution is being injected, only a small amount of the solution will be necessary to thoroughly anesthetize the part. It is essential that the area be completely anesthetized; for we have assured our patient that there would be practically no pain, and if this assurance is carried out, we are more likely to do our work so thoroughly that there will be no question as to the ultimate success of the operation. It is but natural that most operators should do their work more thoroughly when the factor of pain is eliminated. The author desires to speak plainly on this point; for it will be far better for all concerned not to undertake the operation than to fail to do it with that degree of thoroughness which means success.

The Incision and Control of Hemorrhage.—When the part is anesthetized and only one tooth is involved, a vertical incision is made about one-half or three-quarters of an inch in length, directly over the affected root. In case two teeth are involved, it is necessary to

Digitized by Google

make a circular incision. A bistoury, such as is illustrated in Fig. 66, is used, and care should be taken to make the incision as high as possible (if the case is an upper tooth), stopping it about on a line with the floor of the necrotic area. If the incision is made any lower than this, the healthy process is likely to be left exposed, when it is more difficult for the tissues to close over this part. After the

FIG. 66.

incision is made, and sponged to check the primary hemorrhage, a flat bone chisel (Fig. 67), used as a periosteotome, is employed to separate the periosteum from the bone for about one-fourth inch on either side of the incision. The part is again sponged and a tissue retractor (Fig. 68) is firmly adjusted (see also Figs. 69 and 70). The arms of the retractor can be spread so that the soft tissues over-

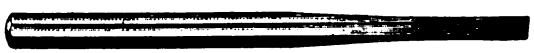


FIG. 67.

lying the bone can be held back, and at the same time the pressure produced controls the hemorrhage from this source. There is a great difference in the resiliency of the soft tissues, and with some patients the resiliency is soon overcome by the pressure of the retractor, in which case the retractor will loosen. To overcome the difficulty in such cases, the author has had made a spring retractor which may

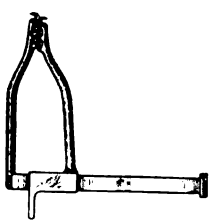


FIG. 68.

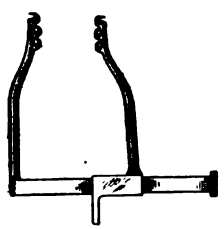


FIG. 68*a*.

be used. The operation from now on should be practically bloodless; especially is this true if adrenalin chlorid is added to the local anesthetic, as should always be done. One minim (0.06 mil) of a 1–1,000 adrenalin chlorid solution added to 30 min. (2.0 mils) of the local anesthetic solution is about the right proportion.

Digitized by Google

FIG. 69.—This picture shows a case where the abscess had not been treated. Therapeutics alone will not cure such a case, surgery being indicated.

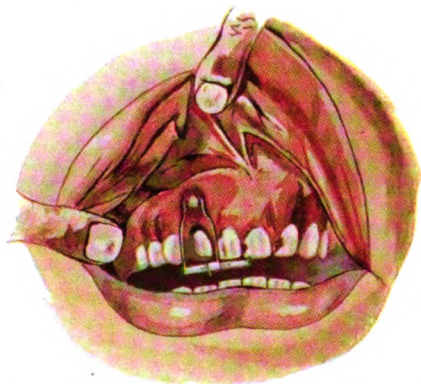


FIG. 70.—The same case as illustrated in Fig. 69 after the canal had been properly treated and filled. The retractor is adjusted ready for the root-end resection.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Exposing the Area Involved.—We now have the alveolar process over the root-end exposed to view, unless this has been destroyed by the necrotic process, which is frequently the case. Where it has not been destroyed, it is removed by means of bone chisels and mallet. The latter is shown in Fig. 71. The use of chisels and mallet was suggested to the author by Shamberg, of New York. The flat chisel is used across the lower part of the opening and along either side, by the claws of the retractor. To chisel across the upper part of the opening, a half-round chisel is used (Fig. 72). Many patients do not like the malleting process of removing bone. While it is not

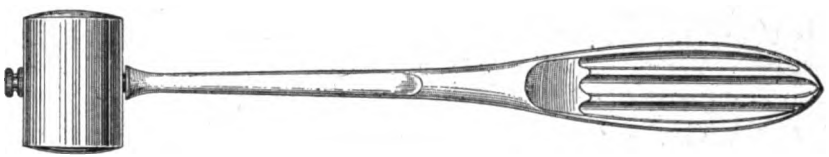


FIG. 71.

necessarily painful, if the part has been thoroughly anesthetized, nevertheless it is not pleasant. To overcome this feature, the author has had heavier chisels and curettes made by means of which the bone may be removed by hand pressure. The loosened bone is then removed when the root-end and area involved should be exposed to view. We are now able to make an ocular examination and determine whether the case simply needs curettement or whether the root-end should also be excised. If the necrotic area extends below the apex of the root, it is always best to excise as much of the

FIG. 72.

latter as is involved, to make sure that healthy bone is reached on either side. It makes no difference whether the end of the root is left flat, round, or slanting, as long as healthy bone is reached.

Before excising the end, it is best to drill on either side with a fissure bur. If this is done, the root-end, after excision, can be easily removed with an ordinary pair of pliers. The exposed end can now be excised with sharp fissure or cross-cut burs. Several such burs should be in readiness as they soon clog in a wet field. The operation of excising the root-ends of teeth is known as *apicoectomy* or *apexotomy*.

Digitized by Google

Curetting the Area.—After removing the excised root-end, which as stated above is an easy matter, the remaining end of root should be made smooth, using a large round bur for the purpose. The affected area is now thoroughly curetted, removing any carious or necrosed bone. Here bone curettes of varying sizes (Figs. 73, 74 and 75) are employed. This is the only part of the entire operation

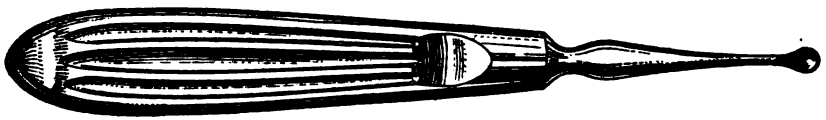


FIG. 73.

which may be at all painful, and the patient should now be so informed. Even here the curetting can be done with very little pain, if the anesthetic has been injected lingually as mentioned.

Filling End of Root.—The process of filling the end of the root with amalgam has been suggested by Lucas, Henshaw, and others. Copper cement has also been suggested for the purpose. The author

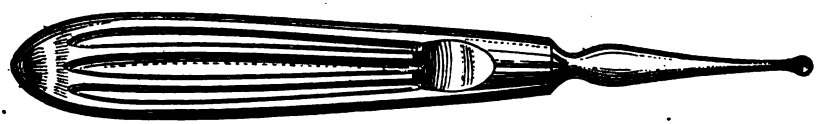


FIG. 74.

has followed these suggestions in a few instances with seemingly good results; but he is of the opinion that a good sterile gutta-percha root-filling, recently inserted, will prove more compatible with the tissues. It is the safest practice, therefore, always to retreat and refill the canals of such teeth previous to performing the surgical operation. Even though the radiograph indicates that the canal has been

FIG. 75.

filled to the end, in these long-standing cases we have no assurance that the root-filling was inserted under aseptic conditions or that the canal is sterile.

Washing and Packing the Wound.—With the end of the root smooth and cut down to healthy process on either side, the area thoroughly curetted, the wound should now be washed with a warm antiseptic solution. This may be done without removing the retractor. Following the washing process, the moisture should be

Digitized by Google

absorbed and the wound packed with sterile gauze, saturated with euroform paste. The orthoform in this paste will absolutely control the pain which nearly always follows the use of local anesthetics and the cutting of bone, while the europhen, giving off iodin, will stimulate

FIG. 76.

FIG. 77.

FIG. 76.—This radiograph shows a long-standing abscess on an upper left lateral. The root had been filled with lead. The dark line is a silver probe which was placed in the sinus while radiograph was being taken.

FIG. 77.—This shows the same case the day after the root-end was excised. The pocket is now ready to be filled with bismuth paste.

FIG. 78.

FIG. 79.

FIG. 78.—This radiograph shows a chronic alveolar abscess on an upper right central. The canal was filled and the root carried a good porcelain crown.

FIG. 79.—This shows the same case four days after excision of the denuded root-end and the curettement of the affected area.

the cells and hasten granulation; the oleoaginous vehicle (liquid petroleum) keeps the saliva, laden with bacteria, out of the wound.

Subsequent Treatment.—The patient should be instructed to keep the mouth as clean as possible by using an antiseptic mouth-wash; and after the initial packing, which should be left only twenty-

Digitized by Google

four hours, bismuth paste is injected every few days until granulation fills the cavity with healthy tissue.

Radiographs showing cases in the author's practice, before and after treatment, are illustrated in Figs. 76, 77, 78 and 79. See also Fig. 80 and Figs. 85 and 86. In those cases where the lingual plate

FIG. 80.—This radiograph shows an abscess which developed on the distal root of a lower molar, after the mesial root had been previously excised and a bridge adjusted. Thorough curettement and keeping the pocket filled with bismuth paste cured the condition. The abscess was of the pericemental variety, and was doubtless caused by injury to the alveolar process and pericemental membrane, produced in the removal of the excised mesial root.

of bone has been destroyed and a deep pocket is present, or where the abscess involves the antrum, care should be taken that the root-end, when excised, does not drop into the deep pocket or antral cavity, as it is often difficult to locate and remove. Such a case is

FIG. 81.

FIG. 82.

FIG. 81.—This shows a tumor which developed in the apical area of a central incisor, which carried a Richmond crown. The tooth had been improperly treated.

FIG. 82.—This shows a central incisor carrying a Richmond crown. Pink gutta-percha can be seen in the apex of the original (*A*), showing that the root was perfectly filled at first; but in drilling for the dowel subsequently the dentist punctured the root, afterward forcing gutta-percha through the puncture (*B*). An abscess developed, doubtless from lack of asepsis.

illustrated on p. 380 in Fig. 64. It is a good plan in such cases to drill a small hole through the end of the root through which a small wire may be inserted and bent to form a hook. Then, when the root-end is excised, it can be easily removed with the wire without danger of being lost.

Digitized by Google

Other complications are illustrated in Figs. 81 to 84.

Whenever the operator is in doubt as to the best means of treating complicated alveolar abscesses, he should not hesitate to consult with a practitioner who has had more experience in treating these cases. Such a course cannot be construed as evidence of lack of knowl-

FIG. 83.

FIG. 84.

FIG. 83.—This radiograph illustrates a case where three of the lower incisors contained dead pulps, causing an abscess with a common sinus which opened externally under the chin, just to the right of the median line. The dentist had been treating the abscess by washing through the left central only and sinus, finally filling the root. The case failing to heal after several months' treatment, the patient was referred. The radiograph shows, as stated, that the right central and lateral were also involved. By sterilizing the contents of the canals of these teeth and forcing phenolsulphonic acid through the sinus, the case seemed to heal. It was necessary, however, to operate and curette the area.

FIG. 84 shows the external sinus before treatment.

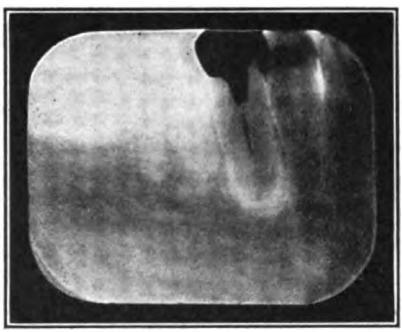


FIG. 85.

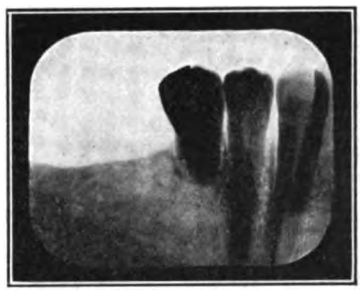


FIG. 86.

FIG. 85.—This abscessed tooth was treated and the canal filled in Nov., 1911, when radiograph was taken. As might have been expected the sinus did not heal. Apicoectomy was performed Dec. 11, 1911.

FIG. 86.—This picture shows the same case and was taken Mar. 21, 1914. The tooth is solid in the jaw and perfectly comfortable.

edge, but of conservatism and progress. The foci of infection about the teeth, as in all other parts of the body, *must be removed*. We should not let the extraction of a tooth, or any number of teeth, stand in our way in accomplishing this end; but the author's clinical experience leads him to the belief that many good men to-day are

Digitized by Google

unnecessarily advising the extraction of teeth as the only means of eliminating focal infection in the mouth. Both dentists and physicians have sadly neglected this phase of practice in the past, for lack of knowledge of the results of such practice. Much good work is being done along this line at the present time in the research institutions of both the dental and medical professions; and the future will bring a solution of the many problems involved. In the meantime dentists must continue to do their best, which, it must be admitted, is very good.

TREATMENT OF GANGRENOUS PULPS AND ABSCESSES IN DECIDUOUS TEETH

In treating the conditions under consideration in the mouths of children, it is necessary in most cases to modify our usual method of treatment. Our first duty here is to gain the confidence of the child. If the abscess is associated with a deciduous molar which we would desire to save for at least a year or two, it can be treated nicely in the following manner: After gaining the confidence of the little patient the mouth can be rinsed with an antiseptic solution—one which has a pleasant taste. Then open into the pulp chamber and place a pledget of cotton in the opening. Now mix on one end of the cement slab thymolized calcium phosphate and the formocresol remedy, making a stiff paste. On the other end of the slab have a quick-setting cement ready to mix. Again rinse the patient's mouth and, keeping the cavity as dry as possible, gently pack the paste into the pulp chamber and flow the cement over it, filling the cavity. It is remarkable how rapidly these abscesses will heal and remain quiet when treated in this manner, provided, of course, there be no caries or necrosis of bone, which condition is rarely found in the mouths of children as the result of abscess from deciduous teeth. If it is desirable to keep the tooth in the patient's mouth for more than a year, it is better to neutralize the putrescence with formocresol as usual, when the root-canals can be flooded with chloroform and eucapercha compound, and the entire cavity filled with gutta-percha. The gutta-percha filling, if properly inserted, will last as long as is necessary to save the tooth, even in occlusial cavities where it is exposed to the stress of mastication.

Digitized by Google

PERICEMENTAL ABSCESS

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

All of the alveolar abscesses which we have discussed thus far have been the result of an infection in the periapical area, the infection being due to pathogenic bacteria, poisonous ptomains and irritating gases, which have escaped from a gangrenous root-canal. There is, however, an abscess that occurs in the alveolar region about the roots of teeth, and is not due to the causes mentioned. This particular kind of abscess occurs in connection with live teeth; not necessarily so, however. There is a progressive breaking down of the pericemental membrane, which in dental literature is called a *pericemental abscess*. The origin of this particular kind of abscess is rather vague; but it is generally supposed to be due to some traumatic injury, the infection being blood-born or hematogenous. It frequently occurs on the mesial, labial or distal surface of the roots of the anterior teeth involving most of the surface. The lingual surface of these teeth is seldom involved. It has also been known to occur between the roots of molar teeth, especially upper molars. It may discharge through a sinus near the apical end of the roots or at the gum margin; in the latter case it resembles a pyorrheal pocket.

THERAPEUTICS

For convenience in outlining our treatment for a pericemental abscess, the condition may be classified as *acute* and *chronic*. As a rule, there is very little pain associated with either variety of pericemental abscess. In the acute form, which, as such, is extremely difficult to diagnose, the patient will complain of "something being wrong with a particular tooth." About all that can be done therapeutically with the acute form is to pacify the patient, as best we can, until the acute abscess develops into the chronic variety, when pus is formed and discharges and a sinus is established; thus the diagnosis is more easily made. In those cases where the sinus opens on the labial or buccal surface of the gum and not at the gum margin, care should be exercised in the diagnosis so as not to confuse the condition with an abscess of the ordinary variety, and open into vital teeth. A case where an incorrect diagnosis was made is illustrated in Fig. 87.

Digitized by Google

If the abscess occurs on the anterior teeth where the area involved can be curetted and cauterized, it will generally yield to the treatment; but the treatment of a chronic pericemental abscess on molar teeth is at best a discouraging procedure. If it is possible to thoroughly curette the area the tooth can be saved, provided the surrounding surfaces are kept clean. In those cases where the area can be reached, an opening, if necessary, can be made through the gum, the root thoroughly scraped and polished; then, after washing out the abscessed area, it should be cauterized with some cauterizing agent. Nothing gives better results than phenolsulphonic acid.

FIG. 87.—This radiograph partially shows the result of an incorrect diagnosis, where a pericemental abscess was mistaken for an alveolar abscess. The abscess occurred between the roots of the upper right central and lateral incisors with a sinus opening on the labial midway between the gum margin and the apex of the central incisor. The case gave a history of having received a blow on these two teeth about two months previous. The dentist, thinking the pulp in the central was dead, deliberately opened into the vital tooth. The patient then went to another dentist who attempted to remove the pulp by pressure anesthesia. It was difficult to anesthetize and a remnant was left in the apical area. Acute pericementitis followed and nitrous oxid and oxygen were administered and the remnant removed. This only aggravated the pericemental trouble; the cavity was left unsealed and the crown of the tooth became dark blue in color. The patient was now referred. Two treatments of phenol compound cured the pericementitis, when the root was filled. Subsequently the tissue about the abscess was anesthetized, the area curetted, and the wound packed for twenty-four hours with sterile gauze saturated with euroform paste. Two subsequent injections of bismuth paste cured the case; after which the color of the tooth was restored by sealing caustic pyrozone in the cavity, when a gold inlay was inserted. The patient in this instance was a lady, and when we recall that the tooth involved was an anterior one, the seriousness of the mistaken diagnosis becomes all the more apparent.

With a proper glass syringe and a gold or platinum needle, the remedy can be injected into the abscess pocket. One thorough treatment should effect a cure. In curetting these cases it is far better to go a little beyond the affected territory rather than fail to remove all of the affected tissue and have the abscess recur. Where the abscess can be reached, thorough curettement and cauterization will effect a cure. That portion of the pericemental membrane which has been destroyed will, perhaps, never be regenerated, but if we succeed in

Digitized by Google

having granulations fill in the area involved, even though the membrane is not regenerated over that particular surface of the root, the tooth can be saved for a considerable length of time. (See Figs. 88 and 89.)

FIG. 88.

FIG. 89.

FIG. 88.—This radiograph shows a pericemental abscess on the distal root of a lower first molar. The patient, a lady, has a perfect set of teeth and gums healthy, except this area. The part was anesthetized with a local anesthetic, the gum lanced freely on the buccal, the root scaled and area curetted. The exposed root being hypersensitive was subsequently cauterized with silver nitrate. The abscess yielded to the treatment. The cause of this particular abscess was a wooden toothpick having been broken off between the teeth.

FIG. 89.—The case illustrated in Fig. 88 was treated in April, 1916. This radiograph was taken Jan. 16, 1917. Notice the bone regeneration between the roots and the absence of deposits which show plainly in the negative for Fig. 88. The tissues around the tooth are as healthy as though no infection had ever been present, and there is very little depression of the soft tissues between the first and second molars.

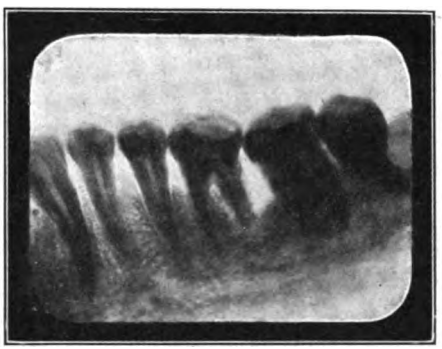


FIG. 90.—A case similar to that illustrated in Fig. 88, in the mouth of a male patient. Treated in the same manner, with a good result.

Digitized by Google

FILLING ROOT-CANALS

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The operation of filling root-canals stands as a sort of dividing line between the subjects of Therapeutics and Operative Dentistry proper. There has been a great variance of opinion in the past regarding the methods and materials used for this purpose. The method employed in this operation depends largely upon the materials which the individual operator uses, and a great variety of materials have been suggested and used, among which the following may be mentioned:

1. *Cotton.*—Saturating it with such antiseptics as creosote, iodoform, etc.

2. *Zinc Oxychlorid Cement.*—Chemically pure zinc oxid (powder) and a saturated solution of zinc chlorid (liquid). Some operators advise filling the apex with soft gold and the canal proper with the cement.

3. *Paraffin.*—Using the material alone or in combination with such agents as bismuth oxid, etc.

4. *Medicated Pastes.*—A variety of such pastes have been used, the powder for which consists of zinc oxid as the base with thymol, alum, chinosol, etc., in varying proportions; the liquid containing formaldehyd in solutions of different strength in such liquid drugs as phenol, cresol, creosote, etc.

5. *Gutta-Percha.*—Using the material in solution in such solvents as chloroform, eucalyptol, and oil of cajuput. In connection with the gutta-percha solution, gutta-percha points, gold, copper and lead wire, etc., have been employed.

In the light of our knowledge to-day of focal infection, it would be fortunate indeed if it could be correctly stated that all of the materials above mentioned, except gutta-percha, had been discarded; for all, with the one exception, have been tried and found wanting. The radiograph has proved the correctness of this statement.

In the opinion of the author, which is shared by men like Rhein, Black, Callahan, and others, gutta-percha, modified and used in such a manner as to best meet the needs of the individual operator, is the only material at our command to-day upon which reliance may be placed. From experiments made, Price is even skeptical regarding

Digitized by Google

gutta-percha on account of its inherent tendency to shrink; but against his laboratory experiments stands the record of thousands of clinical cases which proves conclusively that this material, properly used, answers our every purpose for filling the canals of pulpless teeth. This being true, the proposition resolves itself into the problem of determining the best method of modifying and using the material.

We may modify the properties of gutta-percha by incorporating within its substance certain drugs; and drugs are added to root-filling materials for two purposes: One a *pharmaco-mechanical* reason; the other on a *therapeutic basis*. In the case of gutta-percha,

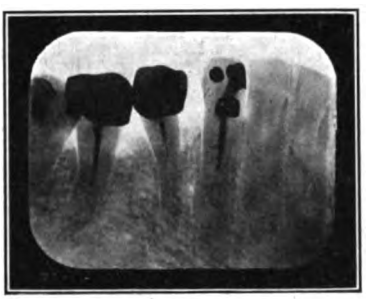


FIG. 91.—These teeth were treated and the canals filled in November and December, 1902. The radiograph was taken Apr. 3, 1916, over fourteen years after the three teeth had been treated. While there is no infection at the end of the roots, though none of the canals is well filled, this is an exception to the rule and will not excuse any dentist for not filling the canals of teeth to-day better than they have been filled in the past. Notice the mental foramen between the bicuspids. Many times this appears in a radiograph near the end of a bicuspid root, and may be mistaken for a "rarefied area." The inferior dental canal may also show near the end of a lower molar (see the distal root of Fig. 42).

it is admissible to add to and use in connection with the material such drugs as chloroform and eucalyptol, for pharmacal and mechanical purposes. In the opinion of Callahan, even rosin may be added on this basis. The solvents, chloroform and eucalyptol, soften the material which permits its adaptation, by proper manipulation with heat and instruments, to every irregularity in the canal which has been cleaned and opened by the previous treatment—thus the latter is completely filled with a nonabsorbable, and, if properly manipulated, I believe, nonshrinkable material.

Whether or not we are justified in adding drugs to root-filling materials to-day for therapeutic purposes is a debatable question. Speaking of the use of the many so-called "permanently antiseptic" root-filling pastes of various kinds that have been advocated and used, Best says:[1] "The only possible excuse I can see for the use of

[1] Dental Items of Interest, July, 1915, page 508.

Digitized by Google

these preparations in the roots of teeth is that the operator knows he has left something in the root which he should not have left; and instead of removing it, he places his 'life-saver' in on top of it and then rests assured he 'will have no trouble' from it in the future." When we remember that to which I have repeatedly directed attention, viz., there is no such thing as a permanently antiseptic root-filling material, we cannot rightfully have this satisfying assurance. That gutta-percha aseptically introduced in an aseptic canal will remain aseptic for years is the firm belief of the author and others, based upon years of clinical experience and observation. We have no right to fill a canal of a tooth which requires an antiseptic, as such, in our filling material. Referring again to Best, he makes the statement "that the only solution lies in an almost entire nondependence upon antiseptics in canal fillings and in the maintaining of asepsis in the operation." I fully agree with the first part of the statement that we should not depend upon antiseptics, as such, in our root-filling material; but I firmly believe in the liberal and generous use of antiseptics, and in the careful and intelligent use of disinfectants, in establishing and maintaining asepsis in treating pulpless teeth and preparing the canals for filling.

Precautions.—It will be remembered that three factors were emphasized under the Removal of Pulps and the Subsequent Treatment, viz.:

1. Establish and maintain asepsis.
2. Preserve the color of the tooth.
3. Thoroughly fill the canal.

The author suggests filling all canals, for reasons previously mentioned, with gutta-percha in the manner which will be subsequently described. In connection with the preservation of the color of the tooth, it should be mentioned that *white base plate gutta-percha* should be used, especially for the purpose of dissolving in eucalyptol, making *eucapercha*. If this white substance is forced into the tubuli of the crown of the tooth, as it is liable to be, it will not change the color of the tooth-structure as would the pink gutta-percha. A great many dentists have been moistening the canal, previous to filling with gutta-percha, with *oil of eucalpytus;* and, as a result, much unnecessary pericementitis has followed this operation. If oil of eucalpytus is used at all, the refined oil only should be selected; and far more satisfactory results will follow the use of *eucalyptol*, the most volatile constituent of oil of eucalyptus. While eucalyptol is irritating, it is not nearly so much so as is oil of eucalyptus. The author suggests modi-

Digitized by Google

fying the irritating property of eucalyptol and enhancing its antiseptic power by combining menthol and thymol, as suggested in the prescription of eucalyptol compound in the discussion of Nonseptic Pericementitis (p. 360). In this proportion, the agents added do not interfere with the solvent power of eucalyptol for gutta-percha; but if the amounts are increased to any appreciable extent, this does not hold true. Oil of cajuput has also been used for moistening the canal; but it has no advantage since its constituent, *cineol*, is chemically identical with eucalyptol.

In filling root-canals it is always the safest practice to adjust the rubber dam, *for asepsis must be established and maintained.* The same agents may be used for sterilizing the teeth after the dam is adjusted as were described in removing pulps by the Anesthetization Method. The canals should be aseptic before the operation is attempted. If there is any doubt in this regard, the operation should be deferred until they are in such a condition. Not only should the canals be sterile; but all instruments and material should be germ free. Methods of accomplishing this end were considered under Dental Sterilization (p. 277). The instruments may be sterilized by moist heat, the cotton wrapped on broaches, and other such material may be sterilized by dry heat; but it is necessary to rely upon chemic agents for sterilizing the gutta-percha points. The latter should always be sterilized when first purchased by immersion for a few hours in modified alcohol or other suitable disinfecting solutions, when they may be removed and placed on sterile gauze to absorb the liquid, thus dried and put in gelatin capsules, Petri dishes, or other sterile containers. Even with this method of keeping the points, it is well to place them in modified alcohol a few minutes before they are used. Though it may be done, it is impracticable to sterilize the hands and keep them germ free throughout the operation; and it is not necessary to have them absolutely sterile, if the cotton on the broaches was sterilized by dry heat after being wrapped, as first suggested by Best. This is the safest practice.

If the author's suggestion has been followed in regard to using eucalyptol compound for the final dressing in treating pulpless teeth, the canal will generally be in condition to fill, so far as moisture is concerned, when the dressing is removed. Black states[1] that "moisture is effectively removed by flooding the canals previous to filling with eucalyptol or oil of cajuput. The oils have a greater affinity, or attraction, for the dentin than has the moisture, therefore, displace it." If testing with sterile cotton or an absorbent point indicates

[1] Special Dental Pathology, p. 328.

Digitized by Google

moisture in the apical end, it should be absorbed before attempting to fill the canal. Overdrying with heated air or instruments should be avoided.

Filling Large Canals.—In filling large canals, especially those in connection with which dental granulomas or alveolar abscesses have been treated, where the apex is large and where we ought not to expect to get a response from the patient when the gutta-percha cone reaches the apex, on account of the loss of tissue in the periapical area, it is best to measure the canal and then use one cone which approximately fits it rather than use two or three smaller cones with the possibility of unnecessarily forcing one through the apex and into the periapical area. To measure the canals, cotton may be tightly wrapped around a smooth, sterile broach and inserted. When after repeated trials the cotton fits the canal, a cone should be selected which is slightly smaller than the tightly wrapped cotton. The canal should now be moistened with chloroform, then a small amount of eucapercha introduced, the latter being worked up or down into the canal with a fine smooth broach, exhausting the air. If cotton is wrapped around the broach used for this latter purpose, only a few shreds should be used; for we should avoid making a piston out of the broach and thus defeat our object of exhausting the air. This accomplished, the selected cone, flattened on the large end, should be dipped in chloroform and placed in the canal; when it should be worked up and down a few times with a slight pumping motion. In this manner the chloroform and eucapercha soften the outer surface of the cone, leaving the central portion with sufficient resistance to cause the mass of gutta-percha to spread laterally as the cone is finally pressed to place with the pliers. Root-canal pluggers may now be used and the mass of gutta-percha firmly packed in the canal. If chloroform is used, very little heat is required to soften the cones. The final packing may be done with a tampon of cotton or Japanese bibulous paper saturated with chloroform, as suggested by Rhein. In filling large canals from which live pulps have recently been removed, the patient will generally flinch before the cone reaches the apex. When this occurs, we should wait a few minutes, when the cone can be gently pressed much farther without causing the patient to flinch a second time. If these precautions are observed, they will be the means of preventing much of the pericementitis following the filling of root-canals.

We should make every endeavor to have our sterile root-filling reach at least to the end of the root; and Rhein has repeatedly emphasized the necessity of encapsulating the apical end of the root

Digitized by Google

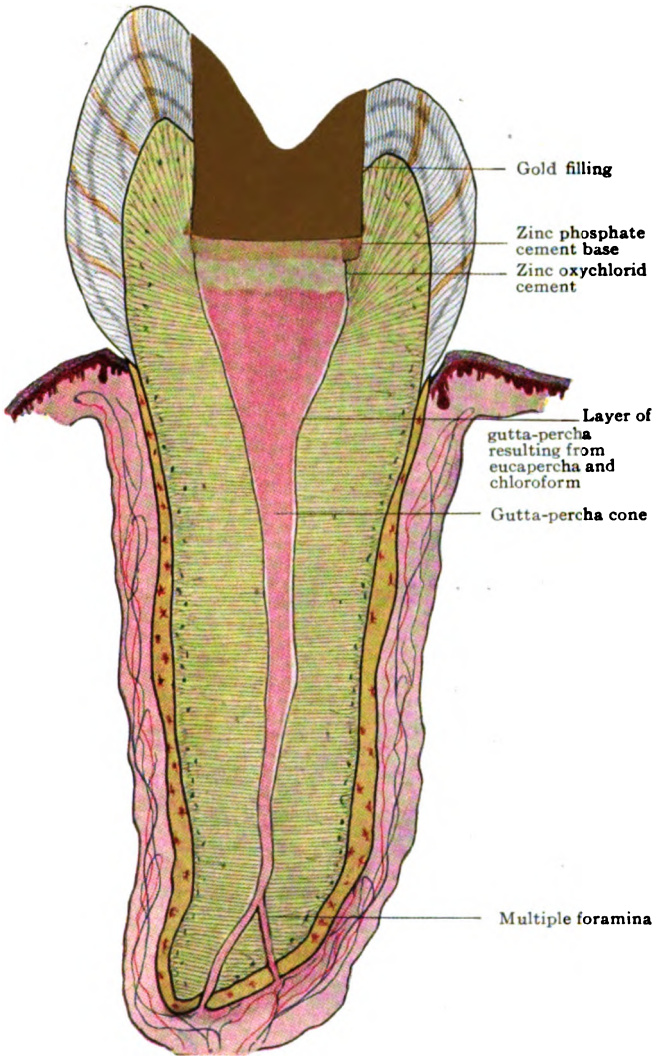


FIG. 92.—Shows canal filled after the author's method.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

with the fluid gutta-percha, in all cases where gangrenous canals had been treated which in any way involved the periapical tissues. The author believes the future will prove this to be necessary in cases where dead and infected pulps have been treated. In clean cases it is not necessary for the filling material to protrude beyond the apex, though it is difficult to fill canals as they must be filled for success without having the material pass through the apex to a greater or less extent. Fortunately the tissues take kindly to sterile gutta-percha.

Filling Small Canals.—In filling all canals where we can enter nicely with a small canal plugger, it is best to follow the technic outlined above, using a cone which will enter the canal. However much we may regret it, there are canals, especially in molar teeth, so small and tortuous that only a fine, smooth broach will enter, at least to any depth. It is useless to try to fill such canals with a gutta-percha cone. The methods of enlarging the canal by the use of acids and caustics, as referred to in connection with the destruction of pulp tissue in such canals, can be employed; but it is not always advisable to enlarge them sufficiently to admit a cone of any appreciable size, and there is no resistance to a very small cone, especially after it has been softened with solvents or heat. After the larger canal or canals in a multi-rooted tooth are filled in the ordinary manner, the smaller ones can be moistened with chloroform and eucapercha and the solution worked up or down into the canal. This process should be kept up for some time until the chloroform evaporates, leaving the gutta-percha rather thick and quite plastic. The sides of the pulp chamber can now be moistened with eucalyptol compound and a piece of base plate gutta-percha, selected and softened in the flame, can be packed into the pulp chamber, when pressure can be made toward the small canals and the plastic gutta-percha forced into them. This is much better practice than simply filling the mouth of the canal with a gutta-percha cone, leaving the rest of the canal empty. If the canal is so small and tortuous that even a small broach will not enter, and if it cannot be enlarged by the use of acids or caustics, as referred to previously, it will be necessary either to extract the tooth, or record the fact and occasionally check up on the case with a radiograph to ascertain if any infection is present at the end of the root. In every case where it can be done, the gutta-percha in the canals should be protected by zinc oxychlorid cement (see Fig. 92). This may be done in all cases except those where it is necessary to subsequently insert a post in the canal for some purpose.

The technic of filling root-canals with gutta-percha, as described by different operators, varies slightly, as, for instance, in the drugs

Digitized by Google

used as solvents and in the manner of introducing and packing the material in the canal. Some operators believe they can get a more compact mass of gutta-percha in the canal by cutting the points and introducing them in small pieces. Whatever method is employed, the gutta-percha must be left firmly packed in the canal; and it is the duty of every dentist to use this material in filling root-canals according to the method which in his hands offers the greatest opportunity for success. The operation is one that requires attention to detail, and, while the author does not believe it necessary to radiograph every root-filling, a sufficient number should be radiographed until the operator is satisfied he has mastered the technic of the method employed. All difficult cases and questionable root-fillings should be radiographed. If in treating pulpless teeth, preparing the canals for filling, and in root-filling operations, the dentist always tries to do his best, he will be rewarded by finding that the radiograph will prove his best is very good.

Callahan's Rosin Solution.—A discussion of filling root-canals would not be complete without mention of *Callahan's rosin solution.* The formula follows:

℞—Resinæ,	gr. xii (0.75 Gm.)
Chloroformi,	fl. ʒiii (12.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Use as directed.	

In directing attention to the method of using this solution Callahan says:[1] "Most of us at some time or other have shared in the opinion that it mattered but little what material was used in filling root-canals. It does matter as to the material; it does matter as to the manner of placing the material in the canal. The matter of prime importance is the sealing of the more or less numerous foramina, and, as we have no assurance that all of the foramina in a given root-canal are located near the apex, it becomes our duty to seal the whole of each canal with a material that will search out and seal minute canals or openings which, owing to physical conditions, we are unable to see."

Technic.—After desiccating the canal, observing strict asepsis, the latter is flooded with the thin rosin solution, pumping it up or down into the canal. When the latter is full of the solution, the air is exhausted by passing a fine wire or broach to the end. A gutta-percha cone which reaches to or near the end is selected and gently placed about halfway within the canal; the cone is pumped up and down, from forty to sixty times, and, as it dissolves in the chloroform, it is

[1] Dental Items of Interest, 1915, p. 585.

Digitized by Google

advanced farther toward the apex. This pumping motion forces the rosin solution, according to Callahan, into every opening, sealing all tubuli and foramina that have been opened in the preparation of the canal for filling. If this does not leave the large end of the gutta-percha cone at or near the mouth of the canal, a smaller cone may be placed and packed into the mass with cold root-canal pluggers, using warm air to soften the protruding gutta-percha, if necessary. This packing forces the semifluid chloropercha and rosin into the unknown canals and pockets, and, at the same time, brings the surplus chloropercha to the mouth of the canal, where it may be removed with cotton.

The author can see no advantage in the addition of rosin, for the chloroform solution will only enter the tubuli as far as moisture has been removed. It is difficult in the mouth to deplete the tooth-structure of its moisture, and, were it possible, it is questionable whether it ought to be done. Then, too, if we are justified in following Rhein, as I believe we are where the periapical tissues have been involved in the infection, it surely is best to attempt to encapsulate the end with bland gutta-percha, rather than have a substance like rosin incorporated with the material.

Digitized by Google

DISCOLORED TEETH

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

In the discussion of the methods of removing pulps from teeth and the subsequent treatment, the treating of gangrenous pulps and the various kinds of alveolar abscesses, the author endeavored to emphasize the necessity of *preserving or restoring the color of the tooth*. There is, perhaps, nothing more annoying to a conscientious dentist and to an appreciative patient than a discolored tooth in the patient's mouth. If the precautions, which have been mentioned throughout this work with reference to this factor, are observed in the treatment of teeth, the necessity for bleaching may often be avoided; for, after all that has been written on this subject is studied, it must be admitted that the most successful method of bleaching teeth is to so treat them that they will not need to be bleached.

Sources of Discoloration.—There are three principal sources of the discoloration of tooth-structure, viz.,

1. Pulp decomposition.
2. Remedial agents.
3. Metallic fillings.

The most common source is that of pulp decomposition. Many teeth containing gangrenous pulps are discolored before the patient presents for treatment. In those cases where the color is not lost the gangrenous conditions can be corrected and the color preserved by the method of treatment outlined under Gangrenous Pulps.

Occasionally, however, teeth have been observed to assume a pinkish hue shortly after some traumatic injury, rapid regulation, or after some irritating drug had been applied to a small exposure of the pulp, as, for instance, arsenic trioxid. Kirk has offered us a very plausible explanation of this immediate discoloration. He says: "It is now known that the pink staining of the tooth is brought about by a rupture of the stroma of the red blood disks liberating their contained hemoglobin, which dissolves in the plasma, forming a solution of hemoglobin which readily penetrates the dentinal tubuli, the lumen of which is of insufficient diameter to admit the unbroken red corpuscle. This pink discoloration resulting from the infiltration of hemoglobin solution represents the first stage of tooth dis-

Digitized by Google

coloration. The pink stain readily undergoes alterations, later on assuming a brownish tint, due to the breaking down of the highly complex molecule of hemoglobin into a reduced product known as hematin."

Manner of Discoloration.—There are two ways by which the discoloration is produced, *i.e.*, by solutions which stain the cement-like substance uniting the tubuli and by the ingress into the tubuli of insoluble coloring substances. For instance, many remedial agents in solution, such as oil of cassia, silver nitrate, etc., have the property of staining the cementing substance and producing discolorations; while the sulphids formed from certain metals, as, for example, in amalgam fillings, produce discoloration by virtue of being forced into the tubular structure of the dentin. If, in the treatment of teeth, more care were taken to select remedial agents which would not stain the tooth-structure, and if high-grade alloys were selected in making amalgam fillings, the cavity properly prepared, amalgam inserted and polished when set, there would be few teeth discolored from these causes. But, as has been stated, many teeth containing gangrenous pulps are discolored before the patient presents for treatment; and, inasmuch as this is by far the most common source, it is well to try to ascertain definitely the true cause of these discolorations; for it is difficult and unsatisfactory to try to bleach a tooth when we have no knowledge of the nature of the pigment we are trying to bleach.[1]

Principle of Bleaching.—The principle which governs the successful bleaching of teeth is to chemically change the molecule of the pigment in such a manner as to destroy its color, or chemically change the insoluble coloring substance to a soluble form, when it can be washed out of the tooth-structure.

Important Factors.—When a case presents for bleaching there are three important factors to be determined:

1. Ascertain, if possible, the cause of the discoloration.
2. Decide whether or not the color can be successfully restored.
3. The selection of the proper bleaching agent with which to restore the color.

The general cause of the discoloration can usually be ascertained from the history of the case as related by the patient. Whether or not the tooth can be successfully bleached depends largely upon the

[1] The author has explained the chemistry of tooth-discoloration from pulp decomposition in Johnson's "Text-book of Operative Dentistry" and in various dental journals.

Digitized by Google

cause of the discoloration, the condition of the tooth-structure, and the length of time the tooth has been discolored. Experience will prove that the teeth which will permanently retain their color, after it is restored, are those that have a good bulk of dentin, which dentin can be protected by the remaining enamel and some filling material, preferably procelain if this material is at all indicated. I desire to emphasize the fact that it is folly to expect a tooth to retain its color any length of time after once being bleached, unless *the dentin is properly protected.*

Having ascertained the cause of the discoloration and believing that the condition of the tooth-structure justifies us in attempting to bleach the tooth, we come to the most important consideration, viz., the selection of the bleaching agent with which the color can be restored with the least inconvenience to the patient and operator.

METHODS OF BLEACHING

All of the methods employed in bleaching teeth involve more or less chemistry and from a chemic viewpoint there are two general methods of bleaching teeth—*oxidation* and *reduction.*

I. **Oxidation.**—This general method is of two kinds also, *direct* and *indirect.*

1. *Direct.*—By direct oxidation is meant the use of any agent or agents from which oxygen can be directly obtained. The agents used for the purpose are:

Sodium dioxid, Na_2O_2.

Twenty-five per cent. ethereal solution of hydrogen dioxid, H_2O_2.

Alphozone, $(COOH.CH_2.CH_2CO)_2O_2$.

Acetozone, $C_6H_5CO.O.O.COCH_3$.

Aluminum chlorid, Al_2Cl_6, and a 3 per cent. aqueous solution of hydrogen dioxid.

Oxalic acid, $H_2C_2O_4$.

2. *Indirect.*—By indirect oxidation is meant the use of any agent or agents by which oxygen can be obtained indirectly. The agents employed are such as will liberate nascent chlorin, Cl, a chemically active gas, which, in the presence of moistures, seizes upon a molecule of water, H_2O, abstracts the atoms of hydrogen, H, forming hydrochloric acid, HCl, and liberates the oxygen, O, in the nascent state, as $H_2O + 2Cl = 2HCl + O$ (nascent).

Some of the agents used for this purpose are:

Aluminum chlorid and a freshly prepared Labarraque's solution (Harlan).

Digitized by Google

Chlorinated lime and dilute acetic acid (Truman).

Powdered alum, $Al_2K_2(SO_4)_4$, and Labarraque's solution.

Solution of sodium chlorid electrically decomposed.

II. **Reduction.**—By reduction is meant the use of any agent or agents which will abstract oxygen from a compound containing it. The agents which have been recommended are sodium sulphite, Na_2SO_3, 10 parts, and boric acid, H_3BO_3, 7 parts. These are mixed and placed within the tooth, moistened with water and hermetically sealed (Kirk). A reaction occurs between the two substances, with the ultimate formation of sulphurous acid which has a great affinity for oxygen and is, therefore, a good reducing agent. In some cases where the tooth has been discolored by remedial agents, and where it is desired to break up the color molecule, good results are obtained by this method. Whenever the method is used, the tooth should subsequently be thoroughly washed with an alkaline solution, such as a 10 per cent. solution of sodium bicarbonate or borax, to neutralize the acid.

In most cases of discoloration, the direct oxidation method is preferable; and, in view of the fact that all of the agents used in the indirect method of bleaching depend upon the generation of oxygen for their efficacy, it can readily be understood that the direct method is far more satisfactory. The fact, also, that hydrochloric acid is a constant by-product in the indirect method, thereby creating an *acid* medium, adds to the objectionable features of this method; for manufacturers have recognized for years that better results can be obtained in bleaching ivory, wool, hair, feathers, etc., when the bleaching process is carried on in an *alkaline* medium. This is likewise true in bleaching teeth. Believing, then, that the direct oxidation method is far superior to the indirect, I shall not burden my readers by describing the latter method, but will direct attention to the detailed use of sodium dioxid and 25 per cent. ethereal solution of hydrogen dioxid—both direct oxidizing agents, which, if their chemic properties are known and their dental application understood, the author believes to be the best agents for bleaching teeth thus far suggested to the profession.

Using Sodium Dioxid.—Sodium dioxid occurs in commerce as a yellow powder and is readily decomposed by water into caustic soda and oxygen. Because of this latter fact, much of the product obtained from wholesale druggists labeled "sodium dioxid," is nothing but caustic soda. This accounts for the fact that many dentists have tried this method of bleaching and failed to get results. The fault is not with the method, but with the powder used. In order that we

Digitized by Google

might be able to ascertain the efficacy of the chemical, some years ago I devised a simple chemic test for this purpose. In a clean, dry test-tube place about 15 gr. (1.0 Gm.) of the powder and to it add 30 min. (2.0 mils) of water. If the specimen is good sodium dioxid, enough oxygen should be generated to kindle a glowing splinter held at the mouth of the tube. Having tested the chemical and proved it to be sodium dioxid, and not caustic soda, the next thing is to properly prepare the tooth, which, of course, should have been previously treated and the root filled with white gutta-percha.

Preparation of the Tooth.—The rubber dam should be adjusted, if possible, without the use of the steel clamp. The ligature should be wrapped twice around each tooth included in the dam, which should be at least two teeth on either side of the one to be bleached. This will prevent the by-product, caustic soda, from getting on the soft tissue and destroying it. The lower third of the root-filling should now be removed with a good-sized round bur—it being necessary, for permanent results, to bleach the tooth rootwise as far as possible. We are now ready to apply our bleaching agent.

Making the Application.—Both the dry sodium dioxid and a solution made by carefully dusting the powder into ice-water are recommended to be used. The best results are obtained by using the dry powder, placing it in the cavity and, with a platinum broach or pointed glass instrument, working the powder well up into the canal from which the root-filling has been removed. Care should be taken not to use steel instruments, as oxygen will attack the steel, forming ferric oxid, and, therefore, we may get into the tooth the pigment we are trying to remove. In some cases it is rather difficult to place the powder in the cavity without getting it on the patient's face or clothing. To overcome this a strip of unannealed 1 : 1,000 platinum foil can be placed between the discolored and adjacent tooth, letting it extend above or below the cutting-edge, as the case may be, when white base plate gutta-percha can be warmed and pressed against the lingual surfaces of the teeth included in the dam. This forms a pocket on the labial side within which the powder can be easily placed, using a little gold or platinum spoon or spatula. In more difficult cases a paste can be made of the powder and chloroform, in which it is insoluble, quickly packing the paste into the cavity, evaporating the chloroform, and leaving the dry powder where it is desired. Distilled water is now dropped upon the powder, causing a lively effervescence, and the following reaction takes place:

$$Na_2O_2 + H_2O = 2NaOH + O \ (\textit{nascent}).$$

Digitized by Google

This nascent oxygen is a powerful oxidizing agent. It attacks and rapidly destroys any organic matter which may be present in the tubular structure of the dentin. It also thoroughly bleaches vegetable colors and acts upon any iron compounds which may have produced the discoloration. It converts ferric hydroxid, if present, into ferric oxid—still an insoluble compound. If ferrous sulphid is present in the moist state, it may be converted into ferrous sulphate, a soluble salt; but in the presence of caustic soda it would be reprecipitated as ferrous hydroxid, which, in turn, in the presence of oxygen, is at once reconverted into ferric oxid. Therefore, the pigment to be removed, if our chemic reasoning is correct as to the cause of the discoloration from pulp decomposition, is ferric oxid, an insoluble compound, and it must be removed mechanically by washing the tooth. Its removal is facilitated by the by-product, caustic soda, acting upon any fatty substances—fat being an end-product of the putrefaction of the proteid material—which may be present in the tubuli. The result of this action is a soluble soap, the removal of which by washing aids, as stated, the mechanical removal of the insoluble pigment.

It is the opinion of the author that the ultimate success depends quite as much upon the mechanical removal of the coloring matter as upon its chemic destruction, therefore the necessity of thoroughly washing the tooth after each application of the bleaching agent. Warm distilled water should be used in a strong syringe, letting a moist sponge absorb the water. The cavity is now dried, the color of the tooth observed and the process repeated, if necessary. Usually two or three applications are sufficient. If the color is not readily restored, the dentin can be saturated with a 2 per cent. solution of sulphuric acid which now enters the tubuli and chemically converts the oxids, that may not have been mechanically or otherwise removed by the saponifying and washing process, into sulphates. The salts produced are freely soluble, and can readily be washed out by again using the warm water.

Final Treatment.—When the tooth is satisfactorily bleached, a paste of precipitated calcium phosphate and distilled water can be placed in the cavity, packed into the lower third of the root and burnished, with a warm burnisher, against all exposed dentin. This is thoroughly dried by burnishing, the excess removed, and a light-colored, quick-setting cement used to form a base for the final filling.

Using 25 per cent. Ethereal Solution of Hydrogen Dioxid.—A 25 per cent. ethereal solution of hydrogen dioxid, called also caustic pyrozone, can be obtained in specially prepared and hermetically

Digitized by Google

sealed glass tubes. The date of its preparation is stamped upon the tube to guarantee its activity, for its value as a bleaching agent depends upon the volume of nascent oxygen which is liberated. It is, therefore, important that a good specimen of the agent be obtained. Care must be exercised in opening the tube, which should be wrapped in a cold, wet towel and held firmly in the left hand. With a *sharp* file make a groove around the pointed end of the tube, after which this end may be easily broken with a pair of pliers, the tube being pointed away from the face. A sharp file should be used, as a dull one might produce a spark and cause an explosion. When the tube is opened the contents should be transferred at once to a clean glass-stoppered bottle. The stopper should be sealed with paraffin when the remedy is not being used. In making the transfer, care should be taken to keep the agent from coming in contact with the fingers, as it readily cauterizes soft tissue.

Preparation of the Tooth.—The tooth should be prepared exactly as in using sodium dioxid, except that the cavity of the tooth should be moistened with an alkaline solution (10 per cent. solution of borax or sodium bicarbonate) before making the application. This is done in recognition of the fact that the bleaching process is more successful if carried on in an alkaline medium.

Making the Application.—There are some cavities within which it is difficult to place sodium dioxid, even if a paste has been made with chloroform, on account of the rapid evaporation of the latter. This is especially true where the cavity is small and in the lingual surface of one of the six upper anterior teeth. Teeth containing such cavities can usually be bleached more conveniently by using caustic pyrozone. The remedy can be applied in the canal loosely on cotton. To hasten the liberation of oxygen, a heated platinum wire can be gently placed on the cotton. The wire should not be too hot, as the heat may cause a flame from the ether in the solution. Heated dry air may also be used for the same purpose. After each application the tooth structure should be thoroughly washed with a warm alkaline solution, and the process repeated until the color is satisfactorily restored.

If, after repeating the application two or three times, the tooth is not satisfactorily bleached, the solution may be hermetically sealed in the cavity (see Fig. 93). If the cavity is small and on the lingual surface, the sealing can best be done by the use of gutta-percha (not temporary stopping). The excess of solution can be dried from the cavity and the hot gutta-percha applied, the heat of which hastens the liberation of oxygen which, together with the expansion of the confined ether, is carried into the entire tubular structure of the den-

Digitized by Google

tin. It is well to have the gutta-percha just flush with the margins of the cavity and then cover it with cement. By this means we are doubly certain that the remedy cannot escape. The final treatment is exactly the same as in using sodium dioxid.

Caustic pyrozone is a very escharotic agent, and equally as much care should be taken to prevent the remedy from coming in contact with the soft tissues of the mouth or the fingers of the operator as in using sodium dioxid. The remedy being in liquid form is more easily handled than the sodium dioxid powder.

FIG. 93.—This is the case of a young lady, about 17 years of age, who met with an accident in which the maxilla was fractured, loosening the central and lateral incisors. The fracture was reduced by Dr. W. H. G. Logan. About one year later the central began to discolor slightly, when patient was referred. The tooth was opened on Dec. 29, 1914, and the pulp was found to be dying, though not completely dead. Formocresol was sealed in contact with the tissue. On Jan. 4, 1915, the pulp was removed and phenolsulphonic acid was employed. Phenol compound was sealed in the canal. The root-filling operation was performed on Jan. 7, and the color restored by sealing caustic pyrozone in the canal; after which a lingual filling was inserted. The radiograph was taken April 1, 1916, about fifteen months after the root-filling operation. The color of the tooth at this time was perfectly normal. Notice that there is no periapical involvement.

The other direct oxidizing agents are used in practically the same way. The alphozone and acetozone powder can be placed in the cavity, moistened with an alkaline solution and hermetically sealed. The volume of oxygen liberated from these agents is not great, and the process of bleaching, therefore, is much slower than when sodium dioxid or caustic pyrozone is used.

In conclusion, I desire to say that in the bleaching of teeth we find a practical application of the science of chemistry to the practice of dentistry, and that in the discoloration of tooth-structure from the various sources can be found a fruitful field for further investigation.

Digitized by Google

ANTRUM OF HIGHMORE

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The antrum of Highmore, or maxillary sinus, is a chamber or cavity in the body of the superior maxillary bone on either side of the jaw. It should be remembered in connection with the therapeutics of the diseases of the antrum that the cavity is normally lined with mucous membrane, which is continuous from the nasal cavity through a small opening, called the ostium maxillare; that the cavity varies in location and size, and is capable of containing from two drams (8.0 mils) to, sometimes, one ounce (30.0 mils) of fluid. Fortunately, the dentist, in general practice, is not often called upon to treat diseases of the maxillary sinus, but when a case presents of purely dental origin, he should be prepared to make a correct diagnosis and to properly treat the case. (See Figs. 94 and 95.)

Causes of Diseases of the Antrum.—There are many contributing causes of diseases of the maxillary antrum, among the more important of which are:

1. *Dental Conditions.*—It is quite generally conceded by both rhinologists and dentists that the teeth, or conditions associated with the teeth, are the greatest source from which the membrane lining the chamber may become irritated to the extent of bringing about a degeneration of the cells, when infection is liable to occur and pus result. It has been previously mentioned that one of the serious complications of alveolar abscesses is where the pus is evacuated into the antral cavity, instead of working its way through the labial or buccal, and sometimes through the lingual plate of bone emptying into the mouth, as is the case usually. (See Fig. 55.) The author reports here two cases in the College Infirmary where a student had removed a vital pulp and entered the antrum through the canal, showing that all that separated the end of the root from the floor of the antrum was the mucoperiosteum, which the student penetrated. One case was the lingual canal of a first molar, and the other the canal of a second bicuspid. Other cases of this character have since been observed in the College clinic. If abscesses occur in connection with teeth thus situated in the jaw, the antrum will at once become involved.

Digitized by Google

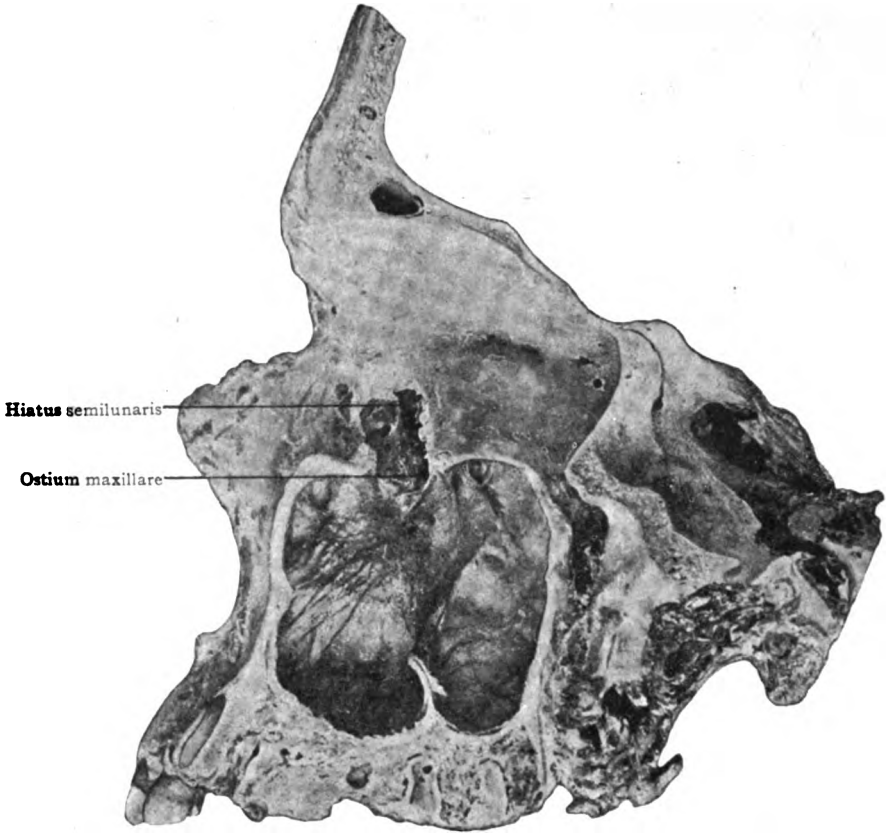


FIG. 94.—Antero-posterior division through the maxillary sinus. (*Cryer.*)

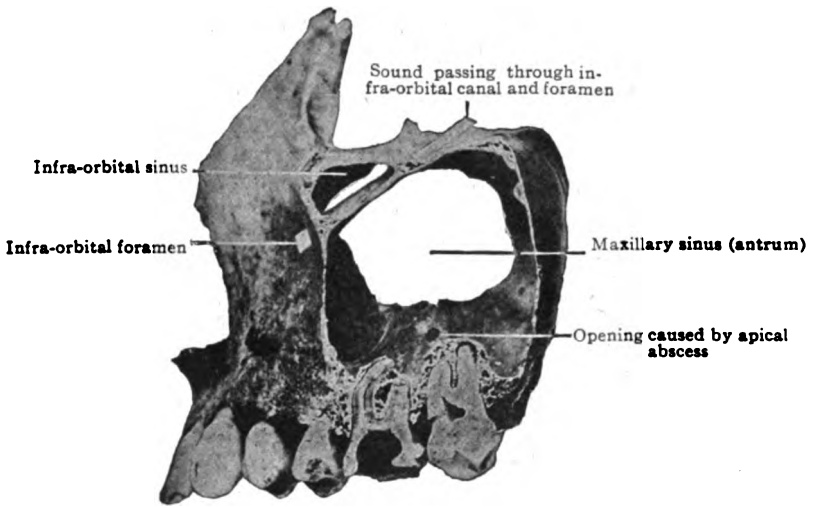


FIG. 95.—Vertical transverse section showing the close relation of the roots of the molar teeth to the maxillary sinus (antrum). (*Cryer, Dental Cosmos.*)

Digitized by Google

2. *Catarrhal Inflammation.*—Since the Schneiderian membrane which lines the nasal cavity passes through the ostium maxillare and the continuation of it lines the antral cavity, any inflammation of the nasal mucous membrane, if continuous and progressive, may involve the antrum. Especially is this true of patients who have catarrh, influenza, or grip. Even an acute coryza may seriously involve the antrum.

3. *Foreign Material.*—Foreign material constitutes another prolific source of disease of the antrum. Teeth, especially third molars, have been known to erupt into the antrum; dentigerous cysts and polypi are frequently found; and, occasionally, in the careless extraction of a pointed root, and even at times when due care and judgment are exercised, if the root is badly decayed, it may be forced by the forceps into the antral cavity.

FIG. 96.—This radiograph shows a case of suspected antral involvement. There was no external discharge of pus, but severe neuralgia and some of the other subjective symptoms of antral disease. The cuspid and first bicuspid, on the affected side, carried artificial crowns. The radiograph indicates that the antrum is not involved, but shows that the canal of the cuspid root is not filled, this was found to be gangrenous, also a necrotic area about the apical end of the imperfectly filled first bicuspid root.

4. *Traumatism.*—The antrum frequently becomes involved as a result of some traumatic injury, such as a blow, etc.

It is frequently difficult to make a correct and positive diagnosis of antral disease. The symptoms generally are of the subjective variety, unless the cause is some traumatic injury, in which case the diagnosis is readily made.

Diagnosis.—The symptoms which aid in arriving at a diagnosis are: A sense of fullness on the affected side; at times the pressure may be so great as to cause the eye to distend from its orbit; frequently an odor and discharge of bloody pus or mucus through the nose, especially when the patient coughs or sneezes, or when he lies in a certain position. The use of the X-ray and the little electric mouth-lamp,

Digitized by Google

while by no means positive, are invaluable aids in making the diagnosis (see Fig. 96). By pulling down the shades, making the room as dark as possible, and placing the electric mouth-lamp on the lingual side of the teeth a dead pulp may be detected which is causing the trouble. Placing the lamp higher in the vault, the antrum, if diseased, will generally present a more cloudy or foggy appearance than will the healthy antrum. After making the diagnosis, the next important step is to decide on the method of treatment. If no dental condition seems to be causing the disease, the patient should be referred to a rhinologist for further examination; but if the diseased condition of the antrum is of dental origin, it is the prerogative of the dentist to treat the case, if he so desires.

THERAPEUTICS

The treatment is of two kinds—*surgical* and *medicinal.*

1. Surgical Treatment.—The surgical treatment of diseases of the antrum will be discussed here but briefly. To intelligently treat the condition it is, of course, essential to find the cause and remove it. Let it be understood that this does not necessarily mean that if the cause of the antral trouble is an abscessed tooth, it is necessary to extract the tooth. Frequently, by treating the affected tooth and opening into the antrum and washing out the cavity, the case will yield nicely. Whether it is necessary to extract the offending tooth is often a difficult problem to solve. Many teeth have been needlessly sacrificed in the surgical treatment of diseases of the maxillary antrum, especially by the general surgeon; while, on the other hand, many antrums have become chronically diseased, which condition might have been avoided and the case cured during its incipiency, had it not been for the presumable conservativeness of dentists, especially, in their efforts to cure the antral disease and at the same time save the tooth. It should be remembered that *important as every tooth is—a healthy antrum is of greater importance.* In making this statement the author does not mean to encourage the needless extraction of teeth in connection with the surgical treatment.

The site of making the opening depends upon the conditions as found. Probably no two cases will need exactly the same kind of opening. It may be made through a tooth-socket, just posterior to the canine fossa, between the roots of teeth, or through the nose. The latter opening should be made by a rhinologist, if necessary. The tendency at first is to make the opening too small rather than large enough. In many cases it is necessary to have the opening

Digitized by Google

sufficiently large to permit an ocular or digital examination. A thorough examination at this stage of the operation will determine whether the cavity needs curettement or simply the establishment of drainage and evacuation of the pus or mucoserous fluid.

It is seldom necessary to administer a general anesthetic other than nitrous oxid and oxygen for the purpose of opening into the antrum painlessly. It may be accomplished in most cases practically without pain by the use of local anesthetics. With the soft tissues anesthetized little pain is produced in drilling through the bone. Where curettement is indicated, a general anesthetic had better be given. Nitrous oxid and oxygen serves the purpose admirably. We now come to the phase of the subject of most interest from *our* point of view—the *therapeutics*. Before discussing the drugs used in treating diseases of the antrum of Highmore, I desire to emphasize the fact that it matters little what drugs are used as long as they are practically nonirritating and antiseptic, if the surgical treatment has been all that is required. If the cause has not been surgically removed or corrected, drugs will be of little avail; for this reason the surgical treatment has been discussed here briefly.

2. Medicinal Treatment.—The therapeutics of the condition under consideration consists in washing the antral cavity with bland remedies for the purpose of disposing of the pus and mucoserous fluid; this to be followed by antiseptic and stimulating remedies. Any bland solution may be used which is nonirritating and antiseptic, provided the odor and taste of the agent employed are not objectionable. A warm saturated solution of boric acid serves the purpose admirably. The author, however, prefers using a warm sterile physiologic salt solution. These solutions may be used in a fountain syringe, the latter being placed on the wall as high as convenient so that considerable force may be exerted in the washing process. A glass or hard rubber point should be attached to the rubber tubing, and should be of such shape and size as to pass easily into the opening. The escape of fluid from the syringe should be controlled by a stop-cock. By this means the cavity can be well flushed out, using a considerable quantity of fluid. In the absence of a fountain syringe, a strong water syringe may be used. The physiologic saline solution also acts as a stimulant to the mucous membrane. After thoroughly washing the cavity, most of the solution which naturally remains can be absorbed with cotton and the cavity injected full of some antiseptic and stimulating remedy. Brophy recommends argyrol, using all the way from a 10 to a 50 per cent. solution.

Beck suggests using bismuth paste. This has the distinct ad-

Digitized by Google

vantage of completely filling the space with a semi-solid, oleaginous paste, which guards against septic invasion from the mouth, and at the same time holds the stimulating drug in contact with the entire membrane of the cavity. Some care must be exercised in making the injection so as not to force the paste into communicating sinuses. The injection may be repeated as often as the necessity of the case demands. If there be no complication, two or three injections, at intervals of two or three days, will generally suffice. The author prefers using antiseptic and stimulating solutions, like 25 per cent. argyrol, or 1 or 2 per cent. iodin, rather than bismuth paste.

There is little necessity for using strong disinfectant or cauterizing agents in the medicinal treatment of diseases of the maxillary sinus. If the case does not yield to the treatment here given, some complication may be suspected, for which see works on Oral Surgery.

Digitized by Google

PYORRHEA ALVEOLARIS

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Because of the customary use of the term, and for want of a better one, this much-named disease has been called throughout this work *pyorrhea alveolaris*. Generally speaking, it may be considered a chronic suppurative disease of the supporting or investing tissues of the teeth (gums, pericemental membrane and alveolar process), progressing insidiously with occasional acute exacerbations. The disease begins as an interstitial gingivitis; the gum septum first becomes reddened, then swollen and tender and bleeds easily. The swollen gum frequently assumes a deep red or purple color and forms spongy festoons between the affected teeth (see Fig. 98, p. 4).

The true pathology and etiology of this disease is yet an unsolved problem, notwithstanding the fact that its solution, for years, has been attempted by the most scientific men of the profession. In recent years, the disease has engaged the attention of the medical as well as the dental profession; for it is now well recognized that, whether or not the disease is of purely local origin or is a local manifestation of some constitutional disorder, its presence in the mouth is the forerunner of many grave systemic diseases.

Probable Causes.—The causes of pyorrhea alveolaris may be grouped into two classes: *predisposing* and *active*.

The conditions which predispose to the disease are many and varied, and include the following: Faulty occlusion, irregular teeth, faulty or no contacts between teeth, ill-fitting crowns, bridges and partial dentures, calcific deposits, bacterial plaques, certain drug poisons (mercury), certain constitutional diseases, etc.

The active or exciting cause of the disease is a pathogenic microorganism of some kind. In the past many organisms have been credited with being the specific cause of pyorrhea alveolaris. A bacteriologic examination of the pus from a pyorrheal pocket will disclose a vast number of bacteria. The difficulty is to ascertain, with any degree of certainty, which organism is pathogenic in a case. The work of Barrett and Smith,[1] of Philadelphia, corroborated

[1] Dental Cosmos, 1914.

Digitized by Google

by that of Bass and Johns,[1] of New Orleans, would seem to prove quite conclusively that the causative agent is not a bacterial organism, but a protozöön—the *Endameba buccalis*, and perhaps other species of endamebæ.

After making hundreds of smears, Hartzell,[2] of Minneapolis, found the *streptococcus viridans* and the *fusiform bacillus* and its accompanying *spirocheta* universally present in all pyorrheal pockets and on tooth surfaces. This author concludes by saying, "The finding by culture of viridans below the level of attachment in the membrane also impresses us with the thought that streptococci are the principal organisms of pyorrhea alveolaris and that amebæ and all other germs are contributing factors only." Brook,[3] of London, England, and others, have also found the streptococcus family to be the predominating organism in infections about the teeth.

Whether the endamebæ or the streptococci viridans or other bacteria are the specific cause will not be discussed further here. Enough has been introduced to show that the true pathology and etiology of pyorrhea alveolaris are still unsolved problems. The effects of the disease upon the system will now engage our attention.

Systemic Effects.—The systemic effects of pyorrhea alveolaris may result in two ways, as pointed out by Brook: (1) By the absorption of toxins and germs locally, through the infected gums and alveolar process, or, (2) by the absorption of toxins after the bacteria have entered the gastrointestinal tract, either from the stomach or intestines. This author points out the fallacy of the too common belief that the gastric secretion is sufficiently antiseptic to kill all of the bacteria reaching the stomach from the mouth; for he states that the same type of streptococcus found in the pyorrheal pus can be also isolated in many cases from the feces in persons suffering from the disease. It is also mentioned that a very limited amount of infection in the mouth may give rise to a great deal of systemic toxemia, owing to the fact that the bacteria multiply at such a great rate, one producing many millions in twenty-four hours, so that even a trivial amount of oval infection may mean an enormous number of pathogenic bacteria by the time the intestinal contents are evacuated from the bowel.

While it is possible, as stated, that absorption of toxins and germs may take place locally through the infected gums and alveolar

[1] Journal American Medical Association, Feb. 13, 1915.
[2] Dental Review, Sept., 1915.
[3] Dental Review, June, 1915.

Digitized by Google

process, there can be little doubt that the absorption of toxins from the gastrointestinal tract is of far greater significance. Logan[1] has repeatedly shown that the blood count in cases of pyorrhea alveolaris gives very little evidence of infection unless the pocket is deep, extending to or nearly to the root apex and involving the alveolar process. Carmichael[2] expresses the opinion that for the bacteria and toxins to be absorbed locally, it is essential that the pressure within the infected area shall exceed the pressure within the blood-vessels themselves; and this author concludes that inasmuch as the pyorrheal pocket in the vast majority of cases is in open and direct communication with the oral cavity by means of an external sinus, the toxic bacterial products liberated in the pocket are far more frequently emptied into the mouth, finding their way into the gastro-intestinal tract, rather than gaining direct entrance into the circulation. This theory would seem to prove the correctness of Logan's observations; though the latter author does not base his findings on such a theory, nor does it harmonize with the statement of bacteriologists to the effect that certain poisons known as *extracellular toxins* are excreted by the bacteria directly into the tissues or blood-stream. The toxins excreted by the streptococcus viridans are extracellular. (See Biologic Products, p. 245.)

With this knowledge before us, it will be interesting to trace the pus, containing the bacteria and toxins, in its course after it leaves the pyorrheal pocket, and to learn the diseases which may, and frequently do, result therefrom. This has been well done by Brook, from which author I here quote: "The pus passes first into the mouth, where it may give rise to ulcerative stomatitis, mixing here with the saliva, it flows first over the tonsils, which it may infect with the result of acute tonsillitis and quinsy. It then passes into the pharynx and then the esophagus, where it may cause pharyngitis and esophagitis. Should any be drawn into the trachea and bronchi it may produce bronchitis, acute and chronic, and gravest of them all—pneumonia or bronchopneumonia; passing down the esophagus it next enters the stomach. Chronic indigestion is by far the commonest sequela here, but another very grave trouble may result—gastric ulcer.[3] In the small intestine, it causes chronic intestinal indigestion, and flatulence, and may infect the bile duct, giving jaundice and gall-stones, etc. It then enters the cecum and the appendix.

[1] Various Journal articles.

[2] Dental Review, August, 1915.

[3] This complication has been pointed out by Sir Bertrand Dawson, of England; and conclusively proven by Rosenow, of Chicago.

Digitized by Google

Passing on into the colon, we come to the subject of colitis. This disease is much more prevalent than is commonly thought. It is marked by diarrhea, more or less spasmodic, and the passage of mucus in the stools. In acute cases, blood in more or less large quantities may be passed. In the chronic cases, chronic abdominal pain often amounting to colic, diarrhea, unformed stools, or occasional constipation, local abdominal tenderness, flatulence, and distention result." In connection with appendicitis, this author emphatically states his view that a large majority of cases are due to pyorrhea alveolaris and nothing else. Most of the cases, if examined, show symptoms of the disease, often of old standing, and then the same bacterium, streptococcus pyogenes longus, can be isolated from the pyorrheal pocket and from the appendicular abscess. This means, according to Brook, that had the patient been cured of this pyorrhea before his appendix became infected he would never have had the attack of appendicitis which brought him into the hands of the physician and, perhaps, surgeon.

So far as the treatment of pyorrhea alveolaris is concerned, the author is of the opinion that a mistake has been made by the profession generally in grouping all of the disorders commonly called pyorrhea alveolaris under one heading and endeavoring to effect a cure of the entire group by a common treatment. It is true that the treatment of the various diseases affecting the gum, pericemental, and alveolar tissues have many things in common, yet the correct treatment must necessarily involve special measures to meet the demands of a given case. Therefore, for convenience in outlining our treatment the various disorders so commonly grouped under the heading of pyorrhea alveolaris will be arbitrarily divided into three classes. It must be understood, however, that in reality no distinct line of demarcation can be drawn. The division is made purely for convenience in studying the disease from the therapeutic point of view.

DESCRIPTION OF CLASSES

Class I.—This class includes such cases as often present where upon examination it will be noticed that around several teeth in the mouth, just under the free margin of the gum, there is a hard, dark, flint-like, annular deposit, which in some instances nearly and oftentimes completely encircles the tooth. This deposit comes from the blood, and is known as *serumal calculus*. It is caused by some local irritant at the gum margin, generally oral filth and bacteria, which results in gingivitis—always a characteristic symptom of this class.

Digitized by Google

There may or may not be pus, generally there is not; the pockets, if any, are shallow. It will usually be noticed that there is more or less *salivary deposit* on the lingual surfaces of the lower anterior teeth and on the buccal surfaces of the upper first and second molars. The general condition of the mouth gives every evidence of neglect, which may be considered the cause of this class of pyorrhea alveolaris. Fig. 97 shows the extent to which salivary deposits may accumulate in a neglected mouth. Fig. 99 shows the results which frequently follow faulty occlusion.

FIG. 97.—This shows the extent to which salivary calculus will form on the roots of the lower anterior teeth in some mouths, if neglected. The crown is nearly covered as is also most of the root—only a small portion near the apex being free from deposit.

Class II.—This class is what might properly be called true pyorrhea alveolaris. In it will be considered those aggravated cases wherein there is little evidence of gingivitis; the gum, in fact, appears anemic rather than hyperemic, and is gradually receding from the neck of the tooth. The pericemental membrane is being rapidly destroyed; the alveolar process is resorbed—virtually melting away; the pockets are deep and variously located around the single root of a tooth, and oftentimes between the roots of multi-rooted teeth. Pus is generally present, and there may or may not be hard deposits. Unless the disease is checked, there is a progressive loosening of the teeth, to the extent that they ultimately drop out. The cause of this class is unknown. It may be a bacterium, but as yet no specific germ has been satisfactorily demonstrated to be the exciting agent, though the presence of various pathogenic germs has been scientifically proven, as is evidenced also clinically by the pus formation. Surely the cause cannot be neglect on the part of the patient, for the disease occurs and often persists in the mouths of patients who are scrupulously clean so far as the toilet of the mouth is concerned. The cause in far too many instances can rather be traced to neglect on the part of the family dentist, who either failed to recognize and cure the disease in its incipiency, or, recognizing it, informed the

Digitized by Google

FIG. 98.—The picture of the model on the left shows a typical case of Class I, involving both central and one lateral incisors. The picture of the model on the right shows a pyorrheal case which has been treated and cured. The central was treated by the author in 1904, the cuspid in 1915. The case being a referred one, I did not see the patient from the time the pocket along the labial of the central was cured until the cuspid became involved. The results here emphasize the advisability of surgically eliminating the pocket whenever indicated.

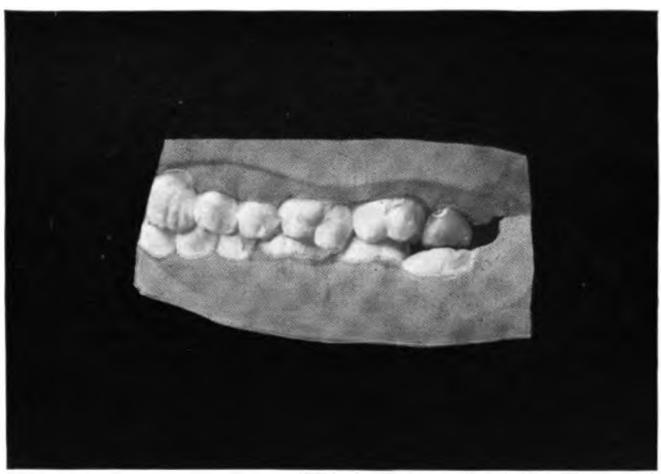


FIG. 99.—This picture is from a model taken of a case where the upper third molar prevented the lower third molar from fully erupting. Food pocket between the upper second and third molars, causing the third to decay. Frequently pyorrheal pockets form from just such conditions. Where the third molars are the teeth involved, it is generally best to extract the tooth, as was done in this case. The upper third molar shown in the picture is the actual tooth extracted. It was placed in the impression, and the model made.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

patient that nothing at all could be done and advised letting it go, ultimately extracting the teeth. It is sadly to be regretted that so many teeth have been needlessly lost in the past because of the seeming indifference of dentists; but the wave of prophylaxis that is floating over the profession to-day, due to the efforts of D. D. Smith and others, is an encouraging sign that individual dentists are either equipping themselves to combat the disease or are referring the patients thus afflicted to dentists who are so equipped. Fig. 100 illustrates a typical case of this class.

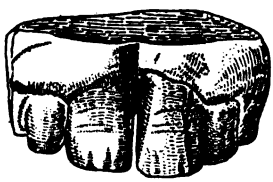


FIG. 100.—This shows the recession of gum tissue due to the resorption of the alveolar process between the central incisors—the result of pyorrhea alveolaris.

Class III.—In this class will be considered those cases in which we are reasonably certain that the local condition in the mouth is at least aggravated by, if not entirely due to, some systemic derangement. It has been quite clearly demonstrated by Pierce, Rhein, Talbot, Kirk, Fletcher and others, that at least certain kinds of pyorrhea alveolaris are closely associated with, if not caused by, such general diseases and conditions as syphilis, tuberculosis, actinomycosis, diabetes, osteomyelitis, salivation, phosphor poisoning, malnutrition, and faulty metabolism in general. The symptoms here are variable, and depend largely upon the general complication. In such diseases as syphilis, tuberculosis, actinomycosis, and osteomyelitis, the alveolar process is extensively involved and usually rapidly resorbed, the teeth are loosened, there is generally an absence of hard deposits, the pus is persistent, and recovery is much slower than usual. In diabetes the gums are often turgid and raw, the pericemental membrane is inflamed and highly sensitive, there is a tendency toward the formation of serumal deposits, and pus may or may not be present. The mouth symptoms of salivation or mercurial stomatitis and phosphor poisoning have been elsewhere described. In faulty metabolism the symptoms are variable, and none has been demonstrated to be truly characteristic of the general condition. Pyorrhea alveolaris was formerly thought by certain investigators to be caused by gout or what was known as the "rheumatic diathesis." To-day it has been definitely proven

Digitized by Google

that rheumatism (arthritis) is due to an infection, and the foci of infection has frequently been traced to pyorrheal pockets about the teeth.

With this understanding of the conditions which present in the various classes of the disease under consideration, we will now discuss the treatment.

THERAPEUTICS

When cases of pyorrhea alveolaris present for treatment, the first important consideration is to impress upon the minds of the patients the fact that you must have their hearty cooperation, and that in order to obtain permanent results it will be necessary for them to follow your instructions closely. There is, perhaps, no condition which dentists are called upon to treat wherein the confidence, and especially the cooperation of the patient is of such vital importance, so far as permanent results are concerned, as in the treatment of true pyorrhea alveolaris; and it is truly surprising what good results can be accomplished by the conscientious and persistent efforts of both dentist and patient.

Before undertaking the treatment of a case, then, there should be a distinct understanding as to what may reasonably be expected. The discerning patients will, naturally, want to know at the outset if their cases can be *cured*. The word "cure" here is but a relative term, and an explanation should be made in regard to what a so-called cure includes. It does not mean that the lost tissues—gum, pericemental, and alveolar—can be restored. It should mean, however, that the teeth treated can ultimately be made healthy, comfortable, and useful, so far as mastication is concerned. Any tooth which we cannot reasonably expect to restore to this condition had better be considered a hopeless tooth and extracted at once, and there are many such in the mouths of pyorrheal patients.

As has been elsewhere explained, while the presence of pus which is constantly being mixed and swallowed with the saliva and food is of greater importance, so far as health is concerned, than is the looseness of the teeth in the jaw, patients, until recently, were more interested in the latter phase of the question; and they are always anxious to know whether the now loosened teeth will become firmly fixed in the jaw after the treatment. This all depends upon the case at hand and the mechanical treatment involved. In the past too much dependence has been placed in drugs, and too much also has been left to Nature to tighten the teeth, when this should not have been expected on account of the extensive loss of the supporting

Digitized by Google

FIG. 101.—This picture is of a model taken of a case after being cured of pyorrhea alveolaris. Notice the second bicuspid which was badly affected and loose, but is now firm and comfortable.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

or investing tissues; and the conscientious dentist who makes extravagant statements in this respect will cause much disappointment to both himself and to the patient. It is surprising, at times, how loosened pyorrheal teeth will tighten in the jaw under proper treatment without mechanical assistance, but too much should not be promised in this respect (Fig. 101). The author desires to speak plainly on this point, for herein often lies the greatest source of disappointment. Unless the end of the root is resorbed, leaving it roughened, the pus formation can be checked, the gum can be made to resume a healthy appearance, but many times the teeth, without mechanical aid, will not materially tighten, though otherwise they are perfectly healthy and comfortable. Their usefulness, of course, is impaired on account of their being loose.

A thorough understanding at the beginning of the treatment, then, serves as a means of stimulating *confidence* on the part of the patient in the operator's ability to meet the conditions as found and the conscientiousness with which he works. No dentist should undertake the treatment of a case of true pyorrhea alveolaris unless he is equipped to render the best possible service, considering always the personal equation, and then only with the understanding that both he and the patient are to work in harmony—each exerting their best efforts to eradicate the disease. It is far better not to undertake the treatment of a case than to have it end in disappointment.

The detailed treatment of the three classes into which the disorders commonly called pyorrhea alveolaris have been divided will be considered separately, for herein lies the value of making the subdivisions. The treatment is of three kinds—*surgical, medicinal,* and *mechanical.*

CLASS I

1. Surgical Treatment.—In this class, it will be remembered, deposits are always in evidence. The first step in the treatment is to *remove the deposits.* This is accomplished by instrumentation, care being taken to remove the irritant material without undue injury to gum, pericementum, and tooth-structures. The instruments which the author uses for this purpose are the Logan-Buckley set, illustrations and brief descriptions of which are found in Fig. 102. Another very excellent set of instruments is known as the Carr set. By the use of either of these sets of instruments the deposits can be removed with a minimum amount of injury to the structures involved. Mawhinney has especially emphasized the injury done to the so-called dental ligament and the other soft tissues by careless

Digitized by Google

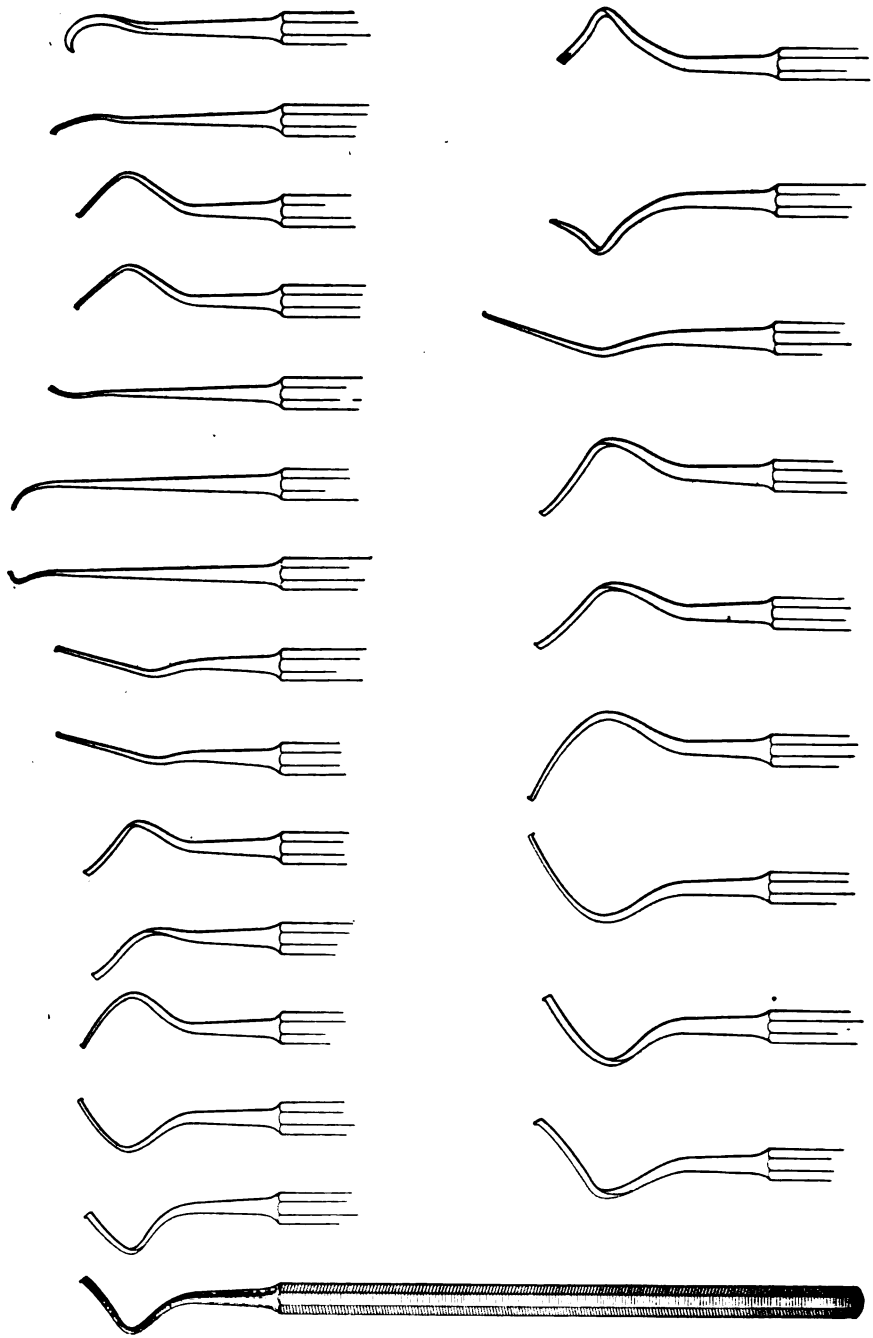


FIG. 102.—Logan-Buckley set of pyorrhea and prophylactic instruments. For description of their uses, see next page.

Digitized by Google

instrumentation, and Patterson, James, Hartzell, and others have demonstrated the fact that better results are obtained when the deposits are removed in such a manner as to leave the tooth-surface smooth and easily polished. Extreme care should always be taken in removing hard deposits from the necks of teeth to avoid having the deposit when loosened fly in the eye of the operator or patient. Several cases are on record where the dentist's eye became seriously infected, and in a few cases the sight was lost by such an accident.

Before beginning the scaling process the mouth should be thoroughly sprayed or rinsed with an antiseptic solution. For this purpose the author uses cinnamon water to which about 2 per cent. of alcohol is added. The cinnamon water is an agreeable solution, and the alcohol aids in removing the mucoid material with which the teeth in this class of cases are generally coated. A glassful of the cinnamon water should also be in a convenient place. This solution can be colored pink or a reddish tinge by adding a small amount of tincture of cudbear. The object in having the solution colored is to prevent the patient from seeing the blood which is always more or less in evidence in scaling these teeth on account of the gingivitis—a characteristic symptom of this class. The solution is used with a strong water syringe as often as is necessary to clear the field of operation. The scaling should be begun on some certain tooth in the mouth and this should not be left until it is thoroughly scaled. This can only be done with any degree of certainty by following some defi-

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF HOW TO USE THE LOGAN-BUCKLEY SET OF INSTRUMENTS

These instruments are so designed that the teeth may be scaled systematically. Beginning on the mesiobuccal surface of an upper molar or bicuspid tooth, the instruments are used as follows: No. 1 for the mesiobuccal, No. 2 for the buccal, No. 3 for the distobuccal, No. 4 for the distolingual, No. 5 for the lingual, and No. 6 for the mesiolingual surface. These six instruments, therefore, scale systematically around the tooth. If at any point a pocket is found too deep to be reached with these instruments, their counterparts, except with a narrower point and exaggerated in form, are found in Nos. 16 to 21 inclusive. For example, No. 16 is the exaggerated form of No. 1, and so on with the entire six instruments. For the lower teeth the positions of the instruments are exactly reversed, *i.e.*, Nos. 1 and 16 are here used on the mesiolingual surface, etc. With one or the other of these groups of six instruments the molar and bicuspid teeth can be scaled, except, occasionally, where deep pockets are found between the roots of molar teeth and on the lingual surface of the divergent lingual root of upper molars. For these exceptional cases, Nos. 9 and 10 are right and left and are employed for scaling between the roots of molars, and Nos. 24 and 25 are right and left for the lingual surface of a divergent lingual root of upper molars. No. 23 is for the distal surfaces of posterior teeth (third molars).

For the anterior teeth, upper and lower, No. 7 is designed for the lingual surfaces, and No. 8 for the labial. In cases where there is a deep lingual pocket which cannot be reached with No. 7, No. 22, the exaggerated form, can be used. No. 11 is a push instrument used in removing deposit from between crowded and irregular teeth. No. 15 is a general hook for removing the bulky deposit before the more delicate instruments are used. Nos. 12, 13, and 14 are prophylactic instruments which can be used with either a push or pull movement and will be found useful in removing superficial decay and in smoothing and polishing rough surfaces.

Digitized by Google

nite system. By using either of the sets of instruments mentioned, the scaling can be done systematically. With the L.-B. set, the author begins on the mesiobuccal surface of the upper third molar, and with the six instruments designed for the purpose one can work completely around the tooth in an intelligent manner. From here we can proceed from one tooth to another around the arch, using the instruments designed for the various surfaces. If there be a bulky deposit, such, for instance, as salivary deposits, this should be removed first with the hook instrument designed especially for this purpose.

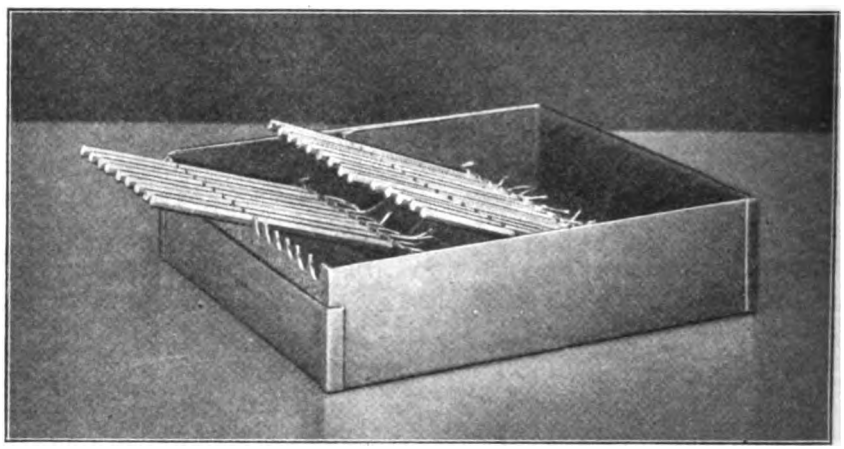


FIG. 103.—This shows the instruments in their proper places in the tray ready for use.

After an instrument has been used the point, at least, should be kept immersed in an antiseptic solution during the entire time the scaling is being done. This can best be done by having a tray which is designed to hold the instruments in their proper places. Such a tray with the entire L.-B. set of instruments in their proper places is illustrated in Figs. 103 and 104.

The instruments are presumed to be sterile before they are used; it is, therefore, unnecessary to have a strong disinfecting solution in the tray. Such a solution would either act upon the instruments or taste badly when the instrument is placed in the patient's mouth, for the necessary instrument should be taken directly from the rack of the tray and used in the mouth. A pleasant antiseptic solution, therefore, should be in the tray. It is a principle in surgery to avoid the presence of germs by having the instruments sterile before using rather than to endeavor to kill the germs by the use of strong disinfectants during the operation. The author uses a 20 per cent. solution

Digitized by Google

of phenol compound in glycerin, and of this about 10 min. (0.6 mil) is added to about ½ pint (240.0 mils) of sterile water, which is in the tray. This solution can also be colored with tincture of cudbear to conceal the blood.

The pockets here, if any, are not deep; the deposits are readily removed, and a number of teeth may be scaled at one sitting. Unless there be some good reason for extending the length of time of the operation, it should be limited to one hour, and the scaling process should be stopped in sufficient time to permit a thorough prophylactic treatment with Arkansas and carborundum stones, orange wood,

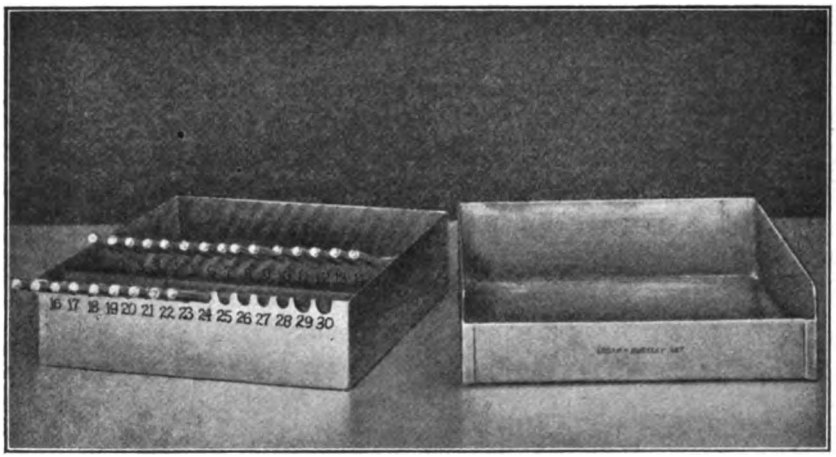


FIG. 104.—This shows how the inner rack can be removed for the purpose of sterilization.

pumice, and tape, according to the method of D. D. Smith, before applying the medicinal treatment. The teeth here are not loose and, therefore, they need no mechanical support. A record should be kept of the teeth treated at each sitting, so that we may know exactly where to begin when the patient returns. Hartzell[1] advises the prophylactic treatment before undertaking the root surgery. On this point he says: "Experience has taught us that the logical place to begin the treatment of pyorrhea is the tooth's surface and that the first step in the treatment of any pyorrhea is to demonstrate to the patient and to the operator the relative amount of bacterial growth on the tooth's surface. This is important to both—important to the patient because it directs his attention to those areas of the tooth's surface which need the greatest daily care, and important to the operator because it explains to him the reason for gingival

[1] Dental Review, September, 1915.

Digitized by Google

inflammation where oftentimes no other rational cause can be found. These areas may be shown by using 'disclosing solutions.'[1] Following such demonstration, the next step should be the elimination of all rough areas on the tooth's surface which may retain bacteria on or in the tooth-surface, and this is accomplished by applying to them Arkansas and carborundum stones, swinging them across the enamel surfaces, thus bringing out all pits that have been induced by the acid formed by the bacteria on these surfaces, getting rid of the bacteria themselves and polishing out the inequalities, which serve to retain and foster bacterial growth. After the use of the coarse stones on the tooth-surfaces, disclosing solution should again be used to make sure that all pits have been beveled out. After all pits that contain bacteria and inequalities have been thus beveled out, and the application of the disclosing solution reveals nothing, then the tooth-surface should be thoroughly polished with fine Arkansas stones, and the brilliance increased by the use of moose-hide wheels loaded with jeweler's rouge or any other abrasive which will give a high degree of brilliance to the enamel. When the tooth's surface has been properly cared for in this manner we are then ready to attack the root-surface." Whether the prophylactic treatment is given the crown surface of the tooth before or after the root surgery, it should be done thoroughly before applying the medicinal treatment.

2. Medicinal Treatment.—After the teeth have been thoroughly scaled and polished, the mouth should again be carefully sprayed with the antiseptic solution, forcing it well between the teeth and around the gum margins to mechanically remove any loose deposit and pumice which may be left from the polishing. By the use of cottonoid rolls the parts treated can be kept dry and an application made of some astringent remedy. This can be worked with a glass instrument under the free margin of the gum and over the gum septum, keeping the parts dry for a few moments, when the mouth can again be thoroughly sprayed and rinsed with the antiseptic solution. If the teeth are at all responsive to heat and cold, the solutions used should always be warmed to the temperature of the body. Spraying outfits are now on the market which keep the solutions warm; and, if the dentist devotes much time to pyorrheal or prophylactic treatment, these outfits should constitute a part of the office equipment. As a local astringent in these cases, the author suggests the following:

[1] Strong aqueous solutions of iodin and potassium iodid.

Digitized by Google

℞—Zinci phenolsulphonatis,
Potassii iodidi, āā gr. xx (1.3 Gm.)
Iodi (crys.), ℥ss (2.0 Gm.)
Mentholis, gr. iij (0.19 Gm.)
Thymolis, gr. ij (0.13 Gm.)
Glycerini, q. s. ad. f℥j—M.
Sig.—Use as directed above.

This remedy is called *pyorrhea astringent.*

The patients should now be instructed how to properly brush, massage, and care for their teeth generally, prescriptions should be written for a tooth-powder or paste and an antiseptic mouth-wash, and the patient dismissed until a second sitting. In giving the instruction relative to brushing the teeth and massaging the gums, it should be emphasized that the gums should be vigorously brushed as well as the teeth—thus we get the benefit of massage. Many hand and electrical appliances are also on the market for massaging the gums.

The above treatment, in practically every detail, should be repeated at each sitting until the mouth is in good condition, after which there will probably be little need for further medication. The patient should be requested to return at frequent intervals that the case may be watched, and each time the patient returns an examination should be made with respect to the care given the teeth. If all is well, the patients should be complimented; if not, they should be cautioned accordingly.

Astringent Mouth-washes Contraindicated.—The general prescribing of mouth-washes containing highly astringent drugs, as the zinc salts, in the treatment of pyorrhea alveolaris, is, in the opinion of the author, wrong. It is true that certain tissues of the mouth need to be *constringed* and *stimulated* to healthy activity, but surely the entire mucous membrane of the mouth does not need to be so treated. Cook has shown that the continuous use of astringent mouth-washes interferes for hours with the action of the ptyalin upon starchy foods. The astringent remedy should be applied by the dentist to the parts only which need such treatment, and an antiseptic mouth-wash, together with the proper brush, tooth-powder or paste, and other utensils for the mouth toilet is all the patient should use. If the patient is to use an astringent remedy at all, the constringing agents should rather be a constituent of a tooth-paste than of a mouth-wash. A prescription for a tooth-paste follows:

Digitized by Google

℞—Calcii carbonatis ppt., ℥iijss (112.0 Gm.)
Saponis, ℥ss (16.0 Gm.)
Sodii benzoatis, ℥j (4.0 Gm.)
Eucalyptolis,
Olei menthæ piperitæ, ää m. x (0.6 mil)
Thymolis, gr. iv (0.25 Gm.)
Saccharini, gr. iij (0.2 Gm.)
Glycerini, q. s. ad. pasta.—M.
Sig.—Use as a tooth-paste.

As a mouth-wash any known antiseptic solution can be prescribed. It is as unnecessary as it is unwise for the dentist to prescribe "cure-all" mouth-washes or those the constituents of which are to him unknown. The formerly official mouth-wash, Liquor Antisepticus, (N.F.) or Dobell's solution (N.F.) may be prescribed and diluted to suit the case. The formula for the Liquor Antisepticus follows:

Boric Acid,	5 dr. (20.0 Gm.)
Benzoic Acid,	15 gr. (1.0 Gm.)
Thymol,	15 gr. (1.0 Gm.)
Eucalyptol,	4 min. (0.25 mil)
Oil of Gaultheria,	4 min. (0.25 mil)
Oil of Peppermint,	8 min. (0.5 mil)
Oil of Thyme,	2 min. (0.1 mil)
Alcohol,	8 fl. oz. (240.0 mils)
Water, to make	1 qt. (1,000.0 mils)

In prescribing this solution it is never necessary to remember all of the various drugs and their quantities. We can take advantage of the fact that the solution was formerly recognized by the United States Pharmacopeia and write its official title, as:

℞—Liquoris antiseptici, f℥viij (240.0 mils)
Sig.—Dilute with one-half of warm water and use as an antiseptic mouth-wash.

It is well to remember, however, that the solution contains about 2 per cent. of boric acid, 0.1 per cent. of benzoic acid and thymol, 25 per cent. of alcohol, and other aromatics and antiseptics added to water as the vehicle. Herein is illustrated a practical application of a knowledge of the Pharmacopeia and National Formulary.

In those cases complicated by indigestion and where the patient complains of a sour taste in the mouth, especially on rising in the morning, due either to local fermentation or to the regurgitation of acid from the stomach, the condition may be corrected by the following prescription:

℞—Sodii bicarbonatis, ℥j (4.0 Gm.)
Infusi gentianæ comp., f℥iij (90.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Take a tablespoonful before meals and on retiring.

Digitized by Google

Where the sour taste comes purely from fermentation in the mouth, all that is necessary is to have the patients use frequently a warm solution of sodium bicarbonate, or the following alkaline and antiseptic mouth-wash may be prescribed:

℞—Sodii bicarbonatis,
Sodii boratis, āā ℥ss (2.0 Gm.)
Thymolis,
Mentholis, āā gr. ss (0.03 Gm.)
Alcoholis, f℥ijss (10.0 mils)
Glycerini, f℥ij (8.0 mils)
Aquæ cinnamomi, q. s. ad. f℥viij (240.0 mils) —M.
Sig.—Use wherever an alkaline and antiseptic mouth-wash is indicated.

CLASS II

1. Surgical Treatment.—In this class of cases we are dealing with what may very properly be called true pyorrhea alveolaris, and in the surgical treatment it is especially necessary to use such instruments as will accomplish our end in a definite and certain manner. Here the exaggerated forms of the L.-B. set and those designed for scaling between the roots of molar teeth will be found extremely useful. If deposits are present, they *must be removed*, observing the same precautions as have been elsewhere mentioned. In the absence of deposits, the pockets, including both the affected tooth-surface and alveolar process, must be thoroughly curetted. We have here a more aggravated condition with which to deal, and from one to four teeth will doubtless be all that should be treated at one time, for the teeth thus operated upon are usually sore and more or less sensitive to thermal changes; therefore, the lesser number of teeth treated, the greater will be the comfort of the patient. The pockets are generally deep in this class of cases, and compressed air is an excellent agent to use for clearing the field and locating pockets. In the light of our present knowledge of focal infection and the grave systemic diseases resulting therefrom, it must ever be kept in mind that *all teeth which cannot be treated so as to be kept free from infection should be extracted.*

Indications for the Removal of Pulps.—The question of removing the pulps from the affected teeth in this class of cases is an important one. It may be safely stated that there are at least three indications for pulp removal, viz.: (1) where the pockets are deep and the infection in the apical area has left the pulp, if still alive, in a low state of vitality; (2) where it is necessary to adjust some

Digitized by Google

mechanical appliance (see Figs. 105 and 106); and (3) where the tooth is so acutely sensitive as to cause constant annoyance to the patient. The latter condition may be overcome by sealing desensitizing paste on the exposed cementum for a period of twenty-four

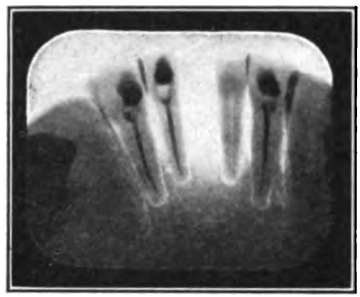


FIG. 105.

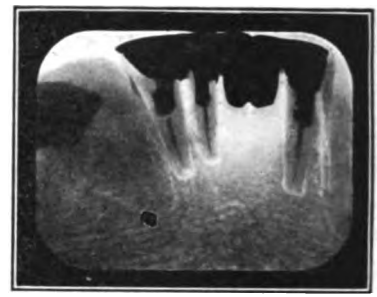


FIG. 106.

FIGS. 105 AND 106.—This is a case where there was an abnormal space between the lower central incisors, about the width of one tooth. All of the four incisors were loose; the left central hopelessly so. The pulps were removed from the two lateral and right central incisors, and the canals filled. The radiograph for Fig. 105 was taken Mar. 9, 1916. The combination bridge and retainer was adjusted a few days later. The radiograph for Fig. 106 was taken Nov. 30, 1916. The teeth are solid and comfortable, and the gums pink and healthy.

FIG. 107.—This radiograph shows the result of an incorrect diagnosis. Pus was flowing from between the two central incisors and from between the left central and lateral incisors. The condition was mistaken by the dentist for an alveolar abscess; he drilled into the left central only to find a live pulp, which was removed and root filled. In the operation the perfect natural crown was so mutilated that a Logan crown was subsequently adjusted. The pus still continuing to flow, an attempt was made to open into the lateral, as the skiagraph shows On finding another live pulp, the dentist became discouraged, to say nothing about the patient, and referred the case. The curettement of two rather stubborn pyorrheal pockets effected a cure.

hours, or, if a posterior tooth, by cauterizing the exposed cementum with silver nitrate (see p. 86). The transitory sensitiveness following the scaling and polishing of the teeth may generally be reduced by polishing the surfaces with moist sodium bicarbonate,

Digitized by Google

and having the patient rinse the mouth, especially before retiring, with a warm sodium bicarbonate solution.

It has been clinically observed by White, of Nashville, and others that the removal of the pulp of a badly affected pyorrheal tooth is followed by a more rapid response to the local treatment of the disease. The theory has been advanced that in the removal of the pulp the entire circulation of the tooth is thrown to the sluggish pericemental membrane and thus stimulation is brought about. This is an erroneous idea, for Noyes and Broomell have clearly demonstrated histologically that the pericemental membrane is normally well supplied with blood-vessels, and that to extirpate the pulp would not materially affect the circulation in this membrane. However, there are many cases wherein the removal of the pulp is clearly indicated—not, however, because of the supposed stimulation which results, but because of its low state of vitality and ultimate death, in which case the pyorrheal condition is liable to be complicated by the presence of an alveolar abscess. Fig. 107 illustrates the result of a mistaken diagnosis, where a pyorrheal condition was mistaken for an alveolar abscess.

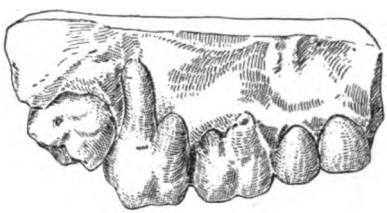


FIG. 108.

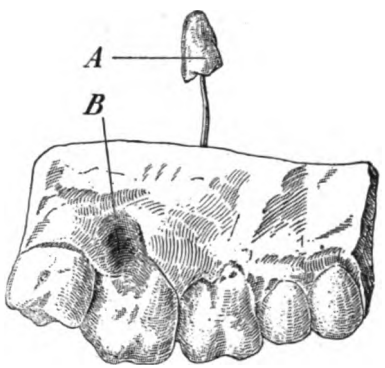


FIG. 109.

FIG. 108.—This shows an exposed molar root, such as is frequently encountered in the treatment of pyorrhea alveolaris.

FIG. 109.—This shows the case after the excision of the root. *A*, excised root; *B*, cavity after removal.

Denuded Roots.—Whenever a single root of a multi-rooted tooth is practically denuded of its pericemental attachment, with the remaining roots in fairly good condition, the badly affected root should be completely excised. Such a condition is illustrated in Figs. 108 and 109. (See also Figs. 110 and 111.) This necessitates, of course, the removal of the pulp and the filling of the root. If two roots are thus affected, the tooth had better be extracted.

The use of local anesthetics in connection with the surgical treat-

Digitized by Google

ment of pyorrhea alveolaris, is not advised, as a rule. To further poison the tissues by actual injection when they are already in a low state of vitality is contraindicated, and the slight anesthesia otherwise induced is too often obtained only at the expense of quite as much pain as the careful scaling and curetting with the proper instruments would produce. The parts not being anesthetized will serve as a guide to the careful operator in locating the pockets, when the surgical treatment can be accomplished with a minimum amount of injury to the soft parts involved. If care and judgment are exercised, neither the pain nor the discomfort is as great as might naturally be supposed.

After the surgical treatment is completed, the prophylactic treatment with the usual instructions should be given. Patterson[1] states, "Experience has taught that the time spent in smoothing the roots is well worth the endeavor, for the rapidity and permanency of the recovery is greatly enhanced, and the operation cannot be considered completed until as much time is given to the polishing as to the removal of the deposits."

Elimination of Deep Pockets.—It is always best in deep pockets, where there is considerable detachment of the pericemental membrane, to surgically eliminate the pocket, as shown in Figs. 112, 113, and 114. This is done by using a local anesthetic solution or spraying the part with ethyl chlorid, when a V-shaped piece of the gum is removed. Often the mere slitting of the gum with a sharp lancet will suffice, if the pocket is packed to prevent the edges of the wound from uniting. It is far better to have an exposed root surface free from infection, than to retain a pocket which cannot be kept from reinfection. On this point, Noyes[2] says, "It is important to remember that whenever the fibers (of the pericemental membrane) have been stripped from the surface of the cementum, they can be reattached to it only by the formation of a new layer of cementum, building the fibers into it. This is certainly possible if the conditions are properly controlled, but the cells of the tissue must be in a normal and vitally active condition, and the surface of the root must be such that they can lie in physiologic contact with it. The cure of a pyorrhea case, therefore, becomes a biologic problem. In this connection it is important to remember that a surface of cementum which has long been bathed in pus may be so filled with poison that no cell can lie in contact with it and perform its function.". Hartzell believes that these surfaces may be smoothed

[1] Johnson's Operative Dentistry, p. 467.

[2] Dental Histology and Embryology, page 248.

Digitized by Google

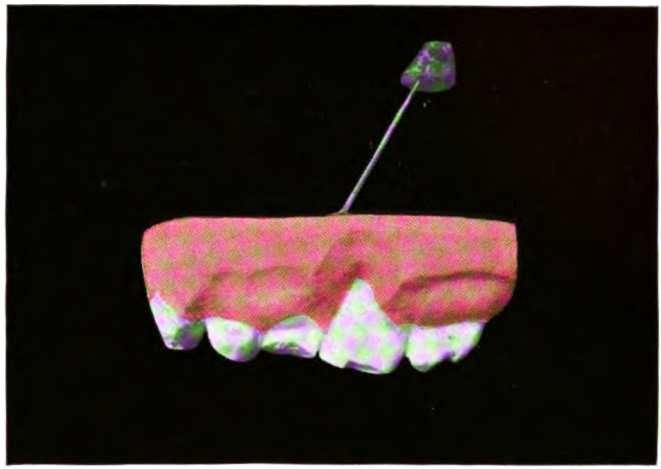


FIG. 110.—The picture here is of a model taken from a case after the mesiobuccal root of an upper first molar had been excised. The excised root is shown on the wire. With a little care, patients may keep such an area clean and the tooth may be saved for a number of years, free from infection.

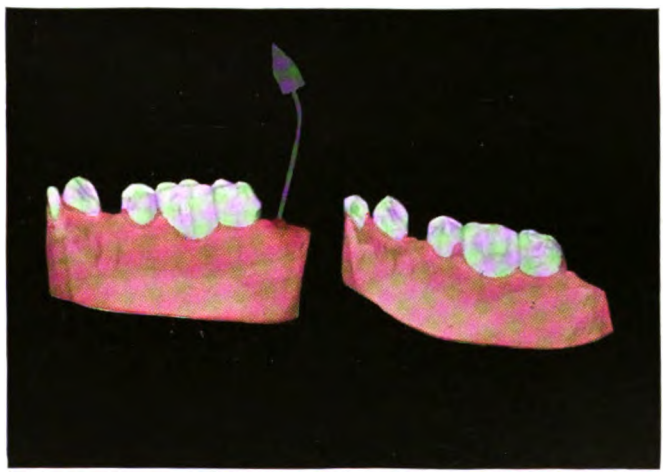


FIG. 111.—The picture of the model on the right shows a case where the lingual root of an upper first molar was practically denuded of its pericemental attachment. The picture of the model on the left shows the case after the entire root had been excised and the tissues had healed. The excised root is shown on the wire.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

FIG. 112.—The picture of this model shows the result of eliminating the pyorrheal pocket by surgically removing the overlying soft tissues.

FIG. 113.—This picture shows where a deep pocket on the distal of a lateral incisor has remained permanently cured for a number of years after surgically eliminating the pocket.

FIG. 114.—These are pictures of models of cases cured by surgically eliminating the pockets about the affected teeth.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

by proper instrumentation and thus left free from bacteria and toxins, when the tissue surrounding the pocket is caused to bleed, filling the latter with a sterile blood-clot and, under favorable conditions, new bone is formed. This may be possible, but hardly probable, considering the conditions in the mouth.

2. Medicinal Treatment.—The medicinal treatment for this class of cases is practically the same as for the preceding class. The pockets should be washed out thoroughly after the surgical treatment. This may be accomplished with either the spraying apparatus or water syringe, having a small point on the nozzle. Iodin, because of its penetrating and stimulating property, is especially efficacious in these bone affections. The case generally yields nicely when the application of the local astringent remedy is made at intervals of two or three days. The time of making the subsequent applications should gradually be lengthened, and in about two or three weeks the case should be ready for the patient to care for himself. It should be remembered that in this class of cases the patient, as well as the dentist, is confronted with a more serious proposition. The instruction, therefore, should be explicit and the progress of the case closely watched.

In stubborn pus pockets it is sometimes necessary to thoroughly cauterize the area involved in order to check the pus formation. For this purpose excellent results may often be had from the use of a 25 or 50 per cent. solution of phenolsulphonic acid. This is a valuable stimulating agent, and may be applied deep down in the pocket with a Dunn drop applicator; on general principles, however, the use of acids in the treatment of this disease is contraindicated, not because they will not assist Nature in effecting a cure, but because of the extreme sensitiveness which they produce. Phenolsulphonic acid is an exception to the rule, as this agent does not leave the teeth sensitive. It is generally best to surgically eliminate such pockets.

Occasionally the pus formation will persist in a pocket where we are reasonably certain that the ordinary surgical treatment has been thorough, and where also the pocket has been cauterized. Here we can suspect resorption of the root in the apical area, leaving sharp, needle-like points, which keep up the irritation. In these cases it is necessary to amputate the root-end or extract the tooth. The author's experience with replantation as a last resort in the cure of badly affected teeth in pyorrheal or abscessed conditions has not been encouraging. For permanent results it is absolutely essential that the replanted tooth be held firmly in position by some permanent appliance, and generally its extraction and the insertion of an arti-

Digitized by Google

ficial tooth is far more sanitary and satisfactory. It is not a question here of what a dentist can do by his ingenuity and skill, but rather a question of what is best for the patient.

Head, of Philadelphia, a few years ago, brought forth the use of ammonium hydrogen fluorid as a tartar solvent in the treatment of pyorrhea alveolaris. The solution which he recommends is made as follows: Commercial hydrofluoric acid is completely neutralized with ammonium carbonate and ammonium fluorid formed which dissolves in the water present. This solution is filtered, and as such has little chemic action on the so-called "tartar" on the teeth. To make the more active acid salt solution the ammonium fluorid solution is now evaporated in a leaden dish to one-half of its original bulk, an equal amount of hydrofluoric acid is added, and the whole again evaporated to one-half of its bulk. The resulting solution is ammonium hydrogen fluorid. Great care must be exercised in making this solution, for if any of the hydrofluoric acid is left free, its action would produce serious results.

Head recommends making the application to a pyorrheal pocket with a rubber syringe having a platinum point or with a drop applicator. The claim is made that it will dissolve the deposit without any deleterious effect on the soft tissues. The author again desires to emphasize the precautions to be observed in obtaining a solution of ammonium hydrogen fluorid free from uncombined hydrofluoric acid, for a burn from this acid is at best a stubborn condition to treat, especially in the mouth where there is always danger of a mixed infection. For various reasons, the remedy has not met the earlier expectations.

Use of Emetin.—The discussion of the medicinal treatment of pyorrhea alveolaris would not be complete without at least brief reference to the use of *ipecac* and its chief alkaloid, *emetin*.

For years certain preparations of ipecac root have been used empirically in the treatment of *amebic* or *tropical dysentery*, an ulcerative disease of the intestines due to the presence of the *Endameba histolytica*. When Barrett and Smith discovered the universal presence of the *Endameba buccalis* in pyorrheal pockets, the use of emetin at once suggested itself. Barrett recommends the local use of a ½ per cent. solution of emetin hydrochlorid, as stronger solutions cause irritation of the soft tissues. The solution is warmed and introduced into the pyorrheal pocket, using an ordinary hypodermic syringe with a flexible blunt needle. In addition to filling the definite pockets, a small amount of the solution may be permitted to run into the interdental spaces, care being taken to avoid any chance that

Digitized by Google

the patient will swallow the remedy. Emetin is a prompt emetic. Such treatment should be repeated daily for five or six days, to be followed by similar treatments every other day for as many times. According to Barrett the amebæ disappear rapidly and are rarely found in the lesions after the second or third application.

Another method of using emetin in the treatment of pyorrhea alveolaris was introduced by Bass and Johns, after their discovery, almost simultaneously with Barrett and Smith, of the presence of amebæ in pyorrheal lesions. Their original method consisted of the hypodermic injection, in any part of the body, usually the arm, of ½ gr. of emetin hydrochlorid in solution. Ampules containing the proper dosage are readily obtainable. These injections were made daily for three or four days, repeating the treatment on one or more days after an interval of three to ten days. According to these authorities amebæ disappear from all lesions in practically all cases after six days' treatment.

Still another method of using emetin in the treatment of this disease is the oral administration of alcresta ipecac. This preparation is an absorption compound of the ipecac alkaloids, emetin and cephaëlin, with a form of hydrated aluminum silicate, an alkaloidal reagent discovered by Professor John Uri Lloyd, of Cincinnati, Ohio. This combination prevents the alkaloids from being dissolved in acid or neutral solutions and permits their solution in alkaline media only. In this manner these alkaloids pass unchanged through the stomach, which prevents entirely the nausea and vomiting caused by the oral administration of preparations of ipecac in any other form. This means that the alkaloids are physiologically inert as long as they remain in the stomach and become active when set free in the alkaline intestinal secretions, where they not only act on the amebæ and bacteria locally in the intestine, but whence they are absorbed and carried by the blood-stream to the alveolar lesions, acting there also upon the infecting organisms.

The tablets of alcresta ipecac should be given while the surgical treatment of the case is in progress or even preceding it. Two tablets in one-half glass of water one-half to one hour before meals and on going to bed is the proper dosage to be continued for a period of five days, when the drug should be discontinued for about a week, at the end of which time a second course may be prescribed. In some cases there will be a slight looseness of the bowels after the fifth or sixth day. It is seldom necessary to discontinue the administration of the drug on this account.

The author has used emetin in every manner in which it has been

Digitized by Google

suggested, both in college and in private practice; and I can say that there is no longer any doubt in my mind about the efficacy of the drug. Used locally, as suggested by Barrett and Smith, in my hands the remedy has been disappointing; but the results are surely noticeable when the drug is internally administered, as suggested by Bass and Johns. As stated above, there are two ways in which this may be accomplished: By the hypodermic injection of emetin hydrochlorid, and by the mouth administration of alcresta ipecac. So far as I have been able to observe, there is little, if any, difference in the results obtained by these two means of getting the drug into the circulation whence the blood-stream carries it to the alveolar lesions. Because of the ease of accomplishment, and also because of the local effects of the drug on the organisms in the intestines, the mouth administration is far preferable, and the results equally as good, if not better.

The present opinion of the author regarding the "emetin treatment" for pyorrhea alveolaris is that the remedy is *not a specific for the disease.* In itself, used as many physicians have used it, without the all-important local treatment, in my hands it will not cure the disease; but used internally, as the surgical treatment is undertaken and accomplished, the inflammation subsides more readily, the gums resume their normal color and tone more quickly, and the teeth and general mouth conditions are more comfortable than when the drug is not administered. I believe the future will demonstrate that emetin when internally administered has some therapeutic effect, other than its amebicidal action, which makes its use valuable in the treatment of certain mouth conditions. It may be its hemostatic action upon the blood.

The remedy is equally efficacious for flabby and bleeding gums and all other inflammatory conditions resulting from local irritants, and tending toward pyorrhea. It must be remembered, however, that no remedy should be administered for such conditions without a thorough prophylactic treatment of the mouth. When Bass[1] made the statement that 95 per cent. of all adults examined by him had pyorrhea alveolaris, he must have used the term in a broad sense and included gingivitis and all other inflammatory mouth conditions. Strictly speaking these conditions should not be classed as pyorrhea.

Use of Mercury Succinimid.—The effects of mercury succinimid, when internally administered, upon pyorrheal lesions was noticed wholly by chance by Dr. Paul G. White,[2] assistant dental surgeon,

[1] Journal of the American Medical Association, Feb. 13, 1915.

[2] Dental Cosmos, April, 1915.

Digitized by Google

U.S.N., at the Portsmouth Navy Yard. In relating his experience White says: "Two patients, who had been under local treatment for pyorrhea alveolaris, presented themselves upon different days with gums swollen and exquisitely tender, and often with free salivation. Being unable to account for such conditions, which occurred at regular intervals, the patients were questioned, and the fact that they were also being treated for other troubles at the same time by Dr. Barton L. Wright, U.S.N., senior surgeon at the Yard, was brought to light. Investigations showed that both patients were being given deep muscular injections of mercury at regular intervals, and that the changes in the gum tissues and their hypersensitiveness were usually most prominent on the second day after treatment. The surprisingly quick cessation of the pus flow from the pockets and the corresponding return to normal of the gum tissues led to the introduction of mercury succinimid in other cases." These authors report startling results in a number of cases. The use of the remedy, as yet, has not been demonstrated to be practical, nor is it of sufficient value to be employed generally in the treatment of the disease. What the future holds forth, remains to be seen. There is no longer any doubt in the minds of those who have given serious study to the relation of pyorrhea alveolaris to systemic disease, regarding the effects of syphilis on the supporting or investing structures of the teeth. It may be that mercury will prove most beneficial in the treatment of mouth conditions when known to be associated with a specific history.

Use of Vaccines.—The raising of the opsonic index has been suggested as a means of combating pyorrhea alveolaris, as has also the use of specific vaccines (Hecker and others). The efficacy of these methods has not been sufficiently demonstrated to merit their discussion in a work on "practical therapeutics" at this time. In this connection, however, it should be remembered that we should never be in too great haste to remove foci of infection when the patient is systemically involved. In these cases, several pyorrheal pockets should not be curetted at one sitting, nor should several involved teeth be extracted at one time, on account of the reaction which frequently follows the disturbance of areas of infection. It is best in all such cases to confine the operation to one or two teeth.

It is to be hoped the true cause of pyorrhea alveolaris will soon be discovered, when the medicinal treatment can be instituted along more rational lines or, what would be better, such prophylactic measures inaugurated that the disease might be prevented. In our present state of knowledge it must be said that too much

Digitized by Google

dependence should not be placed upon drugs, for at this time there is no known specific for the cure of the disease.

Where the loss of tissues has been extensive and the teeth are so loose as to interfere with their usefulness in mastication, the correct treatment necessarily includes the making of mechanical appliances for their support.

3. Mechanical Treatment.—The importance of what the author has chosen to call the mechanical treatment of the disease under consideration has previously been emphasized. A detailed description of the method of making the various mechanical appli-

FIG. 115.—This shows loosened lower anterior teeth, temporarily wired with a 26 gauge platinoiridium wire, to hold the teeth during the scaling process, after which a permanent retainer, as illustrated in Figs. 116 and 117, was adjusted.

FIG. 116.

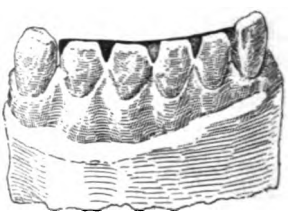


FIG. 117.

FIG. 116—This shows the retainer in wax with the sprue inserted ready to be invested for casting.

FIG. 117.—This shows the completed appliance set on the model.

DIRECTIONS FOR MAKING

A modeling compound impression is taken of the cutting edge and upper lingual third of the teeth to be included in the appliance. From this impression a model is made with a good investment material. It is best to let it set over night, when the modeling compound can be removed by using dry heat. Care should be exercised not to chip the margins of the investment teeth. On this model the retainer can be made in wax just as it is desired when completed. The model is trimmed so it can be put into a casting flask, the sprue inserted and it is ready for investing (Fig. 116). After casting, it is finished and set in the usual manner (Fig. 117).

ances is not properly included in a work of this character. The proper appliance for holding loose teeth in the jaw will naturally suggest itself to the ingenious dentist. They consist of a combination of inlays, crowns and bridges, the so-called splints, and various retainers. For the benefit of the beginner a splint suggested by Dr. C. L. Hine, of Tuscola, Ill., for loose teeth, the pulps of which need not be devitalized, is illustrated and briefly described in Figs. 115, 116 and 117. On the following pages the reader will find Figs. 118

Digitized by Google

to 130, inclusive, with descriptions which were furnished the author by Dr. Lee K. Stewart, of Chicago, and explain fully his method of treating the conditions under consideration from the mechanical viewpoint. It should be borne in mind that no tooth should be retained in the mouth that cannot be kept free from infection.

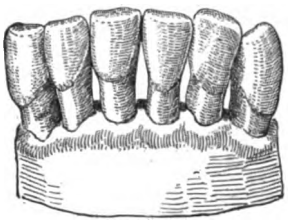


FIG. 118 A.

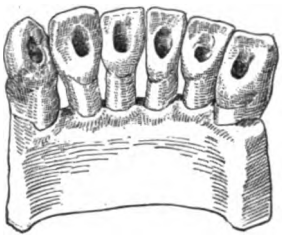


FIG. 118 B.

FIG 119 A.

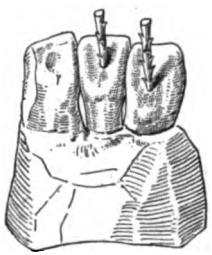


FIG. 119 B.

FIG. 120 A.

FIG. 120 B.

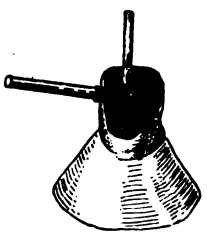


FIG. 121 A.

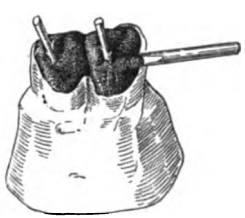


FIG. 121 B.

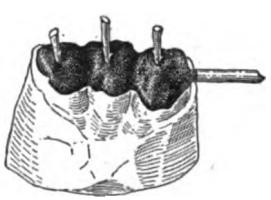


FIG. 121 C.

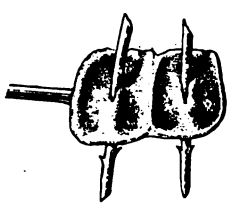


FIG. 122.

FIG. 118.—"A" and "B". Loose teeth from which the pulps have been removed, the canals filled, prepared for insertion of soft platinum wire and ready for the wax pattern or modeling compound impression.

FIG. 119.—"A" and "B". One or more teeth with soft platinum wire in position. The exposed end is barbed to hold either in the wax pattern or the impression material. The operator may prepare the wax model for casting directly upon the tooth, or upon the models.

FIG. 120.—"A" and "B". Modeling compound impressions of one or more teeth.

FIG. 121.—"A", "B" and "C". Models of one or more teeth made from impressions, waxed and ready for investing for casting. Notice the pin has been placed to direct the flow of gold *by* rather than *at* the model. Models made of equal parts of plaster and silica.

FIG. 122.—Double wax model made directly upon the teeth and ready for investment.

Digitized by Google

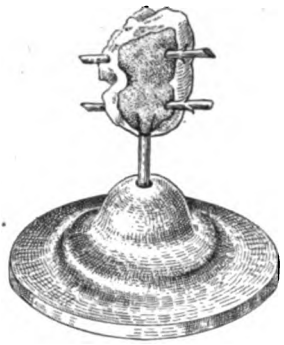


FIG. 123.

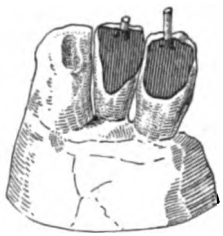


FIG. 124.

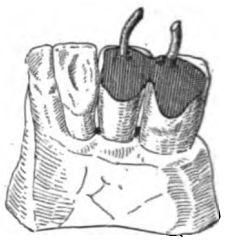


FIG. 125.

FIG. 123.—Method of investing.

FIG. 124.—Two castings in position and ready for the impression. Notice that the exposed end of soft platinum wire has not been cut off. Do not attempt to assemble more than two at one time, and take the impression of the parts ready to be united either with a small piece of modeling compound or just a little plaster. Fill the impression with ordinary soldering investment, separate and solder.

FIG. 125.—Two castings soldered. Continue in this manner, making single, double or larger castings, either from models or by carving the wax upon the natural tooth.

FIG. 126.

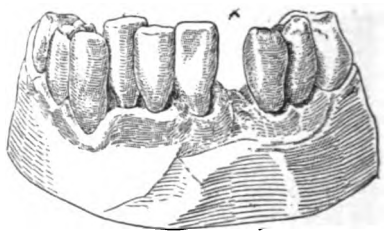


FIG. 127.

FIG. 126.—Finished case with pins well barbed. Do not cut barbs opposite each other; and remember not to cut off the exposed ends of soft platinum wire until the case is ready for the final polishing. No gold should be noticeable in the patient's mouth. The larger barbs will prevent a tooth that has been shortened from dropping below the others.

FIG. 127.—A case with loss of the lateral incisor.

FIG. 128.—Retaining appliances replacing lost incisor. Many cases present where one or more teeth have been lost and the others are very loose. This appliance will support the loose ones and replace the lost ones.

Digitized by Google

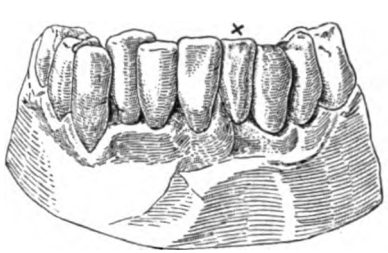


FIG. 129.

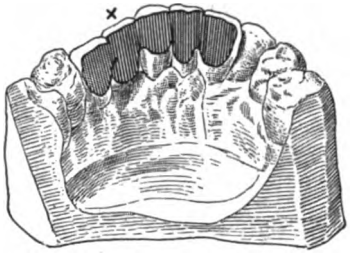


FIG. 130.

FIG. 129.—Labial view.
FIG. 130.—Lingual view.

This method can be used in any place in the mouth to support loose teeth and to carry bridged ones.

Where it is desirable to retain the pulps, use one or two short soft platinum pins in each tooth and prepare nearly parallel pits as far away from the pulp as possible. Before placing the appliance, barb the pins well and undercut the cavities. (*L. K Stewart.*)

CLASS III

In considering the therapeutics of this class of cases from the dental viewpoint it can be stated that the treatment is both *local* and *general*.

1. Local Treatment.—The local treatment involves practically the same surgery, drugs and remedies, and mechanical appliances as in the preceding classes, modified only to meet the conditions as found. To be effective and permanent the treatment by the dentist must be given conjointly with the general treatment by the physician in charge.

2. General Treatment.—Whenever the local condition in the mouth seems to be aggravated, if not caused, by some of the systemic diseases elsewhere mentioned, it is the plain duty of the dentist to refer the patient to his family physician for the general treatment. In fact, it is almost useless to undertake the local treatment unless measures are simultaneously instituted for the correction of the systemic disease; but when the physician and dentist work together in harmony, it is surprising what great relief can be given the patient by the proper local treatment, for the mouth in many instances is in a hideous condition. In all cases wherein some systemic complication is suspected, the dentist should not fail to have the urine examined for at least such abnormal constituents as albumin and sugar. With a little practice the dentist may readily make these tests himself. A brief, but practical outline for the examination of the urine will be found on p. 468.

In conclusion, I desire to state that it is a pleasure to work for pyorrheal patients. In many instances they have been informed that nothing could be done, and that they must soon lose their teeth; therefore, in most cases, they appreciate fully your every effort.

Digitized by Google

NEURALGIA

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Neuralgia may be defined as a severe paroxysmal pain in the area of distribution of a nerve, or along its course; and, according to Barrett, true neuralgic pain is principally confined to the afferent or sensory nerves, but it may be of a reflex character and hence have its origin in the efferent or motor nerves. It is not a disease in itself, but is rather a manifestation of a disease or perverted function; therefore, the conditions which may cause neuralgia are many and varied; and, for convenience in study, they may be classified as follows:

I. General Diseases.

1. *Those Which Lower Vital Resistance.*—This class includes anemia, or other diseases which interfere with such vital functions of the body as the circulation, respiration, secretion, digestion, assimilation and elimination.

2. *Those Which Produce Foreign or Abnormal Substances in the Blood.*—This includes syphilis, gout, rheumatism, diabetes, nephritis, malaria, chronic pyemias or any foci of infection, metallic poisoning, etc.

II. Local Diseases.

1. *Those Which Cause Reflex Peripheral Irritation.*—In this class are included *diseases of the teeth*, eyes, ears, stomach, uterus, and ovaries.

2. *Those Which Produce Pressure.*—This includes various tumors, and especially such abnormal growths as occur within bony canals through which nerve-trunks pass.

3. *Chronic Inflammation of the Nerve-sheath or of the Nerve Itself.*—This includes neuritis, or actual diseased conditions of the nerve.

III. Certain Intractable Cases.

This class includes a large number of cases of neuralgia for which no cause can be found.

The neuralgias which generally come under the observation of the dental practitioner are chiefly those manifested in the area of distribution or along the course of the fifth cranial nerve, and are accordingly called *facial*, *trifacial* or *trigeminal neuralgia*.

Digitized by Google

FACIAL NEURALGIA

There are many local conditions in and about the teeth which may cause facial neuralgia. Chief among them are:

1. Pulpitis.
2. Pulp nodules, partially calcified pulps, and secondary dentin.
3. Pericementitis.
4. Cementosis.
5. Deposits on the roots of teeth.
6. Infections about the roots of teeth.
7. Exposed dentin and cementum.
8. Impacted teeth.
9. Faulty occlusion.

THERAPEUTICS

The first essential in the treatment of neuralgia due to diseases of the teeth is to ascertain the cause and remove or correct it, if possible. As Harlan says: "The dentist should consider no time lost in an endeavor to find the cause of facial neuralgia." It is essential here, as in all treatment cases, to make a correct diagnosis. In most cases the symptoms are of the subjective variety and a correct diagnosis is often difficult to make. It is necessary oftentimes to take into consideration the diseases outlined in the classification on the preceding page; and it is also well to remember that women are especially prone to neuralgia during the period of the so-called "change of life." Fortunately, however, by means of radiography many of the conditions mentioned as being productive of facial neuralgia may be positively diagnosed. Illustrations of several of these conditions are found on the following page in Figs. 131, 132, 133, 134, 135 and 136. The late Dr. J. N. Crouse, of Chicago, reported an interesting case in his practice which occurred before radiography was known (see Figs. 137, 138, 139 and 140). The author desires to emphasize the importance of ascertaining, if at all possible, the cause of the neuralgia, for upon this depends largely the method of applying our therapeutics. In radiographing the teeth for possible causes of neuralgia, it is well always to radiograph the areas where teeth have been extracted. In this way many an obscure cause may be located in a root-end which had been left and which has a low grade of infection associated with it. With the cause known, the treatment is of two kinds—*medicinal* and *surgical*.

Digitized by Google

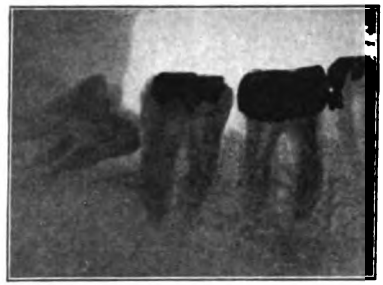


FIG. 131.—This radiograph shows an impacted lower third molar, frequently the cause of facial neuralgia.

FIG. 132.

FIG. 133.

FIG. 134.

FIG. 135.

FIGS. 132, 133, 134 and 135.—These all show cementosed roots, the cause of facial neuralgia.

FIG. 136.—This shows a lower third molar coalesced to and between the roots of the lower second molar.

Digitized by Google

I. Medicinal Treatment.—The medicinal treatment of facial neuralgia may be subdivided into *local* and *general*.

1. Local Treatment.—There are many drugs and remedies which act favorably upon the sensory nerve-endings, and are, therefore, efficacious in the local medicinal treatment of this disorder.

FIG. 137.

FIG. 138.

FIG. 139.

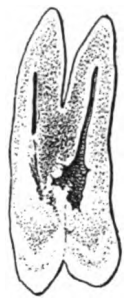


FIG. 140.

The above figures are illustrations of perfectly sound teeth which were extracted from one mouth. The symptoms were different from those of any other case with which I have had to deal. When the patient first presented, in the middle of the night, he was suffering such severe paroxysms of pain that during one of the attacks he dropped to the floor almost senseless. The attacks were of short duration, but several occurred before I could learn what the trouble was. Directly after one of these spells, by tapping the teeth on the side where the pain was most severe, I found slight sensitiveness; particularly was this so of the first upper bicuspid, although the pain radiated all over the head. I attempted to drill into this tooth and found the canal obliterated, so I extracted it (Fig. 137). Notice also the cementosed root. The history of the other teeth (Figs. 138, 139 and 140) is similar, except that I could locate the trouble with less difficulty after the first experience; then, too, the disease had not progressed quite so far before the teeth were extracted. I lost track of the patient and do not know whether he had further trouble or not. (*J. N. Crouse.*)

The author's dental liniment mentioned in connection with non-septic pericementitis (p. 362) will often give excellent results, or any of the following remedies may be prescribed:

℞—Mentholis, gr. xxx (2.0 Gm.)
Alcoholis,
Etheris, āā ʒvi (24.0 mils)
Chloroformi, q. s. ad. fʒiij (90.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Apply by vigorous rubbing or massage over the area of distribution of the affected nerve, or along its course.

℞—Camphoræ (gum), ʒij (8.0 Gm.)
Tincturæ aconiti, fʒj (30.0 mils)
Linimenti saponis, q. s. ad. fʒiij (90.0 mils)—M.
Sig.—Use as above.

Digitized by Google

W. H. Truman suggests the following:

℞—Camphoræ (gum),	ʒj (4.0 Gm.)
Etheris,	fʒij (8.0 mils)
Alcoholis,	fʒj (30.0 mils)
Chloroformi,	q s. ad. fʒiij (90.0 mils)—M.

Sig.—Use as above.

The various liniments here given have practically the same therapeutic effect—that of a sedative upon the peripheral sensory nerves.

In cases where the pain comes from pericementitis or from a developing abscess associated with the upper anterior teeth, it may be stopped in many instances like magic by spraying the posterior nares with alcohol and water, as suggested by Keefe (see p. 368).

Electricity is often of great value. Marshall suggests applying the positive pole of a galvanic battery to the painful spot, when a current of from one to three milliamperes is applied for from two to five minutes. Freezing the area with ethyl chlorid will frequently afford much relief, especially in cases of acute pericementitis.

2. General Treatment.—The general medicinal treatment involves the administration of drugs systemically. If certain drugs are indicated for the correction of some systemic derangement which is causing reflexly the facial neuralgia, as, for instance, iron compounds in anemia, quinin in malaria, mercury and iodids in syphilis, etc. they had better be prescribed by the family physician. Here again is a condition wherein the best results from the treatment are obtained only when both the family dentist and the physician work in harmony. Cases have been authentically reported where physicians had treated patients systemically for neuralgia for months without effect, when ultimately the case was cured instantly by the dentist in relieving some local condition about the teeth; while, on the other hand, dentists have been known to keep patients suffering for months in an endeavor to locate the cause about the mouth, when ultimately the correction of some systemic trouble cured the local neuralgia.

While patients should be referred to the family physician for the general treatment of constitutional diseases, it is not only the privilege but the plain duty of dentists to prescribe internal drugs for the relief of pain while the cause of the neuralgia is being searched for and removed. It is true that this involves a knowledge of drugs and their uses, but surely this is not too much to expect of the trained dental practitioner of to-day. The classes of drugs indicated for the control of pain are the hypnotics or general anodynes or analgesics. Several prescriptions are here given. The practitioner can select the one which best seems to suit the case at hand.

Digitized by Google

℞—Pulveris acetanilidi comp., gr. xx (1.3 Gm.)
Fiat chartulæ No. iv.

Sig.—Take one powder every hour until two or three are taken; if not relieved after two or three hours, take the remaining one or two.

In cases of neuralgia of rheumatic origin phenacetin may be combined with salophen and codein sulphate to control the pain. A prescription follows:

℞—Phenacetini,
Salophen, āā gr. xx (1.3 Gm.)
Codeinæ sulphatis, gr. j (0.06 Gm.)—M.
Fiat chartulæ No. iv.

Sig.—Take one powder every two hours.

NOTE.—This prescription will require a Federal blank, with the prescriber's registered number.

When the neuralgia is associated with nervous headache the following prescription may be given:

℞—Caffeinæ citratis, gr. xij (0.8 Gm.)
Phenacetini, ℥ss (2.0 Gm.)—M.
Fiat chartulæ No. vj.

Sig.—Take one powder every two hours until relieved.

Occasionally patients do not like to take a powder, preferring a liquid preparation. In these cases we can prescribe antipyrin in solution with an aqueous vehicle, for, unlike acetanilid and phenacetin, this drug is soluble in water. Sometimes it is advisable to combine the coal-tar analgesics with a bromid; a prescription for such a combination is here given:

℞—Antipyrinæ, ℥ss (2.0 Gm.)
Sodii bromidi, ℥j (4.0 Gm.)
Glycerini, f℥ss (15.0 mils)
Aquæ cinnamomi, q. s. ad. f℥ij (60.0 mils)—M.

Sig.—Take a dessertspoonful three times a day, and oftener if conditions necessitate.

Sometimes the coal-tar analgesics fail to produce the desired effect, in which case there is always one drug that can be relied upon to control the pain, and that is morphin. This drug is truly indicated for the control of pain from whatever source and may be given here in ⅛ gr. (0.008 Gm.) dose, but under no conditions should a prescription be written for the drug. Many patients are in the habit of keeping a copy of the prescription, and when the remedy

Digitized by Google

works well in a certain case they often get the prescription refilled for themselves or friends on the least provocation. In the case of morphin this might innocently lead to the "habit." Tablets containing the usual dose (1/8 gr.–0.008 Gm.) may be kept on hand, and, if necessary, two such tablets may be given by the stomach within one-half hour, and then the patient can take one tablet home—never more than one, if two have been given at the office—which can be taken in the course of an hour, if not relieved. It is necessary to keep a record when using drugs which come under the "Federal Antinarcotic Law." Fortunately, it is seldom necessary for the dentist to prescribe opium or its alkaloids; but when indicated, in their judgment, they have the legal right to prescribe any drug to relieve suffering humanity.

Of the newer synthetic products, pyramidon is one of the best. This may be prescribed in five-grain (0.3 Gm.) tablets every two hours until relief is obtained, or until four or five tablets have been taken. It should be remembered that no drug should be taken continuously for the relief of pain. These remedies are only intended to control the pain until the cause is corrected or removed.

When the patient is unable to sleep, chloral hydrate or butyl-chloral hydrate may be prescribed. The fifth nerve is supposed to be especially sensitive to the influence of butyl-chloral hydrate. A prescription follows:

℞—Butyl-chloralis hydratis, ʒj (4.0 Gm.)
Fiat capsulis No. xij.
Sig.—Take one capsule every three hours until four are taken.

In cases where a tonic is indicated, as in anemia, the syrup or glycerite of iron, quinin, and strychnin phosphate (N.F.) may be given. A prescription for the syrup follows:

℞—Syrupus ferri, quininæ et strychninæ phosphatis, fʒiij (90.0 mils)
Sig.—Take a teaspoonful in water before meals.

Where the neuralgia is of malarial origin, quinin is indicated. An excellent prescription follows:

[1]℞—Quininæ valerianatis, gr. xviij (1.2 Gm.)
Extracti hyoscyami, gr. iv (0.25 Gm.)
Extracti cinchonæ, gr. viij (0.5 Gm.)—M.
Fiat capsulæ No. xij.
Sig.—Take one capsule before meals and on retiring.

[1] Taken from the *Dental Cosmos*.

Digitized by Google

It will be noticed that only a few doses have been prescribed in any of the above prescriptions. This precaution has been taken because some of these patients suffer untold agony; in fact, they may be considered temporarily demented, and no matter how specific your verbal and written directions have been, they may ignore your directions entirely and take one dose after another on the general principle that "if a little is good, more is better," until they have taken such a quantity as may result in an overdose. Therefore, it is well for dentists, especially, to be careful in this respect.

II. Surgical Treatment.—The surgical treatment often involves major surgery, for a discussion of which see works on Oral Surgery.[1]

TIC DOULOUREUX

The discussion of facial neuralgia would indeed be incomplete without at least brief mention of *tic douloureux*, so named by Trousseau, a Frenchman. The condition frequently results from chronic irritation of the fifth cranial nerve. The pain is very acute, and occurs in distinct paroxysms, gradually increasing in severity, until it reaches a climax, when it quickly subsides. The attack may occur at any time and may be provoked by laughing, talking, the movement of a muscle, etc.; even a slight noise or light touch, as placing the hat on the head, may cause a paroxysm. The patient lives in constant dread of an attack.

There is no condition which elicits greater sympathy than this, for the experienced physician or surgeon realizes that little can be done either medicinally or surgically. Materia medica has been exhausted in search of a cure, and surgery affords only temporary relief. Patrick, Moyer, and others report favorably upon the use here of castor oil. The drug is first pushed almost to catharsis, then the dose is decreased, but the administration of the drug is still kept up. Ultimately the patient can take large quantities of castor oil without the cathartic effect.

Stekoulis, Schapiro, Bennett, Murphy, and others have injected osmic acid into the substance of the affected nerve and report encouraging results. The late Dr. J. B. Murphy, however, has directed attention to the great tendency of nerve tissue to regenerate; and states that many cases of tic douloureux will recur, even when the affected nerve has been severed by destroying an area with osmic acid or when blocked with such material as gutta-percha.

Deep injections of alcohol in the region of the orbit of the affected

[1] "Oral Surgery," by Dr. Truman W. Brophy, is highly recommended.

Digitized by Google

nerve have been recently suggested for the relief of facial neuralgia. Patrick, Moorehead, Potts, and others report favorably on the method. The needle generally employed is one adopted by Levy and Bandonin, which is graduated in centimeters up to five. The alcohol should be about 75 per cent., and should contain a very small amount of cocain hydrochlorid. The success of the operation will be indicated by a slight anesthesia over the parts supplied by the nerve. Upon the slightest return of the pain the operation should be repeated, after which relief for some months, and even two years or more, may be expected. The formula used by Patrick is here given:

℞—Cocainæ hydrochloridi,		gr. j (0.064 Gm.)
Chloroformi,		m. x (0.61 mil)
Alcoholis,		f℥iij (12.0 mils)
Aquæ distillatæ,	q. s. ad.	f℥ss (15.0 mils)—M.

Sig.—Use as directed above.

On the whole, it may be stated that the therapeutics of tic douloureux is discouraging to all concerned. Hirt sums up the conditions very properly when he says: "Numerous are the means at our command for combating tic douloureux, and quite as numerous are the patients who, after hundreds of unsuccessful trials, have given up in despair all medicines and all physicians."

The condition has not been thus briefly discussed here because of the likelihood of dentists being called upon to treat it, but rather because they are often called in consultation on the case to aid in making a correct diagnosis.

Digitized by Google

DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT OF DISEASES OF THE SOFT TISSUES OF THE MOUTH NOT DIRECTLY ASSOCIATED WITH THE TEETH

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

In this general group will be considered certain diseases of the soft tissues of the mouth other than those directly associated with the teeth. The etiology and pathology of these diseases will be considered somewhat more fully than has been done with the diseases of the hard tissues of the mouth and associated structures, for the reason that dentists, as a rule, are not so familiar with the etiology and pathology of the diseases under consideration here, and, therefore, find it more difficult to differentiate between some of these conditions and to make a correct diagnosis—upon which the successful therapeutics is based. Our profession has been criticised in the past, and, perhaps, in a measure justly so, because it is claimed that in our examinations of the mouth we have been looking only for cavities in the teeth and have not noted, at the same time, the condition of the oral mucous membrane and soft tissues. The tendency is to broaden our perspective, and the live dentist of to-day realizes the importance of a knowledge of the pathology of the soft tissues of the mouth as well as of the teeth themselves.

The mouth is a hot-bed for many kinds of bacteria, and is therefore a fruitful field for diseases of almost every description. Some of these diseases are purely local, having certain definite causes, while others are local manifestations of some general disorder. Even those diseases that are caused by local infections are influenced in most instances by the condition of the stomach or general metabolism of the individual. The mouth and the stomach are intimately connected and closely related; so much so in fact that pathologic conditions in the one often predispose to disease in the other. We can more readily understand the close relation that exists between diseases of these two organs when we remember that much of the septic material of the mouth ultimately finds its way to the stomach and intestines, and the toxins absorbed from the digestive tract are frequently excreted in the saliva. Michaels claimed the saliva to be pathognomonic of certain systemic diseases, the diagnosis being made by him solely by physical and chemic examinations of the saliva.

Digitized by Google

Some of the diseases of the mouth are characteristic and easily differentiated and diagnosed; while the correct interpretation of the clinical manifestations of others is exceedingly difficult and oftentimes baffles the most skillful diagnostician. In our larger cities we are fortunate in having the pathologic laboratories which must frequently be used in order to confirm our clinical diagnosis.

CANKER SORES

Canker sores are true ulcers and are among the more common pathologic conditions of the soft tissues of the mouth. They are supposed to have their origin primarily in the mouth, yet Pusey and others believe them to arise from trophic disturbances. The author has observed that women are peculiarly susceptible to this condition during the menstrual period. Some women have canker sores nearly every time they menstruate. They seem to be associated also with gastrointestinal distrubances. They always appear suddenly and are very persistent unless given suitable treatment.

Diagnosis.—Gilmer[1] states that "they most commonly occur at the duplicature of the mucosa of the cheek and the gums, though they are occasionally seen on the floor of the mouth and on the edges and under the surfaces of the tongue. They vary in size from that of a grain of wheat to that of a small-sized bean. Their depth varies, but they can never be considered superficial. Their margins are rather well-defined, but not so markedly as are chancrous ulcers of similar tissues, neither are they so irregular as lupous ulcers of the mouth. The mucosa for a quarter- to a half-inch from the ulcer is a deep red color. The base of the ulcer is overlaid with a grayish-white necrotic covering, not unlike that found in syphilitic ulcers in the mouth. When this coating is removed, a granulating surface is exposed, which, while extremely sensitive to the touch, bleeds but slightly, if at all. These ulcers are so distinctive in their appearance that they can hardly be mistaken for any other lesion."

Therapeutics.—The treatment of canker sores is purely local, and the sooner it is instituted the less persistent the ulcer will be. The necrotic tissue may be carefully removed by scraping, or cleansed with hydrogen dioxid, after which the raw surface should be dried and cauterized. They generally yield nicely to one application of silver nitrate. For this purpose a 10 per cent. solution may be used; a 20 per cent. solution of argyrol may also be employed. The ulcer being acutely sensitive, it is sometimes better to use 95 per cent.

[1] *Dental Review*, Vol. XXIII, p. 496.

Digitized by Google

phenol as the cauterizing agent. The analgesic effect thus produced is often of value. The mouth should be kept clean, when the ulcers usually heal without further treatment.

HERPES LABIALIS

Herpes labialis, also called cold sores or fever sores, have a similar origin to canker sores. They are of a herpetic nature, and differ in appearance from the latter principally on account of the location and tissues involved. Of these Gilmer says: "Herpes of the lips (herpes labialis) and occasionally of the gums (herpes gingivalis) sometimes follow dental operations and cause uneasiness on the part of patient, who often attributes this condition to infection from unclean armamentarium used by the dentist, when, in truth, the patient is of a herpetic diathesis, and under such circumstances a slight irritation only, in such locations, being sufficient to excite the condition."

Diagnosis.—The diagnosis of cold sores is a simple matter. They occur frequently when the patient is suffering from colds or during convalescence from fevers, hence the name. The tissues immediately around the area involved are swollen and tender; the membrane is dry and has a tendency to crack and bleeds readily.

Therapeutics.—The treatment of cold sores consists in cleaning the part with such agents as hydrogen dioxid or alcohol, then drying and making an application of oil of cloves or spirit of camphor. Either of these latter agents is just sufficiently irritating to produce stimulation of the cells and promote healing. If the cold sore is large and liable to crack and bleed on moving the lips, it can be kept soft and pliable by frequently applying euroform paste, or may be immobilized by applying collodion. In the latter instance the part should be dusted with boric acid before coating with collodion.

SYPHILIS

Syphilis is a chronic infectious disease now known to be produced by a specific microorganism, the *spirocheta pallida*—a germ discovered March 3, 1905, by Schaudinn and Hoffmann. This disease is much more common than is generally supposed, and it is essential that every practising dentist be familiar with its characteristic symptoms. Skill in the diagnosis of syphilitic manifestations is of the utmost importance, not only for the protection of the dentist himself, but for the protection of his patients as well. Whenever the skin on the hand or finger of the dentist is broken, or the mucous membrane of the patient's lip, gum, or cheek is punctured by an instrument, the

Digitized by Google

part should be immediately cauterized. It matters not whether the dentist ever expects to treat a case of syphilis, or not, the menace of the presence of this disease can only be avoided by the careful and intelligent reading of the clinical symptoms.

Acquired extragenital syphilis is primarily manifested in and about the soft tissues of the mouth in what is known as the initial lesion or *hard chancre*, which, as a rule, develops in from three to six weeks after infection. The chancre may occur in various locations —on the lips, tips of the tongue, and the pharynx—and is characteristic of what is known as *primary symptoms*.

Primary Syphilis.—The infection here is produced by direct contact of the spirocheta pallida with an abraded surface. According to Logan,[1] the principal means of conveying the infection extragenitally is through the act of kissing, drinking from a broken utensil, the use of a pipe or handkerchief that has been contaminated with the germ, or from physicians' or dentists' instruments or fingers that have had the infected secretions from the mouth of a previous patient dried upon them.

Diagnosis.—In the locations found in the mouth, chancre is usually single, though it may be multiple (Fig. 141). It may appear first as a papule, the superficial cells of which finally ulcerate, with necrosis of the central area quickly following, when a copious and *highly infectious* discharge comes from the crater-like opening that is forming on the tissues involved. The ulceration occurs in from four to ten days after full development of the chancre, until which time the patient, as a rule, experiences very little pain or discomfort.

Therapeutics.—The treatment of the primary symptoms, until recent years, was considered unimportant. In fact, unless a positive diagnosis could be made, and it is still often difficult to be certain of the clinical diagnosis at this stage of the disease, it was suggested that the treatment be deferred until the diagnosis was established by the manifestations of the secondary symptoms. This has been changed. Ehrlich, the discoverer of salvarsan—or "606," as it is commonly called—the new specific for syphilis, says, "too much weight cannot be laid upon the importance of diagnosing a syphilitic sore as soon as possible. We should certainly not wait for secondaries to develop or until the Wassermann reaction has become positive. In no period of syphilis is salvarsan more strongly indicated than when the chancre is the sole symptom." Syphilis is now known to be a germ disease, and the only positive means of confirming the diagnosis of the clinical symptoms in this stage is the microscope by

[1] *Dental Review*, Vol. XXII, p. 800.

Digitized by Google

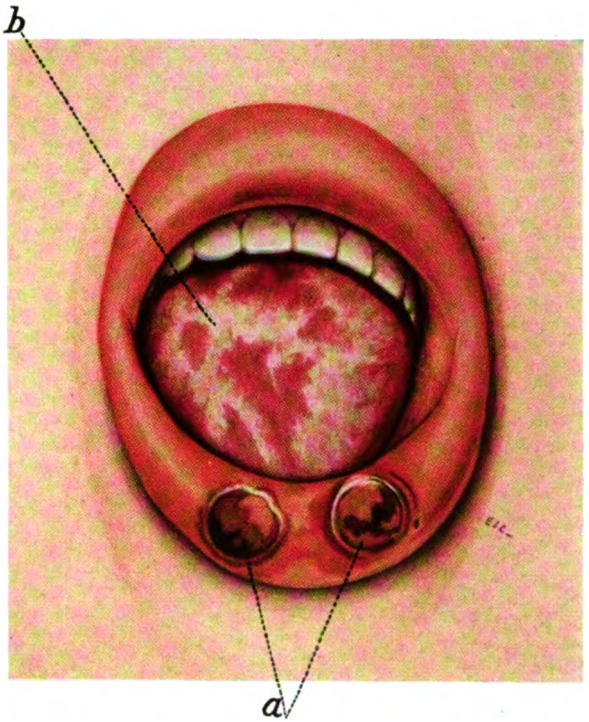


FIG. 141.—Chancres of the lower lip, and mucous patches of the tongue. The disease was contracted by kissing. *a*, Chancres; *b*, mucous patches. (*Brophy, after Zinsser-Stein.*)

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

which the *spirocheta pallida* may be discovered. These appear as fine, closely coiled spirals, 6 to 15 microns long, and feebly motile. They are most abundant in the margins of the lesions, and are practically constant in chancre and mucous patches. Old chancres and those treated by local antiseptics may easily fail to show the organisms (White and Martin).

The technic of injecting salvarsan or neosalvarsan will not be described here, for the author believes it to be the duty of the dentist, as soon as he observes the suspicious sore in the mouth, to consult with the family physician, who should inaugurate and follow up the specific treatment. Oral hygiene, of course, should not be neglected.

For a great many years mercury has been the only specific for syphilis, except in the tertiary stage when potassium iodid is indicated. But, unfortunately, mercury in its curative dose is extremely poisonous, so that small doses must be used for a long period of time. Because of this disadvantage many attempts have been made to discover a mercurial compound which would fulfil the ideal therapeutic requirement; viz., to kill the spirochetæ by means of a single injection. The nearest approach to this was the discovery of atoxylate of mercury by Uhlenhuth and Manteufel. By using this drug they were able with four injections to kill all of the spirochetæ which were produced by local inoculation of the testicles in rabbits. Not only were four injections insufficient to have a like effect in man, but the doses required were much larger comparatively, and, as a result, toxic symptoms developed and recurrences were frequent; so atoxylate of mercury was never extensively employed. The discovery of this product, however, acted as a stimulus and spurred chemists on to further investigation.

It may seem strange to those who are more or less familiar with the drugs that have been employed in the treatment of syphilis that the latest specific for the disease is a compound of arsenic and not of mercury. The formula for '606' is $C_{12}H_{12}N_2O_2As_2$. Ehrlich claims that his discovery was due largely to the well-known fact that the compounds of arsenic exerted a far greater influence in sleeping sickness than did the compound of mercury, and it was for this disease that atoxyl was discovered. When it was shown, in 1905, that syphilis was caused by the spirocheta pallida, a protozoön which doubtless belonged to the same group as the germ which produces sleeping sickness (trypanosomes); and since arsenic had often played an important rôle in the treatment of syphilis, the later synthetic compounds discovered, of which atoxyl was the stimulus, came to be used for syphilis as well as for sleeping sickness.

Digitized by Google

Secondary Syphilis.—The manifestations of what is known as the *secondary symptoms* do not appear until from four to six weeks after the development of the hard chancre.

Diagnosis.—If no treatment has been instituted, eruptions on the skin usually mark the beginning of this stage, and, according to L. Blake Baldwin, eruptions are frequently found on the oral mucous membrane quite similar to those upon the skin. These eruptions are accompanied by fever, sometimes preceded by it. Simultaneously with the eruptions and fever characteristic *mucous patches* occur, and may be located on any part of the mucosa of the mouth, regardless of whether the disease originated primarily or secondarily in the mouth. (Fig. 141, *b*, and Fig. 142, *a*, *b*, and *c*.) The presence of mucous patches is a positive sign of syphilis. They differ from canker sores in that they have more clearly defined margins and are not so painful to the touch, and the immediate area is not of such a deep red color (Gilmer). The mucous patches are *exceedingly infectious*, and due caution should be observed not to carry the infection from one patient to another.

Therapeutics.—Inasmuch as secondary syphilis is manifested in the mouth and leaves its indelible effects upon the gums, jaws, and adjacent structures, mercury is the one drug indicated in its treatment, for this drug has a selective influence upon these structures. In fact, mercury is a *specific* for the secondary symptoms, though its action, as yet, rests purely upon an empirical basis. It is not even known whether the action of the drug here is due to specific toxicity for the spirocheta pallida or whether it is simply due to its general effects upon metabolism. The former, according to Sollmann, seems to be the case. Mercury is not only palliative, but curative in this stage—congenital as well as acquired—whilst its administration is worse than useless in the first and third stages.

The systemic treatment, of course, should be relegated to the family physician. Long[1] very properly emphasizes a word of caution here. He says: "It may fall to the dentist to discover a case of syphilis, by mouth symptoms, where it had not been suspected, but he must be exceedingly cautious about discussing this finding with the patient. He is dealing with a matter for which he has not been consulted, and in any suspicious acts or words of his lie the possibilities of much unpleasantness. If the patient be an innocent wife, a statement of his discovery might produce domestic discord. While she would have a most serious grievance, entitling her to our pity, a revelation could only add to her unhappiness. A suggestion

[1] Dental Materia Medica and Therapeutics, p. 206.

Digitized by Google

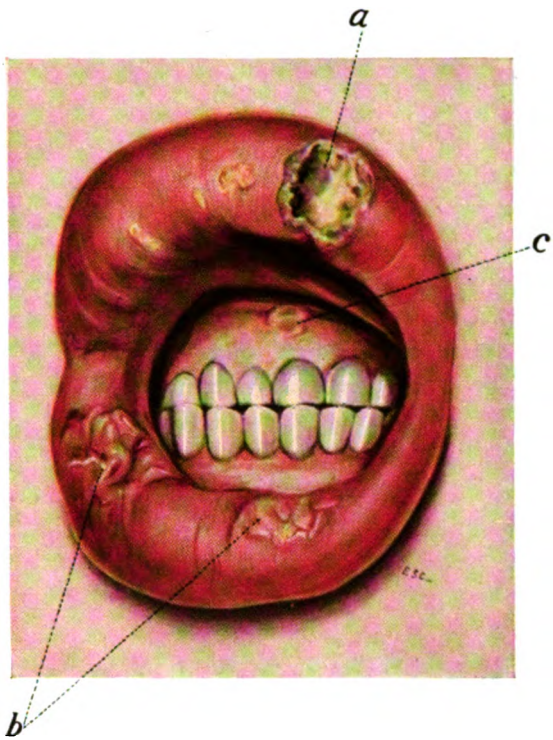


FIG. 142.—Syphilitic mucous patches of the lips. The lips are swollen. *a*, Ulcerated mucous patch. On the base of the ulcer is a yellow coating with dried secretions about its borders. *b*, Ulcerations which are not as far advanced as *a*. *c*, Mucous patch. (*Brophy, after Zinnser-Stein.*)

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

to her to see her family physician for certain general conditions that you find evidence of, would be the proper course; and even this advice must be given tactfully, without arousing suspicion as to the probabilities in the case, for, after all, a mistaken diagnosis is possible."

The preparations of mercury most frequently prescribed in syphilis are mercury with chalk, and compounds like bichlorid, biniodid, and protiodid. The ointments are used by inunction. None of these preparations should be pushed to the extent of producing ptyalism or salivation.

An accurate and positive diagnosis of syphilis should always be made before instituting the mercurial treatment, otherwise disastrous results are almost certain to follow. In a recent case of a little girl, seven years old, of doubtful syphilitic history, coming under the observation of the author, a sequestrum was removed which contained the erupted first permanent molar and the crowns of the non-erupted first and second bicuspids. The case terminated fatally.

Syphilographers have learned from sad experience that mercury can be pushed much farther without producing ptyalism, if the mouth has first received a thorough prophylactic treatment. This includes the removal of all local irritants, such as hard and soft deposits, overhanging fillings, ill-fitting crowns, and bridges. In fact, it is only when the mouth and teeth are clean that the symptoms of ptyalism are valuable as an index that the system is taking all the mercury it can absorb without producing marked toxic effects. If the teeth are not clean and the mucous membrane healthy, it is best to wait until the mouth receives proper attention before attempting to find the minimum toxic dose of the drug. On this point, White and Martin[1] state that "the teeth should be put in perfect order by a competent dentist, and should be kept scrupulously clean throughout the entire course of treatment by cleansing washes, astringent and mildly antiseptic powders (or pastes), and careful removal of particles of food by means of tooth-picks and dental floss immediately after eating. Upon the health of the mucous membrane of the mouth depends, to a great extent, the ability of the patient to take an efficient quantity of mercury without causing salivation."

Dentists in the past have hesitated to work for patients who were known to have the specific disease on account of the danger of self-infection, and the subsequent necessity of discarding all

[1] Genito-Urinary and Venereal Diseases, Ninth Edition, p. 1008.

Digitized by Google

instruments used. Logan[1] says: "These syphilitic individuals can be cared for with impunity if the operator protects his hands with rubber gloves and then scrubs all the instruments employed and boils them for fifteen minutes. If this plan is pursued, there is no need of such absurd action as is often recommended—that all such instruments should never be used again, but thrown away."

Tertiary Syphilis.—This condition may be prevented if proper treatment has been previously inaugurated. In cases not so treated the *tertiary symptoms* usually occur in from one-half to two years after infection.

Diagnosis.—*Gummata* mark the third stage of syphilis and first appear as hard bodies or nodes occurring mostly under the skin, although they may form under the mucosa of the mouth. They gradually increase in size, and become more superficial, with a tendency to break down and ulcerate. (Fig. 143, *a*.) When they occur in the region of the hard palate, the underlying bone frequently becomes involved and extensive necrosis of the palate and nasal bones follows. (Fig. 144.) Gilmer[2] states that subperiosteal gummata are especially destructive to bone, and reports having seen cases in which the soft palate also was completely destroyed from ulceration of gummata in that locality. Authorities differ in regard to whether the lesions of tertiary syphilis are infectious. They are probably but slightly so, if at all; however, it is well here also to guard against spreading possible infection.

Therapeutics.—The one drug indicated in the treatment of tertiary syphilis is the great alterative, potassium iodid. In this stage of the disease the efficacy of potassium iodid is equal to that of mercury in the secondary stage, and it may be considered a *specific*. The systemic treatment should be relegated again to the family physician. The initial dose of the drug should be small, and the amount gradually increased until improvement follows or symptoms of iodism appear. For permanent results it is necessary to continue the antisyphilitic treatment for from six months to a year or more.

The question of whether syphilis can be cured or not has been a debatable one in the past, but its cure is no longer questioned by experienced syphilographers. Yet it may be safely stated that few cases are ever permanently cured, for only a small percentage of patients will continue the treatment sufficiently long, after they feel perfectly well, to effect a permanent cure.

It should be remembered that syphilis stamps its indelible effects

[1] *Dental Review*, Vol. XXII, p. 813.
[2] *Dental Review*, Vol. XXIII, p. 498.

Digitized by Google

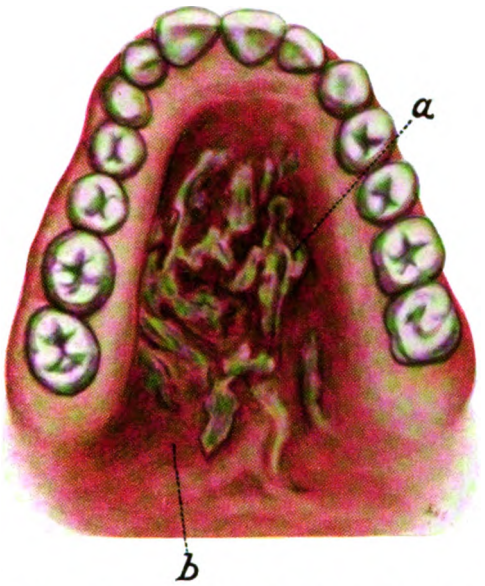


FIG. 143.—Ulcerated gummata of the hard palate mucous membrane. *a*, Grayish-yellow deposits upon the ulcerated surface; *b*, highly congested mucous membrane. (*Brophy, after Zinsser-Stein.*)

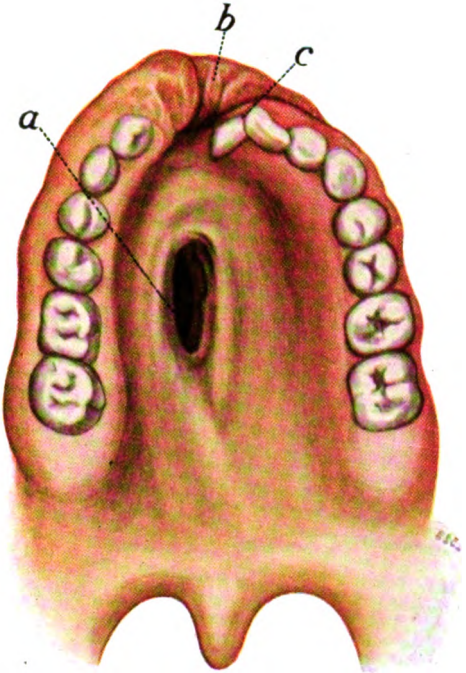


FIG. 144.—Perforated hard palate. Perforation of the hard palate due to gummata with general periosteitis of the alveolar processes. *a*, Hole left in the palate by the destruction of the bone and soft parts; *b*, destruction of the alveolar processes and perforation into the nose; *c*, change of position of the teeth. (*Brophy, after Zinsser-Stein.*)

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

upon the individual thus afflicted in almost every case, and that any subsequent infection, like that in alveolar abscess or pyorrhea alveolaris, is likely to extensively involve the osseous structures, and yield to the ordinary treatment with difficulty. The author has previously referred to a case of extensive necrosis following slight trauma after the removal of a pulp by pressure anesthesia, where every due precaution was taken to maintain asepsis in performing the operation (see Fig. 61, p. 378).

In conclusion I desire here again to emphasize the fact that every dentist should so school himself in this dreadful disease that he may be able to at once recognize its various manifestations. When in doubt about a lesion in the mouth, it is always better for dentists to assume that it is specific in character, and take every due precaution against infecting themselves or their patients.

MERCURIAL STOMATITIS

Mercurial stomatitis is a condition of the mouth frequently following the administration of mercury and its compounds for the treatment of syphilis and other conditions. The drug is used for its alterative and tonic effects. As has been mentioned, it is a specific for secondary syphilis, and every dentist should be thoroughly familiar with the effects of this metal when taken internally.

Diagnosis.—When small doses of an unirritating preparation of the drug are given continuously for a certain length of time, the first effects are observed in the mouth, for it has a selective influence upon the gums, jaws, and adjacent structures. There is produced an increased flow of saliva, fetor of the breath, redness of the gum margins, and pericementitis, causing soreness of the teeth when the jaws are forcibly brought together. If the drug is not withdrawn upon the appearance of these symptoms, the condition gradually grows worse; salivation becomes excessive (continual drooling), the gums become swollen and spongy, the teeth loosen from their sockets and may be easily extracted with the fingers, the tongue and parotid glands enlarge—the former sometimes to the extent that it protrudes from the mouth; often there are deep sloughing ulcers made by indentations of the teeth upon its edges, also upon the mucous membrane of the cheeks; and, finally, the soft tissues around the teeth slough away, necrosis of the bones sets in, and large sequestra form. This group of symptoms is known as *ptyalism* or *salivation*. In these cases the general health is naturally affected, the patient becomes pale and loses flesh. Chronic mercurial poisoning occurs

Digitized by Google

frequently in workmen who handle the metal or who are exposed to its fumes, such as makers of thermometers, mirrors, scientific instruments, etc. The condition, however, is too frequently produced by the prolonged use of mercury as a medicine.

Therapeutics.—The treatment of mercurial stomatitis has been fully considered under Mercury (see p. 194).

TUBERCULOSIS

Tuberculosis is known as the "great white plague." The disease is caused by the *tubercle bacillus*. Brophy[1] says: "The tubercle bacillus may enter the body by several avenues. The inhalation method is the one most commonly met with. The sputum of consumptives contains vast numbers of the bacilli and the atmosphere immediately surrounding these patients, as well as the dust, is very infective. Those who contract tuberculosis by this method usually develop the pulmonary form of the disease or the bronchial glands become the seat of infection and other organs are involved from these. The tonsils also may be the seat of the primary lesion, as the crypts offer an excellent place for the growth of the tubercle bacillus. The glands of the neck may become secondarily involved, following infection of the tonsil." In this connection it may be remembered that Cook, Moorehead, and others have reported cases where the *bacilli* have entered the system through the canals of pulpless teeth and pyorrheal pockets, involving the glands in the neighboring region.

The disease is occasionally seen on the mucosa of the mouth. Gilmer[2] reports having seen three cases, one of the tongue, one of the sublingual salivary gland, and one an extensive involvement, including a part of the lips, the mucosa of the cheek, the soft palate, the tongue, and a portion of the pharynx.

Diagnosis.—The microscope will aid in definitely determining tubercular lesions in the mouth, as well as in other parts of the body (Fig. 145). The tubercle is the characteristic lesion produced by the bacillus. It will be noticed that the ulcers arise from the confluence of numerous miliary tubercles. The ulcers are usually covered with yellowish-white pus.

Therapeutics.—The dentist may first discover the lesion and aid in making the diagnosis; but treatment had better be given by the general medical practitioner or specialist, for the cases are rare

[1] Oral Surgery, p. 67.

[2] *Dental Review*, Vol. XXIII, p. 499

Digitized by Google

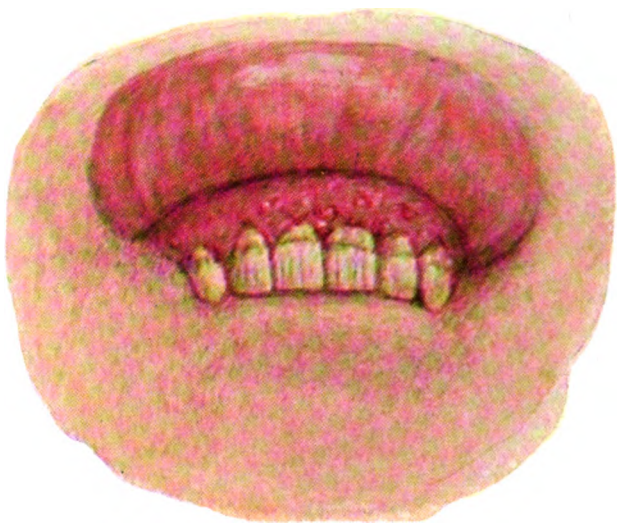


FIG. 145.—Tuberculosis of the upper lip and gum, showing the tubercles. (*Brophy, after Royal College of Surgeons.*)

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

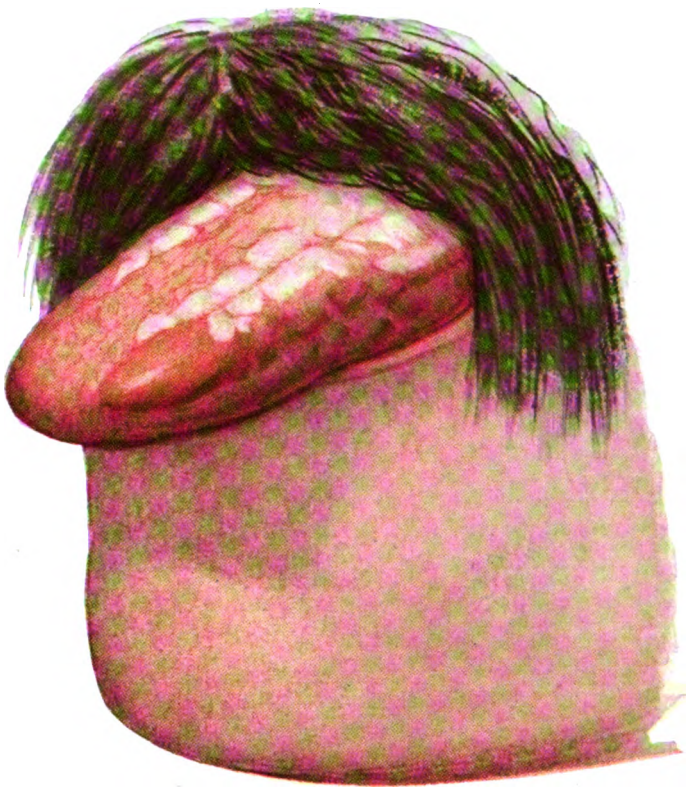


FIG. 146.—Leucoplakia of the tongue of many years' duration, in a male of 50 years, with one slightly raised firm spot, where a small innocent wart had been cut out a year before This spot was not excoriated or raw and could only be distinguished from the surrounding white patches by its slight induration, which was quite superficial. Examined by the Imperial Cancer Research. and found to be a small but typical squamous-celled carcinoma. (*Brophy, after Butlin.*)

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

and no definite local treatment has thus far been permanently established. It may be stated, however, that various forms of light have been used in many cases with favorable results in tubercular and similar affections. Where there is bone involvement Beck reports surprising results from the injection of bismuth paste.

LEUCOPLAKIA BUCCALIS

Leucoplakia is a disease of the mouth and tongue, the etiology of which is as yet unknown. A large percentage of the cases of leucoplakia buccalis give a previous history of syphilis. It is, therefore, suspected that the latter disease has a causative relation to leucoplakia, though no definite evidence in this respect has been produced. Gilmer,[1] who has seen a large number of cases, is of this opinion. He says: "Many cases of leucoplakia buccalis have come under my observation, and, with few exceptions, I was able to elicit a history of syphilis."

Diagnosis.—The disease manifests itself upon the buccal mucosa, portions of the gums and the dorsum and edges of the tongue, and other places. There appear, sharply outlined, whitish or silver-colored points, streaks, bands, or patches of irregular shape, either flattened or slightly elevated above the level of the general mucosa. Ordinarily they simply present a roughened surface without much discomfort. They occur almost exclusively in the mouths of men who are excessive smokers. The condition, however, should not be mistaken for that which is frequently seen in the mouth of excessive smokers, especially pipe smokers, where there is a whitening of extensive areas of the tongue or hard palate or both. Gilmer[2] says: "The epithelium of the smoker's tongue is of a brownish-white, while in leucoplakia the patches are of a clear white color." Leucoplakia patches are very characteristic, no other condition of the mouth presents the same clinical picture. The affection is painless, and may be overlooked by the patient unless it becomes complicated with cancer (See Fig. 146).

Therapeutics.—It has been observed that carcinoma frequently has its beginning in the site of an old leucoplakia patch. Since this is true, an early diagnosis should be made, and the proper treatment instituted by the family physician. In cases of known syphilis the antisyphilitic treatment would be indicated. The general tendency of dentists in conditions of this kind is to use cauterants, such as

[1] *Dental Review*, Vol. XXIII, p. 500.
[2] *Ibid.*

Digitized by Google

silver nitrate. In the treatment of leucoplakia this should be avoided, as it only tends to aggravate the disease.

ACTINOMYCOSIS

Actinomycosis is a common disease among the lower animals, especially cattle, and is known as *lumpy-jaw*, the disease affecting the lower jaw and cervical glands. Cases in the human being have been reported by Brophy, Bevan, Zederbaum, and others. It is produced by the ray-fungus, which is normally found in grain, and is supposed to find its way into the mouth from the habit of chewing straws. The germs gain admittance into the tissues from the mouth through decayed teeth.

Diagnosis.—The microscope affords a positive means of diagnosis. Blair states[1] that "the disease first manifests itself in the form of a small nodule, which for a time may give no trouble, but later softens and forms sinuses from which is discharged a thin fluid which usually contains the fungus."

Therapeutics.—The treatment of the disease had better be carried on by the medical specialist, as it is so rare in the human being that dentists but seldom see the condition. Based on observations made at the Wisconsin Experimental Agricultural Station, Bevan introduced the copper sulphate treatment in man, and both he and Brophy report good results by using the drug to the limit of toleration. They begin with about ¼ gr. given three times a day, gradually increasing the dose to 1 gr. In addition to the internal administration of copper sulphate, irrigations of a 1 per cent. solution are also employed.

ACUTE ULCEROUS GINGIVITIS

Acute ulcerous gingivitis is a comparatively rare disease. The author, however, has seen a number of cases in the mouths of children coming to the College Infirmary for treatment from the so-called "slum districts" of Chicago. This may have been a coincidence, but I have never observed the typical disease in well-kept mouths. It may be regarded as a filth disease.

Diagnosis.—Gilmer[2] well describes the disease as follows: "It attacks simultaneously the gum margins on their buccal or labial aspect about two, three, or possibly four teeth, at the same time.

[1] Surgery and Diseases of the Mouth and Jaws, p. 304.
[2] *Dental Review*, Vol. XXIII, p. 501.

Digitized by Google

The ulcers come suddenly, quickly destroying the gingivæ down to the alveolar process, but seemingly not invading it, exposing the roots of the teeth to this extent. The margins of the ulcers are everted, crater-like, somewhat like chancrous ulcers. The base of the ulcers is overlaid with a grayish-white covering. When this covering is removed, the granulating surface bleeds freely. The lymphatics related to the area become enlarged, and, unlike chancrous lymphatic enlargements, are tender. It is also unlike chancre in that the ulcers are nearly always multiple and, exceedingly painful to touch. Salivation is much increased, with frequent drooling, the breath is fetid, and, owing to the absorption of toxic elements, there is a slight rise in temperature. The contiguous lingual gingivæ become reddened, but do not participate in the ulceration. The condition has been mistaken for syphilis."

Therapeutics.—The ordinary local remedies used for somewhat similar conditions are of little value here unless systemic treatment is simultaneously instituted. Calomel is the drug to give internally, a prescription for which follows:

℞—Hydrargyri chloridi mitis, gr. ij (0.13 Gm.)
Sodii bicarbonatis, ʒj (4.0 Gm.)—M.
Fiat chartulæ No. xx.

Sig.—Take one powder every two or three hours.

The local treatment consists in cleansing the ulcer with such agents as hydrogen dioxid, drying the part and applying a 10 per cent. solution of silver nitrate or a 20 per cent. solution of argyrol. If the ulceration is checked, complete restoration of the gum tissue by granulation follows. Mouth hygiene should, of course, be instituted and strenuously carried out.

A form of ulcerous gingivitis, somewhat resembling the above condition, frequently occurs in the mouths of young people, especially young men who are addicted to the habit of smoking. The gum in the interproximal space first is reddened, this being quickly followed by necrosis which extends around the teeth. The gingiva of all the teeth in the mouth may be simultaneously involved. The disease is exceedingly painful, is sometimes accompanied by fever and loss of flesh, and, by the dentist who called almost every disease of the mouth pyorrhea, patients, thus afflicted, have frequently been informed that they were suffering from the latter disease. Generally in these cases the teeth have been neglected, so far as prophylaxis is concerned, and an irritant of some character will be

Digitized by Google

found about the necks of the teeth or under the free margin of the gums. This is about the only symptom that the disease has in common with pyorrhea. In these and all such similar cases the highly astringent pyorrheal remedies should not be employed. What is needed here is a thorough prophylactic treatment, the local application of mildly stimulating remedies, such as a 25 per cent. solution of argyrol, and the daily use of an antiseptic mouth wash. If necessary, a cathartic should be prescribed. With the above treatment these disagreeable cases yield nicely.

LUDWIG'S ANGINA

Ludwig's angina is an acute infection of the floor of the mouth. Starting from a surface focus, usually within the mouth and insignificant, a severe infection passes to the submaxillary lymph nodes, where it takes on virulent activity, leading to an extensive cellulitis and producing a very hard, tumor-like mass between the borders of the mandible. The edema frequently extends to the larynx, alarming the patient because of the difficulty in breathing.

Diagnosis.—The manifestation of the above described symptoms would lead to but one conclusion—Ludwig's angina. According to Hofheinz, the symptoms as outlined by Ludwig have never been questioned, though their cause has been much disputed. As a rule, there is very little constitutional disturbance. Ptyalism may be produced. The tongue is not sensitive, but its movement causes pain.

Therapeutics.—The treatment of this disease had better be undertaken by an oral specialist. Drainage must be established. The mouth should be irrigated every two hours while the patient is awake with a warm antiseptic solution, and Brophy advises painting the throat with a 10 per cent. solution of iodin in glycerin. This author also warns us against the extraction of a tooth which may have started the infection until, at least, the acute stage has passed.

GONORRHEA

According to Burchard-Inglis, undoubted cases of oral infection by the specific germ of gonorrhea (*gonococcus*) have occurred. The author has seen at least one such case. The mucosa of the cheeks, gums, tongue, and even of the hard and soft palates may undergo intense suppuration. Mouth hygiene and the systemic treatment of the constitutional trouble cure the case.

Digitized by Google

There are a variety of tumors and other diseases which manifest themselves in the mouth, involving both the soft and osseous structures, for the diagnosis and treatment of which see works on Oral Pathology and Surgery. The more common of the diseases of the soft tissues of the mouth and their treatment have been thus briefly considered here with the hope of stimulating a greater interest in this phase of mouth diseases.

Digitized by Google

EXAMINATION OF URINE[1]

1. THE SAMPLE.—That passed on arising in the morning.

2. QUANTITY.—In 24 hours = 1,000 to 1,500 mils.

3. CONDITION.—Clear or sedimentary.[2] Filter, if sedimentary, and examine color.

4. COLOR.—Pale yellow, yellow (normal). Reddish yellow (bile coloring). Blood red (excess of urates). Reddish brown (breaking up of blood-corpuscles).

5. CONSISTENCY.—Thin (normal). Thick, syrupy or stringy (indication of sugar, albumen, pus or fibrin).

6. REACTION.—By litmus paper. Mild red (slightly acid, normal). Neutral or alkaline (inflammatory condition of urinary tract).

7. SPECIFIC GRAVITY.—With urinometer. 1,015 to 1,025 (normal), 1,015 or below (excess of water) 1,030 or above (excess of solids —urea or sugar).

8. ALBUMEN.—(1) Heat Test.—Pour urine in a test-tube to 2 in. in depth. Boil gently, heating from top downward. If a precipitate is formed it is either (a) earthy phosphates (soluble in acetic acid). (b) albumen (insoluble in acetic acid). (2) Nitric Acid Test.—To 2 in. of urine in a test-tube, held slantingly, add five to ten drops of concentrated nitric acid c. p., permitting it to run carefully down the side of the slanting test-tube. A white coagulum at the zone of contact of the two liquids indicates albumen. To eliminate error, both the heat and nitric acid tests should be made.

9. TOTAL SOLIDS.—Multiply the last two figures of the sp. gr., if it is below 1,018, by 2, the coefficient of Trapp. If above 1,018 by 2.33, the coefficient of Haser. This gives the total solids in 1,000 mils. As the quantity of urine passed in twenty-four hours is about 1,500 mils, the above result should be multiplied by 1½, which will give the total solids for twenty-four hours.

[1] This outline was condensed by Professor J. N. Roe, whom the author assisted for several years in the Chemic Laboratories of the Chicago College of Dental Surgery.

[2] Set sample of urine aside in a conical glass and examine the sediment with a microscope.

Digitized by Google

TOTAL SOLIDS IN NORMAL URINE

EXCRETED IN TWENTY-FOUR HOURS

Constituents	Grams
Total Solids	60.0 to 70.0
Urea	*30.0* to *40.0*
Uric Acid	0.4 to 0.8
Creatinin	0.5 to 1.0
Hippuric Acid	0.3 to 1.0
Chlorids	*10.0* to *15.0*
Earthy Phosphates	0.9 to 1.3
Alkaline Phosphates	2.5 to 3.5
Sulphates	1.5 to 2.5

10. UREA.—If the urine is above sp. gr. 1,025, test as follows:

Pour exactly 2 in. in depth of urine into a test-tube, and concentrate just one-half by boiling gently in the test-tube, or by pouring into a porcelain dish and concentrating over water bath, sand bath or wire gauze.

Pour the concentrated urine back into the same test-tube and ascertain if it is concentrated to exactly one-half the original volume. Introduce one-third volume of concentrated nitric acid c. p. (free from red or yellow fumes). Place the test-tube and contents in a vessel of cold water.

A precipitate of Urea Nitrate is formed.
- *a.* ***Immediately*** (very copious, filling the entire volume of liquid). *Excess.*
- *b.* ***After twenty minutes*** (not heavy). *Normal.*
- *c.* ***Not after several hours.*** *Decrease.*

11. URATES.—Pour 2 in. of urine into a test tube, add fifteen to twenty drops of concentrated hydrochloric acid. Allow the mixture to stand twelve to twenty-four hours. The urates will be decomposed, and red crystals of uric acid (corresponding to brick-dust deposit) will collect in the bottom and on the sides of the tube.

The crystals on the sides of the tube may be loosened with a little stick or glass rod, when they will rapidly settle at the bottom.

The Uric Acid precipitate is,
- *a.* Copious (covering bottom of tube). *Excess.*
- *b.* Moderate (total bulk size one-half grain of wheat). *Normal*
- *c.* Very slight. *Decrease.*

12. CHLORIDS.—To 2 in. of urine in a test-tube, add five to ten drops of nitric acid and solution silver nitrate by drops as long as

Digitized by Google

any precipitate forms; shake slightly and set aside for a few moments to settle.

The Silver Chlorid precipitate is,
- *a. Copious* (over ½ in. in depth). *Excess.*
- *b. Moderate* (½ in. in depth). *Normal.*
- *c. Slight* (less than above). *Decrease.*

13. SULPHATES.—To 2 in. of urine in a test-tube, add five to ten drops of hydrochloric acid c. p. and solution of barium chlorid by drops as long as any precipitate forms; set aside and allow to settle.

The Barium Sulphate precipitate is,
- *a. Copious* (over ⅛ in. in depth). *Excess.*
- *b. Moderate* (⅛ in. in depth). *Normal.*
- *c. Slight* (less than above). *Decrease.*

14. EARTHY PHOSPHATES.—To 2 in. urine in a test-tube, add ammonium hydroxid until it smells strongly of ammonia; heat gently and set aside.

The Ammonio-Magnesium and Calcium Phosphates are,
- *a. Copious* (over ⅜ in. in depth). *Excess.*
- *b. Moderate* (⅜ in. in depth). *Normal.*
- *c. Slight* (less than above). *Decrease.*

15. ALKALINE PHOSPHATES.—Filter the liquid from No. 14 into a clean test-tube (or prepare another specimen as above and filter), add ten drops of ammonium chlorid and magnesium sulphate by drops as long as any precipitate is formed. Heat gently and set aside to settle.

The Ammonio-Magnesium Phosphate precipitate is,
- *a. Copious* (over 1⅛ in. in depth). *Excess.*
- *b. Moderate* (1⅛ in. in depth). *Normal.*
- *c. Slight* (less than above). *Decrease.*

16. SUGAR.—Remove any trace of albumen or earthy phosphates by boiling and filtering. Use the clear filtrate. Pour into a test-tube 1 in. of Fehling's solution and add same quantity of water. Boil gently. If precipitate is formed, filter; when, after repeated boiling and filtering, no precipitate is formed, add urine and heat as before.

No change in color = No sugar.

Slight change to dirty green = Trace of sugar.

Bright yellow = Sugar over 1 per cent.

Red = Excess of sugar.

In case it is desired to have a microscopic and bacteriologic examination of the urine, the specimen may be sent to a Pathologic

Digitized by Google

Laboratory, these are now in every large city. But every dentist should be prepared to make physical and chemical examinations, according to the outline here given. The results of the analysis should be recorded and preserved. This may be done in the following form:

URINE ANALYSIS

Name,_____.
Date,_____.

Physical Characters.

Amount in 24 hours,_____.
Specific gravity,_____.
Condition,_____.
Color,_____.
Consistency,_____.

Chemic Characters.

Reaction with litmus,_____.
Reaction with heat,_____.
Reaction with nitric acid,_____.
Total solids,_____.
Urea,_____.
Urates,_____.
Chlorids,_____.
Sulphates,_____.
Earthy phosphates,_____.
Alkaline phosphates,_____.

Abnormal constituents.

Albumin,_____.
Sugar,_____.

Clinical Memoranda.

FEHLING'S SOLUTION

Fehling's Solution is made by mixing exactly equal volumes of the below-mentioned copper solution and alkaline solution at the time required.

Copper Solution:

Crystallized copper sulphate,	34.64 gm.
Sterilized distilled water, sufficient quantity to make	500 mils.

Alkaline Solution:

Potassium sodium tartrate (Rochelle salt),	173 gm.
Potassium hydroxid,	125 gm.
Sterilized distilled water, sufficient quantity to make	500 mils.

These solutions should be kept in well-stoppered bottles, in a cool, dark place, and mixed only at the time needed. If a precipitate forms when the cold solutions are first mixed, it should be dissolved by agitating the test-tube; and no precipitate should form when the mixed solutions are heated. By keeping the copper solution and alkaline solution in separate bottles in a cool, dark place, they should keep without change almost indefinitely; however, it is best to have fresh solutions prepared at least once a year.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

GENERAL INDEX

ABDERHALDEN on inorganic iron, 182
Abrasions, 139, 147, 302, 304
Abscess alveolar, acute, 108, 111, 160, 192, 219
chronic, 96, 370
between roots, 391
caries in, 379
caused by toothpick, 393
cavity, 57
dental, early treatment of, 357
dento-alveolar, 64, 65, 82
drainage of, 369
due to blow, 392
in deciduous teeth, 390
involving several teeth, 381
lancing of, 127, 141, 143
of both antrums, 303
of frontal sinus, 303
pericemental, 391, 393
pocket, secondary, 381
pulpal, 308, 350
rupture of, 353
treatment of, 192, 219, 370
by ionization, 347
with sinus, 373
Absorbent cotton, 20
Absorption of drugs, 22
Abstracts, 14, 15
Acacia, 121
Acetanilid, 146, 147
powder, effect of, on heart, 171
prescriptions for, 367
Acetic acid, 97
Acetozone, 90, 409
Acetphenetidin, 147
Acetyl-paramino-phenyl salicylate, 47
Acetyl-salicylic, 47
Acid, acetic, 97
benzoic, 31
boric, 31
cambogic, 221
gallic, 35
hydrochloric, 97
hydrocyanic, 178
hydrofluoric, 105
lactic, 99
"method," 344
mineral, 33
monochloracetic, 98
nitric, 96
oleic, 11
osmic, 33
oxalic, 92
phenolsulphonic, 94, 95
phosphoric, dilute, 189
salicylic, 45
sulphuric, 94, 340
Acid, sulphurous, 31, 32, 93, 214
tannic, 31, 72, 74, 329
treatment, 96
trichloracetic, 33, 98, 288
Acids, organic, 6
Acne, 90
Aconite, 113
poisoning, 114, 363
Aconitina, 113
Actinomycosis, 464
treatment of, 80, 193, 464
Active principles of drugs, 5, 15
Adenitis, 200
Adrenal chlorid combined with cocain, 134
Adrenalin, 77
chlorid for hemorrhage, 323
objections to, 323
combined with cocain, 138
Age a factor in dosage, 28
Agglutinins, 247
Air, compressed, in dentistry, 251, 286, 288
purifier, 90
Air-thrombosis, 23
Albolin, 120
Albumin, coagulation of, 63, 64
in urine, 468
Alcohol, abuse of, in dentistry, 299
as antiseptic, 169
as disinfectant, 279
dehydrated, 166
diluted, 166
for relief of pain, 368
modified, 168, 279, 299, 346
official standard for, 166
physiological action of, 167
therapeutics of, 168
Alcoholism, acute, differentiation of, 167
chronic, 168
Alcresta ipecac in pyorrhea alveolaris, 437
tablets, 232
Alkali-metals, 104
Alkalies, poisoning by, 98
Alkaline powder, 38
solution, 471
Alkaloids as medicines, 5
Allspice, 239
Aloes, Barbadoes and Socotrine, 210
Aloin, 211
Alpha-eucain, 137
Alphozone, 91, 409
Alteratives, 30, 181
Alum, ammonium, 78
potassium, 78
Aluminum chlorid as a bleacher, 404
silicate, hydrated, 125, 437

Digitized by Google

Alveolar abscess, acute, extraction of tooth in, 368
treatment of, by magnesium citrate, 219
by potassium iodid, 192
chronic, 96, 370
bone involvement in, 378
complications of, 372, 376, 389
evacuation of pus from, 377
involving vault, 380
necrosis in, 379
sequelæ of, 382
sinus in, 98, 373
treatment of, 370, 373, 389
surgical, 382
diagnosed by radiograph, 344
external opening of, 373
from broken toothpick, 393
process, exfoliation of, 326
exposed after extraction, 139
hypertrophy of, 373
removal of, 385
resorption of, 376, 421
purulent, 347, 370, 374, 410
without sinus, 370
Amalgam fillings, 196, 305, 386, 403
Ameba, pathogenic, diseases due to, 233
Amebæ in pyorrheal pockets, 436
Ammonia, 2, 169
as heart stimulant, 132
gas in pulp decomposition, 336
physiologic action of, 170
poisoning, 170
Ammonio-magnesium and calcium phosphates, 470
phosphate precipitate, 470
Ammonium acetate, solution of, 230
bromid, 155
carbonate, 170
chlorid, 234
hydrogen fluorid, 436
iodid, 193
Amputation of root-end, 435
Amygdalin, 178
Amylopsin, 206
Amyl nitrite, poisoning by, 173
therapeutics of, 174
Analgesics, 30, 126, 291
Anchorage for filling, 314
occlusal, 300
Anemia, iron in, 182, 185
pernicious, 202
Anesthesia, advocates of, 284
cocain, 130
conductive, 25, 130, 138, 289
discovery of , 283
high-pressure, 289
interosseous, 289
local, 23, 25, 130
oxid-oxygen, 355
pressure, 25, 136, 315, 318, 319
prolonged, 141
tranquil, 161
Anesthetics, 30, 126
for curetting abscess, 383
general, 126, 140
local, 126, 137, 289
safest, 140
Anesthetization by cataphoresis, 324
in removal of pulp, 315
solution, 317
under pressure, 319
Aneurysm, contraindications in, 173
Angina, Ludwig's, 466
pectoris, 202
Animal tissue, action of thymol on, 54
Anise, 239
Anisotonic solution, 216
Anodynes, 30, 291
general, 291
in pulp removal, 322
local, 126, 289
Antacids, 30
in oral prophylaxis, 36
Antagonism of drugs, 31, 276
Anthelmintics, 31
Antibodies, 246, 247, 255
Antidote for arsenic, 39, 102, 185, 186, 329
for digitalis, 173
for gelsemium, 180
for hydrofluoric acid, 106
for iodin poisoning, 118
for mineral poisons, 37, 97
for opium poisoning, 159
for phenol, 169, 375
for phosphorus, 188
for silver nitrate, 87
for strychnin poisoning, 165
in corrosive poisoning, 105
physiologic, 276
Antimony and potassium tartrate, 233
Anti-Narcotic Law, 133, 136, 160
Antipyretics, 31, 145, 147
Antipyrin, action of, 145, 146
Antisepsis in canal filling, 396
of mouth, throat, nose, 69
Antiseptics, 31, 41, 271
Antispasmodics, 31
Antitoxins, 5, 246, 255
Antral cavity, washing of, 414
Antrum, abscess of, 380, 382, 388
diseases of, 410, 412
diagnosis, 412
due to trauma, 412
from catarrhal inflammation, 412
from dental conditions, 410
treatment of, by rhinologist, 413
medicinal, 414
surgical, 413
foreign bodies in, 252, 412
healthy, importance of, 413
of Highmore, 410, 414
opening of, painless, 414
Apexotomy, 385
Apicoectomy, 385, 389
Apomorphin, 5
hydrochlorid, 231
Apoplexy distinguished from alcoholism, 167
Apothecaries' weight, 257, 258
Appendicitis due to pyorrhea, 419
Appliances for loose teeth, 440, 441
for replanted teeth, 435
Argyria, 86
Argyrol, 87

Digitized by Google

Aristol, 56, 313
Arnica, 61
Aromatic spirit of ammonia, 170
waters, 9
Arsenic albuminate, 328
as escharotic, 100
compound, as specific for syphilis, 457
compounds of, 201
poisonous action of, 94
metallic, 201
poisoning by, 57, 94, 186, 326
acute and chronic, 101
local, 57, 100
systemic, 101
preparations of, 201, 326
toleration for, in Austria, 100
trioxid, 99, 201
a cause of pericementitis, 359
application of, 327
as an escharotic, 94
as devitalizing agent, 325
in desensitizing, 284
poisoning, local, 334
white, 99
Arsenical pigments, inhalation of, 101
Arsenous acid, 99
Arterial hyperemia, 307
pressure reduced by paraldehyd, 154
Arthritis, chronic, treatment of, by vaccines, 248
Asepsis, 41
absolute, in operation, 361
during pulp decomposition, 338
in pulp removal, 322, 328
in root-canal work, 169, 396
Asphyxia from ether, 142
prevention of, 151
Aspirin, promiscuous use of, 47
Aspirol, 170
Assay of drugs, 13, 15
Assaying, indicator in, 215
Asthma, inhalations of niter in, 227
Astringents, 31, 72
mineral, 72
pyorrhea, 428, 429
vegetable, 72
Atropin, 161, 175, 176, 229
poisoning by, 176
Aurantium, 241
Avoirdupois weight, 257, 258

BACILLUS diphtheriæ, 245
fusiform, 417
tetani, 245
tubercle, 462
Bacteria a cause of pericementitis, 358
action of alcohol upon, 168
cultures of, 247
destruction of, 42, 277
entrance of, into body, 245
in mouth, 309, 453
in pyorrheal pocket, 416
multiplication of, 417
toxicity to, 65
Bacterins, 248
Bacteriolysins, 247
Bacteriotropins, 247
Balsam of Peru, 45
Band, fitting of, 349
Bandages, 20
Barium sulphate precipitate, 470
Baths, Russian and Turkish, 249
Bay-rum, 239
Beck's paste, 85
compressed air apparatus, 286
Belladonna, 161, 175
action of, physiologic, 176
liniment, 12, 177
Benzoic acid, 44
Benzosulphinid, 243
Benzoylacetyl dioxid, 90
Berberin, 76
Beta-eucain, hydrochlorid, 137
Betanaphthol, 58
Bichlorid of mercury, 198
tablets, 18
Bicuspid, second, excementosed, 351
"Biliousness," 197, 222
Biologic processes, 5
products, 245
Bismuth paste, 388
in antral disease, 414
healing of wound over, 379
poisoning, 85
subnitrate, 84
Bitter tonics, 177
Black copper oxid, 81
Black's 1-2-3 mixture, 50
Blaud's pills, 185
Bleachers, 31, 88, 214
Bleaching agents, 404
of teeth, 70, 88, 90, 93, 98, 190, 403
applications for, 93, 405, 406, 408
by oxidation, 88, 404
by reduction, 88, 405
principles of, 403
Blindness in United States, 86
Blood, abnormal substances in, 444
coagulability of, 84
count in pyorrhea, 418
corpuscles, white, action of quinin on, 366
deficiency of water in, 216
hemoglobin of, 181
-pressure, action of digitalis on, 172
relief of, 175
removal of, 320
-serum, salinity of, 215
substitute for, 179
stream, bacteria in, 245, 418
Blue light, treatment by, 251, 287
Boils, 127, 205
Bone cell stimulant, 345
phosphate, 189
pus formation in, 380
regeneration of, 356, 393
removal of, by mallet, 385
tissue, loss of, 121
Bones, action of phosphorus on, 187
Boracic acid, 43
Borax, 38, 39, 44
Boric acid, 43
Borism, 43

Digitized by Google

Boroglycerin, glycerite of, 117
Breath, fighting for, 130
Bridge and retainer, combination, 432
inlay, decay under, 354
Bridgework, 295, 303, 443
Broach, broken, 252
selection of, 320
Bromids, the, 154
as analgesics, 292
Bromism, 154
Bronchial catarrh, 52, 235
Bronchitis, acute, 225
chronic, 193
terebine in, 112
Brown mixture, 12
Brucin, action of, 163
Bruises, treatment of, 61, 75, 120, 144
Brushing of teeth, 429
Bunge on organic iron, 182
"Burning" process, 342
Burns from hydrofluoric acid, 436
treatment of, 37, 38, 60, 83, 118, 120, 147
Butyl-chloral hydrate, 152, 450

CACAO-BUTTER, 129
Caffein, action of, 171
as diuretic, 223
Calcific deposits, 314, 332
Calcification of pulp, 332
Calcium carbonate, precipitated, 36
chlorid, 84
hydroxid, 37
hypophosphite, 190
phosphate, effect of, on nutrition, 190
paste, 51, 407
precipitated, 189, 312
thymolized, 312, 390
sulphurated, 204
Calculus, serumal, 419
Calendula and calendulin, 60
Callahan's method, 95, 344
rosin solution, 111, 400
Calomel, action of, physiologic, 197
idiosyncrasy, 27
incompatability of, 198
Camphor, 114, 115
Camphors, derivation of, 6
Canadin, 76
Canals, blocking of, 347, 352
exposure of, 319, 328
filling of, 111, 322, 383, 398
gangrenous, 99, 340
moistening of, 342, 396
obliteration of, 303, 332, 447
preparation of, for filling, 336
removal of blood from, 321
small and tortuous, 321, 399
Cancer of stomach, 206
of tongue, 70
superficial, 253
Cancrum oris, 81
Cane-sugar, 243
Canker sores, 51, 64, 69, 80, 98, 184, 454
differentiated from mucous patches, 458
Cannabis indica, 161
Cantharides and cantharidin, 112
Capillaries, depletion of, 366
Capillary attraction, absorption by, 116
oozing, 146, 169
Capping of pulp, 190, 308
Capsicin and capsicum, 108
Capsicum, oleoresin of, 16
Capsules, 213, 271, 367
Caraway, 240
Carbohydrates as medicines, 5
Carbon, 60
dioxid, evolution of, 97
in drugs, 5
Carborundum stones, 427, 428
Carbuncles, 205
Carcinoma on leucoplakia patch, 463
Cardamom seed, 238
Cargentos, 88
Caries, dental, 96, 244, 314, 379
exploration for, 380
removal of, 97, 311
Carlsbad salt, artificial, 218
Carminatives, 31, 237
Carr instruments, 423
Carron oil, 37, 119
Cascara sagrada, 208
Cases, history and treatment of, 351
Castings, 442
Castor oil, 212, 213, 451
Cataphoresis, 26, 254, 287
in pulp removal, 324
Catarrh, chronic, 37, 77
Cathartics, 32, 208
saline, 215, 217
Caustic, lunar, 85
potash, 104
pyrozone, 90, 392
as a bleacher, 407
as an escharotic, 409
soda, 104
Caustics, 33, 93
desensitizing, 287
for bleaching teeth, 98
Cauterization, 205, 250, 348, 374
after hemorrhage, 323
in abscess cases, 392
Cautery, actual, 106
electric, 330
Cavity, excavation of, 293, 294
gingival, 290, 295
packing of, for bleaching, 406
preparation of, 141, 143, 283, 300
painless, 289, 294
sealing of, 295
sensitive, 251, 328
sterilization of, mechanical, 316
Cement, copper phosphate, 81
for sealing, 300, 365
zinc oxychlorid, 83, 394, 399
phosphate, 189
Cementum exposed, cauterizing of, 205
irritation from, 302
sensitive, 86
Centigrade scale, 250
Cephaëlin, 232, 437
Cerates, 19
Chafing, powder for, 125
Chair, dental, dread of, 154

Digitized by Google

Chalk, precipitated, 36
prepared, 36
Chancre, syphilitic, 70, 76, 456
Chancroids, 96
Change of life, 445
Charcoal, animal purified, 60
as deodorant, 60
poultice, 20
Chartæ, 20
Chemico-mechanical cleansing of canal, 340
process, 345
Chemistry, principles in, 274
Chewing, effect of, on saliva, 236
Chilblains, 170
Childhood, spasmodic disorders of, 151
Children, dosage for, 28
febrile affections of, 230
hypersensitive dentin in, 290
pulp removal in, 333
Children's teeth, cement for, 81
treatment of, 390
Chinosol, 70
Chip-blower, 362
Chips, clearing away of, 251
Chloral camphor, 152
hydrate, 29, 150
as hypnotic, 151
poisoning by, 151
Chlorbutanol, 139
Chloretone, 139
Chlorin, 92
nascent, 404
Chlorinated lime, 92
soda, 92
Chloroform, 142
as analgesic, 143, 291, 292
contraindications for, 144
dangers of. 143, 292
habit, 144
in canal-filling, 398, 401
narcosis, 62
physiologic action of, 143
therapeutics of, 143
use of, cautions, 143
Chloropercha, 124, 143
Chlorosis, 182, 211
Cholera morbus, 214
Christian Science, 256
Chromic acid, 102
Chromium trioxid, 102
Cinchona, 148
Cinchonidin and cinchonin, 148
Cinchonism, 149, 150
Cineol, 49, 51, 397
Cinnamic aldehyd, 49
Cinnamon, oil of, 49
water spray, 169
Circulation, pericemental, 433
Citrus aurantium and vulgaris, 241
Cleanliness of mouth, 459
Climate, influence of, on drug action, 29
Cloves, oil of, 50
Coal-tar antipyretics, 147
Coca, 128
Cocain, action of, paralyzant, 130
anesthesia, fatalities from, 130
local, 129
Cocain, as protoplasmic poison, 289, 318
by hypodermic, author's formula for, 135
combined with adrenalin, 138
with arsenic, 133
experiments in, 129, 130
habit, 132
hydrochlorid, 5, 128, 129, 136
billets of, 136
dosage of, maximum, 135
hypodermic use of, 133
solutions of, 135
idiosyncrasy, 27, 132, 134
points, 136, 317
poisoning, 131, 134
treatment of, 132, 169, 276
sloughing from, 134
substitutes for, 136
susceptibility to, 131
therapeutics of, 133, 136
Cocaina, 128
Codein, 156, 157
Cod-liver oil, action of, restorative, 191
in emaciating diseases, 191
Coffee in narcotic poisoning, 171
Coil, dry-cell vibrating, 253, 338
Cold, application of, to sensitive dentin, 286
as therapeutic agent, 250
cream, 39, 243
in the head, 235
physical law concerning, 290
sores, 83, 124, 455
Colds, treatment of, 52, 241
Colitis due to pyorrhea, 419
Collapse, 23, 26, 173, 178
from anesthetics, 176
Collargol, 88
Collodion, 11, 123
cantharidal, 124
flexible, 124
styptic, 73, 124
Collyrium, 81, 272
Color molecule, breaking up of, 405
of tooth, 320, 321
preservation of, 320, 329, 402
restoration of, 338, 402
by caustic pyrozone, 392, 409
Coloring agent, 244
Colycynth, 220
fatal irritation from, 221
Compound licorice powder, 212
Compounds, ferrous, 185
miscellaneous, 6
Compressed air, 251, 286, 288
Conductive anesthesia, 25, 130, 138, 289
Cone flower, 203
Cones, fitting of, 398, 399
Confections, 17
senna, 209, 210, 211
Confidence of patient, 255, 423
Congestion, cerebral, croton oil in, 220
Conjunctivitis, 81, 87
Conservativeness of dentists, 413
Constipation, chronic, 118, 209, 210, 211, 212, 221, 222
due to rhubarb, 213
in children, 210,

Digitized by Google

Constructive diseases, 302
Convalescence in exhaustive diseases, 200
Convolvulin, 221
Convulsions in childhood, 151, 230
in strychnin poisoning, 164
in tetanus, 174
Convulsions, relief of, 174
Copper cement for filling, 386
oxid, 81
solution, 471
sulphate, 80
as emetic, 188
in actinomycosis, 464
Coriander oil, 211, 240
Corns, removal of, 46, 98
Correctives, 237
Corrosive sublimate, 198
as an alterative, 197
Corrosives, 93
Coryza involving antrum, 412
treatment of, 115, 120, 160, 176, 229
Cotton for filling root-canals, 394
Cottonseed oil, 119
Cough, 122
Counterirritants, 34, 58, 106, 108
refrigerant, 362
Counterirritation, remedial effect of, 107
Cracks in feet and hands, 86
Cream of tartar, 224
Creosote, 66
Cresol as diluent, 338
as disinfectant, 65
Croton oil, 220
Croup, 115
Crown, gold, 302, 304
perfect, mutilation of, 432
porcelain, 302, 355, 375
setting of, painful, 133
Crowned teeth, abscesses of, 355
Crowning, dangers of, 314
Cudbear, tincture of, 244, 425, 427
Curettement of abscess, 375, 382, 389
hemorrhage in, 383
incision for, 383
Currents, electric, 253
Cusps, grinding of, 362
Cyanosis from nitrous oxid, 292
Cystic fluid differentiated from serum, 372
Cysts, periapical, 372, 382

DAKIN'S hyperchlorous acid solution, 179
Dandruff, 212
Dead pulp, diagnosis of, 338
Death from use of cocain, 130
chloroform, 143, 144, 292
ethyl chlorid, 128
hydrogen dioxid, 69
opium, 160
Decay of teeth, rapid, 190
Deciduous molar roots, resorption of, 333
teeth, abscess in, 390
pulps of, gangrenous, 390
removed, 333
Decoctions, 13
Deformities, nasal, 121
Delirium tremens, 168
Demulcents, 32, 116
Dental liniment, 362, 363
author's, 447
Dental pastes, potassium chlorate in, 226
pulp, diseases of, 298
sterilization, 277
therapeutics, 281
Dentifrices, 32
Dentin, blood in, 320
desensitizing of, 128, 138, 288, 293, 295
hypersensitive, 283, 284
infected, sterilizing of, 199, 201
obtunding of, 53, 142, 251, 254
by cold, 286
by heat, 285
by physical agents, 285
protection of, 404
secondary, 302, 332
sensitive, 53, 142, 251, 254, 285
treatment of, 84, 293
sensitiveness of, thermal, 283
sterilization of, 201, 294, 310, 316
Dentist and physician, relations of, 349, 443
right of, to prescribe, 267, 450
Dentistry, painless, 25, 27, 133, 283
Dentition, temporary, 151, 155
Denture, red-rubber, 196
Denuded roots, 433
Deodorants, 32, 41, 70
Deoxidation, 93
Deposit encircling tooth, 419
removal of, 423, 425, 431, 436
salivary, 420
Desensitization of dentin, 128, 138, 288, 293, 295
Desensitizing paste, 55, 138, 141, 293, 297
on exposed cementum, 432
precautions in using, 295
Desquamation due to formaldehyd, 68
Destructive diseases, 306
Devitalization of pulp, 315, 325, 326
by formocresol, 329
technic of, 327
Dextrins and dextrose, 244
Diabetes mellitus, 202
teeth in, 421
Diagnosis by radiograph, 252, 345
mistake in, 391, 432, 433
Diaphoretics, 32, 228
Diarrhea, 46, 142
inflammatory, 212, 214
treatment of, by salol, 46
Diastase, 207
Diathesis, hemorrhagic, 76
rheumatic, 421
uric acid, 228
Digestants, 205, 206
Digestive tract, toxins in, 453
Digitalein and digitalin, 172
Digitalis, 172
action of, cumulative, 172
physiologic, 172

Digitized by Google

Digitalis, as diuretic, 223
poisoning by, 173
preparations of, standardization of 172
therapeutics of, 173
Digitin, digitonin and digitoxin, 172
Di-isobutyl-cresol-iodid, 56
Diluent of powders, 16
Diphtheria bacillus, 245
Diphtheria, resorcin in, 59
toxins of, 245, 246
Dipsomaniacs, 168
Direct oxidation, 404
Discharge, syphilitic, 456
Disclosing solutions, 428
Discoloration of teeth, 73, 182, 392, 402
by fracture, 409
by iron tannate, 329
by potassium permanganate, 70
causes of, 402, 403
pink, 402
Disease, treatment of, rational, 281
Diseases, constructive, 302
destructive, 306
Disinfectants, 33, 41
surgical, 71
Disinfection by alcohol, 279
by cresol, 65
by formaldehyd, 67
by mercury, 71, 198
in dentistry, 279
of hands, 91, 92
of rooms, 68
of site of operation, 279
Dispensatory, 4
Dissolution, 3
Di-thymol-di-iodid, 56
Diuretics, 33, 222
Dobell's solution, 271, 430
Donovan's solution, 199, 200, 201
Dosage, 28, 267
Dover's powder, 157, 232, 243
Drastics, 32, 208
Dressings, antiseptic, 21
fixed, 116
Drilling, dangers of, 284, 320
into innocent teeth, 373
of teeth, painless, 284, 286
Dropsy, general, 222, 227
Drug, definition of, 1, 4
Drug-habit, 27
irritants, 358
poisoning, 121, 240, 249, 276
Drugs, action of, 2, 27, 285, 359
added to root-fillings, 395
administration of, 21
by hypodermic, 22
by inhalation, 26
by inunction, 25
by mouth, 21
by rectum, 26
intravenous, 26
time of, 29
antagonism of, 276
antidotes to, 275
chemic tests of, 275
coagulating, 336
effects of, 2, 27, 359
Drugs, effects of, cumulative, 28, 172
in pathologic conditions, 29
local, 126
for local use, 36
general, 36
incompatibility of, 274, 275, 276
inorganic and organic, 5
masking taste of, 122
miscellaneous group of, 179
neutral principles of, 6
sources of, 4
standardizing of, 172
to be prescribed alone, 275
vegetable, 4
Dry gangrene of pulp, 350
Dysentery, amebic, 233, 436
tropical, 436
Dyspepsia, atonic, 206
flatulent, 60
Dysphagia, 210

ECHAFOLTA, 203
in cases of infection, 366
Echinacea, 203, 204
therapeutics of, 204
Eczema, acute erythematous, 125
ointment for, 197
treatment of, by talc, 125
Edema of larynx, 466
Effervescent salts, 17, 366
Ehrlich's discovery of "606," 456, 457
Electrargol, 88
Electricity as a nerve stimulant, 253
as therapeutic agent, 253, 287
in neuralgia, 448
Electric mouth lamp, 86, 252
Elixirs, 11
Elongation of tooth, 358
Emboli, gaseous, a cause of death, 69
Emetics, 33, 230,
ammonium alum, 78
in strychnin poisoning, 165
mustard, 110
tepid water, 234
Emetin, hemostatic action of, 438
hydrochlorid, 232
treatment in pyorrhea alveolaris, 436, 438
Emodin, 211
Emollients, 33, 115
Empirical therapeutics, 1
Emulsifying agents, 12, 121
Emulsin, 178
Emulsions, 12
Enamel, brilliancy of, 428
Encystment of root, 378
Endameba buccalis, 417, 436
histolytica, 436
Enema, administration of, 26
Epidermic medication, 25
Epilepsy akin to alcoholism, 168
convulsions of, 155
Epinephrin, 77
Epispastics, 107
Epsom salt, 215, 217
Equimolecular concentration, 216
Ergot, 76
in pregnancy, 28

Digitized by Google

Eriodictyon, aromatic syrup of, 366
Erosions, 302
saliva in, 236
Eruptions, syphilitic, 458
Erythroxylon coca, 128
Eschar of sulphuric acid, 344
production of, 94
Escharotics, 33, 93
cautious use of, 105
desensitizing, 287
Esophagus, piercing of, 97
Essences, 10
Ether, 141
as analgesic, 291
contraindications of, 142
inflammability of, 141
inhalation of, 142
making of, 275
narcosis, 62
spray, 142
Ethyl alcohol, 166
bromid, dangers of, 144
chlorid, 127, 250
as analgesic, 291
inflammable vapor of, 127
use of, fatal, 128
Eucain, 137
Eucalyptol, 51
and gutta-percha solution, 124
compound, 52, 346
formula for, 360
use of, for abscess, 371
for moistening canals, 359
solvent power of, 396, 397
with thymol, 372
Eucapercha, 396
Eugenol, 50, 239
for sensitive dentin, 291
Euroform paste, 58, 387
in abscess, 379
in arsenical poisoning, 335
Europhen, 56, 313
Examination of urine, 468
Excipient for pills, 17
Excitement, nervous, 153
Excoriations, 120
Excretions, stimulation of, 365
Exfoliation from arsenical poisoning, 326
Expectorants, 33
sedative, 233, 234
Experiments with phosphorus, 187
Explosion, caustic pyrozone, 408
ether, 141
nitric acid, 96
silver nitrate, 87
sulphuric acid, 96
External use, preparations for, 18
Extract, powdered, 14
Extraction of teeth by specialists, 140
deciduous, 143
hemorrhage following, 74
in antral diseases, 413
in cases of abscess, 368
in mercurial poisoning, 194
painful sockets after, 139
painless, 137
unnecessary, 390
Extraction, products by, 12, 13
Extracts, assay of, 15
pilular, 15
solid, 13, 15
Exudates, absorption of, 108
Eyes of baby, sore, 86
Eye-wash, boric acid, 43

FACIAL neuralgia, 444, 445, 451
Fahrenheit scale, 250
Family physician, case of syphilis referred to, 457, 458
collaboration with, 281, 448
Faradic current, 253
Fat a product of putrefaction, 407
as source of energy, 191
digestion of, 191
supply of, in body, 191
Fats in dentistry, 6
Federal Anti-Narcotic Law, 27, 136, 160, 450
Narcotic Law, 27, 133
record blank, 449
Feet, hyperidrosis of, 73, 79
Fehling's solution, 471
Fennel, 240
Ferment, albuminous, 207
Fermentation, acids of, 38
in the mouth, 244, 431
Ferric chlorid, 184
compound, 182, 183
hydroxid with magnesium oxid, 185
hypophosphite, 186
oxid a cause of discoloration, 407
subsulphate, 184
Ferrous carbonate, 185
compound, 182, 183
iodid, 186
ions, 183
sulphate, 183
Ferrum dialysatum, 185
Fever sores, 455
Fiber, devitalizing, 354
Field of operation, dry, 176
Fig as a laxative, 209
Filling materials, drugs added to, 395
metallic, 302
of teeth, painless, 284
root-canals, 336, 394, 399
Filter, charcoal as, 60
Filth disease, 464
Fissures, protective for, 123
Fistulæ, salivary, 103
Flatus, prevention of, 237
Flavored masses, 17
Flavoring agents, 10, 239, 240
Flaxseed poultice and tea, 119
Flowers of sulphur, 214
Fluid extracts, 14
Fomentations, 20
Food and Drugs Act, National, 4, 136
Foods, definition of, 34, 181
preservative of, 43
Foot-bath in pericementitis, 366
Foramina, sealing of, 400
Foreign bodies, expulsion of, 231

Digitized by Google

Formaldehyd, 67
as antidote for arsenic, 329
chemic changes produced by, 337
gas, generation of, 338
treatment of gangrenous pulp, 337
use of, cautious, 371
Formalin, 67
Formocresol, 345
dressing, 339, 352
for devitalization, 329
in treatment of abscess, 370
pulpal, 350
purulent, 347
remedy, 66, 68
Formol, 67
Fowler's solution, 201, 202, 223, 242
Fracture of jaw, 252, 409
Fractures, pain of, 159
Fuller's earth, 125
Fumes of phosphorus, 186
Fungous growths, 96, 98
Fusibility of preparations, 18

GALLIC acid, 73, 74
Galvanic current, 253
Gamboge, 221
Gangrene of pulp, 308, 350, 364, 390
in deciduous teeth, 390
treatment of, 390
Gangrenous root-canals, 99, 336
Gargle, chinosol, 71
for sore throat, 81, 272
Gas in alimentary canal, 237
Gases, conversion of, into liquids and solids, 67
noxious, from chloroform, 143
of decomposition, 337, 339
Gastric catarrh, 85, 218
digestion, 189
juice, 38
stimulants, 177
ulcer, 85, 206
due to pyorrhea, 418
Gauze, euroform, 380
medicated, 21
Gelseminin sulphate, 180
Gelsemium, 180
poisoning, 180
Genito-urinary diseases, suppurative, 68
Gentian, 177
Gentio picrin, 177
Germicides, 33, 41
Germs of disease, 245
Gin, Holland, 166
Ginger, preparations of, 238
Gingivitis, 419
acute, ulcerous, 87, 464
distinguished from pyorrhea, 466
in pyorrhea, 425
interstitial, 416
Glands, mucous, stimulation of, 236
suprarenal, 77
thyroid, 78
Glass containers, disinfection of, 279
Glonoin, 174
Gloves, rubber, 460
Glucose, 244
Glucosides, 5
Glycerin, 116
Glycerite of tannic acid, 73
Glycerites, 11
Glyceryl trinitrate, 174
Glycyrrhiza and Glycyrrhizin, 122
Gold and sodium chloride, 205
crowns, 302
inlay, 392
scrap, refining of, 227
Gonorrhea of mouth, 466
Gout, use of lithium for, 228
Gouty diathesis, 202
Granulation tissue, 254
Granulations, exuberant, 79, 86, 105
treatment of, 70
Granulomas, dental, 96, 106, 344
non-purulent, 344, 345, 351
treated by ionization, 347
Grape juice, pure, fermented, 166
Green soap, tincture of, 40, 119
Gregory's powder, 213
Growths, small, removal of, 184
Guaiacol, 66
Gummata, 460
Gums, brushing of, 429
derivation of, 6
hypertrophy of, 98, 103, 106, 330
inflamed, 75, 83, 117
lacerated, 57, 60
recession of, 38, 420, 421
slitting of, 434
sloughing of, 334
solubility of, 6, 274
spongy, 61, 73, 75, 416
Gun cotton, 123
Gutta-percha, 124
addition of drugs to, 395
and eucalyptol solution, 124
cones, 399
filling, 52, 333
for deciduous teeth, 390
for root-canals, 386, 394, 399
hermetic sealing with, 408
points, 279, 357, 397
solvents, 359, 395
use of, injudicious, 300
white base-plate, 396

HABIT, drug, 27
Hæmatoxylon campechianum, 75
Hallberg on metric system, 261, 262
Hamamelis Virginiana, 75
Hands, chapped, 117, 122
disinfection of, 91, 92, 397
lotion for, 243
of dentist, abraded, 124
punctured, 124
Harrison Narcotic Act, 27
Headache, 53, 115, 162, 171
nervous, 449
Healing by first intention, 60
Heart failure, sudden, 170
stimulants, 163
tobacco, 162
Heat, application of, 249, 285
as a counterirritant, 108

Digitized by Google

Heat, as a disinfectant, 71
in the treatment of pericementitis, 363
Hematics, 35, 181
Hematinics, 181, 183, 185
Hematoxylon, 75
Hemoglobin in tubuli, 402
Hemophilia, 76, 84
Hemorrhage after extraction of teeth, 184
removal of hypertrophied gum, 330
capillary, 169
intestinal, 74
persistent, 84
post-partum, 76
prevention of, 78, 323, 324
profuse, after pulp removal, 98, 320, 323
arrest of, 84
secondary, 323
small, 79, 84
treatment of, with salt solution, 178
Hemostatics, 35, 72
Henbane, 160
Herbs used for drugs, 7
Herpes gingivalis, 455
labialis, 455
Hexamethylenamin, 68
Highmore, antrum of, 410
Hoarseness, 122
Hine, Dr. C. L., splint suggested by, 440
Hoffmann's anodyne, 142
Honeys, 11, 210
Horse, antitoxin from, 247
Hydrastin and hydrastina, 76
hydrochlorid, 76
Hydrastis canadensis, 76
preparations of, 77
Hydragogues, 32, 208
Hydrargyrum, 193
Hydrated chloral, 150
Hydrobromic ether, 144
Hydrochloric acid, 97
Hydrocyanic acid, 178
Hydrofluoric acid, 105
Hydrogen dioxid, 69, 90
as a bleaching agent, 407
as a mouth-wash, 70
ethereal solution of, 407
explosion of, 408
in pulp removal, 321
sulphid in pulp decomposition, 336, 337
Hyoscin hydrobromid, 160
Hyoscyamin hydrobromid, 160
Hyoscyamus, 160, 161
Hyperacidity of stomach, 38
Hyperemia of pulp, 307, 308
treatment of, 308, 313
production of, 254
Hyperidrosis of feet and hands, 73, 79, 176
Hyperisotonic solutions, 216
Hypertrophy of gums, 98, 103, 106, 330
of pulp tissue, 332
Hypnotics, 34, 150
Hypnotism, 256
Hypodermic injection, fright due to. 135
into vein, 23
technic of, 24
irrigation of sinus, 374
medication, indications for, 22
syringe, varieties of, 24
Hypoisotonic solution, 216
Hypophosphites, syrup of, 186, 190

ICE, application of, 250
as local anesthetic, 128
-bag, 355
Idiosyncrasy to cocain, 131, 134
to drugs, 27
to potassium iodid, 192
to quinin, 150
Immunity, acquired and natural, 246
Impacted teeth, 252
Impotence, functional, 188
Impression, compound, 440
Incompatibility, chemic and physical, 274
in prescriptions, 274
of antipyrin, 146
of potassium bromid, 155
of sodium bicarbonate, 38, 275
of tannic acid, 74
physiologic, 276
therapeutic, 276
Incompatible drugs, list of, 275
Indian hemp, 161
Indirect oxidation, 404
Infection, alveolar, germs found in, 378
focus of, 82
removal of, 349, 351, 389
mixed, due to extraction, 368
from ulcer formation, 107
of face and jaws, 125
of mucous patches, 458
open wound, 280
root-end, 106
septic, a cause of sloughing, 134
from hypodermic injections, 23
streptococcus, 248
syphilitic, 455, 459, 461
Infectious diseases, therapy of, 245
Infiltration anesthesia, 25, 383
Inflammation as natural process, 365
of pulp, 307
pericemental, 124
Infusions, 13
Inhalation of arsenic, in dust, 101
of chloroform, 143, 292
of drugs or liquids, 26
of ether, 142
of ethyl chlorid, 127
of nitrite of amyl, 174
Injections, hypodermic, 24
intraneural, 103
intravenous, 178
Injury from careless instrumentation, 423
Insect bites, 118
Insomnia, 151
from grief, relieved by sulphonal, 153
Instrument tray, 426

Digitized by Google

Instruments, boiling of, 38, 41
for curettement, 384, 385
for pulp removal, 319
for scaling, 425
in syphilitic cases, 460
Logan-Buckley, 423–426, 431
metal, effect of mercury on, 199, 201
oxygen on, 406
rusting of, 278
sterilization of, 38, 71, 201, 278, 383, 397, 426
by paraform, 68
by resorcinol, 59
Interosseous anesthesia, 25
Intestines, absorption of drugs in, 22
Intoxication, acute, 167
Inunction, 25
Iodin, 55
as antiseptic, 57
as counterirritant, 58
as disinfectant, 280
compound solution of, 334, 363
discoloration, 57, 58
poisoning, 118
stimulation by, 334, 387, 435
use of, in bone affections, 435
Iodism, 57, 192
Iodoform, 55
action of, 57
Iodol, 56
Ionic medication, 106
theory, 348
Ionization, 106, 347
Ipecac, 232
root, preparations of, 436
Iron carbonate, 185
compounds, 182, 183
deficiency of, 182
dialysed, 185
objections to, 329, 335
injurious to teeth, 186
iodid, 186
masked, 183
metallic, 181, 182
organic, 182
perchlorid, 184
quinin, and strychnin phosphate, 450
reduced, 185
tannate, 329
Irritants, 34, 106, 358
mechanical, 360
Irritation, reflex peripheral, 444
Isopilocarpin, 229
Isotonic solutions, 133, 179, 216
Itching, 53

JABORANDI, 229
Jalap, preparations of, 221
Japanese bibulous paper, 398
Jaundice, catarrhal, 218, 231
Jaws, operations about, 139
Joint affections, 170
Juices of plants as drugs, 8

KALIUM, 104
Kaolin, 117, 125
Keefe's suction apparatus, 255
Kirk's bleaching mixture, 93
reduction process, 405
Koller, introduction of cocain by, 129
Krameria, preparations of, 74
triandra, 74

LABARRAQUE'S solution, 92, 404, 405
Laboratory, biologic, 245
pathologic, 454
Lactation, medication during, 29
Lactic acid, 99
Lactose, 243
Lanolin, 120
Laryngitis, 59, 79
Larynx, edema of, 170
Latin, medical, 268
Laudanum, 156
Laughing gas, 140
Lavender, preparations of, 242
Laxatives, 32, 208
Lead acetate, 79
filling, 387
poisoning, 80, 217
croton oil in, 220
Leeching, 255
Lemon juice in scurvy, 241
Leucocytes, action of, 255
Leucoplakia buccalis, 463
"Life-saver," 396
Light as remedial agent, 251, 287, 463
Lime, chlorinated, 92
liniment, 12
Lime-salts, 189
Lime-water, 37
Liniments, 12, 272
ammonia, 170
belladonna, 175
camphor, 115
chloroform, 143
dental, formula for, 362
for pericementitis, 114
soft soap, 119
Linimentum calcis, 37, 119
Linseed, 119
Lips, dry and cracked, 82
Liquids, poisonous, of decomposition, 337
Liquor antisepticus, 43, 55
formula for, 430
cresolis compositus, 65
Lithium carbonate, 227
citrate, 228
Liver, sluggish, 197
Logan-Buckley instruments, 423–426, 431
Logan crown, 432
Loose teeth, prognosis for, 422
Lozenges, 17
"L.-Suprarenin Synthetic," 77
Lucodescent light, 251
Ludwig's angina, 466
Lugol's solution, 55, 192, 363
Lumpy-jaw, 464
Lunar caustic, 85
Lupus vulgaris, 253
Lycopodium, 125
Lysol, 65

Digitized by Google

MACE, 238
Magnesia, calcined, 39
heavy and light, 39
Magnesium carbonate, 39
citrate, 219
solution of, formula for, 365
oxid, 39
silicate, 124
sulphate, 215, 217
Malaria, salvarsan in, 202
quinin a specific in, 150, 450
Malignant growths, pain of, 159
Malt, 206, 207
Malted liquors, 166
Manna and mannite, 209
Marshmallow, 122
Massage in dentistry, 254, 429
Masses, 17
Materia medica, definition of, 1
Maxilla, fracture of, 409
Maxillary sinus, relation of molar roots to, 411
sinusitis, 87
Measures, approximate, 259
Mechanical irritants, 358, 360
Medication, epidermic, 25
hypodermic, 22
ionic, 106
Medicines, classification of, 29
Melancholia, hypnotic in, 162
Membrane, pericemental, 358
semipermeable, 216
Menstruation and canker sores, 454
Menstruum, 12
Mental healing, 256
Menthol for headache, 53
for sensitive dentin, 291
Mercurial stomatitis, 194, 226, 272, 461
Mercuric chlorid, 71, 198, 199
iodid, red, 199
poisons, 196
sulphate-ethylenediamin, 200
Mercurol, 200
Mercurous chlorid, mild, 197
iodid, yellow, 200
Mercury, 193
absorption of, 194
action of, cumulative, 194
physiologic, 194
as specific for syphilis, 195, 457, 458, 459
atoxylate of, 457
bichlorid, 198
biniodid, 199
compounds of, 195, 196
organic, 195
in dental amalgams, 196
inunctions of, 195, 196
iodid, green, 200
nucleinate, 200
poisoning by, 194, 196, 461
protiodid, 200
succinimid, 438
systemic disturbance from, 196
therapeutics of, 195
Metal die, 125
Metallic potassium and sodium, 340
Metaphosphoric acid, 188
Meter as unit of linear measure, 260
Methemoglobin, 146
Methyl meta-amino-para-oxybenzoate, 139
Methyl trichlorid, 142
Metric system, 257, 259
advantages of, 262
measures of capacity, 261
weights, 261
Metrology, 257
Microorganisms, 245
Migraine, 152, 162, 171
Milk of sulphur, 214
Mineral acid, neutralizing of, 96
poisoning, 97
waters, natural, 218
Mitchell's "rest cure," 254
Mixtures, 11
of solids, 16
Model, coating of, 125
wax, 441
Moisture, removal of, 397
in canals, 342, 359
Molars, pericemental abscess of, 392
Money, decimal system of, 260
Monochloracetic acid, 98
Monsel's salt and solution, 184
Morphin, action of, local, 158
anhydrous, 156
for neuralgia, 449
habit, 159
prescription for, 449
salts of, 157
Mouth and stomach, relations of, 453
aphthous sore, 87
bacteria in, 309, 364
diseases of, 283, 453
disinfection of, 45
hygiene of, 309, 459
after operation, 387
infection of, gonorrheal, 466
-lamp, electric, 412
rubber sore, 75
secretions of, 236
syphilitic symptoms in, 458
tissues of, hard, 283
soft, 453
-washes, antiseptic, 117
astringent, 72, 236, 429
cinnamon, 50
dangers of, 70
for pyorrhea, 430, 431
Mucilages, 12
Mucoperiosteum, penetration of, 410
Mucous membrane, hypodermic injection through, 25
inflammation of, 80, 86, 123
morbid conditions of, 193
oral, 77, 453, 459
tuberculosis of, 462
ulceration of, 99
patches, syphilitic, 98, 103, 458
Mucus, secretion of, 234
Mustard, black and white, 109
blisters from, 110
paper, 20
Mydriatics, 34
Myocardial degeneration, 202

Digitized by Google

Myotics, 34
Myrosin, 109
Myrrh, 61
Myrtol, 235

NARCEIN, 156
Narcotic poisoning, 81, 171, 176
electricity in, 253
Narcotics, 34, 156
federal law concerning, 27, 133, 136, 160, 449, 450
Narcotile, 127
Narcotin, 156
Nasal cavity, abscess under, 380
deformities, correction of, 121
Nausea due to cocain, 135
from ipecac, 437
in taking impressions, 66, 133
National Formulary, 4
Natrium, 104
Narcosis, 62, 156, 159
Necrosis in gingivitis, 465
maxillary, 188
of bone, 96, 121, 379
Neosalvarsan, 99, 202
Neothesin, 138, 291, 294
Nerve blocking, 130, 138, 451
Nerve, inflammation of, chronic, 444
sheath, inflammation of, 444
tissue, regeneration of, 451
Neuralgia, 444
agonizing, 451
causes of, 444
due to anemia, 202
general diseases, 444
pulp nodule, 305
facial, 113, 114, 445
intractable, 444
malarial, 450
obscure cause of, 302
of fifth nerve, 188
persistent, 103
rheumatic, 449
treatment of, 108, 110, 145, 161, 177, 181, 273, 445
anodyne, 448, 449
by alcohol and cocain anesthesia, 452
by counterirritation, 124, 143
by injections of alcohol, 451
by liniments, 447, 448
by menthol, 53
by morphin, 159, 449
by quinin, 150
by salicylates, 46, 48
general, 448
local, 447
medicinal, 447
surgical, 451
systemic, 448
trifacial, 152, 180
trigeminal, 107
with pyorrhea alveolaris, 177
Neurasthenia, phosphorus in, 188
Neuritis, 220
Neurocain, 136
Nervine, 181
Nervous diseases, treated by arsenic, 99
prostration, massage in, 254
system, action of alcohol on, 167
Nicotin poisoning, 162
Niter paper inhalations, 227
sweet spirit of, 230
Nitric acid, 96
Nitrites as heart stimulants, 174
Nitrogen monoxid, 140
Nitroglycerin, 174, 366
Nitrous oxid, 62, 128, 140
as analgesic, 292
combined with oxygen, 414
Nodules, pulp, 95, 332
Nosophen, 56
Novocain hydrochlorid, 137
as local anesthetic, 25, 137
for hypersensitive dentin, 290
Nutgall, 72
Nutmeg, 237
Nutrition, effect of calcium phosphate on, 190
Nux vomica, 163, 165

OCCLUSION, faulty, 361, 420, 445
Odontalgia, 51
Odor, significance of, 371
"Official" remedies, 4
Oil, camphorated, 115
cod-liver, 191
cottonseed, 119
croton, 220, 222
of cajuput, 49, 397
of cassia, 49
of cinnamon, 49
of cloves, 50, 357
for sensitive dentin, 291
of eucalyptus, 51
commercial, 359
of myristica, 238
of myrtle, 235
of peppermint, 52
of theobroma, 129
of thyme, 54
of turpentine, 110
Oils, essential, 6, 10
fixed, 6
volatile, 6, 48, 238
Ointment, tannic acid, 73
Ointments, 18, 19
Oleate of cocain, 290
Oleates, 11
Oleoresins, natural, 6, 16
pharmaceutic, 16
Olive oil, 118
Operations about jaws, 139
bloodless, 384
minor, anesthesia in, 127, 141, 144
Ophthalmia neonatorum, 86
Opisthotonos, 164
Opium, 156
action of, physiological, 157
as analgesic, 292
contraindications, for, 160
denarcotized, 156
elimination of, 158
habit, 158, 159

Digitized by Google

Opium, poisoning, 158, 159, 160
distinguished from alcoholism, 167
treatment of, 159
Opsonic index, 439
Opsonins, 247, 255
Orange, preparations of, 241
Organic dioxids, 91
peroxids, 91
Orthoform, 139
Orthophosphoric acid, 188
Osmic acid, 103, 451
Osmium tetroxid, 103
Osmosis, process of, 216
Osseous system, action of phosphorus on, 187
tissues, tonic for, 188
Osteitis, 97
Osteoma, cause of, 373
Osteomalacia, 188, 190
Overwork a cause of insomnia, 153
Oxalic acid, 92
Oxidation as bleaching agent, 404
Oxidizing agents, direct, 88,
indirect, 88, 92
mixture, 227
Oxids, metallic, solutions of, 11
Oxygen, 61
as a bleacher, 62
combined with nitrous oxid, 141
nascent, liberation of, 89, 408
power of, 407
Ozone, 62

PAIN after pulp removal, 361
control of, methods for, 284
from cutting of bone, 387
in septic pericementitis, 367
"killer," 159
of drilling, 251
relief of, by anodynes, 126
by opium, 159
by pyramidon, 148
immediate, 361
severe paroxysms of, 447
Painless dentistry, 25, 27, 133, 283
Palate, soft, destroyed by gummata, 460
Pancreatin, 206
Papain, 207
Papaverin, 156
Paraffin filling for root-canals, 394
injections of, 121
Paraform, 67
Paraformaldehyd, 67
Paraldehyd, 153
Paralysis of fibrillæ, 289, 294
Paralyzant agents, 126
Parasiticide, 199
Paregoric, 157
Parillin, 203
Parts-by-weight system, 257
Paste, antiseptic, 395, 396
arsenic trioxid, 327
desensitizing, 55, 138, 141, 293, 297
devitalizing, 120
for filling root-canals, 394
for pulp capping, 51
orthoform and europhen, 139
Paste, sodium and alcohol, 321
thymolized calcium phosphate, 312
Patches, leucoplakia, 463
mucous, 86, 98, 103, 458
Pearson's solution, 201
Pediculosis pubis, 196, 199
Pepper, black, 237
Peppermint, oil of, 52
Pepsin, 205, 206
Percentage in solutions, 263
Pericemental abscess, 391
therapeutics of, 391
membrane, circulation in, 433
regeneration of, 392
Pericementitis, apical, 67, 114, 359
causes of, 52, 317, 318, 358, 360
counterirritation in, 107, 109, 113, 143, 362
home remedies for, 363
nonseptic, due to irritants, 358
liniment for, 114
treatment of, 110, 358, 361
by aconite, 363
by heat, 363
septic, 358, 364
causes of, 364
diagnosis of, 364, 365
treatment of, by drugs, 365
by heat, 108
by menthol, 53
general, 365
local, 364
Persio, 244
Peruvian bark, yellow, 148
Petrolatum and petronol, 120
Pharmaceutic preparations, 8
Pharmacodynamics, 1
Pharmacology, definition of, 1
Pharmacopeia, United States, 3, 4
Pharmacy, 3
Pharyngitis, 59, 75, 87, 98
chronic and subacute, 79, 235
Phenacetin, 147
Phenol, action of, 62, 63
as analgesic, 287
as local anodyne, 291
compound, 54, 311, 427
for hermetic sealing, 375
in pulp treatment, 299
poisoning, 46, 63, 217
Phenolphthalein, 215
Phenolsulphonic acid, 94, 95
advantages of, 343, 345
as cleansing agent, 340
as stimulant, 372
in pulp removal, 322
in pus pockets, 435
in treatment of abscess, 375, 392
indications for, 96
neutralizing of, 381
syringe for, 381
Phenyl salicylate, 46
Phosphoric acid, 188
Phosphor-necrosis, protection against, 188
Phosphorus, 186
action of, physiologic, 187
inflammability of, 187

Digitized by Google

Phosphorus, poisoning, 187
therapeutics of, 188
Physicians and dentists, harmonious work of, 349, 443
Phthisis, treatment of, by arsenic, 99
by terebene, 112
Picropodophyllin, 222
Pigment a cause of discoloration, 403
Pills, 17, 271
aloes and iron, 211
cathartic compound, 197
rhubarb compound, 211
vegetable cathartic, 221
Pilocarpin, effect of atropin on, 229
Pilocarpus, 229
Pimenta, 239
Pinus palustris, 110, 111
Piperin, 237
Plants, parts of, used for drugs, 7
Plaster-of-Paris bandages, 21
Plasters, 19
capsicum, 109
mustard, 20
Plastic porcelain filling, 121
Pockets, deep, elimination of, 434
lingual, 380, 388
pyorrheal, 85, 98, 417
curettement of, 431, 432, 439
location of, 434
Podophyllin and podophyllotoxin, 222
Podophyllum, 222
Poison, definition of, 3
tablets, 18
Poisoning, acetanilid, 146
aconite, 114
alcohol, 167
ammonia, 170
amyl nitrite, 173
arsenical, 39, 100, 101, 185, 186, 326
local, 334
aspirin, 47
atropin, 176
bismuth, 85
by alkalies, 98
by corrosives, 105, 118, 121
by depressant drugs, 165, 173
by mineral acids, 37, 97
cantharides, 112, 113
caustic potash, 105
chloral, 151
cocain, 131
digitalis, 173
gelsemium, 180
hydrofluoric acid, 106
iodin, 118
lead, 80
mercurial, 194, 196, 461
metallic, chronic, 193
narcotic, 81, 110, 176
nicotin, 162
opium, 158
oxalic acid, 37
paraldehyd, 154
phenol, 63
phosphorus, fatal, 188
potassium bromid, 154
chlorate, 226
strychnin, 164
Poisons, anatagonists to, 31
expulsion of, 231
Polishing of teeth, 428
Polypi, nasal, removal of, 75
Porcelain body, 125
filling, 121, 297
jacket crowns, 302, 355
Posology, 28
Posture when inhaling chloroform, 292
Potash, caustic, 104
Potassium acetate, 224
and sodium, 104
metallic, 340
tartrate, 219
bicarbonate, 223
bitartrate, 224
bromid, 154, 155
carbonate, 223
chlorate, 225, 226
citrate, 224
dichromate, 103
hydroxid, 104
iodid, 192
action of, cumulative, 192
physiologic, 192
in tertiary syphilis, 460
ion, 224
nitrate, 227
permanganate, 70
in opium poisoning, 159
incompatibility of, 70
Poultices, 20
ice, 128
kaolin, 125
Powders, 16, 270
dusting, 116, 125
Practical cases, history of, 351
treatment of, 351
Precipitates, formation of, 274
Pregnancy, a factor in dosage, 28
and ergot, 76
mouth secretions in, 40
purgation in, 28
Prescription, basis of, 266
official formula in, 269
refilling of, 160
-writing, 264, 269
abbreviations in, 264
by the dentist, 267
in Latin, 268
Prescriptions, incompatibility in, 274
practical, 270
Pressure anesthesia, 25, 136, 315, 318, 319
for pulp removal, 392
instruments for, 319
from abnormal growths, 444
in pulp removal, 318
osmotic, 216
Prinz's isotonic solution, 134
Privies, deodorant for, 184
Probing for caries, 379
sinus, 373
Process, devitalization of, 334
exposed, after extraction, 57
removal of, surgical, 335
Prophylaxis, dental, 421
in pyorrhea alveolaris, 427

Digitized by Google

Proprietary local anesthetics, 136
Protargol, 87
Protectives, 116
Protozoön a cause of pyorrhea, 417
Prune as a laxative, 210
Prunus virginiana, 178
Pruyn's method, 342
Psoriasis, simulation of, 68
Psychotherapy, 256
Psychrotin, 232
Ptomains in pulp decomposition, 337
Ptyalin, secretion of, arrest of, 72
Ptyalism, 61, 75, 194, 461
Pulmonary tuberculosis, 67
Pulp, anesthesia of, 25, 26, 254, 289
  blood-vessels of, 298, 299
  calcification, 332, 352
  capping, factors in, 308
    pastes for, 51
    technic of, 310, 311
  chamber, opening of, 319, 328, 339
    pus in, 339, 357
  dead, diagnosis of, 252, 253, 307, 338
  decomposition a cause of discoloration, 402
    end-products of, 67, 337, 340
  delicacy of, 300, 311
  devitalization of, 102, 160, 207, 298, 314
  diseases of, destructive, 306
    diagnosis of, 296, 298
  exposure, 308, 309, 310
    by accident, 354
    in the young, 309
  function of, 314
  gangrene of, 350, 364, 390
    diagnosis of, 308
    in a child, 390
    specific for, 66
    treatment of, 353, 390
      with oil of myrtle, 236
      with phenolsulphonic acid, 96
    with sinus, 373
  hyperemia of, 307
  irritation of, 299, 312
    mechanical, 314
  nodules, 95, 303, 305, 332, 361
    in neuralgic case, 305
    radiographs of, 304
  normal, anatomy of, 298
    sacrifice of, 306
  partially alive, 350
  pathology, 296
  poisoning of, 329
  remnant, destruction of, 90, 95, 105
  removal, 98, 136, 296, 298, 315, 320, 431
    after-treatment, 322
    complications of, 330
    from deciduous tooth, 333
    indications for, 314, 431
    painless, 323
  septic, 308, 350
  slow death of, 312
  stimulation of, 48
  tissue, decalcified, 141
    digestion of, 207
Pulp, tissue, hypertrophy of, 103, 332
    treatment of, 298
    vital, removal of, 314
Pulpal abscess, 308, 350
Pulpitis, anodyne for, 152
    associated with pericementitis, 324
    diagnosis of, 309
    treatment of, by phenol, 64
    true, 307, 313
Pulpless teeth, complications of, 349
    diagnosis of, 336
    sequelæ of, 336
    treatment of, 336, 339
      by acid method, 344
      by formocresol, 345
Punctures, protective for, 123
Purgatives, 32, 208
Purshianin, 208
Pus, burrowing of, 373
    disposing of, 370
    evacuation of, 204, 372, 377
      from abscess, 370
      mechanical, 374
    formation, causes of, 364
      checking of, 371, 372, 378
    pockets, cauterization of, 435
    pyorrheal, diseases due to, 418
      examination of, 416
Putrescence, true, 350
Putrid sore throat, 70
Pyorrhea alveolaris, 416
    a cause of pulp removal, 315
    antiseptic in, 82
    causes of, active and predisposing, 416
    classes of, 419
      systemic, 421, 443
    cure of, 422, 434
    deposits in, 419
    extraction of teeth in, 422
    gouty, 1, 225
    mistaken for alveolar abscess, 433
    percentage of cases of, 438
    pus in, diseases traced to, 418
    rheumatic, 48, 202, 225, 421
    stimulation in, 99
    systemic effects of, 417
    treatment of, 422
      acid, 96
      by betanaphthol, 59
      by cresol and lysol, 66
      by emetin, 233
      by iodin, 58
      by lithium, 228
      by mercury succinimid, 438
      by ozone, 62
      by suction, 255
      by zinc oxid, 83
      general, 443
      local, 443
      mechanical, 440
      medicinal, 46, 428, 435
      surgical, 423, 431
    true, 420, 431
    with indigestion, 430
    with neuralgia, 177, 181
Pyorrhea astringent, author's, 117, 429
Pyorrheal pockets, 69

Digitized by Google

Pyramidon, 148, 450
Pyrophosphoric acid, 188
Pyrotechnics from sodium dioxid, 90

QUINIDIN, 148
Quinin, action of, on blood, 149
on white blood corpuscles, 366
as a tonic, 150
as specific for malaria, 150, 450
bisulphate, 367
elimination of, 149
idiosyncrasy to, 150
valerianate, 161
Quinsy, 205

RACHITIS, 188, 190
Radiograph, value of, in dentistry, 252, 394
in diagnosis, 345, 371, 373, 377
Radiographs in operative cases, 388
interpretation of, 354
of nodules, 304
of pulpless tooth, 340
Radium salts, rays of, 253
Rarefied area, 395
Rash, boric acid, 43
quinin, 150
Rational therapeutics, 1
Ray-fungus, 464
Rays, alpha, beta, and gamma, 253
Reaction of boric acid, 44
of saliva, 236
of sodium dioxid, 89
Recession of gum, 38, 420, 421
"Record blank" for narcotics, 133, 136
Rectum, medication by, 26
Reducing agents, 93, 405
Reduction, process of, 93
Reflex peripheral irritation, 444
Refrigerant agents, 126
Remedies, classes of, 2
definitions of, 30
desensitizing, 284
local, 36
other than drugs, 249
specific, 46
Research, institutions for, 390
Resins, derivation of, 6
precipitated, 16
preparations of, 14
solubility of, 274
Resistance, vital, lowered, 444
Resolution, 3
promotion of, 108
Resorcinol, 59
Resorption in cases of abscess, 376, 378
Respiration, artificial, 131, 132, 159
Respiratory apparatus, efficiency of, 175
centers, functional activity of, 175
failure, 132
stimulants, 175
Restoratives, 34, 178, 181
Retainer for teeth, 440
wax, directions for making, 440
Retractor, use of, 384
Rhein's ionic theory, 348
method of filling canals, 341
Rheumatism, 45
acute, 48, 225, 229
salicylic acid in, 46
chronic, 170, 200
due to pyorrheal infection, 422
muscular, 110, 111, 144
treatment of, by aspirin, 47
by salol, 46
Rhigolene spray, 128
Rhizome of plants, 7
Rhubarb, preparations of, 213
Ricinolein, 212
Ringer tablet "B," 179
Ring-worm, 59, 199, 214
Rochelle salt, 219
Roe, Prof. J. N., 468
Röntgen ray, 252
Root amputation, 139
-canals, asepsis of, 360
enlargement of, 90
filling of, 82, 394
with chloropercha, 143
with various materials, 394
gangrenous, 42, 95, 104
sterilization of, 104
tortuous, 90, 95
treatment of, 52
aseptic, 169
standard for, 349
with thymocamphen, 115
cementosed, 446, 447
decayed, 349
denuded, 433
encystment of, 378
-end, denuded, 377, 433
encapsulated, 398, 401
filling of, 386
infection of, 445
roughening of, 376, 377
resorption of, 378
excision of, 382, 385, 433
-filling, asepsis in, 396
old, removal of, 346
pastes, 395
pus formation in, 371
surface, exposure of, 434
Roots of plants, 7
Rose, red, preparations of, 242
Rosin, 111
Rubber dam, adjustment of, 176, 315, 344, 349, 397, 406
sore mouth, 75, 79
Rubefacients, 107

SACCHARIN, 243
Sacrifice of teeth, 370, 421
Sal ammoniac, 234
Salicylic acid, 45
Saline cathartics, 216, 366
Saliva, change in, 84
examination of, 236, 453
pus-laden, swallowing of, 422
Salivation, 194, 459, 461
atropin for, 176
effect of, on teeth, 421
free, in pyorrhea, 439
prevention of, 226

Digitized by Google

Salol, 46
Salophen, 47
Salt action, 133, 215
solution, 133, 215
physiologic, 26, 178, 356
Saltpeter, 227
Salts, effervescent, 17
soluble, 183
Salvarsan, 99, 195, 202, 456
contraindications of, 202
or "606," 202, 456
Saponin, 203
Sarsaparilla, 203
as alterative in syphilis, 203
compound syrup of, 212, 366
Sarsa-saponin, 203
Sassafras, 123
medulla, 239
Scabies, 45, 59, 214
Scalds, 37
Scale salts, 183
Scaling, process of, 425
D. D. Smith's, 427
Scar tissue, 254
Schreier's alloy, use of, technic of, 341
Scopolamin hydrobromid, 160
Sealing, hermetic, 322, 375, 408
in root-canal work, 400
in of remedies, 300, 359
of cavity, 362
with cement, 365
Secretion, excessive, expulsion of, 231
gastric, antiseptic action of, 417
glandular, arrest of, 72
of serum, 372
Secretions, control of, 176
effects of opium on, 157
pilocarpin on, 229
Sedatives, 35
Seidlitz powder, 219
Senna, 209, 210, 211
Septicemia, treatment of, by echafolta, 204
Sequestra, exfoliation of, 368
removal of, 97
Serous membranes, inflammation of, 159
Serum antidiphthericum, 247
antipneumococcus, 248
antistaphylococcus, 248
antistreptococcus, 248
antitetanicum, 247
production of, 5
weeping of, 371
Serums, action of, 247
"Setting" of paste, 312
Sex, a factor in dosage, 28
Shaving emollient, 75, 79, 117
Shock, alcohol in, 169
from anesthetics, 176
from hemorrhage, 178
"Shot-gun" prescription, 264
Sialogogues, 35, 236
Sight, accidental loss of, 425
Silver chlorid precipitate, 470
metallic, 85
nitrate, 85
as prophylactic, 288
Silver, nitrate, for babies' sore eyes, 86
neutralizing of, 275
preparations of, colloidal, 88
salts, action of sunlight on, 86, 252, 288
vitellin, 87
Sinalbin, 109
Sinigrin, 109
Sinus, apical, of bicuspid, 353
cauterizing of, 64, 65, 374
closed, 69
dento-alveolar, 85
discharging for several months, 376
establishment of, 374, 377
in alveolar abscess, 98, 373
irrigation of, 374
opening into mouth, 373
treatment of, by hydrogen dioxid, 69, 374
by trichloracetic acid, 98
tubercular, chronic, 85
weeping of, 376
Skin, hypodermic injection through, 24
inflammation of, 83, 123
lesions, 122
Sleep, narcotic, 156
Sleeping sickness, 457
Slippery elm, 123
Sloughing of tissue, causes of, 134
from arsenic trioxid, 100
Smallpox vaccine, 248
Smokers, gingivitis in, 465
mouths of, 463
Snake-bite, 169, 203
Soap, incompatability of, 41
soluble, 407
white castile, 40
Soapstone, 125
Sockets, painful, 139
Soda, caustic, poisoning by, 105
chlorinated, 92
Sodium benzoate, 45
bicarbonate, 37
incompatibility of, 38, 275
borate, 38
bromid, 155
dioxid, 89
as bleaching agent, 405, 406, 408
ice-water solution of, 406
hydroxid, 104
as a by-product, 89
iodid, 193
ion, 155
peroxid, 89
phenolsulphonate, 344
phosphate, 218
pyroborate, 38
salicylate, 48
sulphate, 217, 344
Solids, mixtures of, 16
Solutions, 9
anesthetizing, 279, 317
antiseptic, 271, 311, 316
bichlorid of mercury, 198
concentration of, 216
cudbear, 425, 427
Dakin's, 179
disclosing, 428

Digitized by Google

Solutions, emetin hydrochlorid, 436
Fehling's, 471
hyperchlorous acid, 179
hyperisotonic, 216
hypertonic, 179
isotonic, 133, 179, 216
magnesium sulphate, 217
of non-volatile substances, 9
percentage in, 263
pharmaceutic, 8
prescriptions for, practical, 271
rosin, 111
salt, 26, 133, 178, 215, 356
sodium bicarbonate, 433
sodium dioxid, 89
true, 18
Solvent, chloroform as, 143
eucalyptol as, 396, 397
Somnifacients, 34, 150
Somnoform, 127
Sores, open, 60
Spanish fly, 112
Spasms, relaxation of, 174
Spearmint, 238
Specific disease, 2, 455
gravity, 257, 468
remedy, 2, 150, 202
Spinal cord depressants, 154
Spirillum, affections due to, 202
Spirits, 10, 166
aromatic, 10
of ether, compound, 142
of mindererus, 230
of nitrous ether, 230
Spirocheta in pyorrheal pus, 417
pallida, 195, 455, 457
Splints for teeth, 21, 440
Spooner, use of arsenic by, 102, 325
Spore formation, 277
Sprains, 61, 75, 144
Spray, alcohol, 368, 448
cinnamon, 50
cocain, 133
ether, 142, 286
ethyl chlorid, 250
rhigolene, 128
Spraying outfits, 428
Sputum of consumptives, 462
Squill, preparations of, 235
Stain from silver nitrate, 87
ineradicable, 330
nitric acid, 96
removal of, 321
Staining agent, 75
Staphylococcus pyogenes, 364
aureus, 245
Starch, 118
Starvation, deficiency of fat in, 191
Steapsin, 206
Stearoptenes, 6, 53
Sterilization by sublamin, 201
dental, 277, 397
by chemic agents, 278
by direct flame, 277
by dry and moist heat, 71, 278
by formaldehyd, 294, 295
by ionization, 348
in pulp removal, 315
Sterilization, mechanical, 328
of dentin, 199, 310
of fingers, 317
of hypodermic syringe, 24
of instruments, 38, 71, 201, 278, 383, 397, 426
responsibility for, 280
surgical, 41
Sterilizers, 71, 278
Stewart, Dr. Lee K., appliances of, 441
Stimulants, 35, 163
cardiac, 163
gastric, 177
respiratory, 175
restorative, 178
Stings, 118
Stock solutions, 279
Stomach, absorption of drugs in, 22
disorders of, 206
hyperacidity of, 38, 40
irritant material in, 233
-pump, dangers of, 97
rupture of, 97
washing of, 123
Stomachics, 177
Stomatitis, argyrol in, 87
chronic, 86
mercurial, 194, 226, 272, 461
treatment of, 39, 52, 55, 82, 194
ulcerative, 51, 59, 61, 80, 81, 83, 204
Stopping, temporary, use of, 365
Streptococcus decomposition, 340
fecalis, 357
infection, 68
pyogenes, 364
longus, 419
pyorrheal, in feces, 417
salivarius, 357
vaccine, 248
viridans, 245, 340, 357
in pyorrhea, 417, 418
Strontium iodid, 193
Strychnin, 164
as alkaloid of nux vomica, 163
physiological action of, 164
poisoning, 164, 174
diagnostic sign in, 165
sedatives in, 151
treatment of, 165
therapeutics of, 165
value of, in poisoning by depressants, 165
Stupe, turpentine, 111
Styptics, 35, 72
Sublamin, 200
"Submarine gardens," 55
Succinic dioxid, 91
Suction, hyperemia produced by, 254
Sudorifics, 32, 228
Sugar of milk, 243
Suggestion in treatment of disease, 255
Sulphonal, hypnotic action of, 152
poisoning by, 152
Sulphonmethane, 152
Sulphur, action of, physiologic, 214
in parasitic diseases, 214
lotum, 214

Digitized by Google

Sulphur, poisoning in match factories, 187
precipitated, 214
sublimatum, 214
Sulphurated calcium, 204
Sulphuric acid, 94, 340
action of, corrosive, 344
free, in phenolsulphonic acid, 375
in pulp removal, 316
in treatment of pulpless teeth, 343
therapeutics of, 95
Sulphurous acid, 31, 32, 93, 214
Sunlight, effect of, on silver salts, 86, 252, 288
Suppositories, 19
glycerin, 117
Suppuration, arrest of, 205
in wounds, 59
Suppurative pericementitis, 364
Suprarenal gland, 77
Suprarenin, 77
Surgery in alveolar abscess, 382
in antral diseases, 413
major, nitrous oxid in, 141
Sweat, clammy, 249
glands, activity of, 229
Sweating, excessive, 169
Sweet oil, 118
Swelling due to abscesses, 355
Sylvester's artificial respiration, 132, 159
Syncope, 115, 169, 173
Synthetic drugs, 5
substitutes for cocain, 136
Syphilis 2, 455
cure of, 460
diagnosis of, certain, 459
differentiated from gingivitis, 465
germ of, 455
infection of, 459
prmiary, 456
diagnosis and treatment of, 456
secondary, 192, 195, 226, 458
diagnosis and treatment of, 458
specific for, 202, 460
symptoms of, 455
tertiary, 200, 460
potassium iodid in, 192
treatment of, by arsenic, 99
by mercury, 195, 199, 200
by "606," 195
Syphilitic conditions, iron iodid in, 186
mucous patches, 458
Syringe for phenolsulphonic acid, 381
Syrups, 10
Systemic diseases, origin of, 248

TABLETS, 18
alcresta ipecac, 232
corrosive sublimate, 18, 198
Ringer, 179
Talc, purified, 124
Tamarind, 209
Tannic acid, 31, 72, 74, 329
in krameria, 74
use of, objections to, 329
Tartar emetic, 233
solvent, 436
Teeth, anesthetization of, 129
artificial, 436
bleaching of, 70, 88, 90, 93, 98, 190, 403
bridged, 295, 303, 443
care of, 358, 429
cleanliness of, 459
coalescing of, 446
discoloration of, 320, 402, 407
dropping out of, 420
erosion of, 40
eruption of, 145
examination of, in match factories, 187
exfoliation of, 326
extraction of, 74, 120, 127
needless, 370, 421
painless, 133, 136
fracture of, 252
impacted, 445, 446
loose, in pyorrhea, 421, 422
support for, 442
lost, replacing of, 442
pink staining of, 402
replantation of, 435
scaling of, 64, 425
shortening of, 442
sound, extraction of, 447
whitening of, 70
Temperature, fever, reduction of, 145, 169
influence of, 29
Terebene, 112
Terpenes, 6
Test, chemic, for sodium dioxid, 406
heat, 468
nitric acid, 468
Tetanus, convulsions of, 151, 174
distinguished from strychnin poisoning, 165
toxins of, 245, 246
Tetra-iodo-phenol-phthalein, 56
Tetra-iodo-pyrrol, 56
Thebain, 156
Theobroma, 129
Therapeutics, definition of, 1
practical, 281
preventive, 300
Therapy, successful, 281
Thermal sensitiveness, 283, 284, 294
Thermometric scale, 250
Thirst, allaying of, 189
Throat, diseases of, 210
Throat, sore, 74, 75, 81, 82, 98, 122, 123
putrid, 70
Thrush, 38
treatment of, 39, 70
Thyme, oil of, 54
Thymocamphen, 55, 115
Thymol, action of, 54, 311
in eucalyptol, 124
iodid, 56
Thymophen, 55
Thyroid glands, desiccated, 78
Tic douloureux, therapeutics of, 451, 452
Tincture of opium, camphorated, 157
Tinctures, assay of, 13
use of, by dentists, 14

Digitized by Google

Tissue in cavity, nature of, 331
laceration of, 134
waste, 204
Tissues after cauterization, 346
constringing of, 429
of mouth, hard, 283
not associated with the teeth, 453
soft, 453
sloughing of, 134
Tobacco, 162
Tolerance of drugs, 27
Toluene, 243
Tongue, cancer of, 70
Tonics, 35, 181
quinin, 150
spring, 123, 240
Tonsillitis, follicular, 205
Tonsils, enlarged, 81
Tooth, anatomic structure of, 285
bacterial growth on, 427
-pastes, base of, 37
for pyorrhea, 429
powders, base of, 37
for general use, 270
-structure, disinfection of, 279
exposed, 86
sterilization of, 277
vital, opening of, 392
Toothache during devitalization, 327
jumping, 313
relief of, by chewing tobacco, 163
treatment of, 67, 307
Toxicology, definition of, 1, 2
Toxins, absorption of, 417
extracellular, 245, 418
in digestive tract, 453
in pulp decomposition, 337
intracellular, 245
Tragacanth, 121
Trauma a cause of antral disease, 412
Trichloracetic acid, 33, 98, 288
Tricresol, 65, 338
Trifacial neuralgia, 444
Trigeminal neuralgia, 444
Trional, 153
Trioxymethylen, 67, 288
Troches, 17, 75
ammonium chlorid, 234
tannic acid, 73
Tropacocain hydrochlorid, 136
Troy weight, 257, 258
Trypsin, 206
Tubercle bacillus, entrance of, into body, 462
Tuberculosis, 462
cod-liver oil in, 191
pulmonary, 67, 202
treatment of, 200, 203, 462
Tumor, apical, 388
Turpentine, 110, 111
Typhoid fever, intestinal antiseptic in, 91
vaccine, 248

ULCERATION, lupous, 99, 454
tuberculous, 99, 462
Ulcers, 59, 83, 86, 147
Ulcers, chancrous, 454
duodenal, 38
dusting powder for, 125
gastric, 38
gingival, 465
in the mouth, 454
indolent, 77, 79, 80, 98, 103
phagedenic, 96
sluggish, 57
syphilitic, 59, 197, 454, 456
tubercular, 462
United States Pharmacopeia, IX, 3
previous to 1880, 257
Urea hydrochlorid and quinin, 150
nitrate precipitate, 469
Uremia, acute, 229
convulsions in, 174
distinguished from alcoholism, 167
Uric acid precipitate, 469
Urine, albumin in, 443
alkalinity of, 223, 225
analysis of, 471
chlorids in, 469
effects of potassium on, 225
examination of, 468
mercury in, 194
phosphates in, 470
reaction of, 468
secretion of, 223, 225
solids of, 468, 469
specific gravity of, 468
sugar in, 443, 470
sulphates in, 470
urates in, 469
urea in, 469
Urotropin, 68

VACCINES, autogenous, 5, 248
mixed and stock, 248
use of, in pyorrhea, 439
Valerianic acid, 180
Vallet's mass, 185
Vanilla, 242
Vaselin, liquid, 120
Vault of mouth in abscess cases, 380
Vegetable drugs, 5, 7
Vehicles for drugs, 17, 18, 19
Vein, air injected into, 23
Venous hyperemia, 307
Vesicants, 107
Vesication, 250
Vibrating coil, 338
Vinegars, 13
Vital pulp, removal of, 314
resistance, lowered, 444
Vitality of tooth after desensitizing, 297
Vitriol, white, 81
green, 183
Volatile oils, 48
prunus virginanai, 178
valerian, 180
substances, solutions of, 9, 10
Volume of drugs, 14, 16
Vomiting induced by apomorphin, 231
lime-water for, 37
Vital resistance, lowering of, 444

Digitized by Google

WARTS, removal of, 46, 96, 98
Washed sulphur, 214
Wassermann reaction, 456
Waters, aromatic and medicated, 9
Wax models, 441
Weight of drugs, 15, 16
Weights and measures, English, equivalents to, 261
Whooping-cough, 59, 145, 151
Wild cherry, syrup of, 178
Wine measure, 258
Wines, 12, 166
Wires, diagnostic, 351, 353
Witch-hazel, 75
Wood charcoal, 60
Wool fat, purified, 120
Wounds, aseptic, 123
healing of, 60
incised, 73
infected, 179, 252
lacerated, 73
packing of, 85, 386
painful, 139
protected by gutta-percha, 124
sloughing, 59, 103
Wright's hypertonic solution, 179

X-RAYS in diagnosis of abscess, 370, 382
of neuralgia, 445
of pulpless teeth, 351, 354
in disease of antrum, 412
in root-canal work, 400
in therapeutics, 252
Xylene, 346
Xylol, 346, 351, 352

YELLOW cinchona, 148
Yerba santa, 366

ZINC chlorid as a dangerous caustic, 83
in treatment of cavity, 287
iodid, 83
ointment with calomel, 197
oxid, 82, 312
phenolsulphonate, 82
sulphate, 81
sulphocarbolate, 82

Digitized by Google

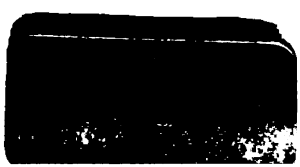
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
3 9015 04060 8591



Digitized by Google